

SIMULTANEOUS MULTILINGUAL LANGUAGE ACQUISITION

COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF SPANISH, PORTUGUESE, ITALIAN AND FRENCH

Learn & Compare 4 Languages
Simultaneously

- Includes over 1000 illustrative examples
- Provides 560 easy-to-follow charts and tables
- Contains 138 geographical, historical, and cultural facts

MIKHAIL PETRUNIN

Comparative Grammar of Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French

Learn and Compare 4 Languages
Simultaneously

MIKHAIL PETRUNIN

MIKHAIL PETRUNIN

Copyright © 2018 Mikhail Petrunin

All rights reserved.

ISBN: 9781983334269

COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF SPANISH, PORTUGUESE, ITALIAN AND FRENCH

To all language lovers like me.

MIKHAIL PETRUNIN

PC
59'
PL2
2018

CONTENTS

Preface To the Learner	xviii
Six reasons why this book was written and why you need it	xviii
Acknowledgements	xxv
Symbols	xxvi
Introduction: Alphabet	1
<i>Letter names and Pronunciations</i>	1
Digraphs	4
Diacritics	7
Diphthongs	9
Chapter 1: Nouns	12
<i>Gender of Nouns</i>	12
Forming the Feminine	20
<i>Plural Forms of Nouns</i>	23
Special Cases of Forming the Plural Nouns	24
Nouns which are always Plural	30
Nouns which are always Singular	31
Chapter 2: Adjectives	33
<i>Gender of Adjectives</i>	33
Forming the Feminine	34
<i>Plural Forms of Adjectives</i>	41
<i>Peculiarities of Adjective Use</i>	43
Italian Bello	46
Italian Grande	47

Italian Buono and Nessuno	47
Chapter 3: Adverbs	49
<i>Use of Adverbs</i>	49
<i>Forming Adverbs from Adjectives. Adverbs Ending in -mente (-ment)</i>	49
<i>Peculiarities of Adverb Use</i>	50
<i>Other Adverbs</i>	51
Adverbs of manner	51
Adverbs of place	51
Adverbs of time	52
Adverbs of intensity	53
Adverbs of doubt	54
Adverbs expressing affirmation	54
Adverbs expressing exclusion	55
Adverbs composed of several words	55
Adverbial phrases	55
<i>Position of Adverbs</i>	57
<i>Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs</i>	58
<i>Irregular Comparatives and Superlatives</i>	63
Chapter 4: Articles	66
<i>Origin of Articles in Romance Languages. Definite and Indefinite Articles. Gender</i>	66
French	68
Italian	68
Spanish and Portuguese	68
<i>Use of the Article</i>	69
General Use of the Indefinite Article	69
General Use of the Definite Article	70

COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF SPANISH, PORTUGUESE, ITALIAN AND FRENCH

Omission of the Definite Article	78
Omission of the Article	79
<i>The Neuter Article lo in Spanish</i>	81
<i>The Partitive</i>	82
<i>Contraction of the Article</i>	84
Chapter 5: Pronouns	87
<i>Personal Pronouns</i>	87
<i>Subject Pronouns</i>	91
Overview	91
Use of Subject Pronouns	92
Omission of Subject Pronouns	96
<i>Direct Object</i>	98
Use of Direct Object Pronouns	101
Word Order of Direct Object Pronouns	101
Divergent Aspects in Word Order	103
Different Variants of Direct Object in Portuguese	106
<i>Indirect Object</i>	108
Use of Indirect Object Pronouns	108
Common Verbs Used with an Indirect Object in Romance Languages	111
Word Order of Indirect Object Pronouns	112
<i>Contraction. Using Direct and Indirect Object Pronouns in the Same Sentence</i>	112
<i>Italian ci, ne and French y, en Special Pronouns</i>	117
Italian ci and French y Pronouns	117
Use of ci and y	117
Italian ne and French en Pronouns	122
Use of ne and en	122

<i>Prepositional (Disjunctive) Pronouns</i>	125
Use of Prepositional (Disjunctive) Pronouns	126
Special Forms of Prepositional Pronouns and Prepositions in Spanish and Portuguese	126
Use of Prepositional (Disjunctive) Pronouns in French. Special Cases	129
<i>Reflexive Pronouns</i>	130
Use of Reflexive Pronouns	131
Word Order of Reflexive Pronouns	132
<i>Possessive Adjectives and Pronouns in Romance Languages</i>	133
Possessive Adjectives	133
Possession with de (Spanish, Portuguese, French) and di (Italian)	137
Omission of Possessive Adjectives	138
<i>Possessive Pronouns</i>	139
<i>Demonstrative Adjectives and Pronouns in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French</i>	142
Demonstrative Adjectives	142
Forms of Demonstrative Adjectives	143
Demonstrative Adjectives this and these in Romance Languages	145
Demonstrative Adjectives that and those in Romance Languages	146
Demonstrative Adjectives that over there and those over there in Spanish and Portuguese	147
Combined Demonstrative Adjectives in Portuguese	148
Word Order of Demonstrative Adjectives	149
<i>Demonstrative Pronouns</i>	150
Forms of Demonstrative Pronouns	150

COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF SPANISH, PORTUGUESE, ITALIAN AND FRENCH

Possession with the Demonstrative Pronoun and de (di)	152
Neuter Demonstrative Pronouns in Spanish and Portuguese	153
Forms of Neuter Demonstrative Pronouns	153
Combined Neuter Demonstrative Pronouns in Portuguese	154
<i>Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives</i>	155
<i>Exclamations with Interrogative Pronouns</i>	168
<i>Relative Pronouns</i>	171
<i>Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns</i>	186
Chapter 6: Verbs	217
<i>Overview</i>	217
<i>The Indicative Mood</i>	222
<i>The Present Tense</i>	222
Irregular Verbs in the Present Tense	233
Verb Spelling and Vowel Changes	236
Use of the Present Tense	271
Special Use of the Present Tense and Prepositions	274
<i>The Past Participle</i>	276
Overview	276
Formation of Past Participle of Regular Verbs	276
Irregular Past Participles	277
Use of Past Participle	279
<i>The Present Perfect</i>	280
Formation of the Present Perfect	280
Formation of the Present Perfect with the Verb to be in Italian and French	282
Agreement of the Past Participle	283

MIKHAIL PETRUNIN

Agreement of the Past Participle with avoir in French	284
Use of the Present Perfect	285
Special Use of the Present Perfect in Italian and French	286
Sp. acabar de; Port. acabar de; Fr. venir de + The Infinitive	286
<i>The Preterite</i>	287
Formation of the Preterite	287
Irregular Verbs in the Preterite	290
Irregularities in Formation the Preterite	294
Use of the Preterite	305
Special Use of the Preterite in French	307
Difference between the Preterite and the Present Perfect in the Romance languages	308
<i>Asking Questions</i>	309
Peculiarities of Interrogation in the Romance languages	310
<i>Negation</i>	313
Formation of Negation in Simple Tenses	314
Omission of Pas in French	315
Negation of the Infinitive	315
Negation with Adjectives and the Adverb Very	316
Formation of Negation in Compound Tenses	317
Other Negative Expressions	318
<i>The Imperfect Tense</i>	331
Formation of the Imperfect	331
Irregular Verbs in the Imperfect	334
Use of the Imperfect	335
Sp. desde hace; Port. desde; It. da; Fr. depuis + The Imperfect Tense	340

COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF SPANISH, PORTUGUESE, ITALIAN AND FRENCH

Difference between the Preterite and the Imperfect in the Romance Languages	342
<i>Compound Tenses in The Past</i>	343
Overview	343
<i>The Pluperfect Tense</i>	343
Formation of the Pluperfect	343
Use of the Pluperfect Tense	347
Peculiarities of Use of the Pluperfect in the Romance Languages	348
Irregular Verbs of the Pluperfect in Portuguese	348
<i>The Past Perfect (Anterior) Tense</i>	349
Formation of The Past Perfect (Anterior)	349
Use of the Past Perfect (Anterior) Tense	353
<i>The Future Tense</i>	354
Regular Formation of the Future	354
Irregular Verbs in The Future	356
Irregularities in Formation of the Future in French	360
Use of The Future Tense	361
The Informal Future	362
Special Use of the Future	363
<i>The Future Perfect Tense</i>	365
Formation of the Future Perfect	365
Use of the Future Perfect Tense	368
Special Use of the Future Perfect	369
<i>The Conditional Tense</i>	371
Overview	371
Formation of the Present Conditional	371
Irregular Verbs in the Conditional	373

MIKHAIL PETRUNIN

Irregularities in Formation the Conditional in French	376
Use of the Conditional Tense	377
<i>The Conditional Perfect Tense</i>	379
Overview	379
Formation of the Conditional Perfect	379
Use of the Conditional Perfect Tense	382
<i>Conditional Clauses</i>	383
<i>The Subjunctive Mood</i>	387
Overview	387
Basic Rules for Indicative and Subjunctive	388
<i>The Present Subjunctive</i>	389
Formation of the Present Subjunctive	389
Irregular Verbs in the Present Subjunctive	392
Use of the Present Subjunctive	395
Sp. Ojalá (que)	397
Use of the Present Indicative instead of Subjunctive	407
Subjunctive with Subordinate Conjunctions	410
Indirect Commands in Romance languages	415
Subjunctive after Affirmation in Romance Languages	416
Subjunctive in Relative Clauses	417
Subjunctive with the Superlative and It. solo, unico; Fr. seul, unique	418
Subjunctive with Indefinite Words	419
<i>The Present Perfect Subjunctive</i>	421
Formation of the Present Perfect Subjunctive	421
Use of the Present Perfect Subjunctive	424
<i>The Imperfect Subjunctive</i>	425
Formation of the Imperfect Subjunctive	425

Irregular Verbs in the Imperfect Subjunctive	428
Use of the Imperfect Subjunctive	429
<i>The Pluperfect (Past Perfect) Subjunctive</i>	430
Overview	430
Formation of The Pluperfect Subjunctive	430
Use of the Pluperfect Subjunctive	434
<i>The Future Subjunctive in Spanish and Portuguese</i>	435
Overview	435
Formation of the Future Subjunctive	435
Irregular verbs in the Future Subjunctive	436
Use of The Future Subjunctive	437
<i>The Future Perfect Subjunctive</i>	437
Overview	438
Formation of the Future Perfect Subjunctive	438
Use of The Future Perfect Subjunctive	439
<i>The Sequence of Tenses with the Subjunctive</i>	441
<i>The Imperative Mood</i>	443
Spanish and Portuguese Let's Commands with the Verb Ir	447
Irregular Imperative	448
The Negative Imperative	450
Softened Commands in the Romance Languages	452
<i>The Present Participle (Gerund)</i>	454
Overview	454
Formation of the Present Participle (Gerund)	454
Irregularities in Formation of the Present Participle (Gerund) in Spanish and Italian	455
Use of Present Participle (Gerund)	457

No Use of Present Participle (Gerund)	460
How to Avoid Using the Present Participle (Gerund)	462
<i>The Compound Present Participle (Gerund) in Portuguese and Italian</i>	464
Formation of the Compound Present Participle (Gerund) in Portuguese and Italian	464
Use of the Compound Present Participle in Portuguese and Italian	464
<i>The Continuous Tenses</i>	465
Formation of Continuous Tenses	465
Use of Continuous Tenses	467
The Present Continuous	467
The Imperfect Continuous	467
<i>The Infinitive</i>	468
Overview	468
Use of The Infinitive	469
Spanish al + Infinitive	487
<i>Make in Causative Constructions in The Romance Languages</i>	487
<i>Let and Verbs of Perception + the Infinitive in the Romance Languages</i>	492
<i>The Compound Infinitive</i>	494
Use of the Compound Infinitive	495
<i>Portuguese Personal Infinitive</i>	496
Overview	496
Forms of the Personal Infinitive	496
Use of Portuguese Personal Infinitive	497
<i>Reflexive Verbs</i>	500
Overview	500

COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF SPANISH, PORTUGUESE, ITALIAN AND FRENCH

Formation of Reflexive Verbs	500
Reflexive Verbs with a Reflexive Meaning	503
Italian and French Compound Tenses with Reflexive Verbs	508
Reflexive Verbs with Parts of the Body	508
Reciprocal Reflexive Verbs	509
Reflexive Verbs Versus Non-Reflexive Verbs	514
Reflexive Verbs in the Infinitive in the Romance languages	516
Reflexive se (Spanish, Portuguese and French) and si (Italian) as an Indefinite Subject	517
Frequent Reflexive Verb of Becoming	518
Affirmative Imperative of Reflexive verbs in the Romance Languages	519
Negative Imperative of Reflexive Verbs in the Romance Languages	520
<i>The Passive Voice</i>	521
Overview	521
Formation of the Passive Voice	521
Spanish Passive Voice with Ser and Estar	533
French Passive Voice with de	533
Alternatives to Passive Voice in the Romance Languages	534
Chapter 7: Numbers, Time and Dates	538
<i>Numbers</i>	538
Overview	538
<i>Cardinal Numbers</i>	538
Peculiarities of Spelling Rules of Cardinal Numbers in the Romance Languages	546
Phrases of Approximation Used with Cardinal Numbers	549

Use of Cardinal Numbers	551
<i>Ordinal Numbers</i>	555
Adverbial Ordinals in the Romance Languages	564
<i>Fractions</i>	564
Arithmetical Operations	567
<i>Collective Numbers</i>	568
Multiple Numerals	570
<i>Dates</i>	571
Days	571
Months	572
Ways to Ask the Date in the Romance Languages	574
Seasons	575
<i>Time</i>	576
Chapter 8: Prepositions	587
<i>Overview</i>	587
<i>Simple Prepositions</i>	588
Uses of Simple Prepositions	590
<i>Compound Prepositions (Prepositional Phrases)</i>	688
<i>Contraction of Prepositions with Article</i>	706
Chapter 9: Conjunctions	707
<i>Overview</i>	707
<i>Coordinating Conjunctions</i>	707
<i>Subordinating Conjunctions</i>	708
<i>Correlative Conjunctions</i>	717
<i>Functions of Conjunctions</i>	717
Copulative conjunctions	717
Adversative conjunctions	719

COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF SPANISH, PORTUGUESE, ITALIAN AND FRENCH

Disjunctive conjunctions	722
Consecutive conjunctions	723
Causal conjunctions	725
Concessive conjunctions	727
Conditional conjunctions	729
Final conjunctions	731
Temporal conjunctions	732
Comparative conjunctions	734
Complementizer	735
Chapter 10: Interjections	737
<i>Overview</i>	737
<i>Types of Interjections</i>	737
<i>Interjections with Exclamatory Words</i>	759
Verb Charts	760
<i>Regular Verbs</i>	760
<i>Irregular Verbs</i>	763
Index	769

MIKHAIL PETRUNIN

PREFACE TO THE LEARNER

*“Aut inveniam viam aut faciam” -
I shall either find a way or make one*

Hello, my friends.

Spanish: Hola, mis amigos.

Portuguese: Olá, meus amigos.

Italian: Ciao, i miei amici.

French: Salut, mes amis.

Nowadays thousands of grammar books, textbooks, outlines, references and language guides of Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French are published year by year. However, all of them teach these languages separately. Here you will find a comparative grammar of the four major Romance languages together based on their grammatical and lexical similarities for you, lovers of foreign languages, to learn and compare Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French simultaneously. It is an audacious endeavor to find or create a novel way of learning to speak several languages and becoming a multilingual person.

Below I will discuss six reasons why I decided to write this book and why you need it. Also, I will try to answer such questions as whether it is possible and not confusing to learn several languages simultaneously, and why you should ever learn Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

Six reasons why this book was written and why you need it.

1. I began studying the Romance languages in 2007. When I first started to learn the French language and literature at the Department of Romance and Germanic languages of Derzhavin

Tambov State University I found myself totally captivated by Latin-based languages.

In my second year, I took additional classes of Spanish and started learning Italian and Portuguese by myself. While studying these four languages, I gradually realized how incredibly similar Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French are and how amazing it would be to have a special course which would enable students to learn them at the same time in order to get a certain level of knowledge of the four major Romance languages.

Since a university academic program would not offer courses like that, I started to search for a book that would teach Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French simultaneously but, to my surprise and regret, a book like that had never been written. So I decided to write a Comparative Grammar of Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French to use it in my own future courses.

This book is written for readers like you who are fond of or would like to learn Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French simultaneously or just to get an all-round knowledge of all these four Romance languages. It is designed not only for beginners who do not have an extensive knowledge of grammar, yet need a guide through the grammatical concepts of all mentioned above languages, but also intermediate and advanced students who would like to have a reference book of several Romance languages at once.

2. I spent many years learning these languages separately, which was a complete waste of time before I realized it. This book will hopefully save you a great deal of time and allow you to study and compare at a glance the four main Neo-Latin languages. How I wish I had a book like this ten years ago!

3. Global processes of integration, exchange of human resources, intellectual and material products, and information between countries show great progress in entering a period of multilingualism where knowledge of only one foreign language is no longer sufficient. The foundation of the European Union and creation of a common economic and social space between the countries and people of Europe gave rise to the issue of multilingualism and teaching and learning of multiple languages. Knowledge of foreign languages is fast becoming a necessary requirement for those who are involved in international business, tourism, culture and education. This book offers you four

languages to learn, which will make you feel at home wherever you go, whether as a tourist or businessman.

4. Learning several languages simultaneously or one by one will train and strengthen your memory and can help stave off such terrible diseases as Alzheimer's.

5. If you have never studied several languages at once before and you like challenges, then you should definitely try it. Because it is a really entertaining and challenging task to do.

6. Finally, this book will teach you how to say "house" in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French and the plural form of the word. You will know how to count in four languages and what sounds different animals make in these four languages.

*Is it possible to learn several languages
simultaneously?*

Yes, it is. It is a well-known fact that all the Romance languages originated from Latin, or from Vulgar Latin to be precise. Vulgar Latin was spoken by ordinary citizens living throughout all the provinces of the Roman Empire.

Due to active expansion, the Romans managed to spread and popularize their language all over Western and Eastern Europe, making other nations and tribes speak Latin. By that time, the conquered nations already had their own languages and dialects and, therefore, the classical form of Latin gradually changed under the influence of the linguistic peculiarities and habits of local people. The changes were so dramatic that they eventually led to the development of the Romance languages, which retained significant grammatical and lexical similarities and mutual intelligibility.

Therefore, the significant grammatical and lexical convergence will allow the simultaneously study of several Romance languages.

Below are some examples that demonstrate apparent lexical similarities between Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

Count from one to ten

COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF SPANISH, PORTUGUESE, ITALIAN AND FRENCH

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
un(o), una	um, uma	uno, una	un, une	one
dos	dois, duas	due	deux	two
tres	três	tre	trois	three
cuatro	quatro	quattro	quatre	four
cinco	cinco	cinque	cing	five
seis	seis	sei	six	six
siete	sete	sette	sept	seven
ocho	oito	otto	huit	eight
nueve	nove	nove	neuf	nine
diez	dez	dieci	dix	ten

Several common verbs

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
sonar	soar	sonare	sonner	to ring
haber (tener)	haver (ter)	avere	avoir	to have
hacer	fazer	fare	faire	to do
sentir	sentir	sentire	sentir	to feel, to sense

Some other commonly used verbs

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
hombre	homem	uomo	homme	man
pan	pão	pane	pain	bread
cielo	ceu	cielo	ciel	sky

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
hierba	erva	erba	herbe	<i>grass</i>
vivo	vivo	vivo	vif	<i>alive</i>
blanco	branco	bianco	blanc	<i>white</i>
venir	vir	venire	venir	<i>to come</i>

If Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French are so similar, would not it be confusing to learn them together?

The answer is no. In order to avoid mess and confusion in learning, I suggest 8 tips on how to effectively study these four languages:

1. To make the process of learning better structured and more effective, learn the grammatical rules and phrases of these four languages in a fixed and strict sequence. These languages have already been put in a strict order for you to learn. The sequence is this: at first you read a rule or phrase in Spanish => then in Portuguese => then Italian => and finally in French. You should get used to this particular sequence in order to avoid confusion.
2. As Leonardo da Vinci once said, "Study without desire spoils the memory, and it retains nothing that it takes in." Motivate yourself and develop an overwhelming and strong desire to learn and master Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. Motivation and understanding of how important the knowledge of these languages is to you is the key to success. Constantly remind yourself why you need to learn several or all of these languages and where you are going to use them.
3. Try to read and memorize the rules of each chapter at least twice before starting with the next one. If you genuinely wish to improve your Spanish, Portuguese, Italian or French, return and revise each chapter over again. Practice makes perfect. Remember that.

4. While reading new rules, phrases and constructions, try to make up your own sentences and examples using the rules that you just learned.
5. Use this book with a pencil to underline rules or constructions that you feel are important and which you may use later on in conversation.
6. Revise comparative grammar of Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French from time to time. Because our brain tends to forget all the grammar rules we've learned so rapidly, we constantly need to refresh our memory by reviewing and repeating them at times.
7. Practice your Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and/or French in real conversations with native speakers no matter how good or bad you know those languages. Use these language every day and at every opportunity both in the streets and on the internet, on social networks or different online chats. Learning is an active process. You will never learn a language until you practice it with people.
8. Your final goal is to speak Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and/or French. Therefore, use your notebook or any device to record all the new words and phrases you hear while practicing your languages with people or watching TV or listening radio in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian or French.

Why you should learn Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

That is very simple. The Romance languages are the most widely spread in the world by number of speakers. Besides the most widely spoken languages, which are Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, there are also Catalan, Galician, Romansh, Romanian, Franco-Provençal, Sardinian and others that belong to the Romance languages. It is quite difficult to determine the exact number of languages belonging to the Romance group as there are no accurate methods of division between a "language" and a "dialect".

Nowadays around 7 billion people live on Earth and over 800 million people speak the Romance languages in Europe,

MIKHAIL PETRUNIN

South and North America, Africa and Asia. Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French are spoken in France, Switzerland, Belgium, Spain, Portugal, Italy and other European countries.

Spanish and Portuguese are natively spoken or enjoy official status in almost all the countries of South and Central America (Mexico, Colombia, Argentina, Venezuela, Peru, Ecuador, Chile, Cuba, Bolivia, Paraguay, Uruguay, Brazil, etc.). French, Portuguese and Spanish have official status in a wide range of countries in Africa. In Arabic countries of North Africa (mostly Morocco, Tunisia and Algeria) French is the second spoken language. People of Western and Central African countries (Guinea, Ivory Coast, Gabon, Central African Republic, Cameroon, Republic of the Congo, Democratic Republic of the Congo, Togo, Benin, Senegal, Mali, etc.) speak French as their native or second language. Spanish is the official language of Equatorial Guinea and Portuguese is the official language of six countries in Africa (Angola, Mozambique, Guinea-Bissau, Cape Verde and Sao Tome and Principe). In Asia, Portuguese is one of the official languages in Macau and East Timor.

There is a large number of television programs and radio programs broadcasting, countless books, newspapers, magazines and journals are published worldwide in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

Furthermore, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French are official languages of the European Union, the United Nations (Spanish and French), as well as many other international organizations, communities, congresses and conferences.

Thus, the Romance languages play a significant role in the world, arouse genuine interest and have obvious practical benefit for learners.

In conclusion, I would like to sincerely thank you for purchasing the book and your interest in it. I hope it will help you improve your languages. If I can help you in any way, please do not hesitate to contact me. I would be glad to answer any questions and share ideas related to multilingualism and learning multiple languages simultaneously. I also welcome any remarks from readers.

Mikhail Petrunin

Email: petrunin.mikh5@gmail.com

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I am grateful to my relatives, friends and colleagues for their useful advice and invaluable assistance in the writing of this book.

First of all, I would like to sincerely thank my parents Marina Petrunina and Mikhail Petrunin, as well as my sister Oxana Petrunina for their encouragement and support in this venture.

My special thanks go to my competent reviewers Kai Tang, Peter Mitchell, Ben Hack, Richard Graham, Falonne Placidia Nkounkou Babingui, Julia Veronica Pereira Lazzarotto, Wassila Oudinache, Cristina Becerra Bustamante, Francesco Lubinu, Simona Itro, Pamela Pacheco, T. Adam Forbish, Milagros Miracles and Taísa Crespo, for their corrections, remarks and observations, which helped me to avoid many mistakes.

I would also like to acknowledge the assistance of my scientific advisor Pavel Sysoyev Ph.D., Ed.D., Head of Science and Research Department of Students and Scholars of Derzhavin Tambov State University, and my professor Oleg Polyakov Ph.D. in FLT, Head of Linguistics and Humanities Department of Derzhavin Tambov State University, whose roles was of intrinsic value during the earlier stages of this project.

Many more people, my dearest friends Neyri Matos, Lina Benavides, Marina Drotsenko, Nimo Khenissi, Housseem Chaaouri and Taynara Leme offered their kind support in the form of comments, advice and suggested examples.

Despite the care and attention that has been involved into producing this book, there are, undoubtedly, errors, oversights and inaccuracies for which I take full responsibility.

Mikhail Petrunin, 2018

MIKHAIL PETRUNIN

SYMBOLS

> – becomes, changes to

/ – or, alternative forms or meanings

Sp. – Spanish

Port. – Portuguese

It. – Italian

Fr. – French

Lat. – Latin

Braz. Port. – Brazilian Portuguese

Euro. Port. – European Portuguese

Masc. - Masculine

Fem. - Feminine

Pl. - Plural

Cons. - Consonant

INTRODUCTION: ALPHABET

Letter names and Pronunciations

The alphabet of the Romance languages is based on the Latin alphabet with several specific letters. The Spanish alphabet consists of 27 letters, Portuguese alphabet encompasses 26 letters, Italian alphabet has 21 letters and French alphabet includes 26 letters.

Remember that Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French pronunciation of some of the letters differ between particular regions and areas, especially between Peninsular and Latin American Spanish or European Portuguese and Brazilian Portuguese. The only way to pronounce and understand Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French correctly is to listen and try to copy native speakers.

However, below is the table that shows letters, their names and pronunciation in Spanish (Peninsular and Latin American), Portuguese (European and Brazilian), Italian and French:

Spanish			Portuguese			Italian			French		
Lett er	Na me	Pho ne me	Lett er	Na me	Pho ne me	Lett er	Na me	Pho ne me	Lett er	Na me	Pho ne me
Aa	a	/a/	Aa	á	/a/	Aa	a	/a/	Aa	a	/a/
Bb	be	/b/	Bb	bê	/be/	Bb	bi	/b/	Bb	bé	/be/
Cc	ce	/k/ /θ/	Cc	cê	/se/	Cc	ci	/k/ or /tʃ/	Cc	cé	/se/

INTRODUCTION: ALPHABET

Spanish			Portuguese			Italian			French		
Dd	<i>de</i>	/d/	Dd	<i>dê</i>	/de/	Dd	<i>di</i>	/d/	Dd	<i>dé</i>	/de/
Ee	<i>e</i>	/e/	Ee	<i>é or ê</i>	/ɛ/, /e/	Ee	<i>e</i>	/e/ or / ɛ/	Ee	<i>e</i>	/ə/
Ff	<i>efe</i>	/f/	Ff	<i>efe</i>	/ 'ɛfi/	Ff	<i>effe</i>	/f/	Ff	<i>effe</i>	/ɛf/
Gg	<i>ge</i>	/g/ /x/	Gg	<i>gê</i>	/ʒe/	Gg	<i>gi</i>	/g/ or /dʒ/	Gg	<i>gé</i>	/ʒe/
Hh	<i>hac he</i>	<i>sile nt</i>	Hh	<i>agá</i>	/a 'ga/	Hh	<i>acc a</i>	Ø <i>si lent</i>	Hh	<i>ach e</i>	/aʃ/
Ii	<i>i</i>	/i/	Ii	<i>i</i>	/i/	Ii	<i>i</i>	/i/ or /j/	Ii	<i>i</i>	/i/
Jj	<i>jota</i>	/x/	Jj	<i>jota</i>	/ 'ʒɔt e/	—	—	—	Jj	<i>ji</i>	/ʒi/
Kk	<i>ka</i>	/k/	Kk	<i>cá</i>	/ka/	—	—	—	Kk	<i>ka</i>	/ka/
Ll	<i>ele</i>	/l/	Ll	<i>ele</i>	/ 'ɛli/	Ll	<i>elle</i>	/l/	Ll	<i>elle</i>	/ɛl/
Mm	<i>eme</i>	/m/	Mm	<i>eme</i>	/e mi/	Mm	<i>em me</i>	/m/	Mm	<i>em me</i>	/ ɛm/
Nn	<i>ene</i>	/n/	Nn	<i>ene</i>	/ 'eni /	Nn	<i>enn e</i>	/n/	Nn	<i>enn e</i>	/ ɛn/
Ññ	<i>eñe</i>	/ɲ/	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

INTRODUCTION: ALPHABET

Spanish			Portuguese			Italian			French		
Oo	o	/o/	Oo	ó or ô	/ɔ/, /o/	Oo	o	/o/ or /ɔ/	Oo	o	/o/
Pp	pe	/p/	Pp	pê	/pe/	Pp	pi	/p/	Pp	pé	/pe/
Qq	cu	/k/	Qq	quê	/ke/	Qq	cu	/k/	Qq	qu	/ky/
Rr	erre	/r/, /r/	Rr	erre or rê	/ 'ɛʁi/	Rr	erre	/r/	Rr	erre	/ɛʁ/
Ss	ese	/s/	Ss	esse or s i	/ 'ɛsi/	Ss	esse	/s/ or /z/	Ss	esse	/ɛs/
Tt	te	/t/	Tt	tê	/te/	Tt	ti	/t/	Tt	té	/te/
Uu	u	/u/	Uu	u	/u/	Uu	u	/u/ or /w/	Uu	u	/y/
Vv	uve, ve	/b/	Vv	vê	/ve/	Vv	vi, vu	/v/	Vv	vé	/ve/
Ww	uve (ve) double	/ gw/, /b/	Ww	dáblio or duple o vê	/ 'dabliu/	—	—	—	Ww	double vé	/ dublæve/
Xx	equis	/ks/, /x/, /s/	Xx	xis	/fis/	—	—	—	Xx	ixe	/iks/
Yy	ye, i griega	/ j/, /i/	Yy	ípsilon	/ 'ipsilõ/	—	—	—	Yy	i grec	/ igʁɛk/

INTRODUCTION: ALPHABET

Spanish			Portuguese			Italian			French		
Zz	zeta	/θ/	Zz	zê	/ze/	Zz	zeta	/ts/ or/ dz/	Zz	zèd e	/zɛd/



NOTE:

Spanish

*Despite the fact that the letters **k** and **w** are part of the Spanish alphabet, they are used only in loanwords.*

Italian

*The letters **j**, **k**, **w**, **x** and **y** are used for loanwords and foreign names.*

French

*The letters **w** and **k** are used only in loanwords and regional words.*

Digraphs

The Romance languages use digraphs. Digraphs are pairs of letters that symbolize a single sound and are usually not included in the alphabet.

Study the following digraphs that exist in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Grapheme	ch	ch	sc	ch

INTRODUCTION: ALPHABET

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
<i>Pronunciation</i>	/tʃ/	/ʃ/	1) /ʃ/ (before -i and -e); 2) /sk/ (before other letters)	/ʃ/
<i>Example</i>	ocho	chuva	1) scialo ; 2) scalo	chat
<i>English approximation</i>	As the English church	As the English ship	As the English 1) ship ; 2) sky	As the English ship
<i>Grapheme</i>	ll	lh	gli	ll
<i>Pronunciation</i>	/ʎ/, [j] or [dʒ] (depending on the dialect)	/ʎ/	/ʎ/ (before -i)	/j/
<i>Example</i>	llave	mulher	migliore	bille
<i>English approximation</i>	As the English million , yes or Jess	As the English million	As the English million	As the English yes

INTRODUCTION: ALPHABET

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
<i>Grapheme</i>	qu	qu	sch	qu
<i>Pronunciation</i>	/k, k ^w /	/k, k ^w /	/k/ (used before i, e)	/k/
<i>Example</i>	quise	quase	schern	quand
<i>English approximation</i>	As the English scan	As the English scan	As the English scan	As the English scan
<i>Grapheme</i>	gu	gu	gh	—
<i>Pronunciation</i>	/g, g ^w /	/g, g ^w /	/g/ (used before i, e)	—
<i>Example</i>	guerra	guerra	ghiro	—
<i>English approximation</i>	As the English ago	As the English ago	As the English ago	—
<i>Grapheme</i>	ñ*	nh	gn	gn
<i>Pronunciation</i>	/ɲ/	/ɲ/	/ɲ/	/ɲ/

INTRODUCTION: ALPHABET

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
<i>Example</i>	mañana	amanha	guadagna re	gagner
<i>English approximation</i>	As the English canyon	As the English canyon	As the English canyon	As the English canyon
<i>Grapheme</i>	rr	rr	—	—
<i>Pronunciation</i>	/ʀ/	/ʀ/	—	—
<i>Example</i>	perro	carro	—	—
<i>English approximation</i>	trilled or rolled <r>	trilled <r>	—	—

*ñ is considered as a letter, not a digraph in Spanish. It is put in the table in order to demonstrate the sound ɲ.

Diacritics

A diacritic (diacritical mark or diacritical sign) is a glyph which is added to a letter.

Below are all the diacritics that are used in the Romance languages:

INTRODUCTION: ALPHABET

Diacritics	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
The acute	á, é, í, ó, ú	á, é, í, ó, ú	é, ó	é
The grave		à	à, è, ì, ò, ù	à, è, ù
The circumflex		â, ê, ô		ê
The cedilla		ç		ç
The diaeresis	ü			ë
The tilde	ñ	ã, õ		



NOTE:

Spanish

In Spanish, **the acute** is used on a vowel in a stressed syllable. It's usually used in words which have irregular stress patterns. Furthermore, in Spanish the acute can also be used: 1) to distinguish words with similar spelling, for example: **si** - if and **sí** - yes. 2) to distinguish interrogative and exclamatory pronouns, for instance: **donde** - where and **¿dónde?** - where?.

Spanish uses diaeresis only over **u** - **ü** so that it is pronounced as /w/ in the combinations **gue** and **gui**, where **u** is usually silent. Observe the following: **vergüenza** - shame.

Unlike many other letters that use diacritic marks in Spanish **ñ** is considered a letter. It is put in the table in order to demonstrate that it is formed by placing a tilde (also referred to as virgulilla in Spanish) on top of **n** (upper- or lowercase).

INTRODUCTION: ALPHABET

Portuguese

In Portuguese, the acute and the **circumflex** show stress and vowel height. The **grave** denotes **crasis**. The **tilde** indicates nasalization. The **cedilla** represents the of a historical palatalization.

Italian

In Italian, the **acute** and the **grave** are used to mark a stressed syllable. Moreover, the **acute** can also be used to distinguish between words that are spelled similarly, for example: **e** - and; **è** - is.

French

In French, the **grave** indicates the sound /ɛ/ when over **e** - **é**, for instance: **mère** - mother. Also, it can be used to distinguish words that have similar pronunciation, for instance: **a** - has and **à** - to. The **acute** can only be used over **é** in order to make the sound /e/: **épée** - sword. The **circumflex** normally marks an **s**, which once followed the vowel in Latin. Observe the following: **fête** - party in French used to be **festum** in Latin. The **cedilla** transforms hard **c** (before the vowels **a**, **o** and **u**) into **ç**, which is pronounced as /s/, for example: **ça** - that. The **diaeresis** means that two adjacent vowels should be pronounced separately (without diaeresis they would be pronounced as one). Study the following: **baïonnette** - bayonet.

Diphthongs

Diphthong is a combination of two different vowels sounds within the same syllable, for example: **ow** [əu] -> low. Knowing diphthongs will help learners with pronunciation and spelling.

The table below demonstrates diphthongs used in the Romance languages:

Spanish		Portuguese		Italian		French	
Dipht hong	Pronu nciati on	Dipht hong	Pronu nciati on	Dipht hong	Pronu nciati on	Dipht hong	Pronu nciati on
<i>falling</i>		<i>oral</i>		<i>falling</i>		<i>*diphthongs</i>	
ai	/ai/	ai, ái	/aj/	ai	/ai/	ai	/ɛ,e/
au	/au/	au, áu	/aw/	au	/au/	au	/o/
ey	/ei/	ei, êi	/ej/	ei	/ei/	ei	/ɛ/
eu	/eu/	eu, éu	/ew/ /ɛw/	eu	/eu/	eu	/œ,ø/
oy	/oi/	oi, ói	/ɲ/	oi	/oi/	oi	/wa/ /wɛ/
ou	/ou/	ou	/ow/	—	—	ou	/u,w/
uy	/ui/	—	—	ui	/ui/	ui	/ɥi/ /ɥɛ/
rising		—	—	rising		—	—
ia	/ja/	—	—	ia	/ja/	—	—

INTRODUCTION: ALPHABET

Spanish		Portuguese		Italian		French	
ie	/je/	—	—	ie	/je/	ie, iè	/jɛ/ /jɛ/
io	/jo/	—	—	io	/jo/	—	—
iu	/ju/	iu	/iw/	iu	/ju/	—	—
ua	/wa/	ua	/wa/	ua	/wa/	—	—
ue	/we/	ue	/we/	ue	/we/	—	—
ui	/wi/	ui, uí	/wi/	ui	/wi/	—	—
uo	/wo/	uo	/wo/ /wɔ/ /wu/	uo	/wo/	—	—
—	—	nasal		—	—	—	—
—	—	ãe	/ɛj/	—	—	—	—
—	—	ão	/ɛw/	—	—	—	—
—	—	õe	/õj/	—	—	—	—



NOTE:

French diphthongs are also considered to be vocalic digraphs in some grammar books.

CHAPTER 1: NOUNS

A noun is a word that names a living being, different things or ideas, for instance, man, prosperity, shop.

Gender of Nouns

Latin, as a forefather of modern Romance languages, had three genders, which were masculine, feminine and neuter. After Latin ceased its existence most words that belonged to masculine and feminine retained the same gender later on in French, Italian, Spanish and Portuguese, although there are still some exceptions. The Latin neuter gender most often became masculine in today's modern Romance languages.

Thus, unlike Latin, the daughter languages, which are Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, ended up having only two genders: masculine and feminine.

Nouns in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French referring to a man, such as brother, son, father, etc., are generally masculine. Those that were associated with a woman, such as sister, daughter, mother, etc., are generally feminine.



Did you know?

Mexico is the largest Spanish-speaking country with over 127 million people.

However, there is a general rule helping to identify the gender of nouns, as they are classified into gender groups in accordance with their endings. In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian most nouns that end in **-o** are masculine, and almost all nouns ending in **-a** are feminine.



NOTE:

In French, unlike the above-mentioned languages, it is not so easy to identify gender by noun ending. However, most nouns form their feminine gender by

CHAPTER 1: NOUNS

adding -e to the end of the noun (in this case the last consonant is pronounced). To learn gender effectively one should memorize nouns along with their definite article in French.

Below is the table demonstrating masculine and feminine endings in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish, Portuguese, Italian		French	
<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>
-o	-a	N/A	-e

Example:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
<i>masc.</i>	edificio	edifício	edificio	bâtiment	building
<i>fem.</i>	puerta	porta	porta	porte	door

Nevertheless, this rule has a number of exceptions:

1. Words derived from Greek and ending in **-ma**, **-ta** (in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian) and **-me**, **-at** (in French), are masculine:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el aroma	o aroma	l'aroma	l'arome	<i>aroma</i>
el clima	o clima	il clima	le climat	<i>climate</i>

CHAPTER 1: NOUNS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el diagrama	o diagrama	il diagramma a	le diagramme	<i>diagram</i>
el dilema	o dilema	il dilemma	le dilemme	<i>dilemma</i>
el diploma	o diploma	il diploma	le diplôme	<i>diploma</i>
el dogma	o dogma	il dogma	le dogme	<i>dogma</i>
el drama	o drama	il dramma	le drame	<i>drama</i>
el emblema	o emblema	l'emblema	l'emblème	<i>emblem</i>
el enigma	o enigma	l'enigma	*l'énigme	<i>enigma</i>
el esquema	o esquema	lo schema	le schème	<i>scheme</i>
el fantasma	o fantasma	il fantasma	le phantôme	<i>ghost</i>
el holograma	o holograma	l'ologramma	le hologramme	<i>hologram</i>
el idioma	o idioma	l'idioma	l'idiome (le langage)	<i>language</i>
el poema	o poema	il poema	le poème	<i>poem</i>
el poeta	o poeta	il poeta	le poète	<i>poet</i>
el problema	o problema	il problema	le problème	<i>problem</i>

CHAPTER 1: NOUNS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el programa	o programa	il programma	le programme	<i>program</i>
el síntoma	o sintoma	il sintomo	le symptôme	<i>symptom</i>
el sistema	o sistema	il sistema	le système	<i>system</i>
el telegrama	o telegrama	il telegramma	le télégramme	<i>telegram</i>
el tema	o tema	il tema	le thème	<i>theme/ topic</i>
el trauma	o trauma	il trauma	le trauma	<i>trauma</i>



NOTE:

*In French the noun **l'énigme** is feminine.*

1. In Spanish and Portuguese there are also several nouns ending in **-a** that are *masculine*:

Sp. el mapa; Port. o mapa – map

Sp. el día; Port. o dia – day

Sp. el sofá; Port. o sofá – sofa

Sp. el planeta; Port. o planeta - planet



NOTE:

*In French such words as **map** and **planet** are feminine (Fr. **la carte** – map, **la planète** –planet). While **day** and **sofa** are masculine (Fr. **le jour** – day, **le sofa** – sofa).*

*In Italian the word **map** is feminine (It. **la mappa** – map), whereas **day**, **sofa** and*

CHAPTER 1: NOUNS

planet are masculine: (It. **il giorno** – day, It. **lo sofa** – sofa, **il planeta** – planet).

2. Several nouns ending in **-o** or a **consonant** are feminine in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Sp. la mano, Port. a mão, It. la mano, Fr. la main – hand;

Sp. la moto, Port. a moto, It. la moto, Fr. la moto – motorcycle;

Sp. la foto, Port. a foto, It. la foto, Fr. la photo – photograph;

Sp. la radio, Port. o rádio, It. la radio, Fr. la radio – radio.



NOTE:

In Portuguese the noun **o rádio** is masculine.

Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French nouns that end in **-e** or a **consonant** are either gender. This is mainly owing to the fact that there is a vast number of both masculine and feminine nouns that end in **-e** or a **consonant**. Below are examples of some common masculine and feminine nouns ending in **-e** or a **consonant**.

For instance, the following words ending in **-e** or **consonant** (**l, r, s(-i), n, m, d**) are masculine:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el café	o café	il caffè	le café	coffee
el puente	<u>*a ponte</u>	il ponte	le pont	bridge
el mes	o mês	il mese	le mois	month
el animal	o animal	l'animale	le animal	animal
el país	o país	il paese	le pays	country
el pie	o pé	il piede	le pied	foot

CHAPTER 1: NOUNS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el mar	o mar	il mare	<u>*la mer</u>	sea



NOTE:

*In Portuguese the noun **a ponte** is feminine.*

*In French the noun **la mer** is feminine.*

Conversely, the following nouns that end in **-e** or **consonant (l, r, s(-i), n, m, d)** are feminine:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
la base	a base	la base	la base	base
la clase	a clase	la classe	la classe	class
<u>*el hambre</u>	a fome	la fame	la faim	hunger
la muerte	a morte	la morte	<u>*la mort</u>	death
la noche	a noite	la notte	<u>*la nuit</u>	night
la parte	a parte	la parte	la partie	part
la crisis	a crise	la crisi	la crise	crisis
la elipsis	a elipse	l'ellissi	l'ellipse	ellipsis
la tesis	a tese	la tesi	la thèse	thesis
la carne	a carne	la carne	la viande	meat
la flor	a flor	<u>*il fiore</u>	la fleur	flower



NOTE:

*In Spanish the noun **el hambre** is masculine.*

CHAPTER 1: NOUNS

*In Italian the noun **il fiore** is masculine.
Even though French nouns **la mort** and **la nuit** end in **t**, they retain the feminine.*

The above demonstrates that French words ending in **-e** are mostly feminine, which proves the general rule.

Nouns having the following endings, which are predominantly common and typical for Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, are usually masculine:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
-o (el viento)	-o (o vento)	-o (il vento)	- (le vent)
-ismo (el periodismo)	-ismo (o jornalismo)	-ismo (il giornalismo)	-isme (le journalisme)
-asmo (el sarcasmo)	-asmo (o sarcasmo)	-asmo (el sarcasmo)	-asme (le sarcasme)
-mento (el momento)	-mento (o momento)	-ment, -mento (il momento)	-ment (le moment)
-al (el general)	-al (o general)	-ale (il generale)	-al (le général)
-aculo (el espectáculo)	-áculo (o espetáculo)	-acolo (lo spettacolo)	-a�le (le spectacle)
-in (el jard�n)	-im (o jardim)	-ino (il giardino)	-in (le jardin)
-�n (el cam�n, el lim�n)	-�o (o caminh�o, o lim�o)	-on, -one (il camion, il limone)	-on (le camion, le citron)
-aje (el garaje)	-em (*a garagem)	-age (il garage)	-age (le garage)

CHAPTER 1: NOUNS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
-or (el interruptor)	-or (o interruptor)	-ore (l'interruttore)	-eur (l'interrupteur)



NOTE:

In Portuguese the noun **a garagem** is feminine.

However, the French system of noun flexion is considered to be more difficult than similar one of other Romance languages. It is worth considering the endings that refer to masculine gender in French: **-eau, -ier, -teur, -ail, -ard, -as, -at, -et, -is, -on, -aire, -oir**.

Nouns with the following endings are usually *feminine*:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
-ción, -sión (producción, formación, decisión)	-ção, -são (produção, formação, decisão)	-zione, -sione (produzione, formazione, decisione)	-tion, -sion (production, formation, décision)
-d, -ud, -dad (verdad, virtud)	-ude -dade (verdade, virtude)	-tù, -tà (verità, virtù)	-té, -tude (vérité, certitude)
-az, -ez, -oz (paz, voz, vez)	-az, -ez, -oz (paz, voz, vez)	-ce (pace, voce)	-x (paix, voix)
-encia (concurrentia)	-ência (concorrência)	-enza (conoscenza, concorrenza)	-ance, -ence (connaissance, concurrence)
-cie (especie)	-cies (espécies)	-cie (specie)	-èce (espèce)

Forming the Feminine

**Did you know?**

One of the most difficult Portuguese tongue twisters is: *A aranha arranha a rã. A rã arranha a aranha* – The spider scratches the frog. The frog scratches the spider.

Most Spanish, Portuguese and Italian nouns that end in **-o** form their feminine by changing the ending into **-a**. The French feminine is formed by changing endings into **-e**.

Nouns ending in a consonant form the feminine by adding **-a** in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian and **-e** in French.

The table shows the ways of forming the feminine in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

Spanish, Portuguese, Italian		French	
<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>
-o -cons.	-a +a	N\A -cons.	-e +e

It is extremely important to pay particular attention to the formation of the feminine in French, as it requires the alteration of a noun stem.

Masculine

-eur un danseur - *danser*

-teur un instituteur - *teacher*

-f un veuf - *widower*

-x un époux - *spouse*

-eau un jumeau - *twin*

Feminine

-euse une danseuse - *danser*

-trice une institutrice - *teacher*

-ve une veuve - *widow*

-se une épouse - *spouse*

-elle une jumelle - *twin*

CHAPTER 1: NOUNS

-t un chat - cat (male)

-tte une chatte - cat (female)

-er, -ier un écolier -
schoolchild

-ière une écolière - schoolchild



NOTE:

In French nasal vowels that end in **-en, -ien, -on, -ion, -an** stop being so, and while forming the feminine the final consonant doubles: **-nne** (ex. Fr, le **chien** - la **chienne** - dog - bitch).

We can see from the table that French differs in terms of forming the feminine of nouns from the other three Roman languages.

Many words designating titles and professions form the feminine gender by the use of typically feminine endings: Sp. -**esa, -isa, -ina, -triz**, Port. -**esa, -essa, -isa, -ina, -triz**; It. -**essa, -ina, -trice**; Fr. -**esse, -ïne, -trice, -teuse**.

Duke - Duchess

Hero - Heroine

Sp. (-**esa**) el duque - la
duquesa;

Sp. (-**ina**) el héroe - la
heroína;

Port. (-**esa**) o duque - a
duquesa;

Port. (-**ina**) o herói - a
heroína;

It. (-**essa**) il duca - la
duchessa;

It. (-**ina**) l'eroe - l'eroína;

Fr. (-**esse**) le duc - la
duchesse.

Fr. (-**ïne**) l'héros - l'héroïne.

Actor - Actress

Poet - Poetess

CHAPTER 1: NOUNS

Sp. (- triz) el actor – la actriz ;	Sp. (- isa) el poeta – la poet isa ;
Port. (- triz) o ator – a atriz ;	Port. (- isa) o poeta – a poet isa ;
It. (- trice) il attore – l' attrice ;	It. (- essa) il poeta – la poet essa ;
Fr. (- trice) l'acteur – l' actrice .	Fr. (- esse) le poète – la poé tesse .

There are also pairs of words denoting male and female:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el hombre	o homem	il uomo	l'homme	<i>man</i>
la mujer	a mulher	la donna	la femme	<i>woman</i>
el marido	o marido	il marito	le mari	<i>husband</i>
la esposa	a esposa	la sposa	l'épouse	<i>wife</i>
el muchacho	o rapaz	il ragazzo	le garçon	<i>boy</i>
la muchacha	a rapariga	la ragazza	la fille	<i>girl</i>
el padre	o pai	il padre	le père	<i>father</i>
la madre	a mãe	la madre	la mère	<i>mother</i>
la reina	a rainha	la regina	la reine	<i>queen</i>
el caballo	o cavalo	il cavallo	le cheval	<i>horse</i>
la yegua	a égua	la giumenta	la jument	<i>mare</i>
el toro	o boi	il toro	le taureau	<i>bull</i>
la vaca	a vaca	la vacca	la vache	<i>cow</i>
el carnero	o carneiro	il montone	le mouton	<i>ram</i>

CHAPTER 1: NOUNS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
la oveja	a ovelha	la pecora	la brebis	<i>ewe</i>
el gallo	o galo	il gallo	le coq	<i>cockerel, rooster</i>
la gallina	a galinha	la gallina	la poule	<i>hen</i>

Plural Forms of Nouns



Did you know?

Italian isn't only spoken in Italy. It has official or co-official status in Switzerland, San Marino, the Vatican City and Slovenia.

Most Spanish, Portuguese and French nouns form their plural by adding an **-s**. In Italian, nouns form the plural by changing the masculine ending **-o** to **-i**, and the feminine ending **-a** is changed to **-e**. There are also some nouns ending in **-e**. The plural forms of these nouns is formed by changing the **-e** to **-i** (regardless of the gender).

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
<i>masculine singular</i>	libro	livro	libro	livre
<i>masculine plural</i>	libros	livros	libri	livres
<i>feminine singular</i>	página	página	pagina	page
<i>feminine plural</i>	páginas	páginas	pagine	pages

ISTANBUL BİLGİ
UNIVERSITY LIBRARY

Besides the general rules presented the above, there are also other ways of forming the plural in Spanish, Portuguese Italian and French. Each of these considered Romance languages has its special cases of forming the plural, which require particular consideration, as this phenomenon significantly distinguishes one from the other without leaving any possibility of simultaneous comparison.

Special Cases of Forming the Plural Nouns

Spanish

In this case, Spanish language is by far the simplest for learning, as it has the least number of divergent forms from the general ways of forming the plural of nouns.

- Nouns ending in a consonant, **-y** or a stressed vowel (except **-é**), form the plural by adding the **-es**:



Did you know?

Kinshasa (12 million) is the world's largest French speaking city, ahead of Paris (over 11 million), Abidjan (4.8 million) and Montréal (3.6 million).

el país – los países – country – countries;

la ciudad – las ciudades – city – cities;

el rey – los reyes – king – kings;

la ley – las leyes – law – laws;

el rubí – los rubies – ruby – rubies

- It is notable that the nouns ending in **-z**, change the **-z** to **-c** while forming the plural.

la voz – las voces – voice – voices.

la vez – las veces – time – times.

CHAPTER 1: NOUNS

Portuguese

The Portuguese language has a wide number of ways of forming the plural of nouns.

Below is a table showing all the rules of forming the plural.

Singular	Plural	Example
-ão	ões -ães (to be remembered) -ãos (to be remembered)	a acç ão – as acç ões (European Portuguese) a aç ão – as aç ões (Brazilian Portuguese) (<i>action - actions</i>); o c ão – os c ães (<i>dog - dogs</i>); o rm ão – os irm ãos (<i>brother - brothers</i>).
-em, -im, -om, -um	-ns	a imag em – as imag ens - (<i>image - images</i>)
-al, -ol, -ul	-ais, -is, -uis	o anim al – os anim ais - (<i>animal - animals</i>)
-el, -il (unstressed)	-eis	o an el – os an éis (<i>ring - rings</i>)
-il (stressed.)	-is	o carr il – os carr is (<i>rail - rails</i>)
-n, -r, -z, -s	+es	o rap az – os rap azes (<i>guy - guys</i>)

- As we can see from the table the majority of nouns ending in – **ão** form their plural by changing the ending into – **ões**:

CHAPTER 1: NOUNS

o coração - os corações - heart - hearts

The following nouns add **-ães** and **-ãos** endings when forming the plural in Portuguese:

o pão - os pães - bread - loaves of bread

o alemão - os alemães - the German - the Germans

a mão - as mãos - hand - hands

Italian

The Italian language also has various peculiarities while forming noun plurals. It is necessary to consider them as it prevents the learners from spelling and grammatical mistakes.

- There are many nouns ending in **-ista** that refer to professions. If these nouns refer to a man they take the ending **-isti** in the plural and when they refer to a woman these nouns end in **-iste** in the plural. Below are the examples demonstrating this rule:

Masculine

Feminine

Il giornal**ista** - i giornal**isti**

la giornal**ista** - le giornal**iste**

Il dent**ista** - i dent**isti**

la dent**ista** - le dent**isti**

il farmac**ista** - i farmac**isti**

la farmac**ista** - le farmac**iste**

- Nouns ending in **-ca** and **-ga** form their plural in **-chi** and **-ghi** if masculine, in **-che** and **-ghe** if feminine, thus retaining the velar consonant $|k|$ and $|g|$ of the singular.

CHAPTER 1: NOUNS

Masculine

Il monarca – i monarchi – monarch

Il patriarca – i patriarchi – patriarch

il collega – i colleghi – colleague

lo stratega – gli strateghi – strategist

Feminine

la barca – le barche – boat

la basilica – le basiliche

l'amica – le amiche – friend

la mosca – le mosche – fly

la pesca – le pesche – peach



NOTE:

*In Italian **Belga** (the Belgian) loses the hard sound in the masculine plural: **Belgi**; but keeps it in the feminine: **Belghe**.*

- Feminine nouns that end in **-cia** and **-gia** (with an unstressed **i**) form their plural in **-ce** and **-ge**.

la boccia – le bocce – carafe

la doccia – le docce – shower

la pioggia – le piogge – rain

la provincia – le province – province

la valigia – le valige – suitcase

- Nouns ending in **-cia** and **-gia** (with a stressed **i**) form regular plurals with **-cie** and **-gie**:

la farmacia – le farmacie – drugstore

la scia – le scie – trail

la bugia – le bugie – lie

l'allergia – le allergie – allergy

CHAPTER 1: NOUNS

Below is a table showing the summarized information for the three previous rules of forming the plural:

Singular	Plural	
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>
-co, -go (masc.); -ca, -ga (fem.)	-chi, -ghi	-che, -ghe
-cia, -gia (i unstressed)		-ce, -ge
-cì, -gì (i stressed)		-cìe, -gìe

- Some masculine and feminine nouns that end with a stressed vowel do not alter in the plural:



Did you know?

Portuguese is the sixth most spoken language in the world. It is spoken by 275 million people worldwide.

la città - le città - *city*

la tribù - le tribù - *tribe*

la verità - le verità - *truth*

la virtù - le virtù - *virtue*

l'università - le università - *university*

French

The plural determinant of the Romance languages is the morpheme **-s** for all the nouns. However, since in modern French the ending **-s** is not pronounced at all, the formation of the plural involves by vowel gradation or change of phonetic form of determiners.

The table below shows the divergent ways of forming the plural of nouns.

CHAPTER 1: NOUNS

Singular	Plural	Example
-eu	-x	un jeu - des jeux (game - games)
-eau		un table au - des tableaux
-au		(picture - pictures) un noy au - des noyaux (kernel - kernels)
-al -ail	-aux	un journal - des journal aux (newspaper - newspapers) un travail - des trava ux (work - works)



NOTE:

Some nouns ending in **-eu**, **-al**, **-ail** form their plural by adding **-s**:

un pneu - des pneus (tyre - tyres)

un bal - des bals (ball - balls)

un éventail - des éventails (fan - fans)

un carnaval - des carnivals (carnival -
carnival)

un festival - des festivals (festival -
festivals)

un rail - des rails (rail - rails)

Nouns which are always Plural

**Did you know?**

Spanish is the second largest natively spoken language in the world (about 450 million) after Chinese (over 1 billion), but before English (around 360 million).

Despite the fact that Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French have a number of divergent ways of forming the plural of nouns, they still combine convergent ways of using nouns.

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French there is a wide range of nouns that are used in the plural only and do not have their singular forms:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
las afueras	os arredores	i dintorni	les environs	<i>surroundings</i>
los bienes	os bens	le carabattole	les biens	<i>belongings</i>
los anales	os anais	i annali	les annales	<i>annals</i>
las gafas	os óculos	i occhiali	les lunettes	<i>glasses</i>
los grillos	as correntes	i ferri	les fers	<i>shackles</i>
los dulces	os doces	i dolciumi	les douceurs	<i>sweeties</i>
los pantalones	as calças	i pantaloni	les pantalons	<i>pants</i>

**NOTE:**

*In French such words as **sweeties** and **pants** can be used in the singular form as well.*

CHAPTER 1: NOUNS

Nouns which are always Singular

There is also a range of nouns that are used in the singular. They are:

- A. **Proper names:** Juan, María, el Nevá, Moscú, España.
- B. **Corners of the earth and things that are the only ones in their way:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el sur	o sul	il sud	le sud	<i>south</i>
el norte	o norte	il nord	le nord	<i>north</i>
el horizonte	o horizonte	l'orizzont e	l'horizon	<i>horizon</i>
el sol	o sol	il sole	le soleil	<i>sun</i>
la luna	a lua	la luna	la lune	<i>moon</i>

- C. **Matters, materials and precious metal:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el oro	o ouro	l'oro	l'or	<i>gold</i>
la leche	o leite	il latte	le lait	<i>milk</i>
el pan	o pão	il pane	le pain	<i>bread</i>
el carbón	o carvão	il carbone	le charbon	<i>coal</i>

- D. **Abstract conceptions, human qualities:**

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
la existencia	a existência	la esistenza	l'existence	<i>existence</i>
la alegría	a alegria	la allegria	la allégresse	<i>joy</i>

CHAPTER 1: NOUNS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el orgullo	o orgulho	il orgoglio	l'orgueil	<i>pride</i>

E. Collective nouns:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
la gente	o povo	il popolo	le peuple	<i>people, nation</i>
el dinero	o dinheiro	<i>*i soldi</i>	l'argent	<i>money</i>
la juventud	a juventude	la gioventu	la jeunesse	<i>youth, young people</i>



NOTE:

*In Italian **i soldi** is used in plural.*

F. Some nouns that usually have the suffix **-ismo** meaning scientific, political, literary, etc. directions, names of sciences and religions:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el impresionismo	o impressionismo	l'impressionismo	l'impressionnisme	<i>impressionism</i>
la lógica	a lógica	la logica	la logique	<i>logic</i>
el budismo	o budismo	il buddismo	le bouddhisme	<i>buddhism</i>
la medicina	a medicina	la medicina	la médecine	<i>medicine</i>

CHAPTER 2: ADJECTIVES

An adjective is a word that describes a person or thing, such as their size, shape, appearance, colour and other qualities, for instance, big, round, beautiful, red.

Gender of Adjectives



Did you know?

Italian is the fourth most studied foreign language in the United States after Spanish, French and German.

Unlike in English, in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French adjectives usually agree with nouns in gender and number. Just like nouns, masculine forms of adjectives in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian end in **-o**, and those of feminine have the ending **-a**.

In French, in comparison with above-mentioned languages, it is not so easy to identify gender by adjective ending. However, most adjectives form their feminine gender by adding **-e** to the end of the adjective (in this case last consonant is pronounced).

Below is the table demonstrating the endings of adjectives and some examples supporting the rule.

Spanish, Portuguese, Italian		French	
<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>
-o	-a	N/A	-e
Ex. Sp. blanco, Port. branco, It. bianco (white)	Ex. Sp. blanca, Port. branca, It. bianca (white)	Ex. Fr. blanc (white)	Ex. Fr. blanche (white)

It should be noted that adjectives in Romance languages are usually placed after the noun rather than before.

Masculine (singular)	Feminine (singular)
Sp. el libro negro , Port. o livro preto , It. il libro nero , Fr. le livre noir – black book.	Sp. la casa blanca , Port. a casa branca , It. la casa bianca , Fr. la maison blanche – white house.

Forming the Feminine



Did you know?

French is a working language of the UN, the EU, NATO, the International Red Cross, the African Union, the Arab League and other international organizations.

Just like nouns, Spanish, Portuguese and Italian adjectives ending in **-o** form their feminine by changing the ending into **-a**. French feminine is formed by changing endings into **-e**. Nouns ending in consonant form the feminine by adding **-a** in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian and **-e** in French.

However, it is extremely important to give particular attention to the formation of the feminine in Portuguese and French, as there are some special ways of forming it.

Portuguese

A. Adjectives that end in **-eu** have their feminine form in **-eia**:

Europeu – Europeia (*European*)

B. Adjectives ending in **-ão** forming their feminine in **-ã**, **-oa** or **-ona**:

Alemão – Alemã (*German*); brincalhão – brincalhona (*playful*)

C. Most adjectives that end in **-a**, **-e**, **-ar**, **-l**, **-m**, and **-z** in the masculine retain absolutely the same form in the feminine:

CHAPTER 2: ADJECTIVES

Portuguese

pessimista – pessimist	cruel – cruel
doce – sweet	possível – possible
forte – strong	fácil – easy
pobre – poor	difícil – difficult
grande – big	gentil – charming
triste – sad	útil – useful
quente – hot	ruim – bad
original – original	jovem – young
sensível – sensitive	feliz – happy
principal – main	capaz – capable
terrível – terrible	



NOTE:

Like in Portuguese, in Spanish, many adjectives ending in **-a**, **-e**, **-ar**, **-l**, **-m**, **-n** and **-z** in the masculine are also used in the same way in the feminine. Observe the following:

Spanish

pesimista – pessimist	cruel – cruel
dulce – sweet	posible – possible
fuerte – strong	fácil – easy
pobre – poor	difícil – difficult
grande – big	gentil – charming
triste – sad	útil – useful

CHAPTER 2: ADJECTIVES

Spanish	
caliente – hot	ruin – bad
original – original	joven – young
sensible – sensitive	feliz – happy
principal – main	capaz – capable
terrible – terrible	

Unlike in Spanish and Portuguese, in Italian and French, some of these adjectives have their masculine and feminine forms. Study the following:

Italian	French	English
pessimista	pessimiste	<i>pessimist</i>
dolce	doux (fem. douce)	<i>sweet</i>
forte	fort (fem. forte)	<i>strong</i>
povero (fem. povera)	pauvre	<i>poor</i>
grande	grand (fem. grande)	<i>big</i>
triste	triste	<i>sad</i>
caldo (fem. calda)	chaud (fem. chaude)	<i>hot</i>
originale	original (fem. originale)	<i>original</i>
sensibile	sensible	<i>sensitive</i>

CHAPTER 2: ADJECTIVES

Italian	French	English
principale	principal (fem. principale)	main
terribile	terrible	terrible
crudele	cruel (fem. cruelle)	cruel
possibile	possible	possible
facile	facile	easy
difficile	difficile	difficult
gentile	gentil (fem. gentille)	nice
utile	utile	useful
cattivo (fem. cattiva)	mauvais (mauvaise)	bad
giovane	jeune	young
felice	heureux (fem. heureuse)	happy
capace	capable	capable

French

- A. Adjectives that end in **-on**, **-en**, **-el**, **-eil**, **-il**, **-et**, and in **-s** double the final consonant before adding **-e**:

Masculine

bon

Feminine

bonne

good

CHAPTER 2: ADJECTIVES

parisien	parisienne	Parisian
cruel	cruelle	cruel
pareil	pareille	similar
gentil	gentille	nice
muet	muette	silent
gros	grosse	big, fat

B. Adjectives that end in **-et** alter their **-et** to **-ète** in order to form the feminine:

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	
complet	complète	complete
discret	discrète	discreet
secret	secrète	secret
<i>Exception</i>		
prêt	prête	ready

C. Adjectives that end in **-er** change their **-er** to **-ère** in order to form the feminine:

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	
cher	chère	dear, expensive
dernier	dernière	last
entier	entière	entire
fier	fière	proud
premier	première	first

CHAPTER 2: ADJECTIVES

D. Adjectives that end in **-x** change the **-x** to **-se** while forming the feminine:

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	
amoureux	amoureuse	<i>in love</i>
courageux	courageuse	<i>courageous</i>
curieux	curieuse	<i>curious</i>
ennuyeux	ennuyeuse	<i>boring</i>
heureux	heureuse	<i>happy</i>
jaloux	jalouse	<i>jealous</i>
sérieux	sérieuse	<i>serious</i>
doux	*douce	<i>sweet</i>
roux	rousse	<i>reddish brown</i>
faux	fausse	<i>false</i>



NOTE:

Remember that the word **doux** is **douce** in the feminine.

E. Adjectives that end in **-eur** usually form their feminine by changing the **-eur** to **-euse** if such adjectives are derived from verbs. Otherwise the ending is **-rice**:

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	
menteur	menteuse	<i>lying</i>
flatteur	flatteuse	<i>flattering</i>
trompeur	trompeuse	<i>deceitful</i>
acteur	actrice	<i>acting</i>
protecteur	protectrice	<i>protecting</i>

CHAPTER 2: ADJECTIVES

Exception

antérieur	antérie <u>ure</u>	anterior
extérieur	extérie <u>ure</u>	exterior
meilleur	meille <u>ure</u>	better, best
majeur	maje <u>ure</u>	major
mineur	mine <u>ure</u>	minor
supérieur	supérie <u>ure</u>	superior



NOTE:

The exception words form the feminine according to the general rule of forming the feminine by adding -e to the masculine.

F. Adjectives that end in **-f** in the masculine alter their **-f** to **-ve** in order to form the feminine:

Masculine	Feminine	
actif	active	active
attentif	attentive	attentive
bref	brève	brief
neuf	neuve	new
sportif	sportive	athletic
vif	vive	alive

G. Adjectives ending in **-c** change their **-c** to **-che** in order to form the feminine:

Masculine	Feminine
------------------	-----------------

CHAPTER 2: ADJECTIVES

blanc	blanche	white
franc	franche	frank
sec	sèche	dry

Exception

grec	grec <u>que</u>	Greek
public	public <u>que</u>	public



NOTE:

The exception words add the ending **-que** to the masculine in order form the feminine.

H. Irregular adjective which are different in the feminine:

Masculine	Feminine	
long	longue	long
favori	favorite	favorite
malin	maline	sly
frais	fraîche	fresh
beau	belle	beautiful

Plural Forms of Adjectives

Spanish, Portuguese and French adjectives form their plural in the same way as nouns i.e. by adding an **-s**. In Italian adjectives form the plural by changing the masculine ending **-o** to **-i**, and the feminine ending **-a** is changed to **-e**. There are also some nouns ending in **-e**. The plural forms of these nouns is formed by changing the **-e** to **-i**.

CHAPTER 2: ADJECTIVES

Masculine (plural)	Feminine (plural)
Sp. los libros negros , Port. os livros pretos , It. i libri neri , Fr. les livres noirs . – black <i>books</i> .	Sp. las casas blancas , Port. as casas brancas , It. le case bianche , Fr. les maisons blanches – white <i>houses</i> .



Did you know?

Spanish is the third most used language on the Internet. Around 8% of Internet users interact in Spanish.

Below is the comparative table demonstrating similarity of masculine and feminine endings along with the singular and plural number of adjective in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French languages.

Endings of masculine and feminine gender and singular and plural number of adjectives in Romance languages.

	Spanish		Portuguese		Italian		French	
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>masc</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>masc</i>	<i>fem.</i>
<i>Singular</i>	-o	-a	-o	-a	-o, -e	-a	N/A	-e
<i>Plural</i>	-s	-s	-s	-s	-i	-e	-s	-s

Besides general rules presented the above, there are also other ways (special cases) of forming the plural of adjective in Spanish, Portuguese Italian and French, which tend to follow the same rules as nouns (**See p.23**).

Peculiarities of Adjective Use

CHAPTER 2: ADJECTIVES

Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French have similar grammatical rules of adjective use.

- As it has been mentioned before, adjectives, as a rule, are placed after a noun. However, some adjectives can be placed before a noun. Here are the most common adjectives:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
bello, lindo, guapo, bonito	belo, lindo, bonito	bello	beau, joli	<i>beautiful</i>
joven	jovem	giovane	jeune.	<i>young</i>
viejo	velho	vecchio	vieux	<i>old</i>
pequeño	pequeno	piccolo	petit	<i>small, little</i>
rico	rico	ricco	riche	<i>rich</i>

Study the following:

Sp. Una ***linda*** casa;

Port. Uma ***bela*** casa;

It. Una ***bella*** casa;

Fr. Une ***belle*** maison.

- A ***beautiful*** house

- Some adjectives have different lexical meanings depending on their position to the noun (before/after). Let us consider the most common of them:

Sp. ***grande***, Port. ***grande***, It. ***grande***, Fr. ***grand***:

(Sp. *grande*, Port. *grande*, It. *grande*, Fr. *grand*) + noun = *great*;

noun + (Sp. *grande*, Port. *grande*, It. *grande*, Fr. *grand*) = *big*

CHAPTER 2: ADJECTIVES



Did you know?

Brazil was a Portuguese colony for more than 300 years and gained its independence in 1822.

Sp. **bueno**, Port. **bom**, It. **buono**, Fr. **bon**:

(Sp. *bueno*, Port. *bom*, It. *buono*, Fr. *bon*) + noun = kind;

noun + (Sp. *bueno*, Port. *bom*, It. *buono*, Fr. *bon*) = good

Sp. **malo**, Port. **mau**, It. **malo**, **cattivo**, Fr. **mauvais**:

(Sp. *malo*, Port. *mau*, It. *malo*, *cattivo*, Fr. *mauvais*) + noun = wrong;

noun + (Sp. *malo*, Port. *mau*, It. *malo*, *cattivo*, Fr. *mauvais*) = bad

Sp. **nuevo**, Port. **novο**, It. **nuovo**, Fr. **nouveau**:

(Sp. *nuevo*, Port. *novο*, It. *nuovo*, Fr. *nouveau*) + noun = recently got;

noun. + (Sp. *nuevo*, Port. *novο*, It. *nuovo*, Fr. *nouveau*) = brand-new

Sp. **pobre**, Port. **pobre**, It. **povero**, Fr. **pauvre**:

(Sp. *pobre*, Port. *pobre*, It. *povero*, Fr. *pauvre*) + noun = unfortunate, miserable;

noun + (Sp. *pobre*, Port. *pobre*, It. *povero*, Fr. *pauvre*) = poor

Sp. **verdadero**, Port. **verdadeiro**, It. **vero**, Fr. **honnête**, **vrai**:

(Sp. *verdadero*, Port. *verdadeiro*, It. *vero*, Fr. *honnête*, *vrai*) + noun = real;

CHAPTER 2: ADJECTIVES

noun + (Sp. *verdadero*, Port. *verdadeiro*, It. *vero*, Fr. *honnête*,
vrai) = *true*.

- There are patterns that substitute relative adjectives in Romance languages and consist of preposition **de**, **a** + **noun** (prepositions It. **in** and Fr. **en** are also used in Italian and French in this way) and which designate material, phenomenon and etc. They are used without an article:

Sp. una casa **de madera**,

Port. uma casa **de madeira**,

It. una casa **di legno**,

Fr. une maison **en bois**

– **wooden** house,

Sp. una moneda **de oro**,

Port. uma moeda **de ouro**,

It. una moneta **d'oro**,

Fr. une pièce **d'or**

– **golden** coin.

It is also possible to combine the preposition **de** with other parts of speech meaning relative adjective:

Sp. el periódico **de ayer**,

Port. o jornal **de ontem**,

It. il giornale **di ieri**,

Fr. le journal **d'hier**

– **yesterday's** newspaper.

CHAPTER 2: ADJECTIVES

- In Spanish and Italian there are adjectives with shortened forms.

Spanish adjectives such as **bueno** (good), **malo** (bad), **primero** (first), **tercero** (third), **uno** (one), **alguno** (some) and **ninguno** (any) drop their final **-o** before masculine singular nouns. And words **alguno** and **ninguno** get a written accent above the **u** in the shortened form:



Did you know?

The capital city of Italy - Rome is 3000 years old.

Sp. un **buen** amigo – a good friend,

Sp. **mal** tiempo – bad weather,

Sp. el **tercer** día – the third day,

Sp. **ningún** muchacho – any boy.

The singular form **grande** (big) is mostly shortened to **gran** before nouns of either gender:

Sp. una **gran** competición – a great competition,

Sp. un **gran** riesgo – a great risk.

In Italian the adjectives **bello** (beautiful, handsome), **grande** (big), **buono** (good) and **nessuno** (no, not one) get shortened forms before a noun.

Italian **Bello**

Gender (before nouns beginning with)	Singular	Plural
Masc. consonant	bel (il bel ragazzo)	bei (i bei ragazzi)

CHAPTER 2: ADJECTIVES

<i>Masc. z, s plus consonant</i>	bello (il bello zio)	begli (i begli zii)
<i>Masc. vowel</i>	bell' (il bell'uomo)	begli (i begli uomini)
<i>Fem. consonant</i>	bella (la bella zia)	belle (le belle zie)
<i>Fem. vowel</i>	bell' (la bell'estate)	belle (le belle amiche)

Italian Grande

In Italian the adjective **grande** can be shortened to **gran** before *masculine* and *feminine* nouns beginning with a **consonant** other than **z, s** plus a **consonant** and **ps**. With those that begin with **z, s** plus a **consonant, ps** or a **vowel**, **grande** is used.

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
un gran signore – a great gentleman	una gran signora – a great lady
un grande zio – a great uncle	una grande zia – a great aunt
un grande studente – a great student	una grande studentessa – a great student
un grande psichiatra – a great psychiatrist	una grande psichiatra – a great psychiatrist
un grande artista – a great artist	una grande artista – a great artist

However, the adjective **grande** becomes **grand'** before a masculine noun that begin with **u**: **un grand'uomo** – a great man.

Italian **Buono** and **Nessuno**

Buono and **nessuno** are usually shortened to **buon** and **nessun** before all *masculine* nouns except those that begin with **z**, **s** plus a **consonant** or **ps**. **Buona** and **nessuna** which are feminine forms are used with all *feminine* nouns that begin with a **consonant**. Forms **buon'** and **nessun'** are used before *feminine* nouns starting with a vowel. **Nessuno** has no plural forms. **Buono** and **buona** have the following plural forms: **buoni**, **buone**.

<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
un buono zio - a kind uncle	una buona zia - a kind aunt
un buon ragazzo - a kind boy	una buona ragazza - a kind girl
un buon amico - a good friend	una buon' amica - a good friend

CHAPTER 3: ADVERBS

An adverb is a word that can be used with verbs, adjectives or other adverbs giving more information about where, when, how, or in what circumstances something happens, for instance, there, yesterday, suddenly, excellently.

Use of Adverbs

Generally speaking, adverbs are used with:

- verbs (run quickly, speak loudly, laugh happily);
- adjectives (rather boring, gravely ill, immensely glad),
- other adverbs (too slowly, very well, really fast)

Forming Adverbs from Adjectives. Adverbs Ending in -mente (-ment)



Did you know?

Portuguese is the official language of 9 countries (Angola, Brazil, Cape Verde, East Timor, Equatorial Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Mozambique, Portugal and São Tomé and Príncipe), with over 250 million speakers.

In English adverbs are usually formed by adding **-ly** to the end of the adjective (happy – happily). In Romance languages many adverbs of manner are formed with the suffix **-mente** (in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian) and **-ment** (in French). This suffix originated from the Latin suffix of the feminine gender *mens* (*-mente* in instrumental case). Thus, the modern suffix

-mente (**-ment**) inherited its compatibility with the feminine adjectives. Also, unlike adjectives, adverbs are invariable which means that they do not vary according to the gender, number or person of the word that they are modifying.

CHAPTER 3: ADVERBS

Therefore, in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian many adverbs end in **-mente** (in French **-ment**). This is usually added to the end of the feminine singular form of the adjective.

Below is the table demonstrating the examples of adverb forming from the adjectives.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
lento(-a) = lent <u>a</u> mente	lento(-a) = lent <u>a</u> mente	lento(-a) = lent <u>a</u> mente	lent(-e) = lent <u>e</u> ment	slow = slowly
rápido(-a) = rápid <u>a</u> men te	rápido(-a) = rápid <u>a</u> mente	rapido(-a) = rapid <u>a</u> mente	rapide = rapid <u>e</u> ment	quick = quickly

Peculiarities of Adverb Use

It is also worth mentioning the peculiarities of adverb formation.



Did you know?

French is taught in every country of the world, with around 100 million students.

French

French adjectives ending in a vowel rather than **-e**, drop the feminine ending **-e** and add **-ment** while forming the adverb: **vrai** (masc.) – **vraie** (fem.) – true = **vraiment** (truly).

French adjectives, which end in **-ant** and **-ent** (except **lent** and **present**), change **nt** to **m** and add **-ment** to the adverb: **constant** – **constamment** (constant – constantly); **récent** – **récemment** (recent – recently).

Italian

CHAPTER 3: ADVERBS

In Italian language adjectives ending in **-le** or **-re** before a **vowel**, drop the vowel **-e** and add **-ment**: **facile** – **facilmente** (easy – easily).

Other Adverbs

Adverbs of manner

There are some common adverbs of manner which tell us how something is done.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
bien	bem	bene	bien	<i>well</i>
mal	mal	male	mal	<i>badly/ poorly</i>
así	assim	così	ainsi	<i>thus</i>
deprisa	depressa	presto	vite	<i>quickly</i>
despacio	devagar	adagio	lentement	<i>slowly</i>
mejor	melhor	meglio	mieux	<i>better</i>
peor	pior	peggio	pire	<i>worse</i>

Adverbs of place

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
aquí	aqui, cá	qui	ici, là	<i>here</i>
ahí, allí	aí, ali, lá, acolé	là, lì; ci, vi, colà	là, là-bas	<i>there</i>
cerca	perto	vicino, appresso	près	<i>near</i>
lejos	longe	lontano	loin	<i>far</i>

CHAPTER 3: ADVERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
enfrente, frente a	diante, à frente de	di fronte	en face de	<i>in front of</i>
atrás, detrás	atrás, detrás	(di)dietro, indietro	en arrière, par derrière	<i>behind</i>
arriba	acima	in alto, (di) sopra	en haut, au-dessus	<i>above</i>
arriba	em cima	in alto, (di) sopra	en haut	<i>on</i>
de (desde) arriba, por encima	por cima	per sopra,	par- dessus, par en haut	<i>over</i>
por abajo	abaixo	sotto, (in) giù, verso il basso	en bas	<i>below</i>
debajo	embaixo	giù, (di) sotto, a / in basso	en dessous	<i>under</i>
dentro, en el interior	dentro	(al di) dentro, all'interno	dedans, à l'intérieur	<i>in, inside</i>
fuera, en el exterior	fora	fuori, all'esterno	dehors, à l'extérieur	<i>out, outside</i>
dónde	onde	dove	où	<i>where</i>
en alguna parte	em algum lugar	da qualche parte	quelque part	<i>somewhere</i>

Adverbs of time

CHAPTER 3: ADVERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
hoy	hoje	oggi	aujourd'hui	<i>today</i>
ayer	ontem	ieri	hier	<i>yesterday</i>
mañana	amanhã	domani	demain	<i>tomorrow</i>
ahora	agora	ora, adesso	maintenant	<i>now</i>
antes	antes	prima	avant	<i>before</i>
después, luego	depois, logo, após	dopo, poi	puis, après, ensuite	<i>after, later</i>
temprano	cedo	presto	tôt	<i>early</i>
tarde	tarde	tardi	tard	<i>late</i>
entonces	então	allora	alors	<i>then</i>
ya	já	già	déjà	<i>already</i>
aún	ainda	ancora	encore	<i>yet, still</i>
en fin	enfim	al fine	enfin; à la fin	<i>at last</i>
siempre	sempre	sempre	toujours	<i>always, still</i>
nunca, jamás	nunca, jamais	mai	jamais	<i>never</i>
a veces, de vez en cuando	às vezes, de vez em quando	qualche volta, a volte, di tanto in tanto	parfois, de temps en temps	<i>sometimes , once in a while</i>

Adverbs of intensity

CHAPTER 3: ADVERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
poco	pouco	poco, un poco, un po'	un peu	<i>a little</i>
muy, mucho	muito	molto	très	<i>very</i>
más	mais	più	plus	<i>more</i>
menos	menos	meno	moins	<i>less</i>
demasiado	demasiado, demais	troppo	trop	<i>too much</i>
tanto	tanto	tanto	autant	<i>as much</i>
tan	tão	così, tanto	tellement, tant	<i>so much/ many</i>
bastante	bastante	abbastanza	assez	<i>enough</i>
casi	quase	quasi	presque	<i>almost</i>
cuanto	quanto	quanto	combien	<i>how much</i>

Adverbs of doubt

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
tal vez, puede ser	talvez, pode ser	forse	peut-être	<i>perhaps, maybe</i>
por casualidad	por acaso	per caso	par hasard	<i>by chance</i>
posiblemente	possivelmente	possibilmente	possiblement	<i>possibly</i>
probablemente	provavelmente	probabilmente	probablement	<i>probably</i>

Adverbs expressing affirmation

CHAPTER 3: ADVERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
cierta- mente	certamente	certamente	certaine- ment	<i>certainly</i>
realmente, efectiva- mente	realmente, efetivamente	realmente, effettiva- mente	réellement, effective- ment	<i>really</i>
exacta- mente	exatamente	esattamente	exactement	<i>exactly</i>

Adverbs expressing exclusion

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
sólo, solamente	só, somente	solo, solamente	seulement	<i>only</i>
únicamente	unicamente	unicamente	uniquement	<i>merely</i>
simple- mente	simples- mente	semplice- mente	simplement	<i>simply</i>
apenas	apenas	appena	à peine	<i>hardly, just</i>

Adverbs composed of several words

Adverbs can also consist of more than one word, for example:

Sp. *sin ninguna duda*,

Port. *sem dúvida*,

It. *senza dubbio*,

Fr. *sans aucun doute*

– *without a doubt.*

Adverbial phrases

CHAPTER 3: ADVERBS

There are some fixed phrases which have an adverbial function. Below are some common ones:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a ciegas	a cegas	alla cieca	à l'aveuglette	<i>blindly/in the dark</i>
en serio	a sério	sul serio	au sérieux	<i>take seriously</i>
a pie	a pé	a piedi	à pied	<i>on foot</i>
a mano	a mão	a mano	à la main	<i>by/at hand</i>
a escondidas	em segredo	in segreto	en secret	<i>in secret</i>

It is also possible to build such phrases by using the following constructions:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
con + abstract noun	com + abstract noun	con + abstract noun	avec + abstract noun
de manera + adjective	de maneira + adjective	di\in maniera + adjective	de manière + adjective
de modo + adjective	de modo + adjective	di modo + adjective	de mode + adjective
de forma + adjective	de forma + adjective	di forma + adjective	de forme + adjective
de carácter + adjective	de caráter + adjective	di carattere + adjective	de caractère + adjective

Examples:

Sp. Lo hace **con** alegría,

CHAPTER 3: ADVERBS

Port. Ele faz isso **com** alegria,

It. Lo fa **con** gioia,

Fr. Il le fait **avec** joie.

- *He does it with joy.*

Sp. Ella habla **de manera** formal,

Port. Ela fala **de maneira** formal,

It. Lei parla **in maniera** formale,

Fr. Elle parle **de manière** formelle.

- *She speaks in a formal manner.*

Position of Adverbs

In English adverbs can be put in different places in a sentence. In Romance languages adverbs follow verbs or are placed before the adjective.



Did you know?

Italian is considered the universal language of classic music, with numerous loanwords such as a capella, maestro, orchestra and soprano.

Sp. El trabaja **mucho**;

Port. Ele trabalha **muito**;

It. Lui lavora **molto**;

Fr. Il travaille **beaucoup**.

- *He works a lot.*

Sp. Ella come **poco**;

Port. Ela come **pouco**;

It. Lei mangia **poco**;

Fr. Elle mange **peu**.

- She eats **a little**.

However, in French such short and common adverbs as **bien, assez, beaucoup, déjà, encore, enfin, jamais, mieux, toujours, trop, vite**, etc., are placed between auxiliary verb and past participle (Fr. Elle a **bien** chanté – *She sang well*).

Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs



Did you know?

Spanish is the third most used language on the Internet. Around 8% of Internet users interact in Spanish.

Comparative constructions are mainly used to convey inequality or equality. Comparison of adjectives and adverbs in English usually uses the *-er* form, where it is added to the end of the adverb or adjective, or *more* or *less* in front of them, for instance shorter, longer, more/less intelligent.

The superlative degree of comparison of adverbs and adjectives in English has *-est* attached to the end of them or *most* or *least* in front of them, for instance the shortest, the longest, the most/the least intelligent.

Like in English, in Romance languages there are also different degrees of comparison which are comparative and superlative. In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian there also exists absolute superlative degree of comparison.

Below is the table that demonstrates comparative constructions of Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
The Comparative				

CHAPTER 3: ADVERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
<i>tan... como</i> (Es <i>tan</i> inteligente <i>como</i> yo.)	<i>tão... como/ quanto</i> (Ele é <i>tão</i> inteligente <i>quanto</i> eu.)	<i>così/ tanto... come/ quanto</i> (È <i>così</i> intelligente e <i>come</i> me.)	<i>aussi... que</i> (Il est <i>aussi</i> intelligent <i>que</i> moi.)	<i>as...as</i> (He is <i>as</i> intelligent <i>as</i> I am.)
<i>más... que</i> (Este libro es <i>más</i> interesante <i>que</i> este)	<i>mais... (do) que</i> (Este livro é <i>mais</i> interessante <i>do que</i> este)	<i>più... di/ che</i> (Questo libro è <i>più</i> interessante <i>di</i> quello)	<i>plus... que</i> (Ce livre est <i>plus</i> intéressant <i>que</i> celui-là)	<i>more... than</i> (This book is <i>more</i> interesting <i>than</i> that one)
<i>menos... que</i> (Este vestido es <i>menos</i> hermoso <i>que</i> este)	<i>menos... (do) que</i> (Este vestido é <i>menos</i> bonito <i>do que</i> isso)	<i>meno... di/che</i> (Questo vestito è <i>meno</i> bello <i>di</i> quello)	<i>moins... que</i> (Cette robe est <i>moins</i> belle <i>que</i> cela)	<i>less... than</i> (This dress is <i>less</i> beautiful <i>than</i> that one.)



NOTE: In Portuguese ***do que*** is used to compare nouns, and ***que*** is used to compare adjectives.

The superlative of an adjective and adverb is usually formed by adding the definite article to the comparative form. In

CHAPTER 3: ADVERBS

such construction the preposition (Sp. **de**, Port. **de**, It. **di**, Fr. **de**) is used and follows the superlative when it means *in*.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
The Superlative				
el/la/los/ las/lo más...(de) (Este muchacho es el más inteligente de la clase)	o/a/os/as mais...(de) (Este menino é o mais inteligente da classe)	il/la/i/le più... (di) (Questo ragazzo è il più inteligente e della classe)	le/la/les plus...(de) (Ce garçon est le plus intelligent de la classe)	<i>the most</i> (<i>This boy is the most intelligent in the class</i>)
el/la/los/ las/lo menos...(de) (Este muchacho es el menos inteligente de la clase)	o/a/os/as menos...(de) (Este menino é o menos inteligente da classe)	il/la/i/le meno... (di) (Questo ragazzo è il meno inteligente e della classe)	le/la/les moins...(de) (Ce garçon est le moins intelligent de la classe)	<i>the least</i> (<i>This boy is the least intelligent in the class</i>)

As mentioned before, Spanish, Portuguese and Italian also have the absolute superlative degree of comparison. The absolute superlative is usually formed by adding the suffix Sp. **-ísimo** (**-ísimamente** with adverbs), Port. **-íssimo**, It. **-issimo** to an adjective or an adverb after dropping the last vowel. This conveys the meaning of *most*, *very* and *extremely*.

CHAPTER 3: ADVERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	English
bonito – <i>muy bonito</i>	bonito – bonitísimo	bello – bellissimo	handsome – most handsome
inteligente – inteligentísimo	inteligente – inteligentíssimo	intelligente – intelligentissimo	intelligent – extremely intelligent
bien – <i>muy bien</i>	bem – boníssimo	bene – benissimo	well – very well
malo – malísimo	mal – malíssimo	male – malissimo	badly – very badly

Note that Spanish **bonito** and **bien** form the absolute superlative by adding **muy** before an adjective or an adverb.

However, in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, there are some spelling changes while adding the suffix **–ísimo**, **–íssimo** and **–issimo**.

Spanish:

- The endings **–co** and **–go** are changed according to the general norms of pronunciation and spelling:

poco – poquí**ísimo** - little - the most little;

largo – larguí**ísimo** - long - the longest;

- Most adjectives that end in **–ble** change it to **–bil** before **–ísimo**:

amable – amabil**ísimo** - nice - the nicest.

Portuguese:

- Adjectives ending in **–vel** change into **–bilíssimo**:

agradável – agradabil**íssimo** - pleasant - the most pleasant;

horrível – horribil**íssimo** - horrible - the most horrible.

CHAPTER 3: ADVERBS

2. Adjectives ending in **-m** change into **-níssimo**:

comum – comun**íssimo** - *common - the most common.*

3. Adjectives ending in **-z** change into **-císsimo**:

feliz – felic**íssimo** - *happy - the happiest.*

4. Adjectives that end in **-ão** change into **-aníssimo**:

são – san**íssimo** - *healthy - the healthiest.*

Italian:

1. the endings **-co**, **-go**, and **-ga** must add **h** to the adjective before adding **-issimo** in order to preserve the hard sound:

stanco – stanch**issimo** - *tired - the most tired;*

largo – largh**issimo** - *large - the largest.*

However, the absolute superlative can also be made by placing an appropriate adverb before the adjective:

Sp. Peter es **muuy** gentil,

Port. Peter é **muuto** gentil,

It. Peter è **molto** gentile

– *Peter is **very** polite.*

Very (Sp. **muuy**, Port. **muuto**, It. **molto**, Fr. **très**) is one of the most common adverbs used in sentences, but below is the list of other adverbs which can definitely help you enrich your language.

CHAPTER 3: ADVERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
bastante	bastante	abbastanza	assez	<i>enough</i>
excepcionalmente	excepcionalmente	eccezionalmente	exceptionnellement	<i>exceptionally</i>
excesivamente	excessivamente	eccessivamente	excessivement	<i>excessively</i>
extraordinariamente	extraordinariamente	straordinariamente	extraordinairement	<i>extraordinarily</i>
extremadamente	extremamente	estremamente	extrêmement	<i>extremely</i>
grandemente	grandemente	grandemente	grandement	<i>greatly</i>
imensamente	imensamente	immensamente	immensément	<i>immensely</i>
terriblemente	terriblemente	terribilmente	terriblement	<i>terribly</i>

Irregular Comparatives and Superlatives

There are some adjectives and adverbs which have irregular forms for the comparative and superlative. Below is the table presenting the most common of them:

Forms	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Adjectives					
<i>positive</i>	bueno	bom	buono	bon	<i>good</i>
<i>comparative</i>	mejor	melhor	migliore	meilleur	<i>better</i>

CHAPTER 3: ADVERBS

Forms	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
<i>superlative</i>	el mejor	o melhor	il migliore	le meilleur	<i>the best</i>
<i>absolute</i>	óptimo	ótimo	ottimo	N\A	<i>very good</i>
<i>positive</i>	malo	mau	cattivo	mauvais	<i>bad</i>
<i>comparative</i>	peor	pior	peggiore	pire	<i>worse</i>
<i>superlative</i>	el peor	o pior	il peggiore	le pire	<i>the worst</i>
<i>absolute</i>	pésimo	péssimo	pessimo	N\A	<i>very bad</i>
<i>positive</i>	grande	grande	grande	grand	<i>big</i>
<i>comparative</i>	mayor (or mas grande)	maior	maggior	plus grand	<i>bigger</i>
<i>superlative</i>	el mayor (or el mas grande)	o maior	il maggior	le plus grand	<i>the biggest</i>
<i>absolute</i>	máximo	máximo	massimo	N\A	<i>very big</i>
<i>positive</i>	pequeño	pequeno	piccolo	petit	<i>small</i>
<i>comparative</i>	menor (or mas pequeño)	menor	minore	plus petit	<i>smaller</i>
<i>superlative</i>	el menor (or el mas pequeño)	o menor	il minore	le plus petit	<i>the smallest</i>
<i>absolute</i>	mínimo	mínimo	minimo	N\A	<i>very small</i>
Adverbs					
<i>positive</i>	bien	bem	bene	bien	<i>well</i>
<i>comparative</i>	mejor	melhor	meglio	mieux	<i>better</i>

CHAPTER 3: ADVERBS

Forms	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
<i>superlative</i>	el mejor	o melhor	il meglio	le mieux	<i>the best</i>
<i>absolute</i>	N\A	bon- íssimo	ben- íssimo	N\A	<i>very well</i>
<i>positive</i>	mal	mal	male	mal	<i>badly</i>
<i>comparative</i>	peor	pior	peggio	pire	<i>worse</i>
<i>superlative</i>	el peor	o pior	il peggio	le pire	<i>the worst</i>
<i>absolute</i>	malísimo	péssimo	mal- íssimo	N\A	<i>very badly</i>
<i>positive</i>	mucho	muito	molto	beaucoup	<i>many/ much</i>
<i>comparative</i>	más	mais	più	plus	<i>more</i>
<i>superlative</i>	el más	o mais	il più	le plus	<i>the most</i>
<i>absolute</i>	much- ísimo	muit- íssimo	molt- íssimo	N\A	N\A
<i>positive</i>	poco	pouco	poco	peu	<i>little</i>
<i>comparative</i>	menos	menos	meno	moins	<i>less</i>
<i>superlative</i>	el menos	o menos	il meno	le moins	<i>the least</i>
<i>absolute</i>	poqu- ísimo	pouqu- íssimo	poch- íssimo	N\A	N\A



NOTE:

In French adjectives such as **petit** and **grand** have regular forms of comparatives and superlatives. However **petit** can also be used as **moindre** (comparative) and **le moindre** (superlative).

CHAPTER 4: ARTICLES

An article is a word (the, a and an) which is placed in front of a noun.

Types of Article in English

1. The definite article **the** is normally used to identify a certain person or thing: *I'm going to **the** cinema.*
2. The indefinite article **a** or **an** is usually used to indicate something unfamiliar or unspecific: *He has **a** car.*
3. The partitive articles **some** or **any** (or no word) are used while talking about quantities or amounts: *We have **some** milk.*

Origin of Articles in Romance Languages. Definite and Indefinite Articles. Gender.

The definite article came into use in the period of transition from vulgar Latin to the Romance languages themselves, indicating connections of a noun in the context. For languages that do not have articles, such connections are understood from the particular situation. The Definite article in Romance languages as well as the personal pronoun of the 3rd person go back to the demonstrative pronouns Lat. **ille** > Sp. **el**, It. **il**, Fr. **le** and Lat. **illus** > It. **lo**.

Being a non-autonomous word, the article has a distinct position. Like in English, in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French the article is placed in front of a noun.

The indefinite article goes back to Latin numeral **unus**, **una** – one which was used as indefinite pronoun while taking into

CHAPTER 4: ARTICLES



Did you know?

Brazil is the 7th biggest economy in the world, which makes the Portuguese language extremely important in a global economy.

consideration an object in archaic and classical Latin. The use of **unus** which accompanied a noun transforms it now into the indefinite article.

Thus, in Romance languages the article can be one of two types: definite and indefinite.

Articles also have masculine and feminine forms. Looking at the common source of origin of the article, it is possible to state that in the Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French languages, the system of articles has common grammatical and lexical similarity.

Below is the table demonstrating the similarity of definite and indefinite articles of masculine and feminine gender in Romance languages.

	Spanish		Portuguese		Italian		French	
Forms of article	singular masc. c./ fem.	plural masc. / fem.	singular masc. / fem.	plural masc./ fem.	singular masc. / fem.	plural masc. / fem.	singular masc. ./ fem.	plural masc. ./ fem.
Definite	el/ la	los/ las	o/ a	os/ as	il, lo, l'/ la, l'	i, gli, gl'/ le, l'	le, l' / la, l'	les/ les
Indefinite	un/ una	unos / unas	um/ uma	uns/ umas	un, uno / una, un'	dei, degli / delle	un/ une	des/ des

The article is placed before the noun and, like adjectives, agrees with it in number and gender:

CHAPTER 4: ARTICLES

Sp. **el** muchacho > **la** muchacha > **los** muchachos > **las** muchachas;

Port. **o** menino > **a** menina > **os** meninos > **as** meninas;

It. **il** ragazzo > **i** ragazzi > **la** ragazza > **le** ragazze;

Fr. **le** garçon > **la** fille > **les** garçons > **les** filles.

- **the** boy > **the** girl > **the** boys > **the** girls.

French

In French the article of the singular **le** and **la** becomes **l'** before a noun that begins with a **vowel** or mute **h**: (**l'**enfant – *the child*, **l'**homme – *the man*).

Italian

In Italian the article of the masculine singular is **il** and plural **i**, but before all *masculine singular* nouns beginning with **z**, **s** plus a **consonant**, **y**, **ps** or **gn** the article **lo** is placed: (**lo** studente – *the student*, **lo** zio – *the uncle*, **lo** gnomo – *the gnome*, **lo** psicologo – *the psychologist* and etc.).

The definite article **lo** becomes **l'** before any **vowel**: (**l'**amico – *the friend*, **l'**italiano – *the Italian*, **l'**istituto – *the institute*), whereas the definite plural article **gli** transforms into **gl'** only before **i** (**gl'**italiani), however recently there is a tendency towards the preservation of the vowel sound: (**gli** italiani).

The article of the feminine singular **la** becomes **l'** before feminine singular nouns beginning with a **vowel**: (**l'**amica – *the friend*, **l'**estate – *the summer*)

The indefinite plural article **dei** becomes **degli** before **a**, **u**, **i**, **o** (**dei** libri – *books*; **degli** amici – *friends*).

Spanish and Portuguese

CHAPTER 4: ARTICLES

In Spanish and French the indefinite article of the masculine singular is **un**, in Portuguese - **um**. In Italian the indefinite article of the masculine singular is also **un**, but **uno** is used before masculine nouns that begin with **s** plus **consonant** or **z** (**uno** studente, **uno** zio).

The indefinite feminine article is **une** in French and **uma** in Portuguese and **una** in Spanish and Italian. In Italian the form **un'** is also used before *feminine* nouns beginning with a **vowel**: (**un'**amica – *the friend*, **un'**opera – *the opera*, **un'**isola – *the island*).

Use of the Article

In general terms, the article in Romance languages has common ways of use.

General Use of the Indefinite Article

- It is used as numeral “one” to express only one thing a person has:

Sp. tengo **un** hijo,

Port. tenho **um** filho,

It. ho **un** figlio,

Fr. j'ai **un** fils

– *I have **one** son.*

- It is used to refer to someone or something not yet known or not specifically identified:

Sp. mi madre habla con **una** mujer,

CHAPTER 4: ARTICLES

Port. minha mãe fala com **uma** mulher,
It. mia madre parla con **una** donna,
Fr. ma mère parle avec **une** femme
– *my mother is talking to a woman.*



Did you know?

*When Italy became
one nation in 1861,
only 2.5% of Italians could
speak the standardized
language.*

Sp. este es **un** libro,
Port. este é **um** livro,
It. questo è **un** libro,
Fr. c'est **un** livre
– this is **a** book.

- The plural forms of the article in Romance languages are used with plural nouns in a similar way (meaning “some” in English):

Sp. sobre la mesa hay **unas** flores,
Port. em cima da mesa há **umas** flores,
It. sul tavolo ci sono **dei** fiori,
Fr. sur la table il y a **des** fleurs
– *there are some flowers on the table.*

General use of the Definite Article

- Generally speaking, the definite article is used to refer to someone or something specific in a particular situation:

Sp. Cierre **la** ventana!
Port. Feche **a** janela!

CHAPTER 4: ARTICLES

It. Chiudere **la** finestra!

Fr. Fermez **la** fenêtre!

– Close **the** window!

- It is used to refer to the object which is unique in its category:



Did you know?

French is second only to English when it comes to the number of countries where it is an official or co-official language. French is officially spoken in 32 countries.

Sp. **el** sol,

Port. **o** sol,

It. **il** sole,

Fr. **le** soleil

– **the** sun

- The definite article is put before a noun which is used to refer to an entire category of people or things in general:

Sp. **El** león es un animal muy rápido,

Port. **O** leão é um animal muito rápido,

It. **Il** leone è un animale molto veloce,

Fr. **Le** lion est un animal très rapide.

– *Lions are very fast animals.*

- It is used with abstract nouns when they have a general use:

Sp. Debemos reducir **la** pobreza en nuestro país.

Port. Devemos reduzir **a** pobreza em nosso país.

It. Dobbiamo ridurre **la** povertà nel nostro paese.

CHAPTER 4: ARTICLES

Fr. Nous devons réduire **la** pauvreté dans notre pays.

- *We must reduce **the** poverty in our country.*

- It is used to refer to an object that became certain as it had been mentioned earlier:

Sp. Él tiene un coche. **El** coche es nuevo;

Port. Ele tem um carro. **O** carro é novo;

It. Lui ha una macchina. **La** macchina è nuova;

Fr. Il a une voiture. **La** voiture est neuve

- *He has a car. **The** car is new.*

- It is used before a noun that has a definition specifying the object being discussed:

Sp. Tome **el** periódico que está sobre la mesa,

Port. Pegue **o** jornal que está sobre a mesa,

It. Prendete **il** giornale che sta sul tavolo,

Fr. Prenez **le** journal qui est sur la table.

- *Take **the** newspaper that is on the table.*

- It is used for any noun that refers to a general idea, practice or phenomenon. This includes colours, diseases, fields of activity and meals:

Sp. No me gusta **el** verde como color;

Port. Eu não gosto **do** verde como cor;

CHAPTER 4: ARTICLES

It. Non mi piace **il** verde come colore;

Fr. Je n'aime pas **le** vert comme couleur.

- *I don't like the color green.*

Below is a table presenting objects, concepts and phenomena which are to be used with the definite article in one or another Romance language. As a rule, nouns that have the masculine or feminine forms of the article designating the categories below:

<i>the masculine definite article</i>	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
- months	(El) enero	(O) janeiro	(Il) gennaio	(Le) janvier	January
	(El) febrero	(O) fevereiro	(Il) febbraio	(Le) février	February
	(El) marzo	(O) março	(Il) marzo	(Le) mars	March
	(El) abril	(O) abril	(L') aprile	(Le) avril	April
- days of week	(El) domingo	(O) domingo	But: (La) domenica	(Le) dimanche	Sunday
	(El) lunes	But: (A) segunda-feira	(Il) lunedì	(Le) lundi	Monday
	(El) martes	(A) terça-feira	(Il) martedì	(Le) mardi	Tuesday

CHAPTER 4: ARTICLES

<i>the masculine definite article</i>	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
	(El) miércoles	(A) quarta-feira	(Il) mercoledì	(Le) mercredi	Wednesday
- seasons	(El) invierno	(O) inverno	(L') inverno	(L') hiver	Winter
	(El) verano	(O) verão	(L') estate	(L') été	Summer
	(El) otoño	(O) outono	(L')autunno	(L') automne	Autumn/ Fall
	But: (La) primavera	But: (A) primavera	But: (La) primavera	(Le) printemps	Spring
- corners of the earth	(El) norte	(O) norte	(Il) nord	(Le) nord	North
	(El) sur	(O) sul	(Il) sud	(Le) sud	South
	(El) este	(O) leste	(L') est	(L') est	East
	(El) oeste	(O) oeste	(L') ovest	(L') ouest	West
- languages	(El) japonés	(O) japonês	(Il) giapponese	(Le) japonais	Japanese
	(El) portugués	(O) português	(Il) portoghese	(Le) portugais	Portuguese
	(El) coreano	(O) coreano	(Il) coreano	(Le) coréen	Korean

CHAPTER 4: ARTICLES

<i>the masculine definite article</i>	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
	(El) francés	(O) francês	(Il) francese	(Le) français	<i>French</i>
- trees	(El) pino	(O) pinheiro	(Il) pino	(Le) pin	<i>Pine tree</i>
	(El) abedul	(O) videiro	(La) betulla	(Le) bouleau	<i>Birch</i>
	(El) roble	(O) carvalho	(La) quercia	(Le) chêne	<i>Oak</i>
	But: (La) palmera	But: (A) palmeira	But: (La) palma	(Le) palmier	<i>Palm tree</i>
- metals	(El) oro	(O) ouro	(L') oro	(L') or	<i>Gold</i>
	(El) hierro	(O) ferro	(Il) ferro	(Le) fer	<i>Iron</i>
	(El) cobre	(O) cobre	(Il) rame	(Le) cuivre	<i>Copper</i>
	But: (La) Plata	But: (A) prata	(L') argento	(L') argent	<i>Silver</i>
- chemical substances	(El) ácido	(O) ácido	(L') acido	(L') acide	<i>Acid</i>
	(El) álcali	(O) álcali	(L') alcali	(L') alcali	<i>Alkali</i>
	(El) cloruro	(O) cloreto	(Il) cloruro	(Le) chlorure	<i>Chloride</i>
	But: (La) toxina	But: (A) toxina	But: (La) tossina	But: (La) toxine	<i>Toxin</i>
- transpo	(El) autobús	(O) ônibus	(Il) bus	(Le) bus	<i>Bus</i>

CHAPTER 4: ARTICLES

<i>the masculine definite article</i>	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
<i>el</i>	(El) avión	(O) avião	(L') aereo	(L') avion	<i>Plane</i>
	(El) tren	(O) trem	(Il) treno	(Le) train	<i>Train</i>
	(El) coche/ carro	(O) carro	(L') auto	<i>But:</i> (La) voiture	<i>Car</i>
<i>the feminine definite article</i>	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
<i>- countries, cities, continents, islands</i>	(La) Italia	(A) Italia	(L') Italia	(L') Italie	<i>Italy</i>
	(La) ciudad de Paris	(A) cidade de Paris	(La) città di Parigi	(La) ville de Paris	<i>Paris</i>
	(La) Europa	(A) Europa	(L') Europa	(L') Europe	<i>Europe</i>
	(Las) islas hawaianas	(As) ilhas havaianas	(Le) isole hawaiane	(Les) îles hawaïennes	<i>Hawaiian islands</i>

CHAPTER 4: ARTICLES

<i>the masculine definite article</i>	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
- rivers, lakes	<i>But: (El) río Amazonas</i>	<i>But: (O) rio Amazonas</i>	<i>But: (Il) Rio delle Amazzoni</i>	<i>But: (L') Amazzone</i>	The Amazon
	<i>(El) Misisipi</i>	<i>(O) rio Mississipi</i>	<i>(Il) Mississipi</i>	<i>(Le) Mississipi</i>	The Mississippi River
	<i>(El) río Éufrates</i>	<i>(O) rio Eufrates</i>	<i>(L') Eufrate</i>	<i>(L') Eufrate</i>	The Euphrates
	<i>(El) lago Hurón</i>	<i>(O) lago Huron</i>	<i>(Il) lago Huron</i>	<i>(Il) lago Huron</i>	Lake Huron
- sciences	<i>(La) química</i>	<i>(A) química</i>	<i>(La) chimica</i>	<i>(La) chimie</i>	Chemistry
	<i>(La) biología</i>	<i>(A) biologia</i>	<i>(La) biologia</i>	<i>(La) biologie</i>	Biology
	<i>(La) filosofía</i>	<i>(A) filosofia</i>	<i>(La) filosofia</i>	<i>(La) philosophie</i>	Philosophy
	<i>(La) literatura</i>	<i>(A) literatura</i>	<i>(La) letteratura</i>	<i>(La) littérature</i>	Literature



NOTE:

The table demonstrates the general rule, however there are some exceptions for you to memorize.

Note that in Spanish, despite the general rule, the following words are used with the feminine definite article: **la primavera**, **la palmera**, **la plata**, **la toxina**.

CHAPTER 4: ARTICLES

Remember that rivers and lakes are used with the masculine definite article in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

*In Portuguese, days of the week are used with the feminine definite article, except for **o sábado** - Saturday and **o domingo** - Sunday, which have the masculine definite article. Such words as **a primavera**, **a palmeira**, **a prata**, and **a toxina** are used with the feminine definite article.*

*In Italian, the following words are used with the feminine definite article: **la domenica**, **la primavera**, **la palma**, **la tossina**.*

*In French, **la toxine** and **la voiture** have the feminine definite article.*

Omission of the Definite Article

1. The definite article in Romance languages is usually omitted before names of cities and towns:

Sp. París es la capital de Francia;

Port. Paris é a capital da França;

It. Parigi è la capitale della Francia,

Fr. Paris est la capitale de la France.

- Paris is the capital of France.



NOTE:

*In Spanish: **La** Habana – Havana, **El** Callao – Callao, **La** Coruña – Corunna, **La** Mancha – English Channel;*

*In Portuguese: **O** Porto, **O** Rio de Janeiro.*

Exceptions

In *French* the definite article is usually omitted when the name of the region, country or continent is preceded by the preposition *en*.

In *Spanish* and *Portuguese* the definite article is omitted after the verbs (Sp. ***estudiar*** – *learn*, ***hablar*** – *speak*, Port. ***estudar*** – *learn*, ***falar*** – *speak*):

Sp. Yo hablo español,

Port. Eu falo espanhol.

- I speak Spanish.

However, the article may be placed if an adverb separates the verb from the language name, and this is common across all Romance languages:



Did you know?

Argentina is the largest Spanish speaking nation in South America. Argentina is also the 8th largest country in the world with an area of 2,780,400 km².

Sp. Yo hablo correctamente ***el*** francés,

Port. Eu falo corretamente ***o*** francês,

It. Io parlo correttamente ***il*** francese,

Fr. Je parle correctement ***le*** français.

- I speak French correctly.

Omission of the Article

1. The article is omitted if there is a numeral or pronoun placed before a noun.

CHAPTER 4: ARTICLES

2. The article is omitted before nouns denoting quantity and used with a preposition:

Sp. **de**, Port. **de**, It. **di**, Fr. **de**.

3. The indefinite article is usually omitted before prepositions:

Sp. **sin**, Port. **sem**, It. **senza**, Fr. **sans** – *without*;

Sp. **con**, Port. **com**, It. **con**, Fr. **avec** – *with*;

Sp. **como**, Port. **como**, It. **come**, Fr. **comme** – *as, like*.



Did you know?

Angola is the largest Portuguese speaking country in Africa, with a population of over 25 million people.

Sp. Él salió **sin** dinero,
Port. Ele saiu **sem** dinheiro,
It. Lui è uscito **senza** soldi,
Fr. Il est sorti **sans** argent.
- *He left **without** money.*

4. In *Italian* and *French* the indefinite article is omitted after the verb It. **essere**, Fr. **être** (*to be*) when precedes unmodified nouns denoting nationality, profession or religion:

It. Lui è medico,
Fr. Il est médecin.
- *He is a doctor.*

However, the indefinite article is used when the noun put after the verb **to be** is modified:

It. Lui è **un** medico molto famoso,
Fr. Il est **un** médecin très célèbre.

- *He is a very **famous** doctor.*

*The Neuter Article **lo** in Spanish*

Additionally it is important to talk about Spanish neuter article **lo**. This article is mostly used to refer to beliefs, concepts, opinions, thoughts and ideas.

1. **Lo** may be used before a masculine singular **adjective** or **past participle**:

Sp. **Lo** más importante es hablar con soltura.

- *The most important thing is to speak fluently.*



Did you know?

There are 2 independent states within Italy: the Republic of San Marino (23.6 square miles) and the Vatican City (0.17 square miles).

2. **Lo + de + noun** – the matter of, the business about:

Sp. **Lo** de la pobreza es un problema grave.

- *The poverty situation is a serious problem.*

3. **Lo que** – the thing which, what (Port. **o que**, It, **questo che**, Fr. **ce que**.)

Sp. **Lo que** me gusta es tu manera de pronunciarlo.

- *What I like is her manner of pronouncing it.*

4. **Lo** in idiomatic expressions:

**Did you know?**

Belgium has 3 official languages: French, Dutch and German. Many Belgians are bilingual or trilingual.

a lo mejor – perhaps, **por lo visto** – apparently, **por lo menos** – at least, **de lo contrario** – otherwise.

The Partitive

Along with the definite article, in *French* and *Italian* (as early as the 14th century) there came into existence the partitive article that dates back to the combination **de** + **ille**, which represents the equivalent of the partitive non-autonomous pronoun It. **ne**, Fr. **en**, Lat. **inde**.

In English we usually use words such as *some* or *any* or no article at all with nouns that are not counted, for instance milk and tea. In Italian and French the partitive also designates undetermined quantity and is also used with uncounted nouns.

The partitive is formed as a result of liaison of the preposition: It. **di**, Fr. **de** with the definite article:

Italian	French
di + il = del;	de + le = du;
di + lo = dello / di + l' = dell';	de + la = de la;
di + la = della / di + gli = degli;	de + les = des.
di + i = dei / di + le = delle.	

1. In Italian and French the partitive is used with uncounted nouns:

It.: Ha comprato **del** pane, **dello** zucchero e **della** carne; Hanno bevuto **del** latte.

CHAPTER 4: ARTICLES

Fr.: Il a acheté **du** pain, **du** sucre et **de la** viande; Ils ont bu **du** lait.

- He bought **some** bread, **some** sugar and **some** meat; They drank **some** milk.

2. It is used with abstract nouns, designating an abstract idea:

It. Hai **del** talento.

Fr. Tu as **du** talent.

- You are talented.

3. It is used after nouns, designating quantity:

It.: una bottiglia **di** vino

Fr.: une bouteille **de** vin

- a bottle **of** wine

There are such expressions of quantity as:

Italian	French	English
scatola di	une boîte de	<i>a box of</i>
bottiglia di	une bouteille de	<i>a bottle of</i>
un bicchiere di	un verre de	<i>a glass of</i>
una tazza di	une tasse de	<i>a cup of</i>
un chilo di	un kilo de	<i>a kilogram of</i>
un litro di	un litre de	<i>a liter of</i>

CHAPTER 4: ARTICLES

Italian	French	English
<i>una dozzina di</i>	<i>une douzaine de</i>	<i>a dozen (of)</i>
<i>un pezzo di</i>	<i>un morceau de</i>	<i>a piece of</i>
<i>una fetta di</i>	<i>une tranche de</i>	<i>a slice of</i>
<i>un po' di</i>	<i>un peu de</i>	<i>a little</i>



NOTE:

*In French in negative sentences, the partitive article is replaced by **de**.*

*Affirmative: J'ai **du** pain.*

*Negative: Je n'ai pas **de** pain.*

*Also, when an adjective is placed before a noun in the plural, the partitive becomes **de**:*

Singular: J'ai un bon ami.

*Plural: j'ai **de** bons amis.*

Contraction of the Article

When next to the definite article in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, the most frequently used prepositions become contracted forms. This phenomenon can be considered a declination of the article. The most common contracted forms are **ad + ille** and **de + ille**, which correspond to genitive and dative cases.

In Romance languages the article can be contracted as follow:

Latin	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
ad + ille	a+el= al	a+o =ao	a+il/lo=al/ allo	a+le= au

CHAPTER 4: ARTICLES

Latin	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
ad + illa	a la	a+a= à	a+la= alla	a la
de + ille	de+el= del	de+o= do	di+il/lo=del/dello	de+le= du
de + illa	de la	de+a= da	di+la= della	de la
in + ille	<i>enno</i>	em+o= no	in+il=nel, nello	<i>el, eu, au</i>
in + illa	<i>enna</i>	em+a= na	in+la= nella	<i>en la</i>
sub + ille	<i>sol</i>	-	su+il=sul, sullo	-
sub + illa	-	-	su+la= sulla	-
per + ille	<i>pol</i>	por+o= pelo	<i>pel</i>	-
per + illa	-	pela	<i>pella</i>	-
cum + ille	<i>col</i>	-	con+il=col, collo	-
cum + illa	<i>conna</i>	-	<i>colla</i>	-



NOTE:

In italics are archaic and dialect forms.

Sp. Él va **al** cine hoy;

Port. Ele vai **ao** cinema hoje;

It. Lui va **al** cinema oggi;

Fr. Il va **au** cinéma aujourd'hui.

CHAPTER 4: ARTICLES

- *He goes to the cinema.*

Sp. Esta ciudad es la mejor **del** mundo;

Port. Esta cidade é a melhor **do** mundo;

It. Questa città è la migliore **del** mondo;

Fr. Cette ville est la meilleure **du** monde.

- *This city is the best in the world.*



Did you know?

Chilean Spanish is quite specific and easily identified in other Latin American countries for its 'melody'. Chileans speak quite quickly and do not even pronounce terminal consonants.

From the table above it is clear that Romance languages have lexical similarity and common grammatical system of contraction the article with prepositions, which date back to their predecessor – Latin.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

A pronoun is a word we use and which serves as a noun when we do not want or need to name something or someone directly, for instance, I, you, it, him, her.

Personal Pronouns

There are five types of personal pronouns in Romance languages:

- subject pronoun;
- direct object pronoun;
- indirect object pronoun;
- prepositional (disjunctive) pronouns;
- reflexive pronouns.

Also, there are several pronouns in Italian and French (It. **ne, ci**; Fr. **en, y**), which are used in certain constructions.

Below is the table presenting all the types of personal pronouns:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
		se			
	yo	eu	io	je, j'	I
	tú/vos	tu	tu	tu	you (sing.inf)

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Subject	<i>él/ella/ usted</i>	<i>ele/ ela/ você, o/a senhor -(a)</i>	<i>lui/ lei/Lei</i>	<i>il,elle, on</i>	<i>he, it/ she,it/ you (sing.f.)</i>
	<i>nosotros -(as)</i>	<i>nós</i>	<i>noi</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>we</i>
	<i>vosotros (as)</i>	<i>vós</i>	<i>voi</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>you (pl. inf.)</i>
	<i>ellos/ ellas/ ustedes</i>	<i>eles/ elas/ vocês, os/as senhores -(as)</i>	<i>loro/ Loro</i>	<i>ils/ elles</i>	<i>they (m. fem)/you (pl.f)</i>
Direct object	<i>me</i>	<i>me</i>	<i>mi</i>	<i>me/m'</i>	<i>me</i>
	<i>te</i>	<i>te</i>	<i>ti</i>	<i>te/t`</i>	<i>you (sing.inf)</i>
	<i>lo/la</i>	<i>o/a</i>	<i>lo/la/ l'</i>	<i>le/l` la/l'</i>	<i>him, it/ her,it</i>
	<i>nos</i>	<i>nos</i>	<i>ci</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>us</i>
	<i>os</i>	<i>vos</i>	<i>vi</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>you (pl.)</i>

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
	los/las	os/as	li/ le	les	<i>them (m, fem)</i>
Indirect object	me	me	mi	me	<i>me</i>
	te	te	ti	te	<i>you (sing.inf)</i>
	le	lhe	gli /le	lui	<i>him, it/ her</i>
	nos	nos	ci	nous	<i>us</i>
	os	vos	vi	vous	<i>you (pl. inf.)</i>
	les	lhes	loro/ Loro	leur	<i>them</i>
Prepositional pronouns	mí	mim	me	moi	<i>me</i>
	ti	ti/si	te	toi	<i>you (sing.inf)</i>
	él/ella/ usted	ele/ ela/ você, o/a senhor -(a)	lui/ lei/Lei	lui/elle	<i>him, it/ her/you (sing.f.)</i>
	nosotros (as)	nos	noi	nous	<i>us</i>

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
	<i>vosotros (as)</i>	<i>vos</i>	<i>voi</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>you (pl. inf.)</i>
	<i>ellos/ellas/ustedes</i>	<i>êles/elas/vocês, os/as senhores -(as)</i>	<i>loro/Loro</i>	<i>eux/elles</i>	<i>them (m. fem)/you (pl. f)</i>
	<i>me</i>	<i>me</i>	<i>mi</i>	<i>me/m'</i>	<i>myself</i>
	<i>te</i>	<i>te</i>	<i>ti</i>	<i>te/t'</i>	<i>yourself</i>
<i>Reflexive pronouns</i>	<i>se</i>	<i>se</i>	<i>si</i>	<i>se/s'</i>	<i>himself/herself/itself</i>
	<i>nos</i>	<i>nos</i>	<i>ci</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>ourselves</i>
	<i>os</i>	<i>vos</i>	<i>vi</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>yourselfes</i>
	<i>se</i>	<i>se</i>	<i>si</i>	<i>se</i>	<i>themselves</i>

Subject Pronouns

Overview



Did you know?

The official language of Mozambique is Portuguese, a legacy of the colonizers. When the country became independent in 1975, several attempts were taken to replace the colonial language but they were unsuccessful.

A subject pronoun, such as I, he, we, they, is used to perform the action, which is presented by the verb. Generally subject or personal pronouns replace a subject noun or name, and they can be classified in several different ways: person (1st, 2nd or 3rd), number (singular or plural), gender (male or female) and formality (formal or informal) in the Romance languages.

Below is the table showing all the forms of subject pronouns in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
yo	eu	io	je, j'	I
tú/vos	tu	tu	tu	you (sing.inf)
él/ella/ usted	ele/ela/ você, o/a senhor (a)	lui/lei/Lei	il,elle,on	he, it/ she,it/ you (sing.f.)
nosotros (as)	nós	noi	nous	we
vosotros (as)	vós	voi	vous	you (pl. inf.)

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
<i>ellos/ ellas/ ustedes</i>	<i>eles/elas/ vocês, os/ as senhores (as)</i>	<i>loro/Loro</i>	<i>ils/elles</i>	<i>they (m. fem)/you (pl. f)</i>

Use of Subject Pronouns

Pronouns are used instead of nouns when it is clear who we talk about (e.g. His father is at work. He will return by 7 p.m.).

1st person singular in the Romance languages corresponds with that of English language. For example:

Sp. **Yo** soy un estudiante;

Port. **Eu** sou um estudante;

It. **Io** sono uno studente;

Fr. **Je** suis un étudiant;

- *I am a student.*



NOTE:

In French the pronoun of the 1st person **Je** changes to **J'** when it is placed before words which begin with a **vowel, h** or **y**.
For example: *J'aime* – I love;

J'habite à Paris – I live in Paris;

J'y vais bientôt – I am going there soon.

In Romance languages there are several ways to express *you*.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Familiar way of addressing people:

Sp. **tú/vos** (singular), **vosotros(as)** (plural);

Euro. Port. **tu** (s.), **vos** (pl.), Braz. Port. **você** (s.), **vocês** (pl.);

It. **tu** (s.), **voi** (pl.);

Fr. **tu** (s.), **vous** (pl.)

The examples above are basically used to address people one knows very well: friends, relatives. Observe the following:

Sp. **Tú** eres muy amable;

Euro. Port. **Tu** és muito amável, Braz. Port. **Você** é muito amável;

It. **Tu** sei molto gentile;

Fr. **Tu** es très gentil;

- **You** are very nice.



NOTE:

In Spanish the 2nd person singular pronoun **vos** is used primarily in Argentina, Uruguay and Paraguay.

Formal way of addressing people:

Sp. **usted** (s.), **ustedes** (pl.);

Euro. Port. **você, o/a senhor(a)** (s.), **vocês, os/as senhores(as)** (pl.)

Braz. Port. **o/a senhor(a)** (s.), **os/as senhores(as)** (pl.)

It. **Lei** (s.), **Loro** (pl.)

Fr. **vous** (both s. and pl.)

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

These pronouns are used to address superiors, strangers, people who one does not know very well or has never met before, or show a relationship that is polite and respectful. For instance:



Did you know?

When Italy became one nation in 1861 and officially chose Tuscan Italian as the national tongue, only 2.5% Italians were able to speak the standardized language.

Sp. **Usted** es muy amable;

Port **O senhor** é muito amável;

It. **Lei** è molto gentile;

Fr. **Vous** êtes très gentil.

- **You** are very nice.



NOTE:

*In Spanish **usted** and **ustedes** are often abbreviated while writing to Ud., Vd., Uds., or Vds.*

In Portuguese **você** is slightly more formal than **tu**, but nevertheless not formal enough to talk to people who one has never met before or to a superior. In this case, one should use **o senhor** or **a senhora**. It is notable that using the subject pronouns **você** and **você**s instead of **tu** is predominantly a familiar way of addressing people in Brazilian Portuguese. To address someone formally, one uses **o senhor** or **a senhora** in the Brazilian variant of Portuguese.

In Italian it is important to notice the distinction between the capitalized **Lei** and **Loro**, which are formal “you”, and **lei** and **loro** which mean *she* and *they*.

In French, as you can see, there is only one form: **vous**. It is used to address people whatever their relation to each other.

It is extremely important to note that Spanish **usted**, **ustedes**; Portuguese **você**, **o/a senhor(a)**, **você**s, **os/as senhores(as)**; and Italian **Lei**, **Loro** always take the 3rd person forms of the verb, singular and plural, respectively, which is why they are placed in the 3rd person in the table above. For instance:

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Sp. **Usted** puede hablar Inglés;

Port. **O senhor** pode falar Inglês;

It. **Lei** sa parlare inglese.

- **You, sir**, can speak English.

Since nouns in Romance languages have two genders, masculine and feminine, the 3rd person singular and plural, as you can see from the table, also has masculine and feminine forms of the pronoun, which are used to talk about things, as well as about people or animals. Look at the following example:

Sp. Me gusta el perro de mi amigo. **Él** es muy inteligente;

Port. Eu gosto do cachorro do meu amigo. **Ele** é muito inteligente;

It. Mi piace il cane del mio amico. **Lui** è molto intelligente;

Fr. J'aime le chien de mon ami. **Il** est très intelligent.

- *I like my friend's dog. **He/It** is very smart.*



NOTE:

In French the pronoun **on** is used in the 3rd person form of the verb and means **one, people, they, you**. Example:

Fr. Si **on** aime, on est heureux.

- If **people (one, they, you)** love(s),
people (one, they, you) are (is) happy.

Also, in informal everyday French the pronoun **on** can mean **we**, replacing the pronoun **nous**. Example:

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Fr. **On** va au cinema ce soir.

– **We're** going to the cinema tonight.

Finally, using the pronoun **on**, we can avoid a passive construction. Example:

Fr. **On** m'a donné un cadeau.

– I was given a gift.

Omission of Subject Pronouns

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, subject pronouns are usually omitted, since the verb ending indicates the subject, which is not true for French where the ending of the verb is not pronounced and therefore the use of subject pronouns is necessary in order to indicate the subject.

Sp. Hoy vamos al centro de la ciudad;

Port. Hoje vamos ao centro da cidade;

It. Oggi andiamo al centro della città;

Fr. Aujourd'hui nous allons au centre ville.

- Today we are going to the city centre.

However, subject pronouns in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian should be used in the following cases:

- It is used for emphasis:

Sp. **Yo** lo hago!

Port. **Eu** o faço!

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

It. **Io** lo faccio!

- **I** do it!



Did you know?

Due to the Norman conquest, French was the official language of England for over 300 years from the 11th until the 15th century.

• It is used for contrast:

Sp. **Yo** hablo y **tú** escuchas;

Port. **Eu** falo e **você** escuta;

It. **Io** parlo e **tu** ascolti.

- **I** speak and **you** listen.



NOTE:

*When we talk about the time and the weather in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, subject pronouns are also omitted. However, in French the pronoun **il** is used, which is often in the same way as we use some phrases with it in English. Example:*

Sp. Esta lloviendo;

Port. Está chovendo;

It. Piove;

Fr. **Il** pleut;

- **It** is raining.

- In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian the subject pronoun is also used on its own without verb, for example:

Sp. Quién lo compró? **Yo**.

Port. Quem o comprou? **Eu**.

It. Chi l'ha comprato? **Io**.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

- *Who bought it? Me.*



NOTE:

However, in French when we want to emphasize something or show a contrast or use a pronoun on its own without a verb, we should use the disjunctive pronoun (**See the Disjunctive Pronoun p.125**) in this case:

Fr. **Toi**, tu m'as dit que tu étais chez toi.

- **You**, you told me that you were at home.

Fr. Qui a acheté ça? **Moi**.

- *Who bought it? Me.*

- In Spanish and Portuguese the subject pronoun is used in comparisons. Study the following:

Sp. Ella es más joven que **yo**.

Port. Ela é mais jovem do que **eu**.

- *She is younger than me.*

Direct Object

Direct objects are nouns which receive the action of a verb in sentences. The direct object pronouns (me, him, us and them) are used to replace that noun.

Below is the table that shows all the forms of direct object pronouns in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
<i>me</i>	<i>me</i>	<i>mi</i>	<i>me/m'</i>	<i>me</i>
<i>te</i>	<i>te</i>	<i>ti</i>	<i>te/t'</i>	<i>you</i> <i>(sing.inf)</i>
<i>lo/la</i>	<i>o/a</i>	<i>lo/la/l'</i>	<i>le/l' la/l'</i>	<i>him, it/</i> <i>her, it</i>
<i>nos</i>	<i>nos</i>	<i>ci</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>us</i>
<i>os</i>	<i>vos</i>	<i>vi</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>you (pl.)</i>
<i>los/las</i>	<i>os/as</i>	<i>li/le</i>	<i>les</i>	<i>them (m.</i> <i>fem)</i>

Just like personal subject pronouns are used instead of subject nouns in sentences, direct object pronouns replace the direct object noun in a sentence, which is a thing or a person:

Sp. Leemos libros.

Port. Lemos livros.

It. Leggiamo libri.

Fr. Nous lisons des livres.

– *We read books.*

Spanish “**libros**”, Portuguese “**livros**”, Italian “**libri**” and French “**livres**” receive the action of Sp. **leemos**, Port. **lemos**, It. **leggiamo**, Fr. **lison**. In this sentence Sp. “**libros**”, Port. “**livros**”, It. “**libri**”, Fr. “**livres**” are the direct object. They are plural and masculine and, as it represents an inanimate object, they are the 3rd person, and therefore, we can replace it with the direct object pronoun Sp. **los**, Port. **os**, It. **li**, Fr. **les**:

Sp. **Los** leemos,

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Euro. Port. lemos-**os**; Braz. Port. Port. **Os** lemos,

It. **Li** leggiamo,

Fr. Nous **les** lisons

– We read **them**.



Did you know?

In 2008, Ecuador was the first country to officially recognize Rights of Nature in its Constitution. Ecuador acknowledges that nature has the “right to exist, persist, maintain and regenerate its vital cycles”. (Source: Rights of Nature)

As we said, the direct object of a sentence can be a person as well:

Sp. Ellos **me** aman,

Port. Eles **me** amam,

It. Loro **mi** amano,

Fr. Ils **m'**aiment.

– They love **me**.

In French the direct object pronouns **me**, **le** and **la** and Italian **lo** and **la** become **m'** and **l'** before verbs that begin with a **vowel** or mute **h**:

It. **L'**apro.

– I open **it**.

Fr. Ils **m'**aiment.

– They love **me**.

Fr. Elle **l'**achète.

– She buys **it**.

Use of Direct Object Pronouns

1. We use them to substitute nouns when it is clear what or who is being discussed, and also to avoid the repetition of the noun. Note that direct object pronouns precede the conjugated form of the verb.

Sp. Mark lee el libro. Él **lo** lee;

Port. Mark lê o livro. Ele lê-**lo**;

(Braz, Port. Mark lê o livro. Mark **o** lê);

It. Mark legge il libro. Lui **lo** legge;

Fr. Mark lit le livre. Il **le** lit.

– *Mark reads a book. He reads **it**.*

2. Sp. **lo**; Port. **o**; It, **lo**; Fr. **le** are sometimes used to replace the entire information or idea that has already been presented.

Sp. He comprado un vestido nuevo. – **Lo** sé;

Port. Eu comprei um vestido novo. – Eu **o** sei;

It. Ho comprato un vestito nuovo. – **Lo** so;

Fr. J'ai acheté une nouvelle robe. – Je **le** sais.

– *I bought a new robe. – I know (**it**).*

Word Order of Direct Object Pronouns

1. As it was said earlier the direct object is usually put before a verb:



Did you know?

The official language of Cape Verde is Portuguese, since the islands were Portuguese colonies from 1462-1975.

Sp. **Te** conozco;

Euro. Port. Eu conheço-**te**;

Braz. Port. Eu conheço **você** or Eu **te** conheço);

It. **Ti** conosco;

Fr. Je **te** connais.

– I know **you**.

2. In the perfect tense, which is formed with verbs *have* or *be* and the past participle, the direct object pronoun precedes *have* or *be* in the verb conjugation.

Sp. Ella **me** ha visto;

Port. Ela **me** tem visto;

It. Lei **mi** ha visto;

Fr. Elle **m'**a vu.

– She has seen **me**.

3. In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, you attach the direct object pronouns to the end of affirmative commands (In French you do not attach it). In negative commands, you place it between *no* (or other negative word) and the verb (in Italian and Spanish you attach it to the end of the verb and in Portuguese you use hyphen to attach them).

Sp. Léalo;

Port. Leia-**o**;

It. Leggilo;

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Fr. Lis **le**.

– Read **it**.

Sp. No **lo** leas.

Euro. Port. Não lê-**lo**. (Braz. Port. Não o lê.)

It. Non legger**lo**.

Fr. Ne **le** lis pas.

– Do not read **it**.

Divergent Aspects in Word Order

However, there are some divergent peculiarities in word order of direct object pronouns in the Romance languages that need to be remembered.

1. When a verb is followed by another verb in the infinitive (the “to” form), the direct pronoun is put before the infinitive in French, for example:

Fr. Il voudrait **la** voir.

– He would like to see **her**.

However, in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian the direct pronoun can be placed whether before the first verb or after the infinitive attaching to it. Observe the following:



Did you know?

Italy's San Marino is the world's oldest republic (301 A.D.), and holds the world's oldest continuous constitution.

Sp. Me gustaría ver**la**;

Port. Eu gostaria de vê-**la**;

It. Mi piacerebbe veder**la**.

– I would like to see **her**.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

2. In Brazilian Portuguese, the direct object is usually placed before the verb like in other Romance languages, but in European Portuguese the direct object pronoun follows the verb and is linked to it by a hyphen in the following cases:

- In affirmative sentences:

Euro. Port. Ela compra a casa. Ela compra-**a**.

Braz. Port. Ela compra a casa. Ela **a** compra.

– *She buys a house. She buys **it**.*

- In affirmative commands:

Euro.Port. Leia o livro. Leia-**o**.

– *Read the book. Read **it**.*

- In questions which are not introduced by an interrogative:

Euro.Port. Viste-**a** a semana passada?

Braz. Port. Você **a** viu a semana passada?

– *Did you see **her** last week?*

But nevertheless, the direct object pronoun precedes the verb in the following cases:

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

- In negative sentences (with words like **não** - *do/does not*; **jamais** - *never*; **nunca** - *never*; **nem** - *neither*; **ninguém** - *no one*; **nenhum** - *none*; **nada** - *nothing*):

Euro.Port. Ela **não nos** viu ontem.

– She **did not** see **us** yesterday.

Euro.Port. **nunca o** tenho encontrado antes.

– I have **never** met **him** before.

- In questions introduced by an interrogative (**quando?** - *when?*; **onde?** - *where?*; **quem?** - *who?*; **qual?** - *which?* and etc.):

Euro.Port. **Onde os** viste?

Braz. Port. **Onde** você **os** viu?

– **Where** did you see **them**?

- After conjunctions such as **que** (*that*) or **como** (*as*):

Euro.Port. Eu acho que ele **a** visitou ontem.

– I think that he visited **her** yesterday.

- When it follows the adverbs such as: **sempre** - *always*; **tudo** - *everything*; **ainda** - *still*; **talvez** - *maybe*; **também** - *as well*; **muito** - *many/much*; **pouco** - *little*; **bastante** - *enough*:

Euro.Port. **Tudo nos** recorda nosso país.

– **Everything** reminds **us** of our country.

Euro.Port. **Talvez os** encontro no cinema.

– *Perhaps I will meet **them** in the cinema.*



Did you know?

Over 95% of the population of Canada's Quebec is French speaking, with French as the only provincial official language.

As you might notice, in European Portuguese there are a lot of nuances and exceptions when it comes to the word order of direct object pronouns. To make it simple to learn, it is advisable to follow Brazilian Portuguese and place the direct object before the conjugated verb.

Different Variants of Direct Object in Portuguese

There are also different variants of direct object pronouns in Portuguese:

- If the verb ending in a vowel or an oral diphthong, the pronoun is not changed. Observe the following example:

Euro. Port. Ela comprou um carro e eu vi-**o**;

Braz. Port. Ela comprou um carro e eu **o** vi.

– *She bought a car and I saw **it**.*

- If the verb ends in **-r**, **-s** or **-z**, these endings are removed and the pronouns **-o**, **-a**, **-os**, **-as** change into **-lo**, **-la**, **-los**, **-las**:

Port. Vamos comprar a casa. Vamos compra-**la**.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

– *Let's buy the house. Let's buy **it**.*

Port. Comemos o bolo. Comemo-**lo**.

– *We eat the cake. We eat **it**.*



NOTE:

*If the verb ends in **-ar** or **-az**, the **a** takes an acute accent to keep the open sound of the vowel. If the verb ends in **-er** or **-ez**, the **e** takes a circumflex accent to keep the closed sound of the vowel, for instance:*

Port. Muito prazer em conhecê-lo.

– *Very pleased to meet you.*

*Infinitives of compounds of **pôr**, **repor**, etc. do not have a circumflex accent on the **o** but it is added when the final **r** of the infinitive is dropped before taking a direct object pronoun. Study the following:*

Port. Quero **pô-lo** sobre a mesa.

– *I want to put it on the table.*

- If the verb ends in **-m**, **-ão**, **-õe** or **-ões**, the pronoun **-o**, **-a**, **-os**, **-as** change into **-no**, **-na**, **-nos**, **-nas**, for example:

Port. Eles conhecem a rua. Eles conhecem-**na**.

– *They know the street. They know **it**.*

Port. Eles são profissionais. Eles são-**no**;

Braz. Port. Eles são profissionais. Eles **os** são.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

– *They are professionals. They are (so).*

Indirect Object

An indirect object pronoun tells us “to whom” or “for whom” something is done. Just like how direct object pronouns are used instead of direct objects, indirect object pronouns replace indirect objects, which are personal nouns.

Below is the table that shows all the forms of indirect object pronouns in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
<i>me</i>	<i>me</i>	<i>mi</i>	<i>me</i>	<i>me</i>
<i>te</i>	<i>te</i>	<i>ti</i>	<i>te</i>	<i>you</i> <i>(sing.inf)</i>
<i>le</i>	<i>lhe</i>	<i>gli /le</i>	<i>lui</i>	<i>him, it/her</i>
<i>nos</i>	<i>nos</i>	<i>ci</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>us</i>
<i>os</i>	<i>vos</i>	<i>vi</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>you (pl.</i> <i>inf.)</i>
<i>les</i>	<i>lhes</i>	<i>loro/ Loro</i>	<i>leur</i>	<i>them</i>

Use of Indirect Object Pronouns

Like direct, indirect object pronouns in Romance languages can be used only in conjugation with verbs. It is important to see the difference between direct and indirect object, since they have different forms in English and Romance languages. In general, to indicate the indirect object phrase in a sentence, you should ask “to whom?”, “for whom?” For example:

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS



Did you know?

The expression “Soy mas Peruano que la papa” meaning “I am more Peruvian than the potato” is used by the locals as potatoes are historically from Peru.

Sp. Él escribió una carta **a Sandra**.

Port. Ele escreveu uma carta **para Sandra**.

It. Ha scritto una lettera **a Sandra**.

Fr. Il a écrit une lettre **à Sandra**.

– He wrote a letter **to Sandra**.

A **Sandra** is the indirect object, and therefore, we can replace it with the indirect object pronoun Sp. **le**, Port. **lhe**, It. **le**, Fr. **lui**:

Sp. Él **le** escribió.

Port. Ele **lhe** escreveu (Ele escreveu para ela).

It. lui **le** ha scritto.

Fr. Il **lui** a écrit.

– He wrote **to her**.

One more example:

Sp. Él compró un regalo **para mí**.

Port. Ele comprou um presente **para mim**.

It. Lui ha comprato un regalo **per me**.

Fr. Il a acheté un cadeau **pour moi**.

– He bought a gift **for me**.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

He bought a gift for whom? *For me*. Therefore, we should use the indirect object pronoun *me*:

Sp. **Me** compró un regalo.

Port. Ele **me** comprou um presente.

It. **Mi** ha comprato un regalo.

Fr. Il **m'**a acheté un cadeau.

- He bought **me** a gift.

It should be said that direct and indirect object pronouns are the same for Romance languages except in the 3rd person.



NOTE:

In Spanish, Portuguese and French, the 3rd person indirect object pronoun is gender neutral and it is common for Spanish to maintain the indirect object phrase in the sentence to make it clear:

Sp. Él escribió una carta a Sandra. Le escribió **a ella**.

- He wrote a letter to Sandra. He wrote **to her**.

*However, Italian differentiates the 3rd person indirect pronouns, which are **gli** (to him) and **le** (to her) in the singular. Note, that **gli** and **le** put before the conjugated form of the verb, whereas **loro** follows the conjugated verb form. Also, as you noticed, there is no gender identification with **loro**.*

Gli** becomes **gl'** before forms of the verb that begin with **-i**, whereas **le** and **loro** never contract in Italian. However, this rule is quite old and it's possible to use **gli

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

before **-i** without any contraction. For example:

*Io scrivo a John – Io **gli** scrivo. – I write to John. I write to **him**.*

*Tu insegni a John – Tu **gl'insegni** (or Tu **gli insegni**). – You teach John. You teach **him**.*

*Parliamo a Sandra – **Le** parliamo. – We speak to Sandra. We speak to **her**.*

*Parla agli studenti – Parla **loro**. – She speaks to the students. She speaks to **them**.*

Common Verbs Used with an Indirect Object in Romance Languages

Below is the list of words which usually take a person as the indirect object in Romance languages.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
comprar algo a (le)	comprar algo a (lhe)	comprare qualcosa a (gli/le)	acheter quelque chose à (lui)	to buy smth for smb
contar algo a (le)	contar algo a (lhe)	contare qualcosa a (gli/le)	raconter quelque chose à (lui)	to tell smth to smb
dar algo a (le)	dar algo a (lhe)	dare qualcosa a (gli/le)	donner quelque chose à (lui)	to give smth to smb
decir algo a (le)	dizer algo a (lhe)	dire qualcosa a (gli/le)	dire de quelque chose à (lui)	to say smth to smb
escribir algo a (le)	escrever algo a (lhe)	scrivere qualcosa a (gli/le)	écrire quelque chose à (lui)	to write smth to smb

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
mandar algo a (le)	enviar algo a (lhe)	inviare, mandare qualcosa a (gli/le)	envoyer quelque chose à (lui)	<i>to send smth to smb</i>
mostrar algo a (le)	mostrar algo a (lhe)	mostrare qualcosa a (gli/le)	montrer quelque chose à (lui)	<i>to show smth to smb</i>
pedir algo a (le)	pedir algo a (lhe)	chiedere qualcosa a (gli/le)	demandeur de quelque chose à (lui)	<i>to ask smth of smb</i>
servir algo a (le)	servir algo a (lhe)	servire qualcosa a (gli/le)	servir quelque chose à (lui)	<i>to serve smth to smb</i>
traer algo a (le)	trazer a (lhe) algo	apportare qualcosa a (gli/le)	apporter quelque chose à (lui)	<i>to bring smth to smb</i>

Word Order of Indirect Object Pronouns

Generally indirect object pronouns follow the same word order rules as direct object pronouns. (**See Word Order of Direct Object Pronouns p.101**)

Contraction.

Using Direct and Indirect Object Pronouns in the Same Sentence

When direct and indirect object pronouns appear in the same sentence, they can be combined (contracted), which is a natural way to make our pronunciation simpler. Once we have both the direct and indirect object pronouns in the same sentence, the indirect object pronoun goes in front of the direct object pronoun.

**Did you know?**

The islands of São Tomé e Príncipe are located in the equatorial Atlantic, and is Africa's 2nd smallest country. Portuguese is the official language of the country. If you want to meet smiling people and enjoy astonishing beaches, you need to go to this island.

Unlike the French language, the phenomenon of contraction exists only in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian. Moreover, each of these romance languages has its own special cases of combining the indirect object pronoun with the direct object pronoun, which require particular consideration, as this phenomenon significantly distinguishes one from the other.

Spanish

The contraction of the indirect object pronoun and the direct object pronoun in Spanish is considered to be one of the simplest compared with Portuguese and Italian, as only the 3rd person singular and plural of the indirect object pronoun and the direct object pronoun combines together.

Indirect object pronouns **le** and **les** are changed to **se** when followed by **lo, la, los** or **las** in order to make it simpler for you to pronounce it.

Below is the table demonstrating the combination of the indirect object pronoun and the direct object pronoun in Spanish.

Spanish
le, les + lo, la, los or las = se lo, se la, se los or se las

Example:

Sp. Envío un mensaje a Sandra. **Se lo** envío.

– I send a message to Sandra. I send it **to her**.



NOTE:

In case with two verbs in the sentence and commands, the indirect object pronoun and the direct object pronoun attach together where the indirect object pronoun precedes the direct object pronoun. For example:

Sp. No quiero contarte este cuento. No quiero contártelo

*– I do not want to tell **you** this story. I do not want to tell **it to you**.*

Sp. Dame la torta. Dámela.

*– Give **me** the cake. Give **it to me**.*

It should be noticed that once the object pronouns are attached to a verb, an accent is added to maintain the natural stress of the verb.

Portuguese

Portuguese contraction of the indirect object pronoun and the direct object pronoun is extended and requires close attention of the learners.

Below is the table demonstrating the combination of the indirect object pronoun and the direct object pronoun in Portuguese.

Indirect	Direct			
+	o	a	os	as
me	= mo	= ma	= mos	= mas
te	= to	= ta	= tos	= tas

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

lhe	= lho	= lha	= lhos	= lhas
nos	= no-lo	= no-la	= no-los	= no-las
vos	= vo-lo	= vo-la	= vo-los	= vo-las
lhes	= lho	= lha	= lhos	= lhas

Examples:

Port. Ela mandou-**me** uma mensagem. Ela mandou-**ma**
(Braz. port. Ela **me** mandou uma mensagem. Ela **ma** mandou)

– She sent **me** a message. She sent **it to me**.

Port. Ela deu-**lhe** os livros. Ela deu-**lhos**.

– She gave **him** the books. She gave **them to him**.



NOTE:

The mentioned above combination of the indirect object pronoun and the direct object pronoun is out of use in Brazilian Portuguese. For example:

Braz. Port. Ela **me** mandou uma mensagem. Ela **me** mandou-**a**)

– She sent **me** a message. She sent **it to me**.

Braz. Port. Ela deu-**lhe** os livros. Ela **lhe** deu-**os**.

– She gave **him** the books. She gave **them to him**.

Italian

When both the indirect object pronoun and the direct object pronoun appear in the same sentence in Italian, the indirect object pronoun also precedes the direct object pronoun.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

It should be noted that **mi**, **ti**, **ci** and **vi** change to **me**, **te**, **ce** and **ve** when followed by the direct object pronoun. Also, when the indirect object pronouns **gli** (to him), **le** (to her), and **Le** (to you, formal) are followed by the direct object pronouns **lo**, **la**, **li**, **le** combine into one word: **glielo**, **gliela**, **glieli**, **gliele**) and formal **Le** retain its capital letter and starts with capital G after combining: **Le – Glielo** (-a, -i, -e).

Below is the table that shows the combination of the indirect object pronoun and the direct object pronoun in Italian.

Indirect	Direct					
+	lo	la	l'	li	le	ne
mi	= me lo	= me la	= me l'	= me li	= me le	= me ne
ti	= te lo	= te la	= te l'	= te li	= te le	= te ne
ci	= ce lo	= ce la	= ce l'	= ce li	= ce le	= ce ne
vi	= ve lo	= ve la	= ve l'	= ve li	= ve le	= ve ne
gli	= glielo	= gliela	= gliel'	= glieli	= gliele	= gliene
le	= glielo	= gliela	= gliel'	= glieli	= gliele	= gliene
Le	= Glielo	= Gliela	= Gliel'	= Glieli	= Gliele	= Gliene

Examples:

It. Lei **mi** dà un libro. Lei **me lo** dà.

– She gives **me** a book. She gives **it to me**.

It. Lui **ti** compra dei regali. Lui **te ne** compra.

– He buys **you** some gifts. He buys **you some** (of it, of them).

Italian **ci**, **ne** and French **y**, **en** Special Pronouns

Italian **ci** and French **y** Pronouns



Did you know?

Sicily has the largest opera house in Italy. The Teatro Massimo was built in Palermo in 1897. Sicily is also the largest island in the Mediterranean Sea covering almost 10,000 square miles.

These pronouns do not exist in Spanish and Portuguese, and therefore, are used only in Italian and French. **Ci** and **y** pronouns are also called adverbial pronouns and are widely used in these Romance languages. Since Italian **ci** and French **y** pronouns have identical rules of use, they will be considered together, which will help to demonstrate areas of convergence of these pronouns.

Use of **ci** and **y**

Below are the rules of use for these pronouns:

1. Italian **ci** and French **y** usually replace a place and is used to say “there”. They replace a noun or a phrase (representing a place), which is introduced by a preposition of place, which can be Fr. *à, dans, en, chez, sur, sous*; It. *a, in, su, con*. For instance:

It. Vado *a* Madrid = **ci** vado;

Fr. Je vais *à* Madrid = j'**y** vais.

– I go to Madrid = I go **there**.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Let's take one more example:

It. Vai *in* Francia = **ci** vai;

Fr. Tu vas *en* France = tu **y** vas.

– You go to France = you go **there**.

2. Italian **ci** and French **y** usually replace *a thing* which is also preceded by Fr. *à* (*au, aux, à l', à la*), It. *a* (sometimes *in, su, con*). For example:

It. Penso spesso *al* mio lavoro = **ci** penso spesso;

Fr. Je pense souvent *à* mon travail = j'**y** pense souvent.

– I often think about my job = I often think **about it**.

The prepositions, such as French **à** and Italian **a** are usually used with certain verbs. According to the grammar, particular verbs should always be followed by the particular preposition like Fr. **à** or It. **a** (ex. It. pensare **a**; Fr. penser **à** – to think **of/about**).

To know when to put the pronoun **ci** and **y**, it is advisable to learn the most common verbs followed by the preposition **à** in French and **a** in Italian.

Below is the list of the most common verbs followed by the preposition **à** in French and **a** in Italian after which the infinitive is used.

Italian Verbs with a + the infinitive	French Verbs with à + the infinitive	English
aiutare a fare qualcosa	aider à faire quelque chose	to help to do smth.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Italian Verbs with a + the infinitive	French Verbs with à + the infinitive	English
imparare a fare qualcosa	apprendre à faire quelque chose	<i>to learn how to do smth.</i>
arrivare a fare qualcosa	arriver à faire quelque chose	<i>to succeed in doing smth.</i>
avere <u>da</u> fare qualcosa	avoir à faire quelque chose	<i>to have to / be obliged to do smth.</i>
provare a fare qualcosa	chercher à faire quelque chose	<i>to attempt to do smth.</i>
cominciare (iniziare) a fare qualcosa	commencer à faire quelque chose	<i>to begin to do smth.</i>
continuare a fare qualcosa	continuer à faire quelque chose	<i>to continue to do smth.</i>
acconsentire a fare qualcosa	consentir à faire quelque chose	<i>to agree to do smth.</i>
decidersi a (di) fare qualcosa	se décider à faire quelque chose	<i>to make up one's mind to do smth.</i>
incoraggiare qualcuno a fare qualcosa	encourager quelqu'un à faire quelque chose	<i>to encourage someone to do smth.</i>
abituarsi a fare qualcosa	s'habituer à faire quelque chose	<i>to get used to doing smth.</i>
esitare a fare qualcosa	hésiter à faire quelque chose	<i>to hesitate to do smth.</i>
chiamare (qualcuno) a fare qualcosa	inviter (quelqu'un) à faire quelque chose	<i>to invite (someone) to do smth.</i>
mettersi a fare qualcosa	se mettre à faire quelque chose	<i>to start doing smth.</i>

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Italian Verbs with a + the infinitive	French Verbs with à + the infinitive	English
forzare (qualcuno) a fare qualcosa	forcer (quelqu'un) à faire quelque chose	<i>to force (someone) to do smth.</i>
obbligare (qualcuno) a fare qualcosa	obliger (quelqu'un) à faire quelque chose	<i>to oblige (someone) to do smth.</i>
riuscire a fare qualcosa	parvenir à faire quelque chose	<i>to succeed in doing smth.</i>
passare (trascorrere) il tempo a fare qualcosa	passer du temps à faire quelque chose	<i>to spend time doing smth.</i>
pensare a fare qualcosa	penser à faire quelque chose	<i>to think of doing smth.</i>
perdere tempo a fare qualcosa	perdre du temps à faire quelque chose	<i>to waste time doing smth.</i>
persistere a fare qualcosa	persister à faire quelque chose	<i>to persist in doing smth.</i>
spingere (qualcuno) a fare qualcosa	pousser (quelqu'un) à faire quelque chose	<i>to push someone to do smth.</i>
prepararsi a fare qualcosa	se préparer à faire quelque chose	<i>to prepare oneself to do smth.</i>
ricominciare a fare qualcosa	recommencer à faire quelque chose	<i>to begin doing smth. again</i>
rinunciare a fare qualcosa	renoncer à faire quelque chose	<i>to give up doing smth.</i>
resistere a fare qualcosa	résister à faire quelque chose	<i>to resist doing smth.</i>

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Italian Verbs with a + the infinitive	French Verbs with à + the infinitive	English
riuscire a fare qualcosa	réussir à faire quelque chose	<i>to succeed in doing smth.</i>
continuare (tenere) a fare qualcosa	tenir à faire quelque chose	<i>to insist on doing smth.</i>
divertirsi a fare qualcosa	s'amuser à faire quelque chose	<i>to have fun doing smth.</i>
aspettarsi a (di) fare qualcosa	s'attendre à faire quelque chose	<i>to expect doing smth.</i>
autorizzare (qualcuno) a fare qualcosa	autoriser (quelqu'un) à faire quelque chose	<i>to allow someone to do smth.</i>
interessarsi a qualcosa	s'intéresser à quelque chose	<i>to show a special interest in smth.</i>

It is notable that these pronouns can replace only a thing and never a person because in this case the indirect object or the disjunctive pronoun should be used. For instance:

It. Hai parlato a Daniela? Sì **le** ho parlato.

Fr. Tu as parlé à Daniela? Oui je **lui** ai parlé.

- *Have you talked to Daniela? Yes, I have talked **to her**.*

Example using disjunctive pronoun:

It. Penso a **lui**;

Fr. Je pense à **lui**.

- *I think of **him**.*

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

3. **Ci** and **y** are also used in such expression as It. **c'è** (*singular*), **ci sono** (*plural*); Fr. **il y a** meaning the existence of something – *there is, there are*. For example:

Fr. **Il y a** un livre sur la table;

It. **C'è** un libro sul tavolo.

– **There is** a book on the table.

Fr. **Il y a** des lettres sur la table;

It. **Ci sono** lettere sul tavolo.

– **There are** letters on the table.

Italian **ne** and French **en** Pronouns

These pronouns are also used only in Italian and French and do not have equivalents in Spanish and Portuguese. Italian **ne** and French **en** pronouns are also called adverbial pronouns and are often used in these languages. Since **ne** and **en** pronouns also have identical rules of use, they will be considered together.

Use of **ne** and **en**

Below are the rules of use of these pronouns:

1. Italian **ne** and French **en** replace a quantity (direct object representing a quantity), which can be introduced by a partitive article (Fr. *de, du, de la, de l', des*), a number, a fraction (Fr. *un quart*), an adverb of quantity (Fr. *beaucoup, un peu* *de*) or an expression of quantity (Fr. *un litre de, un kilo de, une bouteille de*). For example:



Did you know?

Tunisia is one of North Africa's most tourist friendly countries. Hammamet city has been the biggest tourist resort since the 1960s, attracting tourists from all over Europe. Arabic, French and Berber are spoken in the country.

It. Ho **due fratelli** = Ne ho due;

Fr. J'ai **deux frères** = J'en ai deux.

– I have **two brothers** = I have two **of them**.

Let's take one more example:

It. **Quanti libri** hai comprato? Ne ho comprati moltissimi;

Fr. **Combien de livres** as-tu acheté? J'en ai acheté beaucoup.

– **How many books** did you bought? I bought a lot.

It should be remembered that the quantity and the adverb of quantity is always repeated (ex. It. Compro **una bottiglia di** latte = **ne** compro una bottiglia; Fr. J'achète **une bouteille du** lait = J'**en** achète une bouteille. – I bought one bottle of milk = I bought one bottle **of it**.)

2. Italian **ne** and French **en** usually replace a thing (a noun or sentence) which is introduced by the prepositions: It. *di, da*; Fr. *de, du, de la, de l', des*. – *of, about*.

For example:

It. Parlo **del** mio lavoro = Ne parlo;

Fr. Je parle **de** mon travail – J'**en** parle.

– I speak **about** my job = I speak **about it**.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

The prepositions, such as French **de**, **du**, **des** and Italian **di**, **da** are usually used with certain verbs, that is to say that according to the grammar, particular verbs should always be followed by the particular preposition like Fr. **de** or It. **di** (ex. It. **parlare di**; Fr. **parler de** – *to speak about*). And to better know when to put the pronoun **ne** and **en**, it is advisable to learn the most common verbs followed by the preposition **de** in French and **di** in Italian.

It is notable that these pronouns can replace only a thing and never a person because in this case the disjunctive pronoun should be used. Observe the following:

It. Hai parlato di Daniela? Sì, ho parlato di **lei**.

Fr. Tu as parlé de Daniela? Oui j'ai parlé d'**elle**.

- Did you speak about Daniela? Yes, I spoke about **her**

3. **ne** and **en** are also used in such expression as:

It. **Me ne vado**;

Fr. **Je m'en vais**.

– *I am going away (I am leaving).*

It should be noted that the pronouns It. **ci**, **ne** and Fr. **y**, **en** go before the conjugated verb.



NOTE:

*If a sentence contain two verbs, in which one is conjugated verb and one infinitive, in Italian you should attach **ci** or **ne** to the infinitive. For example:*

*Voglio andar**ci**. – I want to go **there**.*

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

*Ha bisogno di comprar**ne** tre. – He needs to buy three **of them**.*

*But in French the pronouns **y** and **en** are placed in front of the infinitive. For example:*

*Je veux **y** aller. – I want to go **there**.*

*Il a besoin d'**en** acheter trois. – He needs to buy three **of them**.*

Prepositional (Disjunctive) Pronouns

In Romance languages the prepositional or disjunctive pronouns follow a preposition or a verb or when you want to emphasize something.

Below is the table that shows all the forms of prepositional (disjunctive) pronouns in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
mí	mim	me	moi	<i>me</i>
ti	ti/si	te	toi	<i>you (sing.inf)</i>
él/ella/usted	ele/ela/você, o/a senhor(a)	lui/lei/Lei	lui/elle	<i>him, it/her/you (sing.f.)</i>
nosotros(as)	nos	noi	nous	<i>us</i>
vosotros(as)	vos	voi	vous	<i>you (pl. inf.)</i>
ellos/ellas/ustedes	êles/elas/vocês, os/as senhores(as)	loro/Loro	eux/elles	<i>they (m. fem)/you (pl.f)</i>

Use of prepositional (Disjunctive) Pronouns

1. In Romance languages prepositional (disjunctive) pronouns are used after prepositions:

Sp. **a, de, en, para, por, sobre, con, sin;**

Port. **a, de, em, para, por, sobre, sem;**

It. **a, di, in, per, su, senza di;**

Fr. **à, de, en, pour, sur, avec, sans.**

- to (at), from, in, for, on (about), with, without.

For example:

Sp. Esto es **para** ti;

Euro. Port. Isto é **para** ti; Braz. Port. Isto é **para** você.

It. Questo è **per** te;

Fr. C'est **pour** toi.

- This is **for** you.



Did you know?

Construction of the Panama Canal was originally started by French in the 1880s, but was taken over by the United States in 1904. It officially opened on August 15, 1914. The Panama Canal is considered one of the 7 modern World Wonders.

Sp. Su padre habla **de** mí;

Port. Seu pai fala **de** mim;

It. Suo padre parla **di** me;

Fr. Son père parle **de** moi.

- His father is talking **about** me.

Special Forms of Prepositional Pronouns and Prepositions in

Spanish and Portuguese

In Spanish and Portuguese certain prepositions used with some prepositional pronouns change their form. These rules should be remembered.

Spanish

When the pronouns **yo** y **tú** follows the preposition **con**, it will be combined into **conmigo** and **contigo**. Below is the table that demonstrates this rule:

Spanish	
con + yo = conmigo	con + tú = contigo

Example:

¿Puedo bailar **contigo**? – *May I dance **with you**?*

¿Quieres viajar **conmigo**? – *Do you want to travel **with me**?*

It is worth saying that prepositional object pronouns have the same forms as subject pronouns, except the 1st and the 2nd person singular in Spanish.

Portuguese

In Portuguese when some prepositional pronouns follow the prepositions **com**, **em** and **de**, they change their form. Below is the table that demonstrates this rule:

Com

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Portuguese				
com + mim = comigo	com + ti = contigo	com + si = consigo	com + nós = connosco, conosco	com + vós = convosco

But with other pronouns forms remain as follows: **com ele/ela, com você/vocês, com eles/elas**. For example:

Posso dançar **contigo** (but **com você**)? - *Can I dance with you?*

De

Portuguese			
de + ele = dele	de + ela = dela	de + eles = deles	de + elas = delas

But de **mim, de, ti** and etc. For example:

Eu sei o nome **dela** (but **teu nome**). - *I know her name (but his name).*

Em

Portuguese			
em + ele = nele	em + ela = nela	em + eles = neles	em + elas = nelas

But **em mim, em ti, em nós** and etc. For instance:

Nós acreditamos **nele** (but **em ti**). - *We trust him (but you)*

Below there is a general table displaying all the changed forms of prepositional pronouns and those that remained unchanged to make it simple to observe the whole picture. Prepositional pronouns **in bold** are changed forms.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Pron. / Prep.	com	de	em
mim	comigo	de mim	em mim
ti/si	contigo/ consigo	de ti	em ti
êle / ela	com ele / ela	dele / dela	nele / nela
você, o/a senhor(a)	com você / o/a senhor(a)	de você / o/a senhor(a)	em você / o/a senhor(a)
nós	connosco, conosco	de nós	em nós
vós	convosco	de vós	em vós
eles / elas	com eles	deles / delas	neles / nelas
vocês, os/as senhores(as)	côm vocês / os/as senhores(as)	de vocês / os/as senhores(as)	em vocês / os/as senhores(as)

In Spanish and Portuguese prepositional pronouns that are preceded by the preposition **a** are used to clarify, emphasize or contrast something. For example:

Sp. **A mí** nadie me llamó;

Port. **A mim** ninguém me ligou.

– *No one called me.*

Use of Prepositional (Disjunctive) Pronouns in French. Special Cases

Besides the cases listed above, in French, disjunctive pronouns are also called emphatic pronouns, which are also used to emphasize something. Therefore, emphatic pronouns are used in the following circumstances:

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

- for emphasis (ex. **Toi**, tu m'as dit que tu étais chez toi. – *You, you told me that you were at home.*)
- for contrast (ex. **Moi**, je parle maintenant. – *Me, I speak now.*)
- on its own without a verb (ex. Qui a acheté? **Moi**. *Who bought it? Me.*)
- after **c'est** and **ce sont**, which means *it is* (ex. **C'est moi**, Daniela. – *It's me, Daniela.* **Ce sont eux**. – *It is them.*)
- in comparison (true for Italian as well) (ex. Fr. Elle est plus jeune que **lui**. It. Lei è più giovane di **lui** – *She is younger than him.*)

In order to emphasize something in Romance languages you can add Sp. **mismo**, Port. **mesmo**, It. **stesso**, Fr. **même** to the subject pronouns in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian and to the disjunctive pronouns in French. Study the following:



Did you know?

Brazil is the 6th largest country in the world by population at over 208 million people and has the longest continuous coastline in the world (7.491 km).

Sp. Lo hice **yo mismo**;

Port. **Eu mesmo** fiz isso;

It. L'ho fatto **io stesso**;

Fr. Je l'ai fait **moi même**.

– *I did it myself.*

Reflexive Pronouns

Reflexive pronouns collaborate along with reflexive verbs in order to indicate that a person performs the action toward or for himself or herself. Reflexive pronouns and reflexive verbs are widely used in Romance language (See **Reflexive Verbs p. 500**).

Below is the table that shows all the forms of reflexive pronouns in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
me	me	mi	me/m'	<i>myself</i>
te	te	ti	te/t'	<i>yourself</i>
se	se	si	se/s'	<i>himself/ herself/ itself</i>
nos	nos	ci	nouns	<i>ourselves</i>
os	vos	vi	vous	<i>yourselves</i>
se	se	si	se	<i>themselves</i>

For example:



Did you know?

Italy's Sardinia is one of the most ancient civilizations in Europe, which has over 7000 prehistoric archaeological sites dating from before 1000 BC.

Sp. **Me** visto;

Port. Visto-**me**; (or **Me** visto);

It. **Mi** vesto;

Fr. Je **m'**habille.

– *I get dressed.*

As you can see from the French example, the reflexive pronouns **me**, **te** and **se** become **m'**, **t'** and **s'** before verbs that begin with a **vowel** or silent **h**. It should also be mentioned that there is a liaison between *nous* or *vous* and a word that begins with a vowel or silent **h** (ex. *Nous nous habillons* - *We get dressed*).

Use of Reflexive Pronouns

Reflexive verbs require the use of reflexive pronouns in order to show that the direct object of the verb is also the subject, that is to say the subject is performing the action on himself or

herself. Compare, for example, two sentences in four Romance languages where one sentence is reflexive and another is not:



Did you know?

Guadeloupe is a French department (since 1946), and a group of islands located in the southern Caribbean Sea. It has incredible white sand beaches and the highest waterfall in the Caribbean.

Sp. **Me** lavo. Lavo **mi** perro.

Port. **Me** lavo (or Lavo-**me**). Eu **lavo meu cão**.

It. **Mi** lavo. Lavo **il mio cane**.

Fr. Je **me** lave. Je lave **mon chien**.

– I wash **myself**. I wash **my dog**.

The given examples demonstrate that the verb to wash yourself (Sp. **lavarse**, Port. **lavar-se**, It. **lavarsi**, Fr. **se laver**) is reflexive (used with the reflexive pronoun) and another to wash (Sp. **lavar**, Port. **lavar**, It. **lavare**, Fr. **laver**) is not reflexive.

We can also add reflexive pronouns to some other verbs, which are not initially reflexive to make them reflexive:

Sp. **hablarse**,

Port. **falar-se**,

It. **parlarsi**,

Fr. **se parler**

– to talk to oneself (each other).

Word Order of Reflexive Pronouns

In Romance languages, in Spanish, Brazilian Portuguese, Italian and French in particular, reflexive pronouns are usually put right before the verb and after indirect and direct object pronouns.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

However in European Portuguese, as with direct and indirect pronouns, the reflexive pronoun usually follows the verb with a hyphen (ex. **Ela sentou-se.** – *She sat down.*), except in negative and interrogative sentences, after prepositions and conjunctions and relative clauses (e.x. **Ela não se sentou.** – *She did not sit*). (See **Word Order of Direct Object Pronouns p. 101 and Reflexive Verbs p.500**)

In the case of compound verbs such as perfect tenses or verb + the infinitive, present progressive etc., the reflexive pronoun should either be attached to the infinitive in Spanish, Portuguese (with a hyphen) and Italian or be placed before the infinitive in French or go before the first conjugated verb (present progressive, perfect tenses) in Spanish, Brazilian Portuguese, Italian and French (See **Word Order of Direct Object Pronouns p.101 and Reflexive Verbs p.500**).

Possessive Adjectives and Pronouns in Romance Languages

Possessive Adjectives

Possessive adjectives (English my, your, his, her, etc.) are used to indicate possession and ownership. For example, my car, his house. In Romance languages all possessive adjectives agree in gender and number with the noun that they modify. For example:



Did you know?

Dominican Republic, located in the Caribbean, is the only country the world to have an image of the Holy Bible on its national flag.

Sp. **mi** casa,

Port **a minha** casa,

It. **la mia** casa,

Fr. **ma** maison.

– **My** house.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

The word “house” in Romance languages is feminine, so we need to use possessive pronoun which is also feminine. As we could also see from the previous example, in Portuguese and Italian the possessive adjectives are preceded by the appropriate definite article and in Spanish and French no definite articles are used with the possessive pronouns.

Below is a table presenting all the types of possessive adjectives in Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
<i>masc./ pl.masc. fem/pl.fem</i>	<i>masc./ pl.masc. fem/pl.fem</i>	<i>masc./ pl.masc. fem/pl.fem</i>	<i>masc./ pl.masc. fem/ pl.fem</i>	
mi/mis	o meu/ os meus a minha / as minhas	il mio/ i miei la mia/ le mie	mon/ mes ma	<i>my</i>
tu/tus	o teu/ os teus a tua/ as tuas	il tuo/ i tuoi la tua/ le tue	ton/ tes ta	<i>your</i>
su/sus	o seu/os seus a sua/as suas	il suo/ i suoi la sua/ le sue	son/ ses sa	<i>his, her, its</i>
nuestro/ nuestros nuestra/ nuestras	o nosso/ os nossos a nossa/ as nossas	il nostro/ i nostri la nostra/ le nostre	notre/ nos	<i>our</i>

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
<i>vuestro/ vuestros vuestra/ vuestras</i>	<i>o vosso/ os vossos a vossa/ as vossas</i>	<i>il vostro/ i nostri la vostra/ le vostre</i>	<i>votre/ vos</i>	<i>your</i>
<i>su/sus</i>	<i>o seu/ os seus a sua/ as suas</i>	<i>il loro/ i loro la loro/ le loro</i>	<i>leur/ leurs</i>	<i>their</i>

Below will be demonstrated how the possessive adjectives agree in gender and number and with a noun and how they are used in sentences. We will take words *book* (Sp. **libro**, Port. **livro**, It. **libro**, Fr. **livre**), which is masculine in Romance languages and *house* (Sp. **casa**, Port. **casa**, It. **casa**, Fr. **maison**), which is feminine to demonstrate it.

Spanish				
	singular		plural	
	masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
1st person	mi libro mis libros	mi casa mis casas	nuestro libros nuestros libros	nuestra casa nuestras casas
2nd person	tu libro tus libros	tu casa tus casas	vuestro libros vuestros libros	vuestra casa vuestras casas
3rd person	su libro sus libros	su casa sus casas	su libros sus libros	su casa sus casas

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Portuguese				
	singular		plural	
	masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
1st person	o meu livro os meus livros	a minha casa as minhas casas	o nosso livro os nossos livros	a nossa casa as nossas casas
2nd person	o teu livro os teus livros	a tua casa as tuas casas	o vosso livro os vossos livros	a vossa casa as vossas casas
3rd person	o seu livro os seus livros	a sua casa as suas casas	o seu livro os seus livros	a sua casa as suas casas

Italian				
	singular		plural	
	masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
1st person	il mio libro i miei libri	la mia casa le mie case	il nostro libro i nostri libri	la nostra casa le nostre case
2nd person	il tuo libro i tuoi libri	la tua casa le tue case	il vostro libro i vostri libri	la vostra casa le vostre case
3rd person	il suo libro i suoi libri	la sua casa le sue case	il loro libro i loro libri	la loro casa le loro case

French				
	singular		plural	
	masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

French				
1st person	mon livre mes livres	ma maison mes maisons	notre livre nos livres	notre maison nos maisons
2nd person	ton livre tes livres	ta maison tes maisons	votre livre vos livres	votre maison vos maisons
3rd person	son livre ses livres	sa maison ses maisons	leur livre leurs livres	leur maison leurs maisons

It is notable that in French the possessive adjectives **mon**, **ton** and **son** should be used before *feminine* nouns or adjectives that begin with a **vowel** or silent **h**. For example:

Elle est **mon** amie – *she is my friend*.

C'est une **mon** histoire favorite. – *This is my favourite story*.



NOTE:

*In Italian the possessive adjectives do not usually use the definite article when followed by singular nouns relating to family members or relatives (e.g. **mio** fratello – **my** brother), except with **loro** (e.g. **il loro** padre – **their** father; **i nostri** zii – our uncles; **i vostri** zii – your uncles).*

Possession with **de** (Spanish, Portuguese, French) and **di** (Italian)

In Romance languages it is possible to form the possession with the prepositions Sp. **de**, Port. **de**, It. **di**, Fr. **de**, which are used with the name of a person or the appropriate prepositional object pronoun (except Italian and French. In this case a noun is used) in order to avoid the variety of meanings and ambiguity the

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

use of the possessive pronouns (his, her, its), which are similar in Romance languages. Study the following:

Sp. la casa **de** John,

Port. a casa **de** John,

It. la casa **di** John,

Fr. la maison **de** John.

– *John's house.*

Sp. la casa **de** él,

Port. a casa **dele**,

It. la casa **di** un ragazzo,

Fr. la maison **d'un** garçon.

– **His** house (Fr. *boy's house*).



NOTE:

In French the possession can be expressed in the following ways:

- by **a demonstrative pronoun + de + a noun** (*Ma maison est celle de mon père* - *My house is that of my father*).
- by using **être à + the disjunctive pronoun** (*Cette voiture est à moi. C'est ma propre voiture* - *This is my own car*).

Omission of Possessive Adjectives

Unlike in English, in Romance languages possessive adjectives are not used when relating to parts of the body, clothing or personal possessions when the possessor is clear, in this case, the definite article is used. For example:

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Sp. Puso **las** manos en **los** bolsillos,
Port. Ele colocou **as** mãos **nos** bolsos,
It. Ha messo **le** mani **nelle** tasche,
Fr. Il a mis **les** mains dans **les** poches.
– *He put his hands in his pockets.*

But when the possessor is not clear, the possessive pronoun should be used.

Possessive Pronouns

In Romance languages possessive pronouns are used to replace a noun accompanied by a possessive adjective. They can be used to shorten a phrase (*my car – mine*). The possessive pronouns must agree with the noun it replaces in gender (masculine and feminine) and number (singular and plural) and are used with the appropriate definite article. For instance:



Did you know?

Guinea Bissau is a Portuguese speaking country on West Africa's Atlantic coast. 16% of the national territory are protected areas (6 national parks, nature reserves and hunting reserves). The most popular national park is the Orango Islands National Park.

Sp. Tu casa es más grande que **la mía**;

Port. A tua casa é maior que **a minha**;

It. La tua casa è più grande **della mia**;

Fr. Ta maison est plus grande que **la mienne**.

– *Your house is bigger than mine.*

Sp. Mi computadora está descompuesta. ¿Puedo usar **la tuya**?;

Euro. Port. Meu computador está quebrado. Posso usar **o teu**?;

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Braz. Port. Meu computador está quebrado. Posso usar **o seu?**;

It. Il mio computer è rotto. Posso usare **il tuo?**;

Fr. Mon ordinateur est en panne. Puis-je utiliser **le tien?**

– *My computer is broken. Can I use yours?*

The possessive pronouns can also be used with contracted forms of the definite article. (See **Contraction of the Article p. 84**). For example:

Sp. Envié la carta a mi amigo. ¿Se la Enviaste **al** tuyo?;

Euro. Port. Enviei a carta para o meu amigo. Enviaste **ao (para o)** teu?;

Braz. Port. Enviei a carta para o meu amigo. Enviaste **ao (para o)** seu?;

It. Ho inviato una lettera al mio amico. Hai mandato **al** tuo?;

Fr. Je ai envoyé une lettre à mon ami. As-tu envoyé **au** tien?

– *I sent a letter to my friend. Did you send one to yours?*



NOTE:

*In Italian the definite article is usually omitted after the verb **essere**: Questo libro è **mio** - This book **is mine**.*

*In Spanish the neuter article **lo** + **masculine singular possessive adjective** usually refers to an abstract thing rather than a concrete noun:*

***Lo tuyo** es fantastic. – The business of yours is fantastic.*

Below is the table presenting all the types of possessive pronouns in Romance languages:

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
<i>masc./ pl.masc. fem/pl.fem</i>	<i>masc./ pl.masc. fem/pl.fem</i>	<i>masc./ pl.masc. fem/pl.fem</i>	<i>masc./ pl.masc. fem/pl.fem</i>	
el mío/ los míos la mía/ las mías	o meu/ os meus a minha/ as minhas	il mio/ i miei la mia/ le mie	le mien/ les miens la mienne/ les miennes	<i>mine</i>
el tuyo/ los tuyos la tuya/ las tuyas	o teu/ os teus a tua/ as tuas	il tuo/ i tuoi la tua/ le tue	le tien/ les tiens la tienne/ les tiennes	<i>yours</i>
el suyo/ los suyos la suya/ las suyas	o seu/ os seus a sua/ as suas	il suo/ i suoi la sua/ le sue	le sien/ les siens la sienne/ les siennes	<i>his, hers, its</i>
el nuestro/ los nuestros la nuestra/ las nuestras	o nosso/ os nossos a nossa/ as nossas	il nostro/ i nostri la nostra/ le nostre	le nôtre/ les nôtres la nôtre/ les nôtres	<i>ours</i>
el vuestro/ los vuestros la vuestra/ las vuestras	o vosso/ os vossos a vossa/ as vossas	il vostro/ i vostri la vostra/ le vostre	le vôtre/ les vôtres la vôtre/ les vôtres	<i>yours</i>
el suyo/ los suyos la suya/ las suyas	o seu/ os seus a sua/ as suas	il loro/ i loro la loro/ le loro	le leur/ les leurs la leur/ les leurs	<i>theirs</i>

Look at the following examples:

Sp. ¿Este es el teléfono celular de María? Sí, es **el suyo**.

Port. É este o celular de Maria? Sim, este é **o seu**.

It. E'questo il cellulare di Maria? Sì, questo è **il suo**.

Fr. Est-ce le téléphone portable de Maria? Oui, c'est **le sien**.

– *Is this Maria's cellphone. Yes, it is **hers**.*

Demonstrative Adjectives and Pronouns in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French

Demonstrative Adjectives

Demonstrative adjectives (English this/that and these/those) are used with nouns which they modify and point out the location of a particular thing or person. They are basically used to say “*which*” noun or to emphasize a noun, for example, **this** man, **that** car.

In Romance languages all demonstrative adjectives agree in gender and number with the noun that they modify. For example:

Sp. **este** hombre,

Port **este** homem,

It. **quest'**uomo,

Fr. **cet** homme.

– **This** man.



Did you know?

Italian is one of Switzerland's four national languages. Over 350 thousand people (8.1%) speak it natively in Ticino and Grisons (Grigioni) cantons.

Sp. **esta** mujer,

Port **esta** mulher,

It. **questa** donna,

Fr. **cette** femme.

– **This** woman.

The word “man” in Romance languages is masculine, so we need to use demonstrative adjective which is also masculine, whereas the word “woman” is feminine and thus, the masculine demonstrative adjective should be used. As we could also see from the previous examples, the definite article is not used with demonstrative adjectives in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

It should be mentioned that Spanish and Portuguese have three sets of demonstrative adjectives, indicating the different distance of a noun, whereas Italian has two sets of demonstrative adjectives like English and French has only one.

Forms of Demonstrative Adjectives

Below is a table presenting all the sets of demonstrative adjectives in Romance languages:

Demonstrative adjectives	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
this (singular masc. and fem.)	este/ esta	este/ esta	questo/ questa	ce (cet)/ cette

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Demonstrative adjectives	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
these (plural masc. and fem.)	estos/ estas	estes/ estas	questi/ queste	ces
that (singular masc. and fem.)	ese/ esa	esse/ essa	quello (quel')/ quella	—
those (plural masc. and fem.)	esos/ esas	esses/ essas	quei (quegli)/ quella	—
that over there (singular masc. and fem.)	aquel/ aquella	aquele/ aquela	—	—
those over there (plural masc. and fem.)	aquellos/ aquellas	aqueles/ aquelas	—	—



NOTE:

In Italian the forms of the demonstrative adjective **quello** are similar to the forms of the definite article (e.g. masculine: **quello** student – **quell'**amico – **quel** libro -- **quegli** studenti – **quei** libri; feminine: **quella** studentessa – **quell'**amica – **quella** rivista – **quelle** studentesse – **quelle** riviste.) (See the Definite Article p.66). Also, **quello** has the same forms as **bello** (beautiful) (See Bello p.46)

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

*In French, the demonstrative adjective **ce** becomes **cet** before a vowel.*

Demonstrative Adjectives **this** and **these** in Romance Languages

As it is seen from the table demonstrative pronouns:

Sp. **este/esta/estos/estas**; Port. **este/esta/estes/estas**; It. **questo/quella/questi/queste**; Fr. **ce (cet)/cette/ces** - *this, these* are used to indicate nouns which are physically near the speaker and the person to whom he or she is speaking. It is within reaching distance. For example:

Sp. **Este** libro es mi favorito;

Port. **Este** livro é o meu favorito;

It. **Questo** libro è il mio preferito;

Fr. **Ce** livre est mon favori

– **This** book is my favourite.

Sp. **Esta** casa es muy linda;

Port. **Esta** casa é muito linda;

It. **Questa** casa è molto bella;

Fr. **Cette** maison est très belle

– **This** house is very beautiful.

These demonstrative adjectives also signify the time and proximity:

Sp. Voy a la universidad **esta tarde**;

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Port. Vou para a universidade **esta tarde**;

It. Vado all'università **questo pomeriggio**;

Fr. Je vais à l'université **cet après-midi**.

– *I go to the university **this** afternoon.*

Demonstrative Adjectives **that** and **those** in Romance Languages

Sp. **ese/esa/esos/esas**; Port. **esse/essa/esses/essas**;
It. **quello/quella/quei (quegli)/quella** - *that, those* are used
indicate nouns which are farther from the speaker and not within
the reach or rather the noun can be nearer to the listener, not the
speaker.



NOTE:

*As is obvious from the table, demonstrative adjectives such as **that** and **those** do not exist in French, but in order to make a clear distinction between **this** and **that**, the suffixes **-ci** (this) or **-là** (that) are added to the noun (e.g. **ce livre-ci** – **ce livre-là** – this book – that book). However, it is possible to use **ce (cet)/cette/ces** to say **that** or **those**.*

Below are the examples that demonstrate the use of *that* and *those* in Romance languages:

Sp. ¿Cuánto cuesta **ese** sombrero?

Port. Quanto custa **esse** chapéu?

It. Quanto costa **quel** capello?

Fr. Combien coûte ce chapeau-**là**?

– *How much does **that** hat cost?*



Did you know?

Luxembourg has 3 official languages: French, German and Luxembourgish. Children are taught in Luxembourgish in nursery schools, and French and German at primary schools.

Sp. **Esa** camisa es muy caro;

Port. **Essa** camisa é muito cara;

It. **Quella** maglietta è molto costoso;

Fr. Cette chemise-**là** est très cher.

– **That** shirt is very expensive.

Demonstrative Adjectives *that over there* and *those over there* in Spanish and Portuguese

Sp. **aquel/aquellos/aquella/aquellas**; Port. **aquele/aqueles/aquela/aquelas** (*that over there, those over there*) are used indicate nouns which are far away from both the speaker and the listener, but still within visual distance. For example:

Sp. **Aquellos** monumentos son los más antiguos de la ciudad.

Port. **Aqueles** monumentos são os mais antigos da cidade.

– **Those** monuments **over there** are the oldest in the city.

Sp. **Aquellas** mujeres son nuestras maestras.

Port. **Aquelas** mulheres são nossas professoras.

– **Those** women **over there** are our teachers.



NOTE:

It should be said that such demonstrative adjectives are not used in Italian and French, in this case It. **quello/quella/quei (quegli)/quelle** and Fr. **ce (cet)**/

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

***cette/ces** along with the suffixes **–ci** and **–là** are used to indicate nouns which are far away.*

It is notable that the lat set in Italian and French and two sets of demonstrative adjectives in Spanish and Portuguese can also be used to make a distinction between a recent past and one more distant, for example:

Sp. **Aquellos** días que pasamos en el pueblo;

Port. **Aqueles** dias que passamos na vila no inverno passado;

It. **Quei** giorni che abbiamo trascorso nel villaggio lo scorso inverno;

Fr. **Ces** jours nous les avons passés dans le village l'hiver dernier.

– ***Those** days we spent in the village last winter.*



Did you know?

“Pura vida” is the national saying in Puerto Rico, meaning “pure life”. It’s a sunny, positive expression used as a greeting, goodbye or when someone ask how you are doing.

Sp. En **aquellos** días el carro no existía;

Port. **Naqueles** dias, carro não existia;

It. In **quei** giorni la macchina non esisteva;

Fr. Dans **ces** jours, la voiture n'a pas existé.

– *At **that** time a car didn't exist.*

Combined Demonstrative Adjectives in Portuguese

Demonstrative adjectives can be combined with the prepositions **de**, **em** and **a** in Portuguese:

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Portuguese		
<i>de</i>	<i>em</i>	<i>a</i>
de + este = deste de + esta = desta de + estes = destes de + estas = destas	em + este = neste em + esta = nesta em + estes = nestes em + estas = nestas	—
de + esse = desse de + essa = dessa de + esses = desses de + essas = dessas	em + esse = nesse em + essa = nessa em + esses = nesses em + essas = nessas	—
de + aquele = daquele de + aquela = daquela de + aqueles = daqueles de + aquelas = daquelas	em + aquele = naquele em + aquela = naquela em + aqueles = naqueles em + aquelas = naquelas	a + aquele = àquele a + aquela = àquela a + aqueles = àqueles a + aquelas = àquelas

Word Order of Demonstrative Adjectives

Demonstrative adjectives in Romance languages are placed right before the noun they modify. If there is one or more than one noun in the sentence, the demonstrative adjective should be placed before each noun, for example:

Sp. **Esos** libros y **esos** periódicos están sobre la mesa;

Port. **Esses** livros e **esses** jornais estão sobre a mesa;

It. **Quei** libri e **quei** giornali sono sul tavolo;

Fr. **Ces** livres et **ces** journaux sont sur la table.

– **Those** books and **those** newspapers are on the table.

Demonstrative Pronouns

Demonstrative pronouns demonstrate or indicate the location of the noun they replace. You can use demonstrative pronouns when you have several options to choose and while choosing you can say “*this one*” (the one close to you) or “*that one*” (the one far from you). So, the words “*this one*” and “*that one*” are both demonstrative pronouns.

Demonstrative pronouns in Romance languages replace a noun in a phrase instead of modifying it like an adjective would. Observe the following:



Did you know?

Portuguese and Cantonese are the official languages of Macau. Macau is an autonomous region located on the south coast of China. It was a Portuguese territory until 1999.

Sp. **éste** que trabaja aqui es mi hermano;

Port. **este** que trabalha aqui é meu irmão;

It. **quello** che lavora qui è mio fratello.

Fr. **Celui** qui travaille ici est mon frère.

– **this one** who works here is my brother.

Forms of Demonstrative Pronouns

Below is a table presenting all the sets of demonstrative pronouns in Romance languages:

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Demonstrative pronouns	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
this (singular masc. and fem.)	<i>éste/ ésta</i>	<i>este/ esta</i>	<i>questo/ questa</i>	<i>celui/ celle</i>
these (plural masc. and fem.)	<i>éstos/ éstas</i>	<i>estes/ estas</i>	<i>questi/ queste</i>	<i>ceux/ celles</i>
that (singular masc. and fem.)	<i>ése/ ésa</i>	<i>esse/ essa</i>	<i>quello/ quella</i>	—
those (plural masc. and fem.)	<i>ésos/ ésas</i>	<i>esses/ essas</i>	<i>quelli/ quelle</i>	—
that over there (singular masc. and fem.)	<i>aqué/la</i>	<i>aquele/aquela</i>	—	—
those over there (plural masc. and fem.)	<i>aqué/los/aqué/las</i>	<i>aqueles/aquelas</i>	—	—

As follows from the table, demonstrative nouns look similar to demonstrative adjectives, except for French. Also, in Spanish only the tildes make the difference (written accent) which demonstrative pronouns carry in order to differentiate from demonstrative adjectives which do not carry a tilde. In fact, it is optional to use the tildes. It is required if the situation is ambiguous.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Like demonstrative adjectives, demonstrative pronouns of Romance languages have similar set, demonstrating the location of a noun (object) and how far from the speaker it is. All demonstrative pronouns agree in gender and number with the noun that they substitute.



NOTE:

*In French in order to distinguish between this one and that one and between these and those, the suffixes **-ci** (this) or **-là** (that) are added to demonstrative pronoun (e.g. *J'aime celui-ci* – *J'aime celle-là* – I like **this one** – I like **that one**).*

*In Italian in order to emphasize the forms of **questo** and **quello**, the words **qui** (here) and **lì** (there) may be used (e.g. *Mi piace questo qui* – *Mi piace quello lì* – I like **this one here** – I like **that one there**).*

Below is an example that demonstrates the use of demonstrating pronouns in Romance languages:

Sp. Mi casa es más grande que **ésa**;

Port. A minha casa é maior do que **essa**;

It. La mia casa è più grande di **quella**;

Fr. Ma maison est plus grande que **celle-là**.

– *My house is bigger than **that one**.*

Possession with the Demonstrative Pronoun and **de (di)**

In Romance languages the demonstrative pronoun followed by the preposition **de** in Spanish, Portuguese and French and **di** in Italian can indicate possession. For example:

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS



Did you know?

Naples is the 3rd largest city in Italy after Rome and Milan. It has a population of about 1 million people. It is also one of the oldest continuously inhabited cities in the world (over 2800 years).

Sp. El coche de Peter y **ése de** Maria;

Port. O carro de Peter e **esse de** Maria;

It. L'automobile di Peter e **quella di** Maria;

Fr. La voiture de Peter et **celle de** Maria.

– Peter's car and Maria's.

Neuter Demonstrative Pronouns in Spanish and Portuguese

In Spanish and Portuguese, there are also neuter demonstrative pronouns. They are invariable and used with the same meaning as the adjectives and pronouns above, but they refer to the things which have no gender, such as statements, situations, actions and items that the speaker cannot identify precisely.

Forms of Neuter Demonstrative Pronouns

Below is a table presenting all the neuter demonstrative pronouns in Spanish and Portuguese:

Neuter demonstrative pronouns	Spanish	Portuguese
this (near the speaker.)	esto	isto
that (near the listener.)	eso	isso

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Neuter demonstrative pronouns	Spanish	Portuguese
those (<i>plural masc. and fem.</i>)	esos/ésas	esses/essas
that (<i>far from both.</i>)	aquello	aquilo

Below is an example that demonstrates the use of neuter demonstrating pronouns in Spanish and Portuguese:

Sp. **Eso** es fantástico;

Port. **Isso** é fantástico.

– **That** is fantastic.

Sp. ¿Qué es **esto**?;

Port. O que é **isto**?

– What is **this**?

Combined Neuter Demonstrative Pronouns in Portuguese

Demonstrative adjectives can be combined with the prepositions **de**, **em** and **a** in Portuguese:

Portuguese		
de	em	a
de + isto = disto	em + isto = nisto	_____

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Portuguese		
de + isso = disso	em + isso = nisso	—
de + aquilo = daquilo	em + aquilo = naquilo	a + aquilo = àquilo

Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives

In Romance languages direct and indirect questions, other than “yes or no” questions, contain interrogative words at the beginning of the phrase. Such interrogative words can be pronouns, adjectives or proverbs as they answer the questions: *Who? What? Where? How? When? Why?*. For example:



Did you know?

The Republic of Madagascar is the 4th largest island in the world. It has 2 official languages - French and Malagasy. Madagascar was under French rule from 1895-1957.

Sp. **¿Qué** es esto?;

Port. **O que** é isto?;

It. **Che** è questo?;

Fr. **Qu'est-ce que** c'est?

- **What** is this?

Below is the table showing all the interrogative words in Romance languages:

Interrogative words	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.	s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.	s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.	s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Interrogative words	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
<i>what/ which?</i>	<i>¿qué?</i>	<i>que? o que?</i>	<i>che?</i>	<i>que (qu')?</i>
<i>about what?</i>	<i>¿de qué?</i>	<i>de que? do que?</i>	<i>di che?</i>	<i>de quoi?</i>
<i>who/ whom?</i>	<i>¿quién/ ¿quiénes?</i>	<i>quem?</i>	<i>chi?</i>	<i>qui?</i>
<i>whose?</i>	<i>¿de quién?</i>	<i>de quem?</i>	<i>di chi?</i>	<i>à qui (de qui)?</i>
<i>which one(-s)?</i>	<i>¿cuál? cuáles?</i>	<i>qual/ quais?</i>	<i>quale/ quali?</i>	<i>quel/ quelle/ quels/ quelles?</i>
				<i>lequel/ laquelle/ lesquels/ lesquelles</i>
<i>how much/how many?</i>	<i>¿cuánto/ cuánta/ cuántos/ cuántas?</i>	<i>quanto/ quanta/ quantos/ quantas?</i>	<i>quanto/ quanta/ quanti/ quante?</i>	<i>combien?</i>
<i>how?</i>	<i>¿cómo?</i>	<i>como?</i>	<i>come?</i>	<i>comment?</i>
<i>when?</i>	<i>¿cuándo?</i>	<i>quando?</i>	<i>quando?</i>	<i>quand?</i>
<i>where?</i>	<i>¿dónde?</i>	<i>onde?</i>	<i>dove?</i>	<i>où?</i>
<i>from where?</i>	<i>¿de dónde?</i>	<i>de onde?</i>	<i>di dove?</i>	<i>d'où?</i>

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Interrogative words	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
<i>why?</i>	<i>¿por qué?</i>	<i>por quê?</i>	<i>perché?</i>	<i>pourquoi?</i>



NOTE:

In French:

- **que** becomes **qu'** before a word that begins with a vowel (**qui** never combines with a word beginning with a vowel), for example: **qui** as-tu vu?; **qu'**as-tu vu? - Whom did you see?; What did you see?.
- Also it should be noted that French **que** cannot be used after a preposition, in this case, **quoi** should be used, for example: **à quoi** pense-tu? - What are you thinking about?
- **Quoi** can be used without a verb in certain idiomatic expressions, for example: **Quoi** de neuf? **Quoi** de nouveau? - What's new?
- **Quoi** can also be used alone, for example: **Quoi?** Vous me parlez? - What? Are you speaking with me?
- in French interrogative words are widely used with **est-ce que** or **est-ce qu'** (before a vowel) constructions, which are placed right after the interrogative word, and in this case, the word order is direct, for example: **qu'est-ce que** tu fais (**que** fais-tu?) - What do you do?

*In Portuguese the interrogative pronouns **que** and **o que** are used equally.*

In Spanish all the interrogative words have accents in them. This differentiates them from relative pronouns.

What

Sp. Qué, Port. Que (O que), It. Che, Fr. Que (Qu')/Quoi

The interrogative pronouns Sp. **qué**, Port. **que (o que)**, It. **che**, Fr. **que (qu')/quoi** - *what* can be used as subjects, direct objects, or objects of a preposition. For example:

As a subject:

Sp. **¿Qué** es eso?

Port. **O que** é isso?

It. **Che** è quello?

Fr. **Qu'est-ce que** c'est?

– **What** is that?

As an object:

Sp. **¿Qué** quieres?

Port. **O que** você quer?

It. **Che** vuoi?

Fr. **Que** veux-tu?

– **What** do you want?

These interrogative pronouns can also be used after prepositions such as (Sp. **a, de, en, sobre**; Port. **a, de, em, sobre**; It. **a, di, in, su**; Fr. **à, de, en**) (See **Verbs with prepositions and Prepositions p.587**).

For instance, they are used with the preposition Sp. **de (di** in Italian) meaning *about, from*: Sp. **¿de qué?** Port. **de que?** (**do que?**) It. **di che?** Fr. **de quoi?** – *about what?*. In this case the interrogative pronouns are used:

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

As objects of a preposition:

Sp. ¿**De qué** hablan?

Port. **De que** eles falam?

It. **Di che** parlano?

Fr. **De quoi** parlent-ils?

– **What** do they talk about?



NOTE:

In Italian **che** can also be expressed by **che cosa** and **cosa** (e.g. **Che fai?** – **Che cosa fai?** – **Cosa fai?** – **What** are you doing?)

Who

Sp. **Quién**, Port. **Quem**, It. **Chi**, Fr. **Qui**

It should be mentioned that in Spanish the interrogative pronoun **quién/quienes** agrees in number with the person or people referred to (e.g. **Quién** es el? **Quiénes** son ellos? – *Who is he? Who are they?*)

Also, Spanish interrogative pronoun **quién/quienes** is always used with the preposition **a** since the speaker is referring to people or any human being (e.g. **A quién** has visto? – *Who did you see?*) (See **Prepositions and Verbs p.587**)

The interrogative pronouns Sp. **quién/quienes**, Port. **quem**, It. **chi**, Fr. **qui** can be used as subjects, direct objects, or objects of a preposition in the sentences as well.

As a subject:

Sp. ¿**Quién** es ella?

Port. **Quem** é ela?

It. **Chi** è lei?

Fr. **Qui** est-elle?

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

– **Who** is she?

As an object:

Sp. ¿**A quién** quieres ver?

Port. **Quem** você quer ver?

It. **Chi** vuoi vedere?

Fr. **Qui** voulez-vous voir?

– **Who** do you want to see?

As object of a preposition:

Sp. ¿**De quién** hablan?

Port. **Do quem** eles falam?

It. **Di chi** parlano?

Fr. **De qui** parlent-ils?

– **Who** are they talking about?

Whose

de (di or à) + Sp. Quién/Quiénes, Port. Quem, It. Chi, Fr. Qui

These interrogative pronouns can also be used with the preposition Sp., Port. **de** (**di** in Italian and **à** in French) meaning *whose*, denoting ownership for people: Sp. ¿**de quién?** Port. **de quem?** (**do quem?**) It. **di chi?** Fr. **à qui?** – *whose?* For instance:

Sp. ¿**De quién** es esta casa?

Port. **De quem** é esta casa?

It. **Di chi** è questa casa?

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Fr. **À qui** est cette maison?

– **Whose** house is this?



NOTE:

In French **De qui** is used to denote relationship to someone. For example: **De qui** est-il le frère? – **Whose** brother is he?

Which or Which one/ones Sp. **Cuál**, Port. **Qual**, It. **Quale**, Fr. **Quel** (**Lequel**)



NOTE:

In Italian **quale** drops the final **-e** before **è** or **era**, and an apostrophe is not used: **Qual** era il film che guardavi? – **What** was the film that you watched?

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian these interrogative pronouns agree in number with what it is referred to, whereas in French they agree in gender and number. Normally the interrogative pronouns Sp. **cuál/cuáles**, Port. **qual/quais**, It. **quale/quali**, Fr. **quel/quelle/quels/quelles** can be used with reference both to people or things. For example:

Sp. **¿Cuál** es el nombre de esta calle?

Port. **Qual** é o nome desta rua?

It. **Qual** è il nome di questa via?

Fr. **Quel** est le nom de cette rue?

– **What** is the name of this street?

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

It should be remembered that Sp. **cuál**, Port. **qual**, It. **quale**, Fr. **quel** are also used, instead of Sp. **qué**, Port. **que** (**o que**), It. **che**, Fr. **que** (**qu'**), with the verb Sp. **ser**; Port. **ser**; It. **essere**; Fr. **être** followed by an abstract noun, unless a mere definition is being requested, for instance:

Sp. ¿**Cuál** es la razón por la que se fue?

Port. **Qual** é a razão pela qual ele foi embora?

It. **Qual** è la ragione per la quale è partito?

Fr. **Quelle** est la raison pour laquelle il est parti?

– *What is the reason for which he left?*

Sp. ¿**Qué** es el budismo?

Port. **Que** é o budismo?

It. **Che** è il buddismo?

Fr. **Qu'est-ce que** le bouddhisme?

– *What is Buddhism?*

Difference between
Sp. **Cuál**, Port. **Qual**, It. **Quale**, Fr. **Quel**
(**Lequel**) and
Sp. **Qué**, Port. **Que** (**O que**), It. **Che**, Fr. **Que**
(**Qu'**)

It should be noted that Sp. **cuál**, Port. **qual**, It. **quale**, Fr. **quel** (**lequel**) express more clearly the idea of choice from a limited number of things than Sp. **quién/quienes**, Port. **quem**, It. **chi**, Fr. **qui**. The principal difference between these two types of interrogative pronouns is that Sp. **qué**, Port. **que** (**o que**), It. **che**, Fr. **que** (**qu'**) is usually followed by a noun but Sp. **cuál**, Port. **qual**, It. **quale**, Fr. **quel** (**lequel**) never is. For example:

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

- Sp. ¿**Qué música** prefieres? ¿**Cuál es** tu música favorita?
Port. **Que música** você prefere? **Qual é** a sua música favorita?
It. **Che musica** preferisci? **Qual è** la tua musica preferita?
Fr. **Quelle musique** préfères-tu? **Quelle est** votre musique favorite?
– **What music** do you prefer? **Which is** your favourite music?

French **lequel**

The interrogative word **lequel** which means *which* one agrees with the noun to which it refers (**lequel/laquelle/lesquels/lesquelles**). The main difference between French **quel** and **lequel** is that

- **lequel** is used with more limited number of things to choose from (2 or 3 things):

Lequels de ces livres veux-tu?

– **Which ones** of these books do you want?

(**lequel** means *which one* only, whereas **quel** can also stand for *which*).

- **lequel** is used after prepositions such as **à** or **de** (except in feminine singular), while **quel** never is (See **Verbs with Prepositions p.587**). For example:

Auxquels de ces hommes parles-tu?

– **To which** one of these men are you speaking?

Desquelles parles-tu?

– **Of which ones** do you speak?

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Below is the table with contracted forms of *lequel* with *à* and *de*:

French	
<i>à</i>	<i>de</i>
à + lequel = auquel	de + lequel = duquel
à + laquelle = à laquelle (not combined)	de + laquelle = de laquelle (not combined)
à + lesquels = auxquels	de + lesquels = desquels
à + lesquelles = auxquelles	de + lesquelles = desquelles

How much/How many *Sp. Cuánto, Port. Quanto, It. Quanto, Fr. Combien*

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian the interrogative pronouns Sp. **cuánto/cuánta/cuántos/cuántas**; Port. **quanto/quanta/quantos/quantas**; It. **quanto/quanta/ quanti/quante** (*how much/how many*) must also agree in number and gender with the noun it modifies, while in French the interrogative pronoun Fr. **combien** does not.

Sp. ¿**Cuánto** cuesta esta camisa?

Port. **Quanto** custa essa camisa?

It. **Quanto** costa questa camicia?

Fr. **Combien** coûte cette chemise?

– *How much does this shirt cost?*

Sp. ¿**Cuántas** manzanas tienes?

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Port. **Quantas** maçãs tens?

It. **Quante** mele hai?

Fr. **Combien de** pommes as-tu?

– **How many** apples do you have?



NOTE:

In Portuguese **é que** is often added to the interrogative pronouns in order to give emphasis:

O que é que queres? – What do you want?

Quem é que é ele? – Who is he?

Qual é que é a tua música favorita? – Which is your favorite music?

Quanto é que custa essa camisa? – How much does this shirt cost?

In French the preposition **de** is used with **combien** before a noun:

Combien de tables? – How many tables?

How

Sp. **Cómo**, Port. **Como**, It. **Come**, Fr.
Comment

Along with all listed above interrogative pronouns, some adverbs are also used to ask questions. For example:

Sp. **¿Cómo** estas?

Port. **Como** estás (você está)?

It. **Come** stai?

Fr. **Comment** vas-tu?

– **How** are you?

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Sp. ¿**Cómo** te llamas?

Port. **Como** você se chama?

It. **Come** ti chiami?

Fr. **Comment** t'appelles tu?

– **What** is your name?

When

Sp. **Cuándo**, Port. **Quando**, It. **Quando**, Fr. **Quand**

Sp. ¿**Cuándo** vienes?

Port. **Quando** vens (você vem)?

It. **Quando** vieni?

Fr. **Quand** viens tu?

– **When** are you coming?

Where

Sp. **Dónde**, Port. **Onde**, It. **Dove**, Fr. **Où**

Sp. ¿**Dónde** se encuentra el baño?

Port. **Onde** fica a casa-de-banho?

It. **Dove** si trova il bagno?

Fr. **Où** se trouvent les toilettes?

– **Where** is the restroom?

Sp. ¿**Dónde** está el banco?

Port. **Onde** é o banco?

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

It. **Dov'**è la banca?

Fr. **Où** est la banque?

– *Where is the bank?*

From where

Sp. **De dónde**, Port. **De onde**, It. **Di dove**, Fr.
D'où

Sp. **De dónde** es usted?

Port. **De onde** é o senhor?

It. **Di dove**'è Lei?

Fr. **D'où** êtes-vous?

– *Where are you from?*

Why

Sp. **Por qué**, Port. **Porque**, It. **Perché**, Fr.
Pourquoi

Sp. ¿**Por qué** dices eso?

Port. **Por que** dizes isso (você diz isso)?

It. **Perché** dici questo?

Fr. **Pourquoi** dis-tu cela?

– *Why do you say that?*



NOTE:

Do not mix up Spanish **Por qué** (why) with **para qué** (for what purpose, what for) and Portuguese **porque** (why) and **por que** (for what purpose, what for). For example:

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Sp. **Para qué** necesitas otro coche?
Port. **Por que** você precisa de um outro
carro?
– **What** do you need another car **for**?

Exclamations with Interrogative Pronouns

Exclamations are used in order to convey a strong feeling or opinion about something. Exclamatory words make a phrase into a statement of surprise or amazement. They are very similar to interrogative words, but instead of asking something, they declare an idea or opinion, for example:



Did you know?

Uruguay is the only
country in Latin
America that is entirely
outside of the tropics.

Sp. ¡**Qué** hermoso!

Port. **Que** bonito!

It. **Che** bello!

Fr. **Quel** beauté!

– **How** nice!



NOTE:

In Spanish all exclamatory words carry an orthographic accent, or tilde, just like interrogative words.

*In French, a noun should be used with **Quel** to convey an exclamation.*

Below are the exclamatory words used in Romance languages:

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Exclamatory words	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.	s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.	s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.	s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.
<i>What a! (How!)</i>	¡Qué!	Que!	Che!	Quel!/ Quelle!/ Quels!/ Quelles!
<i>How much/ how many!</i>	¡Cuánto! ¡Cuánta! ¡Cuántos! ¡Cuántas!	Quanto! Quanta! Quantos! Quantas!	Quanto! Quanta! Quanti! Quante!	Combien!
<i>How!</i>	¡Cómo!	Como!	Come!	Comme! Que!



NOTE:

In French in order to say **What a...!** the exclamatory word **Quel...!** is used, which is used with a noun.

It is also possible to **Comme** or **Que**, since they are utterly interchangeable.

What a! (How!)

Sp. ¡Qué! Port. Que! It. Che! Fr. Quel!

In Romance languages these exclamatory words are used in front of nouns, adjectives and adverbs and mean *How* or *What a...!*:

Sp. **¡Qué** mujer!

Port. **Que** mulher!

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

It. **Che** donna!

Fr. **Quelle** femme!

– **What a** woman!

Sp. ¡**Qué** delicioso!

Port. **Que** delicioso!

It. **Che** buono!

Fr. **Quel** délice!

– **How** delicious!



NOTE:

*In Romance languages a qualifying adjective after the noun is usually preceded by either Sp. **más, tan**; Port. **mais, tão**; It. **più, tanto**; Fr. **plus, tant** - the most, so.*

How much/how many!

Sp. ¡Cuánto! Port. Quanto! It. Quanto! Fr. Combien!

These exclamatory words are used in front of nouns in order to express surprise at an amount and in front of a verb to stress the intensity or extent of the action *How many (much)*:

Sp. ¡**Cuántos** amigos tienes!

Port. **Quantos** amigos tens!

It. **Quanti** amici hai!

Fr. **Combien** d'amis que as-tu!

– *You have **so many** friends!*

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Sp. ¡**Cuánto** corrimos esta mañana!

Port. **Quanto** corremos nesta manhã!

It. **Quanto** abbiamo corso questa mattina!

Fr. **Combien** nous avons couru ce matin!

– *We ran **so much** this morning!*



NOTE:

In Spanish **Qué** + **de** can be used, which means “what a lot”, however **cuánto** is more common.

How!

Sp. ¡**Cómo**! Port. **Como**! It. **Come**! Fr.
Comment!

These exclamatory words are only used in front of verbs to express surprise at how a verb was done:

Sp. ¡**Cómo** baila ese hombre!

Port. **Como** dança esse homem!

It. ¡**Come** balla quell'uomo!

Fr. **Comment** danse cet home!

– *Oh how that man dances!*

Relative Pronouns

Relative pronouns (*who, whom, which, that, where, whose* in English) are used to introduce a clause that modifies a noun in order to make it clear which person or thing is being talked about. For example: The man *who* you see is my brother. In the example “*who you see*” is the relative clause introduced by the relative pronoun *who*.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Relative pronouns are also used to introduce further information about someone or something. For example: My brother, *who* is an outstanding singer, released a new album.

The clause which is introduced by the relative pronouns designates *the subordinate clause*. The clause containing the component modified by the relative clause is called *the main clause*. The noun, pronoun or phrase which is modified by the relative pronoun is called an *antecedent*.

It should be mentioned that, in English, the relative pronouns can be omitted (e.g. the book *that* you bought is interesting = the book you bought is interesting), but in Romance languages *that* is always required. Observe the following:



Did you know?

The statue of Christ the Redeemer was elected one of the New 7 Wonders of the World in 2007. Christ the Redeemer (Cristo Redentor) is a 30-meter Art Deco statue of Jesus Christ in Rio de Janeiro.

Sp. el libro **que** compraste es interesante;

Port. o livro **que** compraste (você comprou) é interessante;

It. il libro **che** hai comprato è interessante;

Fr. le livre **que** vous avez acheté est intéressant.

– The book (**that**) you bought is interesting.

Generally speaking the relative pronouns are used to connect two short sentences, for example:

Sp. Peter vive en una ciudad. La ciudad se llama Sydney. = Peter vive en una ciudad **que** se llama Sydney.

Port. Peter vive em uma cidade. A cidade se chama Sydney. = Peter vive em uma cidade **que** se chama Sydney.

It. Peter vive in una città. La città si chiama Sydney. = Peter vive in una città **che** si chiama Sydney.

Fr. Peter vit dans une ville. La ville s'appelle Sydney. = Peter vit dans une ville **qui** s'appelle Sydney.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Peter lives in a city. The city is called Sydney. = Peter lives in a city
(**that is**) called Sydney.

Below is a table demonstrating the relative pronouns in Romance languages:

Relative pronouns	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.	s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.	s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.	s.masc./ s.fem./ pl.masc./ pl.fem.
that/ who/ which	que	que	che	que (qu')
who/ whom/ which	el que/ la que los que/ las que	o que/ a que os que/ as que	cui	lequel/ laquelle lesquels/ lesquelles
who/ whom	quien	quem	chi colui che/colei che coloro che	qui
who/ whom/ which	el cual/ la cual los cuales/ las cuales	o qual/ a qual os quais/ as quais	il quale/ la quale i quali/ le quali	—

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Relative pronouns	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
<i>what/ which (neuter)</i>	<i>lo que/ lo cual</i>	<i>o que/ o qual</i>	<i>quello che/ quel che/ ciò che</i>	<i>ce qui/ ce que</i>
<i>as much/ many</i>	<i>cuanto/ cuanta cuantos/ cuantas</i>	<i>quanto/ quanta quantos/ quantas</i>	<i>quanto/ quanta/ quanti/ quante</i>	<i>combien</i>
<i>whose</i>	<i>cuyo/ cuya cuyos/ cuyas</i>	<i>cujo/ cuja cujos/ cujas</i>	<i>il cui/ la cui i cui/ le cui</i>	<i>dont</i>
<i>where</i>	<i>donde</i>	<i>onde</i>	<i>dove</i>	<i>où</i>
<i>when</i>	<i>cuando</i>	<i>quando</i>	<i>quando</i>	<i>quand</i>

That/Who/Which *Sp. Que, Port. Que, It. Che, Fr. Que*

This relative pronoun is one of the most frequently used in Romance languages. It can refer to either people or things. In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian it can be used as the subject or object of a clause, whereas in French the relative pronoun **que** functions only as the direct object of a clause (**qui** is used as a subject of a clause). It is notable that in French **que** becomes **qu'** before a vowel. For example:

As the subject:

Sp. La mujer **que vive** allí es mi hermana.

Port. A mulher **que vive** lá é a minha irmã.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

It. La donna **che vive** là è mia sorella.

Fr. La femme **qui vit** là est ma sœur.

– *The woman **who lives** there is my sister.*

As the object:

Sp. La mujer a la **que vimos** ayer es mi hermana.

Port. A mulher **que vimos** ontem é minha irmã.

It. La donna **che abbiamo visto** ieri è mia sorella.

Fr. La femme **que nous avons vu** hier est ma sœur.

– *The woman **who we saw** yesterday is my sister.*



NOTE:

*In Spanish, if “who” is the direct object in the relative clause, then **que** is normally used, but in practice it can be better to use an appropriate form from the **el que** series when preceded by the personal **a**: La mujer **a la que** vimos ayer es mi hermana.*

Que (Sp., Port., Fr.) and **che** (It.) are used after nouns denoting periods of time (e.g. Sp. **vez, día, año**; Port. **vez, dia, ano**; It. **volta, giorno, anno**; Fr. **fois, jour, an** - time, day, year. For example:

Sp. La primera **vez que** lo vi fue la semana pasada;

Port. A primeira **vez que** o vi foi na semana passada;

It. La prima **volta che** lo vidi era la settimana scorsa;

Fr. La première **fois que** je l’ai vu c’était la semaine dernière.

– *The first time (that) I saw her was last week.*

Who/Whom/Which

Sp. El que; It. Cui; Fr. Lequel

In Spanish, Italian and French the relative pronouns Sp. **el que/la que/los que/las que**; Port. **o que/a que/os que/as que**; It. **cui**; Fr. **lequel/laquel/lesquels/lesquelles** (who/whom/which) are used instead of Sp. **que**, Port. **que**, It. **che**, Fr. **que** when it is preceded by a preposition (however, in Latin American Spanish and Portuguese the relative pronoun **que** is also used in this case).

These relative pronouns can be used with the following prepositions:

Sp. **a, con, de, en, por, sobre**;

It. **a, con, di, da, in, per, su, tra/fra**;

Fr. **à, avec, de, dans, pour, sur**.

Also, and these relative pronouns can refer to things or persons and agree with antecedent, except Italian:

Sp. La casa **en la que** (**en que**) vivo es grande.

It. La casa **in cui** vivo è grande.

Fr. La maison **dans laquelle** j'habite est grande.

– The house **in which** I live is big.

Sp. La razón **por la que** (**por que**) lo hace es clara.

It. Il motivo **per cui** lo fa è chiaro.

Fr. La raison **pour laquelle** elle le fait est claire.

– The reason **why/for which** she does it is clear.



NOTE:

*In Portuguese, in this case, the relative pronoun **que** (with things) or **quem** (with people) is used when preceded by a preposition. Observe the following:*

*Port. A casa **em que** eu vivo é grande.*

*– The house **in which** I live is big.*

*Port. A razão **por que** ela faz isso é claro.*

*– The reason **why/for which** she does it is clear.*



NOTE:

*In Spanish, Portuguese and French the relative pronouns Sp. **quien**, Port. **quem**, Fr. **qui** are used with the preposition when it refers to person, whereas in Italian it is always **cui** that is used with prepositions. (See the Relative Pronoun Qui p.178), for instance:*

*Sp. El niño **a quien** hablo es inteligente.*

*Port. O menino **a quem** eu falo é inteligente.*

*It. Il ragazzo **a cui** parlo è intelligente.*

*Fr. Le garçon **à qui** je parle est intelligent.*

*– The boy **with whom** I speak is smart.*

It should be noted that, in English, in informal speech a preposition can be placed at the end of the relative clause, but in Romance languages it should be placed immediately before the associated relative pronoun (ex. The boy *whom* I speak *with* is smart).

Combination of French *Lequel* with Prepositions

French *lequel/lesquelles/lesquels* (*which*) is combined with the prepositions *à* and *de* and the definite article (*laquelle* doesn't change).

Below is the table with all combined forms:

French	
<i>à</i>	<i>de</i>
<i>à + lequel = auquel</i>	<i>de + lequel = duquel</i>
<i>à + laquelle = à laquelle</i>	<i>de + laquelle = de laquelle</i>
<i>à + lesquels = auxquels</i>	<i>de + lesquels = desquels</i>
<i>à + lesquelles = auxquelles</i>	<i>de + lesquelles = desquelles</i>

Portuguese *O que* (the one who)

In Portuguese the relative pronoun *o que/a que/os que/as que* has the meaning of *the one who/that, the ones who/that* and can refer to either people or things and can be used as the subject or object of a verb: *Esse carro é o que eu comprei* - *That car is the one I bought.*

Who/Whom/The one who Sp. *Quien*, Port. *Quem*, It. *Che*, Fr. *Qui*

This relative pronoun is also one of the most frequently used in Romance languages.



NOTE:

*It should be remembered that in French **qui** can be used only as the subject of the clause and may refer to either a person or a thing.*

*In Italian **che** is used in this case.*

This relative pronoun can be used in the constructions “it is/was (you/Peter/him and etc.) who (the one/those who/that)”, when the verb Sp. **ser**, Port. **ser**, It. **essere**, Fr. **être** – to be introduces the subordinate clause (however in Spanish **el que** series and Portuguese **que** are equally used here as well):

Sp. Fue él **quien** (**el que**) lo hizo.

Port. Foi ele **quem** (**que**) fez isso.

It. È stato lui **che** l’ha fatto.

Fr. C’était lui **qui** l’avait fait.

– *It was he **who** did it.*

Sp. Es ella **quien** (**la que**) no quiere venir.

Port. É ela **quem** (**que**) não quer vir.

It. È lei **che** non vuole venire.

Fr. C’est elle **qui** ne veut pas venir.

– *It is she **who** does not want to come.*



NOTE:

*The phrase “Fue él **quien** (**el que**) lo hizo” is considered ungrammatical in Peninsular Spanish (Spain), instead, the variant: El que lo hizo fue él is correct.*

*Remember that in Spanish the relative pronouns of **el que** series refer to human*

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

or non-humans, while **quien** can only refer to people .

In Spanish, Portuguese and French the relative pronouns Sp. **quien**, Port. **quem**, Fr. **qui** are used to refer to a person and follow a preposition such as:

Sp. **con, a, contra, entre, para, por, salvo, conforme, sobre;**

Port. **com, a, contra, entre, para, por, salvo, segundo, sobre;**

Fr. **avec, à, contre, entre, pour, sauf (excepté), sur;**

It is notable that in Spanish **el que** series are equally used in this case as well. Study the following example:

Sp. La mujer **con quien (la que)** hablé es mi profesora.

Port. A mulher **com quem** falei é minha professora.

Fr. La femme **avec qui** je parlais est ma professeure.

– The woman **with whom** I spoke is my professor.

(or The woman **whom** I spoke **with** is my professor).,



NOTE:

In Italian, it is always **cui** that is used with prepositions:

It. La donna **con cui** ho parlato è la mia professoressa.

– The woman **with whom** I spoke is my professor.

(or The woman **whom** I spoke **with** is my professor).

Who/Whom **Italian Colui che/Colei che/Coloro che**

In Italian **chi** is always followed by *a singular verb* (**Chi** studia, impara – *He who studies, learns*). Alternate forms of **chi** are **colui che**, **colei che**, **coloro che**. **Coloro che** is followed by *a plural verb*:

Colui che studia, impara; = **Colei che** studia, impara; =
Coloro che studiano, imparano.

- *He who studies, learns* = *She who studies, learns* = *They who study, learn.*

Who/Whom/Which **Sp. El cual; Port. O qual; It. Il quale**

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian this relative pronoun can be used instead of Sp. **el que**, Port. **que (quem)**, It. **che (cui)**. Therefore they are similar in terms of their grammatical function; however they are not very common in speech and are primarily used in written language and official documents.

In Spanish it also depends on the regional use (In Spain **el qual** is less common in speech than **el que**, but in many parts of Latin America the reverse is true). But nevertheless this relative pronoun should be remembered since it can be very useful.

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian this relative pronoun replaces Sp. **que**, Port. **que**, It. **che** in order to make the sentence clearer and easier to distinguish between multiple possible antecedents. It is also normally used with prepositions:

Sp. Mis amigos con **los cuales** estudié, encontraron un trabajo.

Port. Meus amigos com **os quais** eu estudei, encontraram um trabalho.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

It. Gli amici con **i quali** ho studiato, hanno trovato un lavoro.

– *My friends with **whom** I studied found a job.*

In colloquial Spanish, Portuguese and Italian the sentence would be:

Sp. Mis amigos con **los que** estudié, encontraron un trabajo.

Port. Meus amigos com **quem (que)** eu estudei, encontraram um trabalho.

It. Gli amici con **cui** ho studiato, hanno trovato un lavoro.

What/Which

Neuter Relative Pronoun Sp. lo que/lo cual;

Port. o que/o qual; It. quello che/quell che/ciò che; Fr. ce qui/ce que

In Romance languages the neuter relative pronouns Sp. **lo que/lo cual**; Port. **o que/o qual**; It. **quello che/quell che/ciò che**; Fr. **ce qui/ce que** are used to replace a general or abstract idea when there is no antecedent:

Sp. **Lo que** dices es verdad.

Port. **O que** dizes (você diz) é verdade.

It. **Quello che** dici è vero.

Fr. **Ce que** tu dis est vrai.

– *What you say is true.*

Sp. No entiendo **lo que** dices.

Port. Não entendo **o que** dizes (você diz).

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

It. Non capisco **ciò che** dici.

Fr. Je ne comprends pas **ce que** tu dis.

– I don't understand **what** you say.



NOTE:

It should be mentioned that in French the neuter relative pronoun **ce qui** is used as the subject of the clause and **ce que** – as the object of a verb in a relative clause. For example:

As the subject:

Fr. **Ce qui** est intéressant est sa manière de chanter.

– **What** is interesting is his manner of singing.

As the object:

Fr. Je ne comprends pas **ce que** vous dites.

– I do not understand **what** you say.

In Romance languages the neuter relative pronoun can be combined with Sp. **todo**; Port. **tudo**; It. **tutto**; Fr. **tout** – everything:

Sp. **Todo lo que** él hace es bueno.

Port. **Tudo o que** ele faz é bom.

It. **Tutto ciò che** fa è buono.

Fr. **Tout ce qu'**il fait est bon.

– **Everything** he does is good.

Whose

Sp. **cuyo**; Port. **cujo**; It. **il cui**; Fr. **dont**

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

The relative pronouns Sp. **cuyo** (*cuya, cuyos, cuyas*), Port. **cujo** (*cuja, cujos, cujas*), It. **il cui** (*la cui, i cui, le cui*), Fr. **dont** denote ownership. They can refer to people or things and are immediately followed by a noun with which they agree in gender and number (except in French). Observe the following:

Sp. Tengo un amigo **cuyo** padre es un médico.

Port. Eu tenho um amigo **cujo** pai é um médico.

It. Ho un amico **il cui** padre è un medico.

Fr. J'ai un ami **dont** le père est un médecin.

– *I have a friend **whose** father is a doctor.*

Sp. Sandra, **cuya** hermana tiene una boutique, estudia conmigo.

Port. Sandra, **cuja** irmã tem uma boutique, estuda comigo.

It. Sandra, **la cui** sorella ha una boutique, studia con me.

Fr. Sandra, **dont** la sœur a une boutique, étudie avec moi.

– *Sandra, **whose** sister has a boutique, studies with me.*



NOTE:

In French **dont** can also mean **of (about) which, of (about) whom**:

Fr. L'homme **dont** vous parlez est mon patron.

– *The man **of whom** you speak is my boss.*

Fr. Le plat **dont** nous parlons est bon.

– *The dish **of which** we speak is tasty.*

Dont cannot be followed by a possessive adjective (e.g. C'est le garçon **dont** je

*connais les parents. – This is the boy
whose parents I know).*

Where

*Sp. **donde**, Port. **onde**, It. **dove**, Fr. **où***

In Romance languages Sp. **donde**, Port. **onde**, It. **dove**, Fr. **où** introduce a relative clause that refers to a place or time in order to avoid using a preposition and a form of Sp. **el que**, Port. **que**, It. **cui**, Fr. **lequel**:

Sp. Esta es la casa donde vive el actor (Esta es la casa en la que vive el actor);

Port. Esta é a casa onde o ator vive (Esta é a casa em que o ator vive);

It. Questa è la casa dove vive l'attore. (Questa è la casa in cui vive l'attore);

Fr. Ceci est la maison où vit l'acteur (Ceci est la maison dans laquelle vit l'acteur).

– This is the house where the actor lives (This is the house in which the actor lives).



NOTE:

In Romance languages they may have some variations:

*Sp. **adonde/de donde**, Port. **aonde/de onde**, It. **dove** (does not change)/**di dove**, Fr. **où** (does not change)/ **d'où** – to where/ from where:*

*Sp. El museo **adonde** vas es hermoso;*

*Port. O museu **aonde** vais é bonito;*

*It. Il museo **dove** (in cui) vai è bello;*

*Fr. Le musée **où** tu vas est beau.*

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

– *The museum you are going to is beautiful.*

Sp. ¿De donde eres?

Port. De onde és (você é)?

It. Di dove sei?

Fr. D'où es-tu?

– *Where are you from?*

When

Sp. cuando, Port. quando, It. quando, Fr. quand

Example:

*Sp. Tengo un examen la semana que viene, **cundo** tus padres llegan.*

*Port. Eu tenho um exame na semana que vem, **quando** teus pais chegam.*

*It. Ho un esame la prossima settimana, **quando** arrivano i tuoi genitori.*

*Fr. J'ai un examen la semaine prochaine, **quand** tes parents arrivent.*

– *I have an exam next week **when** your parents arrive.*

Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns

Indefinite adjectives and pronouns are groups of words which are used to quantify inexactly things or people (e.g. *some, several, a few, many*), distinguish one thing from another (e.g. *other, a certain*), or relate one thing to another (e.g. *each, both*). In general, indefinite adjectives and pronouns refer to an unspecified third person or thing.

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS



Did you know?

Milan is the second biggest Italian city (over 1.3 million people) after Rome (over 2.8 million people). Milan is considered to be the financial and economic capital of Italy.

It should be said that in Spanish an indefinite pronoun that refers to a person requires the personal *a* when used as the direct object of a verb (**See the Direct Object p.98**).

Below are the most common indefinite adjectives and pronouns in Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
s.masc./ s.fem. pl.masc./ pl.fem.	s.masc./ s.fem. pl.masc./ pl.fem.	s.masc./ s.fem. pl.masc./ pl.fem.	s.masc./ s.fem. pl.masc./ pl.fem.	
algo; alguna cosa	algo; alguma coisa	qualcosa	quelque chose	something
alguien	alguém	qualcuno	quelqu'un	someone
alguno/ alguna algunos/ algunas	algum/ alguma alguns/ algunas	alcuno/ alcuna alcuni/ alcune	quelque/ quelques	some

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
cierto/ cierta/ ciertos/ ciertas	certo/ certa/ certos/ certas	certo/ certa/ certi/ certe	certain/ certain certains	<i>certain</i>
tal/ tales; semejante	tal/ tais	tale/ tali	tel/ telle tells/ telles	<i>such</i>
cada	cada	ogni	chaque	<i>each, every</i>
		ognuno/ ognuna	chacun/ chacune	
varios/ varias	vários/ várias	vario/ varie vari/ varie	divers/ diverses	<i>various, several</i>
diferente/ diferentes	diferente/ diferentes	diferente / differenti	différent/ différente/ différents/ différentes	<i>different</i>

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
solo/ sola solos/ solas	só sozinho/ sozinha	solo/ sola soli/ sole	seul/ seule seuls/ seules	<i>alone</i>
bastante/ bastantes (adv./adj.) (suficiente/ -s)	bastante/ bastantes (adv./adj.) (suficiente /-s)	bastante/ bastanti (adj.) sufficiente /-i	suffisant/ suffisante suffisants/ suffisantes (adj.)	<i>enough, sufficient</i>
		abbastanz a (adv.)	assez (adv.)	
mucho/ much muchos/ muchas	muito/ muita muitos/ muitas	molto/ molta molti/ molte	beaucoup/ beaucoup de; <i>plusieurs</i>	<i>many, much, a lot</i>
poco/ poca pocos/ pocas	pouco/ pouca poucos/ poucas	poco/ poca pochi/ poche	peu	<i>few</i>
demasiado/ demasiada demasiados / demasiadas	demasiado/ demasiada demasiados/ demasiadas	troppo/ troppa troppi/ troppe	trop de	<i>too many/ much</i>

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
	demais (adv.)		trop (adv.)	
todo/ toda todos/ todas	todo/toda todos/todas	tutto/ tutta tutti/ tutte	tout/toute tous/ toutes	<i>all</i>
todo	tudo	tutto	tout	<i>everything</i>
demás (el resto)	o resto	il resto	le reste	<i>the rest (the others)</i>
ninguno/ ninguna ningunos/ ningunas	nenhum/ nenhuma nenhuns/ nenhumas	nessuno/ nessuna nessuni/ nessune	aucun/ aucune aucuns/ aucunes	<i>none</i>
nadie	ninguém	nessuno	personne	<i>nobody/ no one</i>
nada	nada	niente	rien	<i>nothing</i>

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
ambos/ ambas (los/las dos)	ambos/ ambas (os dois/as duas)	entrambi/ ambedue (tutti e due)	les deux (tous les deux)	<i>both</i>

Something

Sp. algo (alguna cosa), Port. algo (alguma coisa), It. qualcosa, Fr. quelque chose

It is invariable and can be used as a pronoun (when referring only to things) meaning “something” or “anything”:

Sp. Tengo ***algo*** para ti;

Port. Eu tenho ***algo*** para ti (você);

It. Ho ***qualcosa*** per te;

Fr. J'ai ***quelque chose*** pour toi.

– I have ***something*** for you.

Sp. ¿Quieres ***algo (alguna cosa)***?

Port. Você quer (queres) ***algo (alguma coisa)***?

It. Vuoi ***qualcosa***?

Fr. Veux-tu ***quelque chose***?

– Do you want ***anything***?

Someone

Sp. alguien; Port. alguém; It. qualcuno; Fr. quelqu'un

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

It is a pronoun that refers only to people meaning “someone” or “somebody”. When it is used in questions it means “anyone” or “anybody”:

Sp. Hay **alguien** en la casa;

Port. Tem **alguém** em casa;

It. C'è **qualcuno** in casa;

Fr. Il ya **quelqu'un** dans la maison.

– There is **someone** in the house.

Sp. **Alguien** ha visto a John?

Port. **Alguém** viu John?

It. **Qualcuno** ha visto John?

Fr. **Quelqu'un** a vu John?

– Has **anyone** seen John?

Some

Sp. alguno; Port. algum; It. alcuno; Fr. quelque

Spanish **alguno**, Portuguese **algum** and Italian **alcuno** and French **quelque** can be used as an adjective or as a pronoun that refers to things, places or people meaning “some” and “any”. They agree in number and gender:

Sp. (s.masc.) **alguno**; (s.fem.) **alguna**; (pl.masc.) **algunos**;
(pl.fem.) **algunas**;

Port. (s.masc.) **algum**; (s.fem.) **alguma**; (pl.masc.) **alguns**;
(pl.fem.) **algumas**;

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

It. (s.masc.) **alcuno**; (s.fem.) **alcuna**; (pl.masc.) **alcuni**;
(pl.fem.) **alcune**.

Unlike other Romance languages, in French **quelque** agrees only in number:

Fr. (singular) **quelque**; (plural) **quelques**.

In Spanish it can be shortened to **algún** before singular masculine nouns. In the plural Spanish **algunos**, Portuguese **alguns**, Italian **alcuni** and French **quelques** mean “some” or ‘a few’. When they are used in questions they mean “any”. When they are used as pronouns they mean “one/some of them”:

Sp. Hay **algunas** ciudades donde no hay teatros;

Port. Há **algumas** cidades onde não há teatros;

It. Ci sono **alcune** città dove non ci sono teatri;

Fr. Il y a **quelques** villes, où il n'y a pas de théâtres.

– *In some cities there are no theatres.*

Sp. Vi a **algunas** personas en la calle;

Port. Eu vi **algumas** pessoas na rua;

It. Ho visto **alcune** persone nella strada;

Fr. J'ai vu **quelques** personnes dans la rue

– *I saw some people in the street.*

Certain

Sp. **cierto**; Port. **certo**; It. **certo**, Fr. **certain**

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Sp. **cierto**; Port. **certo**; It. **certo**, Fr. **certain** are adjectives which agree in number and gender and are placed before the noun meaning “*certain*”:

Sp. **Ciertos** coches son muy caros.

Port. **Certos** carros são muito caros.

It. **Certe** macchine sono molto care.

Fr. **Certaines** voitures sont très chères.

– **Certain** cars are very expensive.

It is notable once Sp. **cierto**; Port. **certo**; It. **certo**, Fr. **certain** put after the noun, they mean reliable, definite, certain:

Sp. No es **cierto**;

Port. Não é **certo**;

It. Non è **certo**;

Fr. Ce n'est pas **certain**.

– It is not **certain**.

Such

Sp. tal; Port. tal; It. tale; Fr. tel

Spanish **tal**, Portuguese **tal**, Italian **tale** can only vary in number (Plural Sp. **tales**; Port. **tais**; It. **tali**), except in French where **tel** can agree in number and gender respectively: (s.masc.) **tel**, (s.fem.) **telle**, (pl.masc.) **tells** (pl.fem.) **telles**. They can only come before a noun in Romance languages.

Sp. **Tal** profesión es prestigiosa;

Port. **Tal** profissão é prestigiosa;

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

It. **Tale** professione è prestigiosa;
Fr. **Telle** profession est prestigieuse
– **Such** a profession is prestigious.

Sp. No me gustan **tales** cosas;
Port. Eu não gosto de **tais** coisas.
It. Non mi piacciono **tali** cose;
Fr. Je n'aime pas de **telles** choses.
– I don't like **such** things.

Spanish semejante

Spanish **semejante** can be placed before or after a noun. If it is placed before the noun, it means “*such*” mainly in negative phrases. It can mean “*similar*” or “*alike*” when placed after the noun. For instance:

Nunca he visto **semejante** actor
– *Never have I seen **such** an actor;*

Compré tres camisas **semejantes**
– *I bought three **similar** shirts.*

It should be remembered that Sp. **tal** (**semejante**); Port. **tal**; It. **tale**; Fr. **tel** cannot be followed by an indefinite article, like it can in English.

Every

Sp. **cada**; Port. **cada**; It. **ogni**; Fr. **chaque**

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Sp. **cada**; Port. **cada**; It. **ogni**; Fr. **chaque** – “every/each” are unchangeable and are used as an adjectives:

Sp. Voy a España **cada** año;

Port. Eu vou à Espanha **cada (todo)** ano;

It. Vado in Spagna **ogni** anno;

Fr. Je vais en Espagne **chaque** année.

– *I go to Spain every year.*



NOTE:

In Portuguese, **todo** would sound more natural in the above example. **Cada** is used to demonstrate the use of the word.

Each one, Everyone Italian **ognuno** and French **chacun**

It. (s.masc) **ognuno** / (s.fem.) **ognuna** and Fr. (s.masc.) **chacun** / (s.fem.) **chacune** are used as nouns and mean “each one” or “everyone”:

It. **Ognuno** ha i propri gusti;

Fr. **Chacun** a son propre goût.

– *Everyone has its own taste.*

Several, Varied Sp. **varios**; Port. **vários**; It. **vario**; Fr. **divers**

These are used as an indefinite adjective as well as a pronoun meaning “several”. In Spanish, Portuguese and French they are only used in the plural with the masculine and feminine

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

forms (Sp. **varios/varias**; Port. **vários/várias**; Fr. **divers/diverses**, whereas in Italian **vario** also has the singular: (s.masc.) **vario**, (s.fem.) **varia**, (pl.masc.) **vari**, (pl.fem.) **varie**.

Sp. **Varios** escritores son conocidos en este país;

Port. **Vários** escritores são conhecidos neste país;

It. **Vari** scrittori sono noti in questo paese;

Fr. **Divers** écrivains sont connus dans ce pays.

– **Several** writers are well known in this country.

Sp. **varios**; Port. **vários**; It. **vario**; Fr. **divers** can also mean “varied” or “different”:

Sp. Tiene un vestido de **varios** colores;

Port. Ela tem um vestido de **várias** cores;

It. Ha un vestito di **vari** colori;

Fr. Elle a une robe de **diverses** couleurs.

– *She has a dress of various colors.*

Different

**Sp. diferente; Port. diferente; It. differente;
Fr. different**

These adjectives can be placed after the noun and agree in number, except French where it agrees in number and gender:

Sp. Ella tiene un vestido de colores **diferentes**;

Port. Ela tem um vestido de cores **diferentes**;

It. Ha un vestito di colori **differenti**;

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Fr. Elle a une robe de couleurs **différentes**.

– *She has a dress of **different** colours.*

Alone, Only

Sp. solo; Port. só, sozinho/sozinha; It. solo;
Fr. seul

When Sp. **solo**; Port. **só, sozinho/sozinha**; It. **solo**; Fr. **seul** can be used as an adjective and agree in number and gender in Spanish, Italian and French (in Portuguese it is invariable) meaning “*alone*”:

Sp. Me fui **solo** al cine;

Port. Eu fui **só (sozinho)** ao cinema;

It. Sono andato **solo** al cinema;

Fr. Je suis allé **seul** au cinéma.

– *I went **alone** to the cinema.*

It should be said that in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian these adjectives cannot be used to convey English “*the only*”. In this case, the word Sp. **único**; Port. **único**; It. **unico** – *the only* is used. In French **seul** can be used to say *the only*. For example:

Sp. El **único** cine que muestra esta película está en el centro de la ciudad;

Port. O **único** cinema que mostra este filme está no centro da cidade;

It. L'**unico** cinema che dà questo film è nel centro della città;

Fr. Le **seul** cinéma qui montre ce film est dans le centre de la ville.

– *The **only** cinema that shows this film is in the centre of the city.*

Sp. **solo**; Port. **só**; It. **solo**; Fr. **seul** can also be used as an adverb meaning “only”, which is equivalent to Sp. **solamente**; Port. **somente**; It. **solamente**; Fr. **seulement**.

However unlike in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, in French the adverb **seulement** is used to say “only”.

Sp. **Sólo** tengo dos horas para trabajar;

Port. Eu **só** tenho duas horas para trabalhar;

It. Ho **solo** due ore per lavorare;

Fr. J'ai **seulement** deux heures pour travailler.

– I have **only** two hours to work.

Enough (Sufficient)

Sp. **bastante** (**suficiente**); Port. **bastante** (**suficiente**); It. **bastante** (**sufficiente**); Fr. **suffisant** (**assez**)

When Sp. **bastante** (**suficiente**); Port. **bastante** (**suficiente**); It. **bastante** (**sufficiente**); Fr. **suffisant** (**assez**) – “enough”, “sufficient” are used as adjectives or pronouns, they agree in number in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian. In French it agrees in number and gender:

Sp. Esto es **suficiente** (or **bastante**) para mí;

Port. Este é **suficiente** (or **bastante**) para mim;

It. Questo è **sufficiente** per me;

Fr. Cela est **suffisant** pour moi.

– This is **enough** for me.



NOTE:

Sp. **bastante** and Port. **bastante** mean *enough, a lot, too much*.

When they are used as *an adverb*, they take the form of **abbastanza** in Italian and **assez** in French. In Spanish and Portuguese **bastante** (or **suficientemente**) can be used as an adverb.

As an adverb: Sp. **bastante** (**suficientemente**); Port. **bastante**; It. **abbastanza**; Fr. **assez** are invariable. As an adverb they are generally used to indicate quantity or extent. When it comes to the quantity, French **assez** is used with the preposition **de**. Study the following:

Sp. Tenemos **bastante** (**suficientemente**) tiempo para ir allí.

Port. Temos **bastante** (**suficientemente**) tempo para ir lá.

It. Abbiamo **abbastanza** tempo per andare lì;

Fr. Nous avons **assez de** temps pour y aller.

– We have **enough** time to go there.

Sp. Su casa es **bastante** (**suficientemente**) grande;

Port. Sua casa é **bastante** (**suficientemente**) grande;

It. La sua casa è **abbastanza** grande;

Fr. Sa maison est **assez** grande.

– Her house is **quite** big.

Much/Many/A lot of, Few/Little

Sp. **mucho, poco**; Port. **muito, pouco**; It. **molto, poco**; Fr. **beaucoup (de), peu**

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

- As an adjective or pronoun Sp. **mucho/a/os/as**; Port. **muito/a/os/as**; It. **molto/a/i/e**; Fr. **beaucoup de** means “much”, “many”, “a lot of” and agree in number and gender (except in French):

Sp. Sp. Ella tiene **mucho** trabajo;

Port. Ela tem **muito** trabalho;

It. Ha **molto** lavoro;

Fr. Elle a **beaucoup de** travail.

– She has **a lot of** work.

- As adjectives or pronouns Sp. **poco/a/os/as**; Port. **pouco/a/os/as**; It. **poco/a/i/e**; Fr. **peu de** mean “few”, “little” and also agree in number and gender (except in French):

Sp. Tienen **pocos** amigos;

Port. Eles têm **poucos** amigos;

It. Hanno **pochi** amici;

Fr. Ils ont **peu d'**amis.

– They have **few** friends.



NOTE:

When used as an adjective **beaucoup** and **peu** are used with the preposition **de** in French.

- Sp. **mucho/a**; Port. **muito/a**; It. **molto/a**; Fr. **beaucoup** can also be used as unchangeable neuter pronouns:

Sp. Tenemos **mucho** que hacer;

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Port. Nós temos **muíto** o que fazer;

It. Abbiamo **molto** da fare;

Fr. Nous avons **beaucoup** à faire.

– *We have **a lot** to do.*

- As *adverbs* Sp. **mucho**; Port. **muíto**; It. **molto**; Fr. **beaucoup** mean “*much*”, “*a lot*”.

Sp. Ella trabaja **mucho**;

Port. Ela trabalha **muíto**;

It. Lei lavora **molto**;

Fr. Elle travaille **beaucoup**.

– *She works **a lot**.*

- As *adverbs* Sp. **poco**; Port. **pouco**; It. **poco**; Fr. **peu** mean “*little*”, “*few*”, but are also used to negate an adjective (in English it is the prefix *un-*):

Sp. Él sonríe **poco**;

Port. Ele sorri **pouco**;

It. Lui sorride **poco**;

Fr. Il sourit **peu**.

– *He smiles **a little**.*

Sp. Es **poco** probable;

Port. É **pouco** provável;

It. È **poco** probabile

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Fr. C'est **peu** probable.

– *It is unlikely.*

It is notable that when Sp. **poco**; Port. **pouco**; It. **poco**; Fr. **peu** are preceded by the indefinite article, they mean “a little”:

Sp. Es **un poco** extraño;

Port. É **um pouco** estranho;

It. È '**un po**' strano;

Fr. Il est **un peu** étrange.

– *It is a little strange.*



NOTE: Italian **poco** becomes **un po**'.

When it comes to the quantity of something Sp. **un poco**; Port. **um pouco**; It. **un po**'; Fr. **un peu** are used with the preposition **de** in Spanish, Portuguese and French and **di** in Italian, and the noun that follows doesn't have any article at all (See the Partitive p.82 and Expressions of Quantity p.83):

Sp. ¿Quieres **un poco de** jugo?

Port. (Você quer) queres **um pouco de** suco?

It. Vuoi **un po 'di** succo?

Fr. Veux-tu **un peu de** jus?

– *Do you want a little juice?*

Too much, Too many

**Sp. *demasiado*; Port. *demasiado*, *demais*;
It. *troppo*; Fr. *trop***

Sp. ***demasiado***; Port. ***demasiado***; It. ***troppo*** are adjectives or pronouns that mean “too much”, “too many”. In Spanish, Italian and Portuguese they change in gender and number:

- Sp. (s.masc.) ***demasiado***, (s.fem.) ***demasiada***, (pl.masc.) ***demasiados***, (pl.fem.) ***demasiadas***;
- It. (s.masc.) ***troppo***, (s.fem.) ***troppa***, (pl.masc.) ***troppi***, (pl.fem.) ***troppe***;
- Port. (s.masc.) ***demasiado***, (s.fem.) ***demasiada***, (pl.masc.) ***demasiados***, (pl.fem.) ***demasiadas***.

Sp. Hay ***demasiada*** gente en la calle;

Port. Há gente ***demais*** na rua;

It. C'è ***troppa*** gente in strada.

– There are **too many** people in the street.



NOTE:

Unlike in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, in French ***trop*** is an adverb and when is preceded by a noun, it is used with the preposition ***de***:

Fr. Il ya ***trop de*** gens dans la rue.

– There are too many people in the street.

Also, Spanish ***demasiado*** and Italian ***troppo*** can also be used as adverbs meaning “too (much)” and, in this case, they don’t change neither in gender nor in number. However, as an adverb in French ***trop*** and Portuguese ***demais*** are used:

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Sp. Trabajé **demasiado** ayer;
Port. Eu trabalhei **demais** ontem;
It. Ho lavorato **troppo** ieri;
Fr. J'ai **trop** travaillé hier.
– *I worked **too much** yesterday.*



NOTE:

*In French **trop** should be put before past participle in a sentence.*

As an unchangeable neuter pronoun Sp. **demasiado**;
Port. **demais**; It. **troppo**; Fr. **trop** mean “too”:

Sp. La luz es **demasiado** fuerte;
Port. A luz é forte **demais**;
It. La luce è **troppo** forte;
Fr. La lumière est **trop** forte.
– *The light is **too** strong.*

All

Sp. todo; Port. todo; It. tutto; Fr. tout

Sp. **todo**; Port. **todo**; It. **tutto**; Fr. **tout** as an adjective or pronoun changes in gender and number. As an adverb it is unchangeable.

- As adjectives, they mean “*all (of)*”, “*the whole*”, “*the entire*”. In this case Sp. **todo**; Port. **todo**; It. **tutto**; Fr. **tout** can be used with a noun preceded by the definite article, possessive or demonstrative adjectives:

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Sp. **Toda la calle** está cubierta de nieve;

Port. **Toda a rua** está coberta de neve;

It. **Tutta la strada** è coperta di neve;

Fr. **Toute la rue** est couverte de neige.

– *The whole street is covered with snow.*

Sp. **Todos nuestros amigos** son gentiles;

Port. **Todos os nossos amigos** são gentis;

It. **Tutti i nostri amici** sono gentili;

Fr. **Tous nos amis** sont gentils.

– *All of our friends are nice.*

- Sp. **todo**; Port. **todo**; It. **tutto**; can be used before a pronoun or place name, except in French:

Sp. **Todos ellos** quieren hablar español;

Port. **Todos eles** querem falar espanhol;

It. **Tutti loro** vogliono parlare spagnolo;

Fr. **Tous** veulent parler espagnol.

– *All of them want to speak Spanish.*

- Sp. **todo**; Port. **todo**; It. **tutto**; Fr. **tout** in previous examples were put before the word they modified, but they can also be placed in other positions in the sentence, still agreeing with the associated noun:

Sp. Los estudiantes son **todos** muy inteligentes;

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Port. Os alunos são **todos** muito inteligentes;

It. Gli studenti sono **tutti** molto intelligenti;

Fr. Les élèves sont **tous** très intelligents.

– *The students are **all** very smart.*

- When Sp. **todo/os**; Port. **todo/os**; It. **tutto/i**; Fr. **tout/s** are used with nouns preceded by the definite article that refer to periods of time, they mean “every”:

Sp. **Todas las** semanas, **Todos los** días;

Port. **Todas as** semanas, **Todos os** dias;

It. **Tutte le** settimane, **Tutti i** giorni;

Fr. **Toutes les** semaines, **Tous les** jours.

– ***Every** week, **Every** day.*

- Sp. **todo**; Port. **todo**; It. **tutto**; Fr. **tout** with the indefinite article.



NOTE:

In order to express “a whole/an entire” in Romance languages, it is better to use the adjective Sp. **entero/a/os/as**; Port. **inteiro/a/os/as**; It. **intero/a/i/e**; Fr. **entier/ère/s/ères** which goes with the indefinite article and agrees in number and gender with the noun it defines:

Sp. un día **entero**;

Port. um dia **inteiro**;

It. una giornata **intera** (un giorno **intero**);

Fr. une journée **entière** (un jour **entier**)

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

– A *whole* day.

- Sp. **todo**; Port. **todo**; It. **tutto**; Fr. **tout** can also be used with relative pronouns making common relative constructions, such as:

1. Sp. **todo lo que**; Port. **todo o que**; It. **tutto quello che**; Fr. **tout ce que** – *all/everything that*. For example:

Sp. Quiero saber **todo lo que** sabes;

Port. Quero saber **tudo o que** sabes (você sabe);

It. Voglio sapere **tutto quello che** sai;

Fr. Je veux savoir **tout ce que** tu sais.

– *I want to know everything that you know.*

2. Sp. **todos los que/ todas las que**; Port. **todos aqueles que/ todas aquelas que**; It. **tutti quelli che/ tutte quelle che**; Fr. **tous ceux qui/ toutes celles qui**. – *all (those)/ everyone who*. For instance:

Sp. Hablamos con **todos los que** vinieron;

Port. Nós conversamos **com todos aqueles** que vieram;

It. Abbiamo parlato con **tutti quelli che** sono venuti;

Fr. Nous avons parlé à **tous ceux qui** sont venus.

– *We talked to all those who came.*

- There are also fixed expressions with Sp. **todo**; Port. **todo**; It. **tutto**; Fr. **tout** that should be remembered. However, in some cases Port. **qualquer** “any”, It. **ogni** “every” are more common than Port. **todo** and It. **tutto** in some sentences:

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
en todo caso, de todos modos	em todo o caso, em qualquer caso	in tutti i casi, in ogni caso	en tout cas, dans tous les cas	<i>in any case</i>
en todo momento	em todos os momentos	in ogni momento	à tout moment	<i>at any time</i>
a todas horas	em todas as horas	a tutte le ore	à toutes heures	<i>at all hours</i>
todo tipo de	todos os tipos de	tutti i tipi di	tous types de, toutes sortes de	<i>all kinds of</i>
a toda costa	a todo custo	a tutti i costi, ad ogni costo	à tout prix	<i>at all costs</i>
en todas partes	em toda parte	in ogni luogo	en tout lieu, partout	<i>everywhere</i>

- As a pronoun Sp. **todo**; Port. **todo**; It. **tutto**; Fr. **tout** mean "all" or "everyone":

Sp. desde el punto de vista de **todos**;

Port. do ponto de vista de **todos**;

It. dal punto di vista di **tutti**;

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Fr. du point de vue de **tous**.

– From **everyone's** point of view.

Sp. Eso es lo que ella dice a **todos**;

Port. Isso é o que ela diz a **todos**;

It. Questo è quello che dice a **tutti**;

Fr. Voilà ce qu'elle dit à **tous**.

– That's what she says to **everyone**.



NOTE:

In Spanish **todo el mundo**, Portuguese **todo mundo** (without article) and French **tout le monde** is the equivalent to the pronoun "everyone". In Italian **tutti** is more common in this case. For example:

Sp. **Todo el mundo** lo sabe;

Port. **Todo o mundo** sabe disso;

It. **Tutti** lo sanno;

Fr. **Tout le monde** le sait.

– **Everyone** knows it.

Everything

Sp. **todo**; Port. **tudo**; It. **tutto**; Fr. **tout**
(as an invariable pronoun)

As an invariable pronoun Sp. **todo**; Port. **tudo**; It. **tutto**; Fr. **tout** refer to "all", "everything" in general. Note that Portuguese pronoun becomes **tudo** in this case:

Sp. Compré **todo**;

Port. Eu comprei **tudo**;

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

It. Ho comprato **tutto**;

Fr. J'ai **tout** acheté.

– I bought **everything**.



NOTE:

In French **tout** should be put before past participle in a sentence.

The rest, The others

Sp. demás (el resto); Port. o resto; It. il resto; Fr. le reste

Spanish **demás** is preceded by the definite article which agrees in gender and number (**demás** itself is invariable) and means “the rest”, “the others”. There are also other equivalents to this in Romance languages, for example: Sp. **el resto**, Port. **o resto**, It. **il resto**, Fr. **le reste** also mean “the rest”, “the others”, which are completely unchangeable.

Sp. **Los demás** (visitantes) no pueden venir, or **El resto** de los visitantes no pueden venir;

Port. **O resto** dos visitantes não podem vir;

It. **Il resto** dei visitatori non possono venire;

Fr. **Le reste** des visiteurs ne peut pas venir.

– **The rest** of the visitors cannot come.

The invariable neuter lo demás in Spanish

The invariable neuter **lo demás** means “everything else”, “the rest”, for example:

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Sp. ella me llamó por teléfono, **lo demás** no importa.
– *She called me on the phone, **the rest** doesn't matter.*

Sp. **el resto**, Port. **o resto**, It. **il resto**, Fr. **le reste** can also be used in this sense:

Sp. Ella me llamó por teléfono, **el resto** no importa;
Port. Ela me telefonou, **o resto** não importa;
It. Lei mi ha telefonato, **il resto** non importa;
Fr. Elle m'a téléphoné, **le reste** n'a pas d'importance.
– *She phoned me, **the rest** does not matter.*

Anyone, None **Sp. ninguno; Port. nenhum; It. nessuno; Fr. aucun**

The indefinite pronoun Sp. **ninguno/a**; Port. **nenhum/a**; It. **nessuno/a**; Fr. **aucun/e** agree in gender in Romance languages and mean “anyone”, “none”:

Sp. **Ninguno** de ellos llegó;
Port. **Nenhum** deles veio;
It. **Nessuno** di loro è venuto;
Fr. **Aucun** d'eux n'est venu.
– *None of them came.*

Sp. ¿Tienes algunos regalos para ellos? – **Ninguno**;
Port. Tens (Você tem) alguns presentes para eles? – **Nenhum**;

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

It. Hai regali per loro? – **Nessuno**;
Fr. As-tu des cadeaux pour eux? – **Aucun**.
– Do you have any gifts for them? – **None**.



NOTE:

In French the negative sentence requires the negative particle **ne** after **aucun** (See the Negation p.313 and Present Simple p.222).

It should be mentioned that Spanish **ninguno** becomes **ningún** when it precedes a masculine noun.

No one, Nobody

Sp. **nadie**; Port. **ninguém**; It. **nessuno**; Fr. **personne**

The indefinite pronouns Sp. **nadie**; Port. **ninguém**; It. **nessuno**; Fr. **personne** mean “no one”, “nobody”. Note that French **personne** also requires the negative particle **ne**, which can become **n’** before a vowel:

Sp. **Nadie** vino;
Port. **Ninguém** veio;
It. **Nessuno** è venuto;
Fr. **Personne n’est** venu.
– **No one** came.

Sp. No veo a **nadie**;
Port. Não vejo **ninguém**;
It. Non vedo **nessuno**;

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Fr. Je ne vois **personne**.

– I see **no one**./I don't see **anyone**.

The previous example shows that unlike in English, in Romance languages a negative sentence has double negation, which contains a negative particle and an indefinite pronoun: Sp. **no...nadie**; Port. **não...ninguém**; It. **non...nessuno**; Fr. **ne...personne** (See the Negation p.313 and Present Simple p. 222).

Nothing

Sp. **nada**; Port. **nada**; It. **niente**; Fr. **rien**

The indefinite pronoun Sp. **nada**; Port. **nada**; It. **niente**; Fr. **rien** mean “nothing”. In French **rien** is also used with the negative particle **ne**.

Sp. No veo **nada**;

Port. Eu não vejo **nada**;

It. Non vedo **niente**;

Fr. Je ne vois **rien**.

– I see **nothing**./I don't see **anything**.

Both

Sp. **ambos (los dos)**; Port. **ambos (os dois)**;

It. **entrambi/ambedue (tutti e due)**;

Fr. **les deux (tous les deux)**

Sp. **ambos/as (los/las dos)**; Port. **ambos/as (os dois/as duas)**; It. **ambedue (tutti e due)**; Fr. **les deux (tous les deux)** are always used in the plural as an adjective or pronoun and refer to two people, things or places and mean “both” in

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

English. They change in gender, except Italian where **ambedue** is invariable.

In Spanish and Portuguese **ambos** is substituted by Sp. **los/las dos** and Port. **os dois/as duas** in speech. In Italian **entrambi** and **ambedue** and **tutti e due** are interchangeable as well as **les deux** and **tous les deux** in French. Observe the following:

Sp. **Ambos** vinieron;

Port. **Ambos** vieram;

It. **Entrambi** sono venuti;

Fr. **Les deux** sont venus.

– **Both** of them came.

Sp. Hablé con **los dos**;

Port. Eu conversei com **os dois**;

It. Ho parlato con tutti **e due**;

Fr. J'ai parlé à tous **les deux**.

– I spoke to **both** of them.



NOTE:

It is notable that English speakers should not use Sp. **ambos**; Port. **ambos**; It. **ambedue/entrambi**; Fr. **les deux** as an equivalent to “**both**” in sentences like: both sister and brother. In Romance languages **both** is used for emphasis and cannot be translated literally. For example:

Sp. Hablé con el hermano y la hermana;

Port. Falei com o irmão e a irmã;

It. Ho parlato con il fratello e la sorella;

CHAPTER 5: PRONOUNS

Fr. J'ai parlé avec frère et sœur.
– *I spoke to both brother and sister.*

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

A verb is a word that indicates an action or a state of being, for example: go, live, be.

Overview

Verbs in Romance languages have categories of mood, tense, person, number, gender and voice. Also, there are personal and impersonal forms of the verb in Romance languages. Personal forms of the verb have the mood and person; impersonal - the category of gender for participles; and both personal and impersonal forms - the category of tense and number. Personal forms of the verb are: the indicative, the subjunctive, the conditional and the imperative. Impersonal forms of the verb are: the participle, the gerund and the infinitive.



Did you know?

Abidjan is the economical capital and chief port of the Ivory Coast (Côte d'Ivoire) with the 3rd largest French speaking population in the world. It is also the 4th most populous city in Africa (over 4.3 million people).

Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French verbs have different tenses in three moods: indicative, subjunctive and conditional mood.

In Spanish, Italian and French the indicative mood consists of eight tense forms. They are divided into simple (only one single word) and compound (made up of an auxiliary verb and a past participle) tense

forms. The simple tenses include the present, imperfect, simple perfect, and future simple. The compound tenses include a present perfect, recent past, past perfect, pluperfect and the future perfect. Compound tenses in all Romance languages are formed using the auxiliary verbs "to be" and to "have". However, Portuguese has 10 tense forms, in addition to the listed above there are also *futuro do perfeito simple* and *futuro do perfeito composto*.

Subjunctive in Italian and French has four tenses, which are present subjunctive, past subjunctive, imperfect subjunctive

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

and pluperfect subjunctive. Spanish and Portuguese have six tenses, in addition to the aforementioned, there are also the future subjunctive and future perfect subjunctive.

In the conditional mood the whole number of tense forms across Romance languages is two.

There is also the imperative mood of the verb that does not have different tenses. The imperative mood expresses commands, orders or instructions.

Now, all the categories of the verb will be considered in more detail for Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

The following demonstrates all the moods and tenses of the 1st person singular of the regular verb Sp. **trabajar**; Port. **trabalhar**; It. **lavorare**; Fr. **travailler** - to work.

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
		se		
	<i>Indicative mood</i>			
	<i>Present tenses</i>			
Present tense	<i>trabajo</i>	<i>trabalho</i>	<i>lavoro</i>	<i>je travaille</i>
Present Perfect	<i>he trabajado</i>	<i>tenho trabalhado</i>	<i>ho lavorato</i>	<i>j'ai travaillé</i>
	<i>Past tenses</i>			
Preterite	<i>trabajé</i>	<i>trabalhei</i>	<i>lavorai</i>	<i>je travaillai</i>
Imperfect	<i>trabajaba</i>	<i>trabalhava</i>	<i>lavoravo</i>	<i>je travaillais</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Past Perfect	<i>hube trabajado</i>	<i>tinha trabalhado</i>	<i>ebbi lavorato</i>	<i>j'eus travaillé</i>
Pluperfect	<i>había trabajado</i>	<i>trabalhara</i>	<i>avevo lavorato</i>	<i>j'avais travaillé</i>
	<i>Future tense</i>			
Future	<i>trabajaré</i>	<i>trabalharei</i>	<i>lavorerò</i>	<i>je travaillerai</i>
Future Perfect	<i>habré trabajado</i>	<i>tereí trabalhado</i>	<i>avrò lavorato</i>	<i>j'aurai travaillé</i>
	<i>Conditionals</i>			
Conditional present	<i>trabajaría</i>	<i>trabalharia</i>	<i>lavorerei</i>	<i>je travaillerais</i>
Conditional Perfect (Past)	<i>habría trabajado</i>	<i>teria trabalhado</i>	<i>avrei lavorato</i>	<i>j'aurais travaillé</i>
	<i>Subjunctive mood</i>			
	<i>Present tenses</i>			
Present tense	<i>trabaje</i>	<i>trabalhe</i>	<i>lavori</i>	<i>je travaille</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

	Spanish		Portuguese	Italian	French
			se		
Present Perfect	haya trabajado		tenha trabalhado	abbia lavorato	j'aie travaillé
	Past tenses				
Past tense	1 st option trabajara	2 nd option trabajase	trabalhasse	lavorassi	je travaillasse
Past Perfect	1 st option hubiera trabajado	2 nd option hubiese trabajado	tivesse trabalhado	avessi lavorato	j'eusse travaillé
	Future tenses				
Future tense	trabajare		trabalhar	—	—
Future Perfect	hubiere trabajado		tiver trabalhado	—	—
	Imperative mood				

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	<i>trabaja</i> (tu) <i>trabaje</i> (usted) <i>trabajemos</i> (nosotros) <i>trabajad</i> (vosotros) <i>trabajen</i> (ustedes)	<i>trabalha</i> (tu) <i>trabalhe</i> (você) <i>trabalhemos</i> (nós) <i>trabalhai</i> (vós) <i>trabalhem</i> (vocês)	<i>lavora</i> (tu) <i>lavori</i> (Lei) <i>lavoriamo</i> (noi) <i>lavorate</i> (voi) <i>lavorino</i> (Loro)	<i>travaille</i> (tu) <i>travaillez</i> (vous) <i>travaillons</i> (nous) <i>travaillez</i> (vous) <i>travaillez</i> (vous)
	Infinitive			
	<i>trabajar</i>	<i>trabalhar</i>	<i>lavorare</i>	<i>travailler</i>
	Compound infinitive			
	<i>haber</i> <i>trabajado</i>	<i>ter</i> <i>trabalhado</i>	<i>avere</i> <i>lavorato</i>	<i>avoir</i> <i>travaillé</i>
	Participle			
<i>Present Participle</i> (gerund)	<i>trabajando</i>	<i>trabalhando</i>	(gerund) <i>lavorando</i>	(part. pres) <i>travaillant</i>
<i>Compound Present Participle</i>	—	<i>tendo</i> <i>trabalhado</i>	—	—
<i>Past Participle</i>	<i>trabajado</i>	<i>trabalhado</i>	<i>lavorato</i>	<i>travaillé</i>

The Indicative Mood

The Present Tense

In Indo-European languages there is a division of verbs into groups. Thus, all the Latin verbs were divided into four conjugations:

1st conj.: **-a-**

2nd conj.: **-e-**

3rd conj.: – **zero conjugation** or **-u-**

4th conj.: **-i-**.

The conjugation type defined the positional change of morphemes. In Vulgar Latin and, later, in the Romance languages, we observe fewer types of Latin verb formations. Key changes in this field that occurred by the time of the emergence of the first Romance languages are:

1. The disappearance of the third type of conjugation, which was distributed between the 2nd and 4th types of conjugation.
2. The emergence of a group of verbs containing the suffix **-sc-**, which lost its characteristic meaning of "inceptiveness" in Latin and received its productivity in the verbs of the 2nd and 4th conjugations in all the Romance languages.
3. The past participle in Romance languages reduced the number of modifications. For example, the suffix **-itus** (*perditus*) disappeared; in Italian and French the Vulgar Latin suffix **-utus** for the verbs of 2nd and 3rd conjugation spread widely replacing non-standard forms.

Thus, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French verbs are divided into 3 groups (conjugations) that are conjugated according to the endings of the infinitive forms.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Below is a table illustrating the endings of all 3 groups (conjugations) of the verbs:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
<i>1st group</i>			
-ar	-ar	-are	-er
<i>2nd group</i>			
-er	-er	-ere	-re
<i>3rd group</i>			
-ir	-ir	-ire	-ir



NOTE:

*In French, verbs ending in **-ir** really belong to the 2nd group. It was deliberately put into the 3rd group by the author for the sake comparison of the verbs.*

Verbs are conjugated by removing the infinitive ending and adding necessary endings to the stem of the verb, which indicate the mood, tense, person, voice and number.

This table shows the formation of the present tense of regular verbs:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	1st group			
	-AR	-AR	-ARE	-ER
<i>Singular</i>	<i>-o, -as, -a,</i>	<i>-o, -as, -a,</i>	<i>-o, -i, -a,</i>	<i>-e, -es, -e,</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Plural	-amos, -áis, -an	-amos, -ais, -am	-iamo, -ate, -ano	-ons, -ez, -ent
	2nd group			
	-ER	-ER	-ERE	-RE
Singular	-o, -es, -e,	-o, -es, -e,	-o, -i, -e,	-s, -s, -NA,
Plural	-emos, -éis, -en	-emos, -eis, -em	-iamo, -ete, -ono	-ons, -ez, -ent
	3rd group			
	-IR	-IR	-IRE	-IR
Singular	-o, -es, -e,	-o, -es, -e,	-o, -i, -e, (-isco, -isci, -isce,)	-s, -s, -t, (-is, -is, -it)
Plural	-imos, -ís, -en	-imos, -is, -em	-iamo, -ite, -ono (-iamo, -ite, -iscono)	-ons, -ez, -ent (-issons, -issez, -issent)

Below is a table displaying an example of conjugation of all three groups in the present tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1 group			

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Sp.: hablar	Port.: falar	It.: parlare	Fr.: parler
yo hablo tu hablas el, ella habla nosotros/as hablamos vosotros/as hablais ellos/ellas hablan	eu falo tu falas ele/ela fala nos falamos vos falais eles/elas falam	io parlo tu parli lui/lei parla noi parliamo voi parlate loro parlano	je parle tu parles il/elle parle nous parlons vous parlez ils/elles parlent
2 group			
Sp.: vender	Port.: vender	It.: vendere	Fr.: vendre
vendo vendes vende vendemos vendeis venden	vendo vendes vende vendemos vendeis vendem	vendo vendi vende vendiamo vendete vendono	je vends tu vends il/elle vend nous vendons vous vendez ils/elles vendent
3 group			
Sp.: partir	Port.: partir	It.: partire	Fr.: partir

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
parto partes parte partimos partis parten	parto partes parte partimos partis partem	parto parti parte partiamo partite partono	je pars tu pars il/elle part nous partons vous partez ils/elles partent



Did you know?

Bolivia, a country in central South America, has 36 official languages. The main languages are Spanish (60%), Quechua (21.2%), Aymara (14.6%) and Guaraní (0.6%) along with another 32 recognized languages.

It should be noted that in Italian and French some verbs in the 3rd group in the present tense add the suffix **-isc-** (in Italian) and **-iss-** (in French).

In Italian **-isc-** precedes the conjugated ending, except the 1st and 2nd person plural of the verb. In French the suffix **-iss-** also precedes the ending, but only in the plural:

Italian	French
<i>finire</i>	<i>finir</i>
finisco	je finis
finisci	tu finis
finisce	il finit
finiamo	nous finissons
finite	vous finissez
finiscono	ils finissent

**NOTE:**

*In Italian and French, the majority of verbs of the 3rd group are conjugated as It. **finire** and Fr. **finir**, rather than as the It. **partire** and Fr. **partir** type of verbs. French verbs that are not conjugated as **finir** are considered to be irregular. However, the number of verbs ending in **-ir** are still conjugated in accordance with the conjugation paradigm of the verb **partir**. According to this pattern of conjugation, the verbs having two consonants at the end of their stems (partir: part-) drop the last consonant of the stem in the singular of the present tense and change it to the **-s, -s, -t** endings.*

The most common verbs of the 1st group

Many of the most frequently used verbs in the Romance languages belong to this 1st group conjugation. Below is the list of some of them:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
habitar	habitar	abitare	habiter	<i>to live</i>
alquilar	alugar	affittare	louer	<i>to rent</i>
alzar	alçar	alzare	lever	<i>to lift</i>
levantar	levantar	sollevare	soulever	<i>to pick up</i>
elevar	elevar	elevare	élever	<i>to raise</i>
amar	amar	amare	aimer	<i>to love</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
llegar	chegar	arrivare	arriver	<i>to arrive</i>
escuchar	escutar	ascoltare	écouter	<i>to listen</i>
bailar, danzar	bailar, dançar	ballare, danzare	danser	<i>to dance</i>
brillar	brilhar	brillare	briller	<i>to shine</i>
cambiar	cambiar, trocar	cambiare	changer	<i>to change</i>
caminar	caminhar	cammin- are	marcher	<i>to walk</i>
cantar	cantar	cantare	chanter	<i>to sing</i>
buscar	procurar	cercare	chercher	<i>to look for</i>
cenar	jantar	cenare	diner	<i>to dine</i>
llamar	chamar	chiamare	appeler	<i>to call</i>
ordenar	ordenar	comand- are	command- er	<i>to order</i>
comprar	comprar	comprare	acheter	<i>to buy</i>
contar	contar	contare	compter	<i>to count</i>
cocinar	cozinhar	cucinare	cuisinier	<i>to cook</i>
desear	desejar	desiderare	désirer	<i>to desire</i>
dibujar	desenhar	disegnare	dessiner	<i>to draw</i>
preguntar	perguntar	domand- are	demander	<i>to ask</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
firmar	assinar	firmare	signer	<i>to sign</i>
formar	formar	formare	former	<i>to form</i>
frecuent- ar	frequëntar	frequent- are	fréquenter	<i>to frequent</i>
ganar	ganhar	guadagn- are	gagner	<i>to win, to earn</i>
jugar	jogar	giocare	jouer	<i>to play</i>
mirar	olhar	guardare	regarder	<i>to look at</i>
guiar, conducir	guiar, conduzir	guidare	guider, conduire	<i>to drive, to guide</i>
probar	provar	gustare, assaggiare	goûter	<i>to taste</i>
informar	informar	informare	informer	<i>to inform</i>
enseñar	ensinar	insegnare	enseigner	<i>to teach</i>
invitar	convidar, invitar	invitare	inviter	<i>to invite</i>
dejar	deixar	lasciare	laisser	<i>to leave</i>
lavar	lavar	lavare	laver	<i>to wash</i>
trabajar	trabalhar	lavorare	travailler	<i>to work</i>
mandar, enviar	mandar, enviar	mandare, inviare	envoyer	<i>to send</i>
nadar	nadar	nuotare	nager	<i>to swim</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
hablar	falar	parlare	parler	<i>to speak</i>
pensar	pensar	pensare	penser	<i>to think</i>
pasar	passar	passare	passer	<i>to pass, to spend</i>
presentar	apresentar	presentare	présenter	<i>to present</i>
preparar	preparar	preparare	préparer	<i>to prepare</i>
contar	contar	raccontare	raconter	<i>to narrate</i>
saludar	saudar cumprimen- tar	salutare	saluer	<i>to greet</i>
saltar	saltar	saltare	sauter	<i>to jump</i>
casar	casar	sposare	marier	<i>to marry</i>
estudiar	estudar	studiare	étudier	<i>to study</i>
sonar	tocar	suonare	sonner	<i>to ring to play</i>
telefone- ar	telefonar	telefonare	téléphoner	<i>to telephon e</i>
tocar	tocar	toccare	toucher	<i>to touch</i>
cruzar	atravessar	attravers- are	traverser	<i>to cross</i>
engañar	enganar	ingannare	tromper	<i>to deceive</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
visitar	visitar	visitare	visiter	<i>to visit</i>

The most common verbs of the 2nd group

Below is a list of some common verbs of the second conjugation:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
aprender	aprender	apprendere	apprendre	<i>to learn</i>
<u>batir</u>	bater	battere	battre	<i>to beat</i>
conocer	conhecer	conoscere	connaître	<i>to know</i>
creer	crer	credere	croire	<i>to believe</i>
<u>describir</u>	descrever	descrivere	décrire	<i>to describe</i>
defender	defender	difendere	défendre	<i>to defend</i>
<u>elegir</u>	eleger	eleggere	élire	<i>to elect</i>
leer	ler	leggere	lire	<i>to read</i>
poner	<u>pôr</u>	mettere	mettre	<i>to put</i>
morder	morder	mordere	mordre	<i>to bite</i>
nacer	nacer	nascere	naître	<i>to be born</i>
ofender	ofender	offendere	<u>offenser</u>	<i>to offend</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
perder	perder	perdere	perdre	to lose
tener	ter	prendere	prendre	to take
prometer	prometer	promettere	promettre	to promise
responder	responder	rispondere	répondre	to answer
<u>escribir</u>	escrever	scrivere	écrire	to write
vender	vender	vendere	vendre	to sell
<u>vivir</u>	viver	vivere	vivre	to live

The most common verbs of the 3rd group

Below is a list of the most common verbs of the third-conjugation:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
abrir	abrir	aprire	ouvrir	to open
aplaudir	aplaudir	applaudire	applaudir	to applaud
hervir	<u>ferver</u>	bollire	bouillir	to boil
construir	construir	costruire	construire , bâtir	to build, to construct
cubrir	cobrir	coprire	couvrir	to cover

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
dormir	dormir	dormire	dormir	to sleep
huir	fugir	fuggire	<u>fuir</u>	to flee
<u>ofrecer</u>	<u>oferecer</u>	offrire	offrir	to offer
partir	partir	partire	partir	to leave
reabrir	reabrir	riaprire	réouvrir	to reopen
descubrir	descobrir	scoprire	découvrir	to discover
seguir	seguir	seguire	<u>suiure</u>	to follow
sentir	sentir	sentire	sentir	to feel, to smell
servir	servir	servire	servir	to serve
sufrir	sofrer	soffrire	souffrir	to suffer
vestir	vestir	vestire	vêtir	to dress, to wear



NOTE:

Underlined verbs belong to different groups and are to be memorized.

Irregular Verbs in the Present Tense

It is important to note that the set of irregular verbs, in whole, are common for all considered Romance languages. Below

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

is the list of the most frequently used irregular verbs in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
haber (he, has, ha, hemos, han)	haver (hei, há, há, havemos, haveis, hão)	avere (ho, hai, ha, abbiamo, avete, hanno)	avoir (ai, as, a, avons, avez, ont)	<i>to have</i>
tener (tengo, tienes, tiene, tienen)	ter (tenho, tens, tem, temos, tendes, têm)	tenere (tengo, tieni, tiene, tengono)	—	<i>to have</i>
ser (soy, eres, es, somos, sois, son)	ser (sou, és, é, somos, sois, são)	essere (sono, sei, è, siamo, siete, sono)	etre (suis, es, est, sommes, êtes, sont)	<i>to be</i>
estar (estoy, estás, están)	estar (estou, estás, está, estão)	stare (stai, stanno)	—	<i>to be</i>
ir (voy, vas, va, vamos, vais, van)	ir (vou, vais, vai, vamos, ides, vão)	andare (vado, vai, va, vanno)	aller (vais, vas, va, allons, allez, vont)	<i>to go</i>
dar (doy, dais)	dar (dou, dás, dá, damos, dais, dão)	dare (dai, dà, danno)	<u>donner</u> (regular)	<i>to give</i>
hacer (hago)	fazer (faço)	fare (faccio, fai, facciamo, fanno)	faire (faisons, faites, font)	<i>to do</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
decir (digo, dices, dice, dicen)	dizer (digo, diz)	dire (dico, dici, dice, diciamo, dicono)	dire (disons, dites, disent)	<i>to say</i>
poder (puedo, puedes, puede, pueden)	poder (posso)	potere (posso, puoi, può, possiamo, possono)	pouvoir (peux, peut, peuvent)	<i>can</i>
querer (quiero, quieres, quiere, quieren)	querer (quer)	volere (voglio, vuoi, vuole, vogliamo, vogliono)	vouloir (veux, veut, veulent)	<i>to want</i>
saber (sé)	saber (sei)	sapere (so, sai, sa, sappiamo, sanno)	savoir (sais, sais, sait)	<i>to know</i>
poner (pongo)	pôr (ponho, pões, põe, pomos, pondes, poem)	porre (pongo, poni, pone, poniamo, ponete, pongono)	mettre (mets, mets, met)	<i>to put</i>
conocer (conozco)	conhecer (conheço)	conoscere (regular)	connaître (connais, connais, connaît, connaissons, connaissez, connaissent)	<i>to get to know</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
venir (vengo, vienes, viene, vienen)	vir (venho, vens, vem, vimos, vindes, vêm)	venire (vengo, vieni, viene, vengono)	venir (viens, viens, vient, viennent)	<i>to come</i>
dormir (duermo, duermes, duerme, duermen)	dormir (durmo)	<u>dormire</u> (regular)	dormir (dors, dors, dort)	<i>to sleep</i>
sentir (siento, sientes, siente, sienten)	sentir (sinto)	<u>sentire</u> (regular)	sentir (sens, sens, sent)	<i>to feel</i>
morir (muero, mueres, muere, mueren)	<u>morrer</u> (regular)	morire (muoio, muori, muore, muoiono)	mourir (meurs, meurs, meurt, meurent)	<i>to die</i>

Verb Spelling and Vowel Changes



Did you know?

Lisbon is considered the most ancient city in Western Europe (it was settled around 1200 B.C.). It's older than such capitals as Rome, Paris and London.

However, despite the majority of similar irregular verbs, each of the considered Romance languages has its own number of irregular verbs with specific models of conjugation, which means that some verbs have specific spelling changes in order to preserve the pronunciation

(sound) presented in the infinitive and others change their vowel within the stem. Therefore, it is highly important to regard the special rules for when the spelling or vowels change in a verb

conjugation. Since the rules are very divergent and particular for each language, it makes it difficult to somehow combine these changes occurring in a verb conjugation of the Romance languages. So, it is necessary to consider them separately in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

Spanish

Stem changing verbs

In Spanish there is a number of verbs whose vowels change within the stem in all three groups of verbs which are ended in **-ar**, **-er**, **-ir**, for example: **contamos** "we count" but **cuento** "I count". Normally, such changes take place in all persons except the 1st and 2nd persons plural (*nosotros* and *vosotros*), which keep the regular stem. In total there are six variants of stem changes, which are: **e - ie**, **o - ue**, **e - i**, **i - ie**, **u - ue**, **o - hue**.

Below is the description of each of them:

• e - ie

This type of stem change is considered to be the most common in Spanish.

For example: **Pensar** - to think: **pienso** - **piensas** - **piensa** - **pensamos** - **pensáis** - **piensan**.

Below are some common verbs of this type of stem change:

acertar	to guess
atender	to attend
atravesar	to cross
calentar	to warm
cerrar	to close
comenzar	to begin
confesar	to confess

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

helar	to freeze
defender	to defend
descender	to descend
despertar (se)	to wake up
divertirse	to have fun
empezar	to start
encender	to turn on
encerrar	to enclose
entender	to understand
fregar	to scrub/wash
gobernar	to govern
sentir	to feel
mentir	to lie
negar	to deny
nevar	to snow
pensar (en)	to think (about)
perder	to lose
preferir	to prefer
querer	to want
recomendar	to recommend
sentar (se)	to sit down
sugerir	to suggest
tropezar (con)	to stumble (into, across)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

o - ue

This type of stem change is also one of the most common in Spanish.

For example: **V**olver – *to return*: **u**elvo – **u**elves – **u**elve – volvemos – volvéis – **u**elven.

Below is a list of some common verbs of this type of stem change:

absolver	to absolve
acordarse (de)	to agree on
almorzar	to have lunch
aprobar	to approve
cocer	to boil/bake
colgar	to hang (up)
conmover	to move (emotionally)
contar	to count
costar	to cost
demoler	to demolish
demostrar	to demonstrate
devolver	to return (something)
disolver	to dissolve
doler	to hurt
dormir	to sleep
encontrar	to find
envolver	to wrap
llover	to rain

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

morder	to bite
moler	to grind
morir	to die
mostrar	to show
mover	to move
poder	can
probar	to taste, to prove
promover	to promote
recordar	to remember
remover	to remove
resolver	to resolve
retorcer	to twist
revolver	to mix, to shake
rogar	to beg
soler	to be accustomed to
sonar	to sound
soñar	to dream
torcer	to twist
tronar	to thunder
volar	to fly

• e - i

Example: Repetir - to repeat: rep*í*to - rep*í*tes - rep*í*te - rep*e*timos - rep*e*tís - rep*e*ten.

Below are some common verbs of this stem change:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

conseguir	to get
corregir	to correct
despedir	to say goodbye, to fire
elegir	to elect
impedir	to impede
medir	to measure
perseguir	to follow
repetir	to repeat
reírse (de)	to laugh, to make fun of
seguir	to follow
servir	to serve
sonreírse	to smile
vestirse	to get dressed

• *i – ie*

Mainly there are only two frequently used verbs of this kind of stem change, which are:

adquirir	to acquire
inquirir	to inquire

For example: **Adquirir**: **adqu***ie*ro – **adqu***ie*res – **adqu***ie*re – **adqu***ie*rimos – **adqu***ie*rís – **adqu***ie*ren.

• *u – ue*

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

There is only one frequently used verb with this stem change. This is **jugar** – *to play*.

For example: **Jugar**: **juego** – **juegas** – **juega** – **jugamos** – **jugáis** – **juegan**.

• **o – hue**

There is also only one commonly used verb whose stem alters from **o** to **hue**.

This is **oler** – *to smell*.

To illustrate: **Oler**: **huelo** – **huelas** – **huele** – **olemos** – **oléis** – **huelen**.

Spelling changing verbs (in Present tense)

As it was said before, there are also some verbs whose spelling changes in order to preserve the correct pronunciation (sound) presented in the infinitive in Spanish. Basically, the understanding of these rules is essential for correct writing in Spanish. Below are the rules of the spelling changes in a verb conjugation:

- Verbs ending in **–ger** or **–gir** (*g – j change of the 1st person singular*)

*In the first person singular, the **g** changes to **j** to preserve the /h/ sound. For example:*

Escoger: **escojo** – **escoges** – **escoge** – **escogemos** – **escogéis** – **escogen**.

Below are some common verbs of **g – j** change:

acoger

to greet

afligir

to afflict

coger

to catch, to grab

corregir

to correct

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

dirigir	to direct
emerger	to emerge
encoger	to shrink
escoger	to choose
exigir	to demand
 fingir	to pretend
infringir	to infringe
proteger	to protect
recoger	to pick up
restringir	to restrain
resurgir	to re-emerge
rugir	to roar
sumergir	to submerge
surgir	to emerge
urgir	to urge

- Verbs ending in **-guir** (*gu - g change of the 1st person singular*)

*In the first person singular, the **gu** changes to **g** to preserve the /g/ sound.*

For instance: Disting**uir**: disting**o** – disting**ues** – disting**ue** – disting**uimos** – disting**uis** – disting**uen**.

Below are some common verbs of **gu - g** change:

distinguir	to distinguish
conseguir	to come by, to get

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

erguir	to build, to erect
extinguir	to extinguish
perseguir	to pursue
proseguir	to proceed
seguir	to follow

- Verbs ending in **-uir** (*i - y change of all persons except 1st and 2nd plural*)

In all persons except the 1st and 2nd persons plural an unstressed i always changes to y.

For example: Conclu**ir** – conclu**y**o – conclu**y**es – conclu**y**e – conclu**i**mos – conclu**i**s – conclu**y**en.

Below are some common verbs of *i - y* change:

argüir	to argue
atribuir	to attribute
constituir	to constitute
construir	to construct
contribuir	to contribute
destituir	to dismiss
destruir	to destroy
diluir	to dilute
disminuir	to diminish
distribuir	to distribute
huir	to run away
incluir	to include

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

influir	to influence
intuir	to intuit
obstruir	to obstruct
recluir	to confine
reconstruir	to reconstruct
sustituir	to substitute

- Verbs ending in **-cer** or **-cir** (*c - z change in the 1st person singular*)

If a stem ends in a consonant before **-cer** or **-cir**, the **c** changes to **z** in *the first person singular* to preserve the /s/ or /th/ sound and prevent the /co/ sound.

For example: Fruncir: frunzo – frunc**es** – frunc**e** – frunc**imos** – frunc**ís** – frunc**en**.

Below are some common verbs of **c - z** change:

convencer	to convince
ejercer	to exert
esparcir	to disperse
fruncir	to frown
vencer	to vanquish
zurcir	to darn

If the stem ends in a vowel before **-cer** or **-cir**, **z** is added before **c** in the 1st person singular.

For instance: Conocer: cono**zco** – cono**ces** – cono**ce** – cono**cemos** – cono**céis** – cono**cen**.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Below are some commonly used verbs of **c - cz** change:

aborrecer	agradecer	to detest
	agradecer	to thank
	aparecer	to appear
	apetecer	to feel an urge for
	complacer	to satisfy
	conducir	to drive
	conocer	to know, to meet
	crecer	to grow
	deducir	to deduce
	desaparecer	to disappear
	desconocer	to ignore
	establecer	to establish
	inducir	to induce
	introducir	to introduce
	merecer	to deserve
	obedecer	to obey
	producir	to produce
	nacer	to be born
	reaparecer	to reappear
	reconocer	to recognize
	reducir	to reduce
	restablecer	to restore
	rejuvenecer	to rejuvenate

traducir

to translate

However, there are some exceptions, such verbs as: **hacer** (to do), **decir** (to say) and **satisfacer** (to satisfy) do not follow the **c – ac** rule and instead, **c** changes to **g** in the 1st person singular. For example:

Decir: digo – dices – dice – decimos – decís – dicen.

Hacer: hago – haces – hace – hacemos – hacéis – hacen.

Satisfacer: satisfago – satisfaces – satisface – satisfacemos – satisfacéis – satisfacen.

• Other verbs

There are some other verbs that add **g** in the 1st person singular.

asir (asgo)	to seize	salir (salgo)	to leave
oír (oigo)	to hear	tener	to have
poner	to put	(tengo)	to cost
(pongo)		valer (valgo)	

Portuguese

• e – i; o – u

It should be noted that if the stem vowel in **–ir** verbs is an **e** or an **o**, it becomes **i** or **u** respectively in the 1st person singular. To illustrate:

e – i change: Mentir: eu **mi**nto.

o – u change: Dormir: eu **du**rmo.

Below are some common verbs of **e – i; o – u** change:

e – i

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

despir (dispo)	to undress
mentir (minto)	to tell a lie
preferir (prefiro)	to prefer
repetir (repito)	to repeat
seguir (sigo)	to follow
servir (sirvo)	to serve
vestir (visto)	to dress
cobrir (cubro)	to cover
dormir (durmo)	to sleep
tossir (tusso)	to cough

• **c, g, gu – ç, j, or g**

If the stem of the **-er** or **-ir** verb ends in **c, g** or **gu**, these consonants change to **ç, j**, or **g** respectively when they are followed by an **-o** or an **-a** in order to preserve the consonant sound of the stem.

For instance: Vencer: eu ven**ço**

Below are the most common verbs following this rule:

vencer (ven ço)	to win
fugir (fuj o)	to escape
erguer (erg o)	to build, to erect

Italian

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

- Verbs ending in **-ciare**, **-giare**, **-chiare** and **-ghiare**

Verbs that end in **-ciare**, **-giare**, **-chiare** and **-ghiare** drop the **-i** in the 2nd person singular and plural (tu, voi) before the regular endings (**-i** and **-iamo**) are added.

For example: Cominciare: comincio – cominci – comincia – cominciamo – cominciate – cominciano.

Below are some common verbs ending in **-ciare**, **-giare**, **-chiare** and **-ghiare**:

cominciare	to start
marciare	to march
racconciare	to fix, to mend
assaggiare	to taste
noleggiare	to rent
parcheggiare	to park
viaggiare	to travel
arrischiare	to risk
invecchiare	to grow old
avvinghiare	to grip, to clunch

- Verbs ending in **-care**, **-gare**

All verbs ending in **-care**, **-gare** add an **-h-** to the root in the 2nd person singular and plural (tu, voi) in order to preserve the hard sound of the **c** or **g** of the infinitive.

For example: Cercare: cerco – cerchi – cerca – cerchiamo – cercate – cercano.

Below are some common verbs ending in **-care**, **-gare**:

allargare	to widen
------------------	----------

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

allungare	to lengthen
attaccare	to attack, to glue
divagare	to amuse
frugare	to rummage
impaccare	to pack
indagare	to investigate
sbarcare	to disembark
toccare	to touch
troncare	to break, to cut off

- Verbs ending in **-cere**.

It is notable that the spelling changes in *the 1st person singular and 2nd and 3rd person plural* (io, noi, loro) when the verbs of **-cere** group are conjugated.

For example: **Piacere**: **piaccio** – **piaci** – **piace** – **piacciamo** (**piaciamo**) – **piacete** – **piacciono**.

Below are some common verbs ending in **-cere**:

compiacere	to gratify, to please
dispiacere	to displease, to dislike
giacere	to lie down
piacere	to like
tacere	to keep silent

- Verbs with **-isc-**

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Many **-ire** or 3rd group verbs add **-isc-** to the root in all forms of the present tense, *except the 1st and 2nd person plural* of the verb (noi and voi).

For example: Capire: cap**isco** – cap**isci** – cap**isce** – capiamo – capite – cap**iscono**.

The following is a list of some Italian verbs gaining the suffix **-isc-**:

apparire	to appear, to seem
capire	to understand
comparire	to appear
costruire	to build, to construct
differire	to differ
dimagrire	to lose weight
finire	to end, to finish
impedire	to prevent
ingrandire	to enlarge
preferire	to prefer
pulire	to clean
riferire	to relate
ubbidire	to obey

It is notable that the verbs **apparire** (to appear), **compartire** (to appear), and **scomparire** (to disappear) have two different ways of conjugation in the present tense, *except the 2nd and 3rd person plural* (noi and voi), which have regular endings. They can be conjugated either using **-isc-** suffix or using alternate endings. These verbs drop the **-rire** and add **-i-** to the root in *the 1st person singular and 3rd person plural* (io and loro). To illustrate:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Apparire: appaio (appar**isco**) – appari (appar**isci**) – appare (appar**isce**) – appariamo – apparite – appaiono (appar**iscono**);

Comparire: compaio (compar**isco**) - compari (compar**isci**) - compare (compar**isce**) - compariamo - comparite - compaiono (compar**iscono**);

Scomparire: scompaio (scompar**isco**) - scompari (scompar**isci**) - scomapre (scompa**isce**) - scompariamo - scomparite - scompaiono (scompar**iscono**).

• Verbs ending in **-durre**

Some Italian verbs ending in **-durre** are considered to be irregular whose roots for the present tense come from the original Latin infinitives (e.g. it. condurre - lat. conducere - to drive; it. produrre - lat. producer - to produce). When conjugated such verbs add **-c-** to stem before the regular conjugating endings. It is notable that endings are the same as the endings of regular **-ere** verbs.

For instance: **Condurre:** conduco - conduci - conduce - conduciamo - conducete - conducono.

Below are some common verbs ending in **-durre**:

condurre	to to lead, to drive
introdurre	to introduce
produrre	to produce
ridurre	to reduce
tradurre	to translate

• Verbs ending in **-dire**

Some Italian verbs ending in **-dire** are also considered to be irregular. One verb having this ending was already presented previously in the table of irregular verbs, which is **dire** - to say. Such verbs come from its original Latin infinitive **dicere** and when conjugated they also add **-c-** to stem before the regular

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

conjugating endings. It is notable that endings are the same as the endings of regular **-ere** verbs, but the 2nd person plural has the form *dite*.

For example: Contradd**ire**: contraddico - contraddici - contraddice - contraddiciamo - contradd**ite** - contraddicono.

Below are some common verbs ending in **-dire**:

contraddire	to contradict
disdire	to cancel
indire	to announce, to declare
interdire	to prohibit
maledire	to curse

• Verbs ending in **-porre**

Like the ending **-dire**, there are some Italian verbs ending in **-porre** are also regarded as irregular. One verb that has this ending was presented previously in the table of irregular verbs, which is **porre** - *to put*. Such verbs come from its original Latin infinitive **ponere**. Therefore, it should be noted that there is a **-g-** added in the 1st person singular and 3rd person plural (io and loro) forms.

For example: Comp**orre**: compon**go** - componi - compone - componiamo - componete - compon**go**.

Below are some common verbs ending in **-porre**:

comporre	to compose
disporre	to dispose, to provide
esporre	to expose, to show
imporre	to impose
opporre	to oppose

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

posporre	to postpone
proporre	to propose
riporre	to put back
supporre	to suppose



NOTE:

The verbs **rimanere** (to stay), **valere** (to be worth) and **salire** (to climb) also have a **-g-** in the 1st person singular and 3rd person plural (io and loro) forms of the present tense. All other forms are regular and are conjugated as either as -ere or -ire verbs depending on the conjugation to which they belong.

For example: **Rimanere**: rimango - rimani - rimane - rimaniamo - rimanete - rimangono.

• Verbs ending in **-trarre**

The verb **trarre** (to pull, to extract, to draw) as well as all verbs that have the suffix **-trarre** gain a **double g** in the 1st person singular and 3rd person plural (io and loro) forms. They come from Latin *trahere*.

For example: **Trarre**: traggo - trai - trae - traiamo - traete - traggono.

Below are some common verbs ending in **-trarre**:

attrarre	to attract
distrarre	to distract
contrarre	to contract
sottrarre	to subtract

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

▸ Verbs ending in **-gliere**

All verbs that end in **-gliere**, like the verb **cogliere** (*to pick, to gather*) become **-olgo** and **-olgono** in *the 1st person singular and 3rd person plural* (io and loro) forms respectively.

For example: **Cogliere**: **colgo** - cogli - coglie - cogliamo - cogliete - **colgono**.

Below are some common verbs ending in **-gliere**:

accogliere	to welcome, to receive
cogliere	to pick, to gather
raccogliere	to collect, to pick up
togliere	to remove, to take away

▸ Verbs conjugated as **tenere** and **venire**

You are already familiar with the Italian irregular verbs like **tenere** (*to have, to keep*) and **venire** (*to come*) and with the way they are conjugated. Note that all verbs that have a prefix plus **-tenere** or **-venire** gain a **g** in *the 1st person singular and the 3rd person plural* (io and loro) forms. Also, the vowel of the root changes to **-ie-** in *the 2nd and 3rd person singular* which are tu and lui/lei forms.

For example: **Appartenere**: - appartengo - appartieni - appartiene - apparteniamo - appartenete - appartengono.

Below are some commonly used verbs with a prefix plus **-tenere** or **-venire**:

appartenere	to belong
contenere	to contain
intrattenere	to entertain
mantenere	to maintain
ottenere	to obtain

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

ritenere	to retain
sostenere	to sustain, to support
trattenere	to withhold, to detain
avvenire	to happen, to occur
contravvenire	to contravene
convenire	to convene
divenire	to become
intervenire	to intervene
provenire	to come from, to proceed
sovvenire	to help, to remember
svenire	to faint

• Verbs with **-io**

Such verb as **parere** (*to seem*) gains **i** in *the 1st person singular and the 3rd person plural* (io and loro) forms, and has the alternate 2nd person plural (noi) form.

For instance: **Parere**: paio - pari - pare - pa**i**amo (pariamo) - parete - pa**i**ono.

• Other verbs with a vowel change of the root

Sedere

Such verb as **sedere** (*to sit down*) changes the vowel **e** to **ie** in all forms except *the 1st and 2nd person plural* (noi and voi). There is also an alternate form is used for *the 1st person singular and the 3rd person plural* (io and loro).

Sedere: **siedo** (**seggo**) - **siedi** - **siede** - sediamo - sedete - **siedono** (**seggono**)

Udire

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

The vowel **u** in the verb **udire** (*to hear*) changes to **o** in all forms except *the 1st and 2nd person plural* (noi and voi).

Udire: **odo** - **odi** - **ode** - **udiamo** - **udite** - **odono**.

Uscire

The vowel **u** in the verb **uscire** (*to go out*) changes to **e** in all forms of the present tense except *the 1st and 2nd person plural* (noi and voi). It should be said that the verb **riuscire** (*to succeed*) is conjugated like **uscire**.

Uscire: **esco** - **esci** - **esce** - **usciamo** - **uscite** - **escono**.

Dovere

Dovere (*to have to, must*) is considered to be irregular and has specific conjugation in all forms except *the 2nd person plural* (voi). It is notable that *the 1st person singular and 3rd person plural* (io and loro) have two forms of conjugation.

Dovere: **devo** (**debbo**) - **devi** - **deve** - **dobbiamo** - **dovete** - **devono** (**debbono**).

French

• **Verbs starting with a vowel**

There are many verbs that begin with a vowel or silent **h** belong to **-er** group of verbs. Therefore, while interacting with such verbs, the pronoun **je** becomes **j'**, which is called elision. In spoken French in the 1st, 2nd and 3rd person plural (nous, vous, ils/elles) forms, a /z/ sound is pronounced between the pronoun and a following verb. This phenomenon is called liaison. The **n** of **on** is also pronounced before words that begin with a vowel. For example:

Aimer: j'**aime** - tu **aimes** - il, elle **aime** - **on_ aime** - nous **_aimons** - vous **_aimez** - ils/elles **_aiment**.

Below are some common **-er** verbs beginning with a vowel:

abandonner

to bandon

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

accrocher	to hang
admirer	to admire
aider	to help
aimer	to love
allumer	to light
amuser	to amuse
apporter	to bring
arriver	to arrive
attacher	to attach
attirer	to attract

Spelling changes

- Verbs ending in **-cer** and **-ger**

Verbs that end in **-cer** add a cedilla to the c before the letters **a** or **o** in order to keep the soft **c** sound. For example:

Avancer (to advance): nous avan**ç**ons

Commencer (to start): nous commen**ç**ons

Lancer (to throw, to launch): nous lan**ç**ons

Verbs ending in **-ger** gain **e** after **g** before the letters **a** and **o** to keep the soft **g** sound. For example:

Changer (to change): nous changeons

Manger (to eat): nous mangeons

Nager (to swim): nous nageons

- Verbs with **-é-** in the infinitive

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Verbs that have **-é-** in the next to the last syllable of the infinitive change its **-é-** to **-è-** in all forms except *the 1st and 2nd person plural* (nous and vous) forms.

For example: **Espérer**: j'espère - tu espères - il, elle, on espère - nous espérons - vous espérez - ils, elles espèrent.

Below are some of verbs following this rule:

céder	to yield, to cede
célébrer	to celebrate
compléter	to complete
considérer	to consider
espérer	to hope
interpréter	to interpret
posséder	to possess
précéder	to precede
préférer	to prefer
protéger	to protect
répéter	to repeat

► Verbs with **-e-** in the infinitive

Some verbs containing **-e-** in the next to the last syllable of the infinitive, change the **-e-** to **-è-** in all forms except *the 1st and 2nd person plural* (nous and vous) forms.

For instance: **Acheter**: J'achète - tu achètes - ils, elle, on achète - nous achetons - vous achetez - ils, elles achètent.

Some of the commonly used verbs that follow this rule are:

acheter	to buy
----------------	--------

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

mener	to lead
amener	to bring, to lead toward
emmener	to take away, to lead away
promener	to take a walk
lever	to lift
élever	to raise
enlever	to remove, to take off
geler	to freeze
peser	to weigh



NOTE:

Other verbs that have **-e-** in the infinitive, **double** the final consonant in all except the 1st and 2nd person plural (nous and vous) forms.

For example: **Appeler**: j'appelle - tu appelles - il, elle, on appelle - nous appelons - vous appelez - ils, elles appellent.

There are two common verbs that belong to this group:

appeler	to call
jeter	to throw away

- Verbs with **-yer** in the infinitive

Verbs ending in **-oyer**, **-uyer** and **-ayer** change **-y-** to **-i-** in all but the 1st and 2nd person plural (nous and vous) forms.

To illustrate: **Payer**: je paie - tu paies - il, elles, on paie - nous payons - vous payez - ils, elles paient.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Some commonly used verbs with **-yer** ending are:

balayer	to sweep
employer	to use
ennuyer	to bore
envoyer	to send
essayer	to try
essuyer	to wipe
nettoyer	to clean
payer	to pay



NOTE:

Verbs **payer** and **essayer** can also be conjugated regularly without changing **-y-** to **-i-** (e.g. je **paye**; j'**essaye**)

• Other irregular verbs

Verbs like **ouvrir**

There are some verbs that end in **-ir** but are conjugated like regular **-er** verbs.

To illustrate: **Ouvrir**: j'**ouvre** - tu **ouvres** - il, elle, on **ouvre** - nous **ouvrons** - vous **ouvrez** - ils, elles **ouvrent**

Some of the most common verbs of this group are:

ouvrir	to open
couvrir	to cover
recouvrir	to cover again
découvrir	to discover

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

offrir	to offer
souffrir (de)	to suffer
cueillir	to pick, to gather
accueillir	to welcome
recueillir	to collect, to gather

Verbs like *courir*

Some verbs ending in **-ir** or **-re** can be conjugated like regular **-re** verbs except in the *3rd person singular* (il, elle, on) form where **t** is added to the stem.

For example: **Courir**: je cours - tu cours - il, elle, on court - nous courons - vous courez - ils, elles courent.

Some of the most common verbs conjugated like *courir* are:

courir	to run
parcourir	to pass through, to pass over, to travel
secourir	to help, to assist
rire	to laugh
sourire	to smile
conclure	to conclude
rompre	to break
corrompre	to corrupt, to spoil
interrompre	to interrupt

Verbs like battre and mettre

French verbs like **battre** and **mettre** and their derivatives are conjugated like regular **-re** verbs of the second-conjugation except that the **double t** becomes a **single t** in the singular forms. For example:

Battre: je bats - tu bats - il, elle, on bat - nous battons - vous battez - ils, elles battent.

Mettre: je mets - tu mets - il, elle, on met - nous mettons - vous mettez - ils, elles mettent.

Battre, mettre and their derivatives:

battre	to to beat, to hit, to win to fight to combat
se battre	to fight
combattre	to combat
mettre	to put, to wear, to put on
admettre	to admit
permettre	to permit
promettre	to promise
remettre	to put back
soumettre	to overcome, to submit, to subjugate, to subject
se mettre à	to begin
transmettre	to transmit

Verbs like partir

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Verbs like **partir** are usually conjugated like regular **-re** verbs (2nd group) in the plural. But in the 1st and 2nd person singular forms (je, tu) the final consonant is dropped when the regular endings of the **-re** group are added to the stem. In the 3rd person singular form (il, elle, on) the final consonant is also dropped when **-t-** is added. Study the following:

Partir: je **pars** - tu **pars** - il, elle, on **part** - nous partons - vous partez - ils, elles partent.

Below are some common verbs conjugated like **partir**:

partir	to leave
dormir	to sleep
s'endormir	to fall asleep
mentir	to tell a lie
servir	to serve
sentir	to feel, to smell
sortir	to leave, to go out



NOTE:

In the plural the consonant sounds **t** in **partir**, **mentir** and **sortir**; and **m** in **dormir** and **v** in **servir**.

Verbs like **vaincre**

Verbs **vaincre** (to conquer) and **convaincre** (to convince) are conjugated like regular second-conjugation group **-re** of the verbs except that the **c** changes to **qu** in the plural.

For instance: **Vaincre:** je vains - tu vains - il, elle, on vainc - nous vainquons - vous vainquez - ils, elles vainquent.

Verbs like **connaître**

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

The verb **connaître** as well as similar verbs are conjugated in the way that the **circumflex** is put over the **i** in the 3rd person singular.

For example: **Connaître**: je connais - tu connais - il, elle, on connaît - nous connaissons - vous connaissez - ils, elles connaissent.

Below are some common verbs of this group including **connaître**:

connaître	to to know someone, to be acquainted	paraître	to seem, to appear
apparaître	to appear, to seem	reconnaître	to recognize
disparaître	to disappear	naître	to be born



NOTE:

The verb **haïr** (to hate) is also conjugated like **connaître** in the singular, except that there is no circumflex put above the **i** in the 3rd person singular. It is noticeable that the diaeresis is placed on the **i** in the plural. To illustrate:

Haïr: je hais - tu hais - il, elle, on hait - nous haïssons - vous haïssez - ils, elles haïssent.

The verbs **plaire** (to be pleasing), **déplaire** (to displease) and **se taire** (to be quiet) are also conjugated like **connaître** but there is only one **s** in the plural. There is no circumflex on the **i** in the 3rd person singular of **se taire**. For example:

Plaire: je plais - tu plais - il, elle, on plaît - nous plaisons - vous plaisez - ils, elles plaisent.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Se taire: *je me tais - tu te tais - il, elle, on se tait - nous nous taisons - vous vous taisez - ils, elles se taisent.*

Verbs ending in **-ire**

Many verbs ending in **-ire** add the endings **-s, -s, -t, -sons, -sez, -sent** to the stem.

For example: **Lire:** *je lis - tu lis - il, elle, on lit - nous lisons - vous lisez - ils, elles lisent.*

The most common verbs belonging to this group are:

lire	to read
élire	to elect
dire	to say
interdire	to forbid
suffire	to be sufficient
conduire	to drive, to conduct
produire	to produce
traduire	to translate
construire	to build
reconstruire	to rebuild, to reconstruct
détruire	to destroy
cuire	to cook
nuire	to do harm



NOTE:

The 2nd person plural of **dire** (*vous dites*) is an exception.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Verbs like *écrire*, *vivre*, *suivre*

French verbs such as ***écrire***, ***vivre***, ***suivre*** are conjugated similarly and add ***v*** in the plural. For instance:

Écrire: j'écris - tu écris - il, elle, on écrit - nous ***écriv***ons - vous ***écrivez*** - ils, elles ***écrivent***.

Below are some common verbs of this group including ***écrire***, ***vivre***, ***suivre***:

<i>écrire</i>	to write
<i>décrire</i>	to describe
<i>vivre</i>	to live
<i>survivre</i>	to survive
<i>suivre</i>	to follow, to take a class
<i>poursuivre</i>	to pursue, to follow up
<i>s'ensuivre</i>	to come after, to follow

Verbs like *croire* and *voir*

Like ***-yer*** verbs, ***croire*** (to believe), ***voir*** (to see), ***prévoir*** (foresee) and ***revoir*** (to see again) experience an internal vowel change. The ***i*** changes to ***y*** in the 1st and 2nd person plural forms (nous, vous). Other forms are conjugated like regular second-conjugation group (***-re***) of verbs except in the 3rd person singular, where ***t*** is added to the stem. For example:

Croire: je crois - tu crois - il, elle, on ***croit*** - nous ***croy***ons - vous ***croyez*** - ils, elles, ***croient***.

Voir: je vois - tu vois - il, elle, on ***voit*** - nous ***voy***ons - vous ***voyez*** - ils, elles ***voient***.



NOTE:

The verbs ***fuir*** (to flee) and ***s'enfuir*** (to flee, to run away) have absolutely the same

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

vowel change in the 1st and 2nd person plural:

Fuir: je fuis - tu fuis - il, elle, on fuit - nous fuyons - vous fuyez - ils, elles fuient.

Verbs like *craindre*, *peindre*, *joindre*

The verbs in this group undergo an internal change from **n** to **gn** in the plural. For instance:

Craindre: je crains - tu crains - il, elle, on craint - nous craignons - vous craignez - ils, elles craignent.

Peindre: je peins - tu peins - il, elle, on peint - nous peignons - vous peignez - ils, elles, on peignent.

Joindre: je joins - tu joins - il, elle, on joint - nous joignons - vous joignez - ils, elles joignent.

Below are some verbs of this group including *craindre*, *peindre*, *joindre*:

craindre	to fear
plaindre	to pity, to feel sorry for
se plaindre	to complain
atteindre	to reach
éteindre	to extinguish, to put out
peindre	to paint
joindre	to join
rejoindre	to rejoin, to reunite

Verbs like *prendre*

Verbs like **prendre** (*to take, to take food, to drink - beverage, to buy a ticket*) are conjugated like the **-re** group of verbs (2nd group) in the singular, but in the plural, the final **-d** is dropped

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

from the stem and regular ending is added. Also, the consonant **n** is doubled in the 3rd person plural:

Prendre: je prends - tu prends - il, elle, on prend - nous **prenons** - vous **prenez** - ils, elles **prennent**.

Below are some other verbs which are conjugated like **prendre**:

apprendre	to learn
comprendre	to understand
reprendre	to take back
surprendre	to surprise

Verbs like **tenir** and **venir**

The verbs **venir** (to come), **tenir** (to hold) and its derivatives are conjugated similarly and change the vowel from **-e-** to **-ie-** in the singular forms and the 3rd person plural and double **nn** in the 3rd person plural:

Tenir: je **tiens** - tu **tiens** - il, elle, on **tient** - nous **tenons** - vous **tenez** - ils, elles **tiennent**.

Venir: je **viens** - tu **viens** - il, elle, on **vient** - nous **venons** - vous **venez** - ils, elles **viennent**.

Below is a list of commonly used derivatives of the verbs **tenir** and **venir**:

Tenir		Venir	
appartenir	to belong to	revenir	to come back
contenir	to hold, to contain	convenir	to be convenient
maintenir	to maintain	devenir	to become

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

obtenir	to obtain	redevenir	to become again
retenir	to retain	parvenir	to reach, to attain
		se souvenir (de)	to remember

Verbs *acquérir* and *conquérir*

The verbs **acquérir** (*to acquire, to buy, to gain*) and **conquérir** (*to conquer, to win*) undergo an internal vowel change from **é** to **ie** in all the forms except the 1st and 2nd person plural (*nous* and *vous*). For instance:

Acquérir: j'**acqui**ers - tu **acqui**ers - il, elle, on **acqui**ert - nous **acqui**érons - vous **acqui**érez - ils, elles **acqui**èrent.

Verbs like *boire*, *devoir*, *recevoir*

The verbs **boire** (*to drink*), **devoir** (*to owe, to have to*), **recevoir** (*to receive*), **apercevoir** (*to perceive*) and **décevoir** (*to disappoint, to deceive*) are conjugated alike and have the internal vowel change in the 1st and 2nd person plural forms and also the **v** is added in all plural forms. It is noticeable that the **cedilla** is placed on the **c** in the singular and 3rd person plural forms of **recevoir** and its derivatives. Study the following:

Boire: je **bois** - tu **bois** - il, elle, on **boit** - nous **bu**vons - vous **bu**vez - ils, elles **boi**vent.

Devoir: je **dois** - tu **dois** - il, elle, on **doit** - nous **dev**ons - vous **dev**ez - ils, elles **doi**vent.

Recevoir: je **reçois** - tu **reçois** - il, elle, on **reçoit** - nous **rece**vons - vous **rece**vez - ils, elles **reço**ivent.

Valoir and *falloir*

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

The verbs **valoir** (*to be worth*) and **falloir** (*to be necessary*) are considered to be irregular and their conjugation should be remembered since they were not presented in the table of irregular verbs previously. Note that **falloir** has *only the 3rd person singular form*.

Valoir: je **vaux** - tu **vaux** - il, elle, on **vaut** - nous **valons** - vous **valez** - ils, elles **valent**.

Falloir: il **faut**

Use of the Present Tense

The present tense in Romance languages is used:

Actions in the present

- To identify an action that takes place in the present or at the moment of speech:

Sp. ¿Qué **haces**?

Port. Que **fazes**? (O que você **faz**?)

It. Che **fai**?

Fr. Que **fais**-tu? (tu **fais** quoi?)

- What **are** you **doing**?

Sp. **Trabajo** ahora;

Port. **Trabalho** agora;

It. **Lavoro** ora;

Fr. Je **travaille** maintenant.

- I'm **working** now.



NOTE:

Like in English, in Romance languages the present continuous is usually used in this case, however it is also possible to use the present tense here.

Habitual actions

- To indicate the regular repetitive action or things that one does as a habit:



Did you know?

The modern Italian language was created by Dante Alighieri (14th century). In his poem Divine Comedy (Divina Commedia) he used several south Italian dialects with his mother tongue - The Tuscan language. The result became the base for the standardized Italian language.

Sp. Él **viaja** mucho;

Port. Ele **viaja** muito;

It. Lui **viaggia** molto;

Fr. Il **voyage** beaucoup.

- He **travels** a lot.

Sp. **Estudio** las lenguas extranjeras en la universidad.

Port. **Estudo** as línguas estrangeiras na universidade.

It. **Studio** le lingue straniere all'università.

Fr. J'**étudie** les langues étrangères à l'université.

- I **study** foreign languages in college.

Universal truths

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

- To indicate the action that is not referred to a certain moment, but refers to general statements, scientific definitions, proverbs and etc.:

Sp. El hombre **precisa** de amor;

Port. O homem **precisa** de amor;

It. L'uomo **ha bisogno** d'amore;

Fr. L'homme **a besoin** d'amour.

- Men **need** love.

Sp. El Everest **es** la montaña más alta de la Tierra;

Port. O Everest **é** a montanha mais alta da Terra;

It. L'Everest **è** la montagna più alta della Terra;

Fr. L'Everest **est** la montagne la plus haute de la Terre.

- Everest **is** the tallest mountain on Earth.

Replacing the Future tense

- To refer to close or planned future:

Sp. **Voy** al cine esta noche;

Port. Eu **vou** ao cinema esta noite;

It. **Vado** al cinema stasera;

Fr. Je **vais** au cinéma ce soir.

- I **am going** to the cinema tonight.

Sp. Mi tren **llega** a las nueve;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Port. Meu trem **chega** às nove;

It. Il mio treno **arriva** alle nove;

Fr. Mon train **arrive** à neuf.

- *My train **arrives** at nine.*

Special Use of the Present Tense and Prepositions



Did you know?

The Republic of Mali is the largest country in West Africa (1,240,000 square kilometres) and the 24th biggest country in the world. It is about twice the size of Texas. Its capital, Bamako, is the fastest growing city in Africa.

In Romance languages the present tense, together with the prepositions of time Sp. **desde, hace** (*hace...que*) Port. **desde, há** (*há...que, faz...que*) It. **da, fa...che** (*sono...che*) Fr. **depuis, ça fait...que** are generally used to describe an action that started in the past and still continues in the present. In English the present perfect is used in this case.



NOTE:

There is a difference in use between those prepositions of time in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

*Sp. **desde**; Port. **desde**; It. **da**; Fr. **depuis** (since) are primarily used to indicate the definite moment (day, month, year) in the past since when somebody has started to do something. Study the following:*

*Sp. Trabajo en el banco **desde** el 2013;*

*Port. Trabalho no banco **desde** 2013;*

*It. Lavoro in banca **dal** 2013;*

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Fr. *Je travaille dans la banque **depuis** 2013.*

- *I have been working in the bank **since** 2013.*

Sp. **hace** (**hace...que**) Port. **há** (**há...que**, **faz...que**) It. **fa...che/ è da** (**sono...che**) Fr. **ça fait...que** (for/since) are used in general terms when there is no specific date from which somebody has been doing something. Observe the following:

Sp. Trabajo en el banco **hace** dos años (**Hace** dos años **que** trabajo en el banco);

Port. Trabalho no banco **há** dois anos (**Há** dois anos **que** trabalho no banco);

It. **È da** due anni **che** lavoro in banca (**Sono** due anni **che** lavoro in banca);

Fr. **Ça fait** deux ans **que** je travaille dans la banque.

- *I have worked in the bank **for** 2 years.*

In order to ask the question *since when*, Sp. **desde cuando**, **hace cuanto tiempo**; Port. **desde quando**, **há quanto tempo**; It. **da quando**, **da quanto**; Fr. **depuis quand**, **depuis combien de temps** are used. Study the following:

Sp. ¿**Desde cuando** trabajas en el banco? (¿**Hace cuánto tiempo** trabajas en el banco?)

Port. **Desde quando** trabalhas (você trabalha) no banco? (**Há quanto tempo** trabalhas (você trabalha) no banco?)

It. **Da quando** lavori in banca? (**Da quanto tempo** lavori in banca?)

Fr. **Depuis quand** travailles-tu dans la banque? (**Depuis combien de temps** travailles-tu dans la banque?)

- **Since when** have you been working in the bank? (**For how long** have you been working in the bank?)

The Past Participle

Overview

The past participle is a very useful form of a verb that can function as an adjective, a predicative, or as a verb in conjugation with Sp. **haber**; Port. **ter**; It. **avere**; Fr. **avoir** - *have* to form the perfect (compound) tenses, which is the most common use of the past participle.

Formation of Past Participle of Regular Verbs

In Romance languages the Past Participle of regular verbs is formed by dropping the infinitive ending and adding the appropriate past participle ending to the stem of the verb.

Below is a table presenting how the past participle of regular verbs is formed:

	1st conj.	2nd conj.	3rd conj.
Spanish	-ar; -ado (hablar – hablado)	-er; -ido (vender – vendido)	-ir; -ido (partir – partido)
Portuguese	-ar; -ado (falar – falado)	-er; -ido (vender – vendido)	-ir; -ido (partir – partido)
Italian	-are; -ato (parlare – parlato)	-ere; -uto (vendere – venduto)	-ire; -ito (partire – partito)
French	-er; -é (parler – parlé)	-re; -u (vendre – vendu)	-ir; -i (partir – parti)

Irregular Past Participles

Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French have also irregular forms of past participle, which need to be memorized.

Below is a list of verbs, the past participles of which are irregular in all or some of the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
tener – tenido	ter – tido	avere – avuto	avoir – eu	<i>have – had</i>
ser – sido	ser – sido	essere – stato	être – été	<i>be – been</i>
hacer – hecho	fazer – feito	fare – fatto	faire – fait	<i>do – done</i>
decir – dicho	dizer – dito	dire – detto	dire – dit	<i>say – said</i>
comprender – comprendido	comprender – comprendido	capire – capito	comprend- re – compris	<i>understand – understood</i>
aprender – aprendido	aprender – aprendido	imparare – imparato	apprendre – appris	<i>learn – learned</i>
tomar – tomado	tomar – tomado	prendere – preso	prendre – pris	<i>take – taken</i>
escribir – escrito	escrever – escrito	scrivere – scritto	écrire – écrit	<i>write – written</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
poner – puesto	pôr – posto	porre – posto; mettere – messo	mettre – mis	<i>put – put</i>
traducir – traducido	traduzir – traduzido	tradurre – tradotto	traduire – traduit	<i>translate – translated</i>
venir – venido	vir – veio	venire – venuto	venir – venu	<i>come – come</i>
ver – visto	ver – visto	vedere – visto; veduto	voir – vu	<i>see – seen</i>
saber – sabido	saber – sabido	sapere – saputo	savoir – su	<i>know – known (about); or can – been able to</i>
conocer – conocido	conhecer – conhecido	conoscere – conosciuto	connaître – connu	<i>know – known (someone, something) ; or be familiar with</i>
abrir – abierto	abrir – aberto	aprire – aperto	ouvrir – ouvert	<i>open – opened</i>
morir – muerto	morrer – morrido	morire – morto	mourir – mort	<i>die – died</i>
creer – creído	crer – crido	credere – creduto	croire – cru	<i>believe – believed</i>

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
leer – leído	ler – lido	leggere – letto	lire – lu	<i>read – read</i>
traer – traído	trazer – trazido	portare – portato	apporter – apporté	<i>bring – brought</i>

Use of Past Participle

▸ As an adjective

Past participles in Romance languages can be used as adjectives and must agree in gender and number with the nouns they modify. For example:

Sp. la cartera **perdida**;

Port. a carteira **perdida**;

It. il portafoglio **perso**;

Fr. le portefeuille **perdu**.

- The **lost** wallet.



Did you know?

Venezuela's name comes from the word *Veneziola* meaning little Venice (*Piccola Venezia*). It was named so by the navigator Amerigo Vespucci, who saw the stilt houses that reminded him of Venice.

Sp. la puerta **abierta**;

Port. a porta **aberta**;

It. la porta **aperta**;

Fr. la porte **ouverte**.

- The **open** door.

➤ As a Predicative adjective

Past participles can also act as predicative adjectives when used in conjugation with a linking verb Sp. **ser, estar**; Port. **ser, estar**; It. **essere, stare**; Fr. **être**. In this case, they must agree in gender and number with the nouns they modify, for example:

Sp. la puerta **está cerrada**;

Port. a porta **está fechada**;

It. la porta **è chiusa**;

Fr. la porte **est fermée**.

- *The door is closed.*

➤ The perfect tenses (*See The Perfect Tense p. 280*)

The Present Perfect

Formation of the Present Perfect



Did you know?

East Timor (Timor-Leste) is a country in Southeast Asia, which occupies half the island of Timor. It has 2 official languages: Portuguese and Tetum. The country was a Portuguese colony until November 1975.

In Romance languages the present perfect is formed by the combining present indicative of the auxiliary verb Sp. **haber**; Port. **ter**; It. **avere**; Fr. **avoir** - *to have*, which is conjugated to the subject of the sentence, and the past participle.

Below is the present perfect formula in the Romance languages:

Present Perfect Formula

Spanish	<i>haber</i> →	<i>he</i> <i>has</i> <i>ha</i> <i>hemos</i> <i>habéis</i> <i>han</i>
Portuguese	<i>ter</i> →	<i>tenho</i> <i>tens</i> <i>tem</i> <i>temos</i> <i>tendes</i> <i>têm</i>
Italian	<i>avere</i> →	<i>ho</i> <i>hai</i> <i>ha</i> <i>abbiamo</i> <i>avete</i> <i>hanno</i>
French	<i>avoir</i> →	<i>ai</i> <i>as</i> <i>a</i> <i>avons</i> <i>avez</i> <i>ont</i>

+ Past
participle

(Sp. *-ado*, *-ido*;
Port. *-ado*, *-ido*;
It. *-ato*, *-uto*, *-ito*;
Fr. *-é*, *-u*, *-i*)

For example:

Sp. *Has cantado* muy bien;

Port. *Tens* (você *tem*) *cantado* muito bem;

It. *Hai cantato* molto bene;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Fr. Tu **as** très bien **chanté**.

- You **have sung** very well.



NOTE:

The auxiliary verb Sp. **haber**; Port. **ter**; It. **avere**; Fr. **avoir** never separate from the past participle. If there are object pronouns in the sentence, they are immediately placed before the auxiliary verb. Study the following:

Sp. ¿**La** has visto?

Port. Tu **a** tens (você **a** tem) visto?

It. **L'**hai visto?

Fr. **L'**as-tu vu?

- Have you seen **her**?

Formation of the Present Perfect with the Verb to be in Italian and French

In Italian and French the auxiliary verb It. **essere**; Fr. **être** - to be is used with reflexive and intransitive verbs (which are used to talk about movement or a change of some kind) in order to form the present perfect. For example:



Did you know?

Genoa (It. Genova), the capital of the Italian region of Liguria, is the birthplace of world famous explorer and navigator Christopher Columbus (born in 1451).

It. Lui è **arrivato**, Mi **sono** **alzato**;

Fr. Il **est arrivé**, je me **suis** **levé**.

- He **arrived**, I **got up**.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Italian and French have a similar group of intransitive verbs with which the auxiliary verb *to be* is used. Note that in Spanish and Portuguese the auxiliary verb Sp. **haber**; Port. **ter** - *to have* is used with all groups of verbs.

Below is a list of the most frequent intransitive verbs in Italian and French:

Italian		French	
andare	ritornare	aller	retourner
arrivare	rivenire	arriver	revenir
entrare	uscire	entrer	sortir
scendere	cadere	descendre	tomber
divenire, diventare	venire	devenir	venir
salire	restare,	monter	rester
morire	rimanere	mourir	
nascere	essere,	naître	
partire	stare*	partir	
	riuscire*		
	vivere*		

*In Italian the verbs like **essere**, **stare** (*to be*), **riuscire** (*to succeed*), **vivere** (*to live*) are used with the verb **essere** (*to be*) in order to form the present perfect. However, in French above-listed verbs, which are **être**, **réussir**, **vivre** are used with **avoir** (*to have*) to form this tense.

Agreement of the Past Participle

In Spanish and Portuguese the past participle doesn't agree in gender and number with the subject of the verb. Observe the following:

Sp. él ha retorn**ado**, ella ha retorn**ado**;

Port. ele tem retorn**ado**, ela tem retorn**ado**.

- *He has returned, she has returned.*



Did you know?

*The Republic of Benin
(formerly Dahomey)
is a French speaking West
African country. Benin
became independent from
France on August 1, 1960.
Cotonou Beaches are some of
Benin's greatest beaches.*

In Italian and French the past participle used with *to be* (It. **essere**, Fr. **être**) always agrees in gender and number with the subject; that is, the endings change in the feminine and plural forms the way they change in adjectives: in French **-e** is added to agree with the feminine and **-s-** with the masculine; in Italian to agree

with the feminine **-a** is used and **-i**, **-e** with the plural for masculine and feminine respectively.

It. Io sono arriv**ato** (masc.s.) – io sono arriv**ata** (fem. s.);

Lui è part**ito** – Lei è part**ita**;

Noi siamo part**iti** – Noi siamo part**ite**.

Fr. Je suis arriv**é** (masc.s.) – je suis arriv**ée** (fem. s.);

Il est part**i** – Elle est part**ie**;

Nous sommes part**is** – Nous sommes part**ies**.

I have arrived (masc.s.; fem.s.)

He/she has arrived

We have arrived

Agreement of the Past Participle with **avoir** in French

The past participle of verbs that use **avoir** in the present perfect also agree in number and in gender with a preceding direct object in French. Study the following:



Did you know?

Guatemala is a mass producer of chocolate products. In fact, the first chocolate bar was invented in Guatemala during the Mayan times. The Mayan people call chocolate "the food of the Gods" for its nutritional benefits. When in Guatemala, visit ChocoMuseo to learn about the history of cacao.

Fr. C'est **la lettre** que j'ai **écrite**;

C'est **les photos** que j'ai **vues**;

Ce sont **les livres** que j'ai **achetés**.

This is the letter I wrote;

This is the photos I took;

These are the book I bought.

Be attentive since most past participle sound similar in the masculine and feminine except for those ending in a consonant. Also, it should be noted that there is no oral or written change for the masculine singular and plural when the past participle ends in **s**. For example: le livre que j'ai **pris**; les livres que j'ai **pris** - *the books that I took*.

The past participle of verbs with **avoir** is unchangeable:

- when it is used an impersonal verb, for example: la neige qu'**il y a eu**
- when the past participle is followed by a complementary infinitive and when it is the infinitive that relates to the preceding direct object, for instance: les devoirs qu'il a **dû compléter**.
- the past participle of some intransitively used verbs is invariable when accompanied by a unit of price, weight, distance, length and time, for example: **les trois heures** que j'ai **marché**.

Use of the Present Perfect

The present perfect in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French is used:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

- To describe actions that happened in the past and continue into the present or actions that happened in the recent past, which usually refer to what someone has done:



Did you know?

Salvador, the capital of the Brazilian state Bahia, was the first capital city of Brazil until 1763. It is the largest city in the Northeast Region and the 3rd largest city in the country.

Sp. **Ha escrito** un libro;

Port. Ela **tem escrito** um livro;

It. **Ha scritto** un libro;

Fr. Elle **a écrit** un livre.

- *She **has written** a book.*

Special Use of the Present Perfect in Italian and French

However, it is notable that in conversational French the present perfect (*passé composé*) is used as the preterite, which is the most common tense to talk about past events and actions. All above-listed examples of the present perfect should be translated or conveyed in the preterite tense in French.

Like in French, in conversational Italian the present perfect tense is used as the preterite tense.

Sp. *acabar de*; Port. *acabar de*; Fr. *venir de* + *The Infinitive*

To express something that has just been done Sp. **acabar de**; Port. **acabar de**; Fr. **venir de** are used. Note that in Spanish and French the present tense of these verbs is used. In Portuguese - the past simple (**See the Preterite p.287**).



NOTE:

In Italian, in this case, the present perfect is

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

used with the adverb **appena** which is put right after the auxiliary verb **avere** or **essere**. Study the following:

Sp. **Acabo de** leer este libro;

Port. **Acabei de** ler este livro;

It. **Ho appena** letto questo libro;

Fr. Je **viens de** lire ce livre.

- I (have) just read this book.

The Preterite

Formation of the Preterite

The preterite (also called the simple past, the past definite and the past absolute) is formed by dropping the infinitive ending and adding the appropriate personal ending to the root of a verb.

Below is a table demonstrating the endings of the preterite tense:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	1st group			
	-AR	-AR	-ARE	-ER
Singular	-é, -aste, -ó,	-ei, -aste, -ou,	-ai, -asti, -ò,	-ai, -as, -a,
Plural	-amos, -asteis, -aron	-amos, -astes, -aram	-iamo, -aste, -arano	-âmes, -âtes, -èrent
	2nd group			
	-ER	-ER	-ERE	-RE
Singular	-í, -iste, -ió,	-i, -este, -eu,	-ei, -esti, -è,	-is, -is, -it,

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Plural	-imos, -isteis, -ieron	-emos, -estes, -eram	-emmo, -este, -erono	-îmes, -îtes, -irent
3rd group				
	-IR	-IR	-IRE	-IR
Singular	-í, -iste, -ió,	-i, -iste, -iu,	-i, -isti, -i,	-is, -is, -it,
Plural	-imos, -isteis, -ieron	-imos, -istes, -iram	-immo, -iste, -irono	-îmes, -îtes, -irent

Below is the table displaying the example of conjugation of regular verbs in the preterite tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
1st group				
Hablar	Falar	Parlare	Parler	<i>To speak</i>
yo <i>hablé</i>	eu <i>falei</i>	io <i>parlai</i>	je <i>parlai</i>	<i>I spoke</i>
tú <i>hablaste</i>	tu <i>falaste</i>	tu <i>parlasti</i>	tu <i>parlas</i>	<i>you spoke</i>
él\ella\usted <i>habló</i>	ele\ela\você <i>falou</i>	lui\lei\Lei <i>parlò</i>	il\elle\on <i>parla</i>	<i>he\she\it spoke</i>
nosotros\as <i>hablamos</i>	nós <i>falamos</i>	noi <i>parliamo</i>	nous <i>parlâmes</i>	<i>we spoke</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
vosotros\as <u>hablasteis</u>	vós <u>falastes</u>	voi <u>parlaste</u>	vous <u>parlâtes</u>	you spoke
ellos\ellas\ ustedes <u>hablaron</u>	eles\elas <u>falaram</u>	loro\Loro <u>parl- aron</u>	ils\elles <u>parlèrent</u>	they spoke
2nd group				
<u>Vender</u>	<u>Vender</u>	<u>Vendere</u>	<u>Vendre</u>	To sell
yo <u>vendí</u>	eu <u>vendi</u>	io <u>vendei</u>	je <u>vendis</u>	I sold
tú <u>vendiste</u>	tu <u>vendeste</u>	tu <u>vendesti</u>	tu <u>vendis</u>	you sold
él\ella\uste d <u>vendió</u>	ele\ela\você <u>vendeu</u>	lui\lei\Lei <u>vendè</u>	il\elle\on <u>vendit</u>	he\she\i t sold
nosotros\as <u>vendimos</u>	nós <u>vendemos</u>	noi <u>vend- emmo</u>	nous <u>vendîmes</u>	we sold
vosotros\as <u>vendisteis</u>	vós <u>vendestes</u>	voi <u>vendeste</u>	vous <u>vendîtes</u>	you sold
ellos\ellas\us tedes <u>vendieron</u>	eles\elas <u>venderam</u>	loro\Loro <u>vend- erono</u>	ils\elles <u>vendirent</u>	they sold
3rd group				
<u>Partir</u>	<u>Partir</u>	<u>Partire</u>	<u>Partir</u>	To leave
yo <u>partí</u>	eu <u>parti</u>	io <u>partii</u>	je <u>partis</u>	I left

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
tú <u>partiste</u>	tu <u>partiste</u>	tu <u>partisti</u>	tu <u>partis</u>	you left
él\ella\usted <u>partió</u>	ele\ela\você <u>partiu</u>	lui\lei\Lei <u>partì</u>	il\elle\on <u>partit</u>	he\she\it left
nosotros\as <u>partimos</u>	nós <u>partimos</u>	noi <u>part-immo</u>	nous <u>partîmes</u>	we left
vosotros\as <u>partisteis</u>	vós <u>partistes</u>	voi <u>partiste</u>	vous <u>partîtes</u>	you left
ellos\ellas\ustedes <u>partieron</u>	eles\elas <u>partiram</u>	loro\Loro <u>partirono</u>	ils\elles <u>partirent</u>	they left

Irregular Verbs in the Preterite

Below is a table presenting irregular verbs in the preterite tense, which are common for all or several Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	
Ser (fui, fuiste, fue, fuimos, fuisteis, fueron)	Ser (fui, foste, foi, fomos, fostes, foram)	Essere (fui, fosti, fu, fummo, foste, furono)	Être (je fus, tu fus, il\elle\on fut, nous fûmes, vous fûtes, ils\elles furent)	<i>To be</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	
Estar (estuve, estuviste, estuvo, estuvimos, estuvisteis, estuvieron)	Estar (estive, estiveste, esteve, estivemos, estivestes, estiveram)	Stare (stetti, stesti, stette, stemmo, steste, stettero)	Être (je fus, tu fus, il\elle\on fut, nous fûmes, vous fûtes, ils\elles furent)	<i>To be</i>
Haber (hube, hubiste, hubo, hubimos, hubisteis, hubieron)	Haver (houve, houveste, houve, houvemos, houvestes, houveram)	Avere (ebbi, avesti, ebbe, <u>avemmo</u> , <u>aveste</u> , ebbero)	Avoir (j'eus, tu eus, il\elle\on eut, nous eûmes, vous eûtes, ils\elles eurent)	<i>To have</i>
Poner (puse, pusiste, puso, pusimos, pusisteis, pusieron)	Pôr (pus, puseste, pôs, pusemos, pusestes, puseram)	Mettere (misi, <u>mettesti</u> , mise, <u>mettemmo</u> , metteste, misero)	Mettre (je mis, tu mis, il\elle\on mit, nous mîmes, vous mîtes, ils\elles mirent)	<i>To put</i>
Hacer (hice, hiciste, hizo, hicimos, hicisteis, hicieron)	Fazer (fiz, fizeste, fez, fizemos, fizestes, fizeram)	Fare (feci, facesti, fece, facemmo, faceste, fecero)	Faire (je fis, tu fis, il\elle\on fit, nous fîmes, vous fîtes, ils\elles firent)	<i>To do</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	
Decir (dije, dijiste, dijo, dijimos, dijisteis, dijeron)	Dizer (disse, disseste, disse, dissemos, dissestes, disseram)	Dire (dissi, dicesti, disse, dicemmo, diceste, dissero)	Dire (dis, dis, dit, dîmes, dîtes, dirent)	<i>To say</i>
Venir (vine, viniste, vino, vinimos, vinisteis, vinieron)	Vir (vim, vieste, veio, viemos, viestes, vieram)	Venire (venni, venne, vennero)	Venir (vins, vins, vint, vîmes, vîntes, vinrent)	<i>To come</i>
Saber (supe, supiste, supo, supimos, supisteis, supieron)	Saber (soube, soubeste, soube, soubemos, soubestes, souberam)	Sapere (seppi, seppe, seppero)	Savoir (sus, sus, sut, sûmes, sûtes, surent)	<i>To know</i>
—	—	Prendere (presi, prese, presero)	Prendre (pris, pris, prit, primes, prîtes, prirent)	<i>To take</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	
Conocer (regular)	Conhecer (regular)	Conoscere (conobbi, conobbe, conobbero)	Connaître (connus, connus, connut, connus, connus, connus, connus)	<i>To know</i> <i>To be acquainted</i>
Leer (regular)	Ler (regular)	Leggere (lessi, lesse, lessero)	Lire (lus, lus, lut; lûmes, lûtes, lurent)	<i>To read</i>
Escribir (regular)	Escrever (regular)	Scrivere (scrissi, scrisse, scrissero)	Écrire (écrivis, écrivis, écrivit, écrivîmes, écrivîtes, écrivirent)	<i>To write</i>
Tener (tuve, tuviste, tuvo, tuvimos, tuvisteis, tuvieron)	Ter (regular)	Tenere (tenni, tenne, tennero)	Tenir (tins, tins, tint, tîmes, tîntes, tînrent)	<i>To have,</i> <i>To hold</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	
Traer (traje, trajiste, traje, trajimos, trajisteis, trajeron)	Trazer (trouxe, trouxe, trouxe, trouxemos, trouxestes, trouxeram)	Portare (regular)	Apporter (regular)	<i>To carry</i>

- In Spanish **tener** is used to express possession, while **haber** is used as the auxiliary verb to form compound sentences.

It is seen from the table that the range of Spanish and Portuguese irregular verbs are more similar to each other than to Italian and French, and vice versa, Italian and French set of irregular verbs are virtually identical. In this regard, it can be argued that there is a partial convergence of irregular verbs in Romance languages.



NOTE:

It should be noted that Italian irregular verbs of the preterite tense are only irregular in the 1st and 3rd person singular as well as the 3rd person plural. The other three forms are always regular.

Irregularities in Formation the Preterite



Did you know?

Turin (It. Torino) is a city and an important cultural and educational center in northern Italy. The city has Italy's best universities and academies, such as the University of Turin and the Turin Polytechnic.

However, despite the majority of similar irregular verbs, Spanish and Italian have their own number of irregular verbs with specific models of conjugation. In other words some verbs have specific spelling changes in order to preserve the pronunciation (sound) presented in the infinitive

and others change their vowel within the stem. Therefore, it is important to consider the rules of the spelling or vowels change in a verb conjugation. Since the rules are very divergent and particular for each language, it makes it difficult to combine these changes in a verb conjugation of the Romance languages. So, it is necessary to consider them separately.

**NOTE:**

*Unlike Spanish and Italian, Portuguese and French have an insignificant number of irregular verbs with specific models of conjugation in the preterite. The most common of them were presented in the table of the irregular verbs (See **Irregular Verbs in the Preterite p. 290**).*

Spanish

i changed to y or deleted in the 3rd person endings

In **-er** and **-ir** verbs the stem of which is ended in a vowel, for example: **cre-er**, **le-er**, **hu-ir**, **constru-ir**, the 3rd person endings become **-yó** and **-yeron** respectively. Study the following:

Creer: él/ella cre**yó**, ellos/ellas cre**yeron** - he/she believes, they believe;

Leer: él/ella le**yó**, ellos/ellas le**yeron** - he/she reads, they read;

Huir: él/ella hu**yó**, ellos/ellas hu**yeron** - he/she flees, they flee;

Construir: él/ella constru**yó**, ellos/ellas constru**yeron** - he/she constructs, they construct.

The verb conjugated like **leer** and **creer** is **oír** (hear). The verb conjugated like **construir** and **huir** is **disminuir** (diminish).

In verbs whose stem ends in one of the consonants **ll** or **ñ**, the 3rd person endings become **-ó** and **-eron**, for example:

Hervir: él/ella hirvi**ó**, ellos/ellas hirvier**eron** - he/she boils, they boil;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Gruñir: él/ella gruñó, ellos/ellas gruñeron - *he/she/it growls, they growl.*

The verb conjugated like **bullir** and **gruñir** are **teñir** (*dye*), **reñir** (*quarrel*), **zambullirse** (*dive*).

Orthographic changes

The following spelling changes take place before e in the 1st person singular: **c - qu**, **g - gu**, **z - c**, **gu - gü** in **-ar** verbs. Observe the following:

Tocar: yo **toqué** - *I touched.*

Llegar: yo **llegué** - *I arrived.*

Cazar - yo **caqué** - *I hunted.*

Averiguar - yo **averigüé** - *I checked.*

Portuguese

Portuguese does not have such an extended number of irregular verbs like other Romance languages. The list of irregular verbs was fully presented in the table above in Portuguese.

Italian

Verbs with a single -s-

There are a lot of verbs that operate the same as **chiudere** (*close*) and have a second, irregular root with a single **-s-** in the 1st, 3rd person singular and 3rd person plural forms of the preterite. To illustrate:

Chiudere

io **chiusi**

tu **chiudeste**

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

lui, lei, Lei **chiuse**

noi **chiudemmo**

voi **chiudeste**

loro, Loro **chiusero**

Below are the verbs that are conjugated like **chiudere** in the preterite:

Italian	English
chiedere (chiesi, chiese, chiesero)	<i>to ask</i>
concludere (conclusi, concluse, conclusero)	<i>to conclude</i>
accudere (accusi, accuse, accusero)	<i>to enclose</i>
escludere (esclusi, escluse, esclusero)	<i>to exclude</i>
includere (inclusi, incluse, inclusero)	<i>to include</i>
decidere (decisi, decise, decisero)	<i>to decide</i>
coincidere (coincisi, coincise, coincisero)	<i>to coincide</i>
uccidere (uccisi, uccise, uccisero)	<i>to kill</i>
dividere (divisi, divise, divisero)	<i>to divide</i>
prendere (presi, prese, presero)	<i>to take</i>
accendere (accesi, accese, accesero)	<i>to light, to turn on</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Italian	English
attendere (attesi, attese, attesero)	<i>to wait</i>
apprendere (appresi, apprese, appresero)	<i>to learn</i>
difendere (difesi, difese, difesero)	<i>to defend</i>
offendere (offesi, offese, offesero)	<i>to offend</i>
scendere (scesi, scese, scesero)	<i>to descend</i>
sorprendere (sorpresi, sorprese, sorpresero)	<i>to surprise</i>
spendere (spesi, spese, spesero)	<i>to spend</i>
stendere (stesi, stese, stesero)	<i>to extend</i>
ridere (risi, rise, risero)	<i>to laugh</i>
sorridere (sorrisi, sorrise, sorriseo)	<i>to smile</i>
rimanere (rimasi, rimase, rimasero)	<i>to stay</i>
rispondere (risposi, rispose, risposero)	<i>to answer</i>
*mettere (misi, mise, misero)	<i>to put</i>

It should be remembered that:

- The vowel change in **mettere** should be noted. Also there are other verbs conjugated like **mettere**: **ammettere** - *to admit*; **commettere** - *to commit*; **permettere** - *to allow*; **promettere** - *to promise*; **rimettere** - *to return*; **smettere** - *to stop*; **trasmettere** - *to convey, to transmit*.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

- The verb **porre** - *to put* follows the same rules as the above **-s-** verbs. To demonstrate:

Porre

io **posi**

tu ponesti

lui, lei, Lei **pose**

noi ponemmo

voi poneste

loro, Loro **posero**

There are also other verbs conjugated like **porre**:
comporre - *to compose*; **disporre** - *to dispose, to arrange*;
opporre - *to oppose, to object*; **proporre** - *to propose*.

- Also, the verbs **correre** - *to run*; **scegliere** - *to choose* and **volgere** - *to turn* also have a single **-s-** in the preterite. To illustrate:

Correre

io **corsi**

tu corresti

lui, lei, Lei **corse**

noi corremmo

voi correste

loro, Loro **corsero**

There are also other verbs conjugated like **correre**:
occorrere - *to need, to be necessary*; **incorrere** - *to incur*;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

rincorrere - to run after; **scorrere** - to slide; **trascorrere** - to spend, to pass by.

Scegliere

io **scelsi**

tu scegliesti

lui, lei, Lei **scelse**

noi scegliemmo

voi sceglieste

loro, Loro **scelsero**

There are also other verbs conjugated like **scegliere**:
accogliere - to welcome, to receive; **cogliere** - to pick, to catch;
raccogliere - to collect; **togliere** - to remove.

Volgere

io **volsi**

tu volgesti

lui, lei, Lei **volse**

noi volgemmo

voi volgeste

loro, Loro **volsero**

Other verbs conjugated like **volgere** are: **dipingere** - to paint; **fingere** - to pretend, to simulate; **giungere** - to reach, to arrive; **piangere** - to cry; **scorgere** - to sight, to notice, to make out; **sorgere** - to rise; **spingere** - to push; **svolgere** - to perform, to develop.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

It should be remembered that when a single **-s-** is preceded and followed by a vowel is pronounced like **z**. When a single **-s-** is preceded by a consonant, it is pronounced like **s**.

Verbs with a double **-s-** (**-ss-**)

Such verbs as **leggere** - *to read*, **scrivere** - *to write* and **vivere** - *to live*, as you might notice from the table of the irregular verbs, have a double **s** in the 1st person singular and the 3rd person singular and plural of the preterite. It is so because **s** is preceded by a vowel and must be doubled in order to preserve the **s** sound. Other verbs having a double **s** in the 1st person singular and the 3rd person singular and plural in the preterite are:

Italian	English
produrre (produssi, produsse, produssero)	<i>to produce</i>
trarre (trassi, trasse, trassero)	<i>to draw</i>
sottrarre (sottrassi, sottrasse, sottrassero)	<i>to subtract</i>
correggere (corressi, corresse, corressero)	<i>to correct</i>
eleggere (elessi, elesse, elessero)	<i>to elect</i>
proteggere (protessi, protesse, protessero)	<i>to protect</i>
reggere (ressi, resse, ressero)	<i>to hold</i>
descrivere (descrissi, descrisse, descrissero)	<i>to describe</i>
prescrivere (prescrissi, prescrisse, prescissero)	<i>to prescribe</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Italian	English
trascrivere (trascrissi, trascrisse, trascrissero)	<i>to transcribe</i>
addurre (addussi, addusse, addussero)	<i>to adduce</i>
condurre (condussi, condusse, condussero)	<i>to lead</i>
indurre (indussi, indusse, indussero)	<i>to induce</i>
introdurre (introdussi, introdusse, introdussero)	<i>to introduce</i>
ridurre (ridussi, ridusse, ridussero)	<i>to reduce</i>
tradurre (tradussi, tradusse, tradussero)	<i>to translate</i>
contraddire (contraddissi, contraddisse, contraddissero)	<i>to contradict</i>
disdire (disdissi, disdisse, disdissero)	<i>to cancel</i>
indire (indissi, indisce, indissero)	<i>to call</i>
maledire (maledissi, maledisse, maledissero)	<i>to curse</i>
predire (predissi, predisse, predissero)	<i>to predict</i>
ridire (ridissi, ridisse, ridissero)	<i>to object</i>
attrarre (attrassi, attrasse, attrassero)	<i>to attract</i>
contrarre (contrassi, contrasse, contrassero)	<i>to contract</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Italian	English
detrarre (detrassi, detrasse, detrassero)	<i>to deduct</i>
distrarre (distrassi, distrasse, distrassero)	<i>to distract</i>
ritrarre (ritrassi, ritrasse, ritrassero)	<i>to portray</i>

Verbs with other double consonants

Such verbs as **cadere**, **tenere** and **volere** double the consonant of the root in the 1st person singular and 3rd person singular and plural in the preterite (**tenere** and **volere** are already presented in the list of the irregular verbs above (See **Irregular Verbs in the Preterite p.290**). Below is a list of verbs that double the consonant:

Italian	English
cadere (caddi, cadde, caddero)	<i>to fall</i>
decadere (decaddi, decadde, decaddero)	<i>to decay</i>
ricadere (ricaddi, ricadde, ricaddero)	<i>to fall</i>
appartenere (appartenni, appartenne, appartennero)	<i>to belong</i>
contenere (contenni, contenne, contennero)	<i>to contain</i>
mantenere (mantenni, mantenne, mantennero)	<i>to maintain</i>
sostenere (sostenni, sostenne, sostennero)	<i>to support</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Italian	English
bere (bevvi, bevve, bevvero)	<i>to drink</i>
divenire (divenni, divenne, divennero)	<i>to prescribe</i>
avvenire (avvenne)	<i>to occur</i>
convenire (convenni, convenne, convennero)	<i>to agree</i>
intervenire (intervenni, intervenne, intervennero)	<i>to intervene</i>
pervenire (pervenni, pervenne, pervennero)	<i>to reach</i>
rivenire (rivenni, rivenne, rivennero)	<i>to come back</i>
sovvenire (sovvenni, sovvenne, sovvennero)	<i>to remember</i>
svenire (svenni, svenne, svennero)	<i>to faint</i>
conoscere (conobbi, conobbe, conobbero)	<i>to know</i>
riconoscere (riconobbi, riconobbe, riconobbero)	<i>to recognize</i>

Verbs with -qu-

Verbs such as **nascere** and **piacere** get **-qu-** in the 1st person singular and the 3rd person singular and plural in the preterite. Below is a list of verbs that obtain **-qu-**:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Italian	English
nascere (nacqui, nacque, nacquero)	<i>to be born</i>
piacere (piacqui, piacque, piacquero)	<i>to please</i>
compiacere (compiacqui, compiacque, compiacquero)	<i>to satisfy</i>
dispiacere (dispiacqui, dispiacque, dispiacquero)	<i>to dislike</i>
giacere (giacqui, giacque, giacquero)	<i>to lie</i>

Use of the Preterite

The preterite in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French is used to express:

- *actions that happened in the past without any relation to the present:*

Sp. **abrieron** la ventana;

Port. **abriram** a janela;

It. **aprirono** la finestra,

Fr. ils **ouvrirent** la fenêtre.

- They **opened** the window.

- *two or more completed continuous or consecutive actions in the past:*

**Did you know?**

Togo is a French-speaking country in West Africa located on the Gulf of Guinea. The capital, Lomé, hosts the world's largest voodoo market called the Fetish Market. It features monkey heads, skulls, crocodiles and skins of animals.

Sp. **entraron** en la sala y **abrieron** la ventana;

Port. **entreram** na sala e **abriram** a janela;

It. **entrarono** nella sala e **aprirono** la finestra;

Fr. ils **entrèrent** dans la sale et **ouvrèrent** la fenêtre.

- They **entered** the room and **opened** the window.

The following are the most common expressions that are usually used with the preterite:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
ayer	ontem	ieri	hier	yesterday
ayer por la tarde	ontem à tarde	ieri pomeriggio	hier après-midi	yesterday afternoon
anoche	noite passada	ieri sera	la nuit dernière	last night
anteayer	anteontem	l'altro ieri	la journée d'avant-hier	the day before yesterday
el otro día	no outro dia	l'altro giorno	l'autre jour	the other day
hace dos días	há dois dias	due giorni fa	il ya deux jours	two days ago

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
la semana pasada	na semana passada	la settimana scorsa	la semaine dernière	<i>last week</i>
el mes pasado	no mês passado	il mese scorso	le mois dernier	<i>last month</i>
el año pasado	no ano passado	l'anno scorso	l'année dernière	<i>last year</i>
esta mañana	esta manhã	stamani	ce matin	<i>this morning</i>
de repente	de repente	di colpo	tout d'un coup	<i>suddenly</i>
durante mucho tiempo	por muito tempo	per molto tempo	pendant longtemps	<i>for a long time</i>
el verano pasado	no verão passado	l'estate scorsa	l'été dernier	<i>last summer</i>
hace poco	há pouco	poco fa	il y a peu	<i>a little while ago</i>
durante poco tiempo	por pouco tempo	per poco tempo	pendant une courte période	<i>for a little while</i>

Special Use of the Preterite in French

It should be mentioned that **passé simple** (*the preterite*) is a literary tense used only in literary contexts in French. In

conversational French **passé composé** (*the present perfect*) is used.

Difference between the Preterite and the Present Perfect in the Romance languages

In Romance languages the Preterite expresses a fully completed action in the past, whereas the Present Perfect expresses an action that started in the past and has been developing over a period of time and may or may not tend to continue into the future. Study the following:



Did you know?

Nicaragua has the largest lake in Central America, which provides the water supply for many parts of the country. Lake Nicaragua is also a popular tourist attraction.

Sp. **Encontré** a mi amigo en la calle;

Port. Eu **encontrei** o meu amigo na rua;

It. **Ho incontrato** il mio amico per la strada;

Fr. J'**ai rencontré** mon ami dans la rue.

- I **met** my friend in the street.

Sp. **He encontrado** mi amigo en la calle;

Port. Eu **tenho encontrado** o meu amigo na rua;

It. **Ho incontrato** il mio amico per la strada;

Fr. J'**ai rencontré** mon ami dans la rue.

- I **have been meeting** my friend in the street (and I may still be continuing to meet him in the street).

Asking Questions

We have already looked at question words and now we will consider yes/no questions, which are questions that can be answered with “yes” or “no”, and questions that get more detailed information.

Unlike in English, in Romance languages questions are formed differently. In English the verb **to do** is used to form questions: “**Do** you know him?”, whereas in Romance languages this verb is never used. Generally speaking in Romance languages, asking a question which can be answered with “yes” or “no” is quite simple. In order to pose such a question, you should raise your intonation at the end of the question. For example:

Sp. ¿Lo conoces?

Port. Você conhece ele?

It. Lo conosci?

Fr. Tu le connais?

- Do you know him?

Also, you can change a statement into a question by adding the word Sp. ¿**no**? Port. **não**? It. **no**? Fr. **non**? to the end of a statement in all the Romance languages. For instance:



Did you know?

The Brazilian state of Ceará (capital city: Fortaleza) was the first state to abolish slavery in 1884. For this reason the state got the nickname “Land of Light”.

Sp. ¿Vienes mañana, **no**?

Port. Você vem amanhã, **não**?
(Vens amanhã, **não**?)

It. Vieni domani, **no**?

Fr. Tu viens demain, **non**?

- You are coming tomorrow,
aren’t you?

Peculiarities of Interrogation in the Romance languages

Spanish

- In written Spanish you should put marks around the question, which is extremely important. It is notable that an upside down question mark is placed in front of the question. Observe the following:

¿Hablas español? - Do you speak Spanish?

¿Donde trabajas? - Where do you work?

Portuguese

- In Portuguese there is also an expression “**será que**”, which you can use to make a question requiring a yes or no answer. It can be translated “*Is it so that...?*” or “*I wonder if...?*”, however there is no direct equivalent in English. For example:



Did you know?

Venice (It. Venezia) gets between 20 million to 30 million tourists annually, which is around 60 thousand tourists per day. The population of the city, however, is only about 55 thousand people.

Será que falas português? / **Será que** você fala português?

- Do you speak Portuguese?
(lit. **Is it so that** you speak Portuguese?)

Italian

- In Italian you can make a question by placing the subject either at the end of the sentence or after the verb. Study the following:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

L'insegnante parla italiano. - Parla italiano l'insegnante? (Parla l'insegnante italiano?)

- *The teacher speaks Italian. Does the teacher speak Italian?*

- Also, you can form a question by adding such expressions as **non è vero?**, **è vero?** or **vero?** to the end of a statement. For instance:

Parli italiano, **non è vero?** - *You speak Italian, don't you? (lit. You speak Italian, isn't it true?)*

Lavori in ufficio, **è vero?** - *You work in the office, right?*

Hai un fratello, **vero?** - *You have a brother, don't you?*

French

- In French questions can also be formed by adding **n'est-ce pas?** to a statement. For example:

Tu parles français, **n'est-ce pas?** - *You speak French, don't you?*

Tu travailles dans le bureau, **n'est-ce pas?** - *You work in the office, don't you?*

Tu as un frère, **n'est-ce pas?** - *You have a brother, don't you?*

- Also, you can form a question by adding **est-ce que** or **est-ce qu'** (before vowels) at the beginning of the statement and putting a question mark at the end of a question.

Est-ce que tu parles français? - *Do you speak French?*

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Est-ce qu'il travaille dans le bureau? - *Does he work in the office?*

- French questions can also be formed by means of inversion of the subject pronoun and verb in declarative sentences. It should be noted that the subject is connected to the verb with a hyphen. Study the following:

Parlez-vous français? - *Do you speak French?*

Travaillez-vous dans le bureau? - *Do you work in the office?*

It should be remembered that when inverting a 3rd person singular subject pronoun and a verb, a ***t*** should be added between the inverted verb and the subject when the verb ends in a vowel, for example:

Parle-t-il français? - *Does he speak French?*

Va-t-il à Paris? - *Does he go to France?*

With the 1st person singular subject ***je*** inversion is usually not used. In this case ***est-ce que*** should be used. For instance:

Est-ce que je joue bien? - *Do I play well?*

However, inversion with ***je*** is possible with certain frequently used verbs, which are ***avoir*** (to have), ***être*** (to be), ***pouvoir*** (can). The verb ***pouvoir*** becomes ***puis*** in the inversion with ***je***.

Ai-je...? - *Do I have...?*; ***Suis-je...?*** - *Am I...?*; ***Puis-je...?*** - *Can I...?*

Inversion is also possible in compound tenses in French. In this case, the subject pronoun and the auxiliary verb are inverted. Observe the following:

A-t-il travaillé au bureau? - *Does he work in the office?*

Es-tu venu? - *Have you come?*

Negation

Unlike in English, in Romance languages negation is also formed quite different. For instance, in English the verb **to do** is widely used to make a sentence negative: "*I **don't** know*", while in the Romance languages the verb to do is never used in negative sentences.

Furthermore, double negation, which is not acceptable in English, is frequently used in Romance languages, for example *I know nobody/I don't know anybody* (since it is not grammatically correct to say *I don't know nobody*):



Did you know?

Réunion Island is a French overseas territory in the Indian Ocean, east of Madagascar. The island is known for its volcanos, coral reefs and tropical beaches. Its culture is a mix of various cultures influenced by people of African, Indian, European and Chinese origin.

Sp. **No** conozco a **nadie**,

Port. Eu **não** conheço **ninguém**,

It. Io **non** conosco **nessuno**,

Fr. Je **ne** connais **personne**.

- *I know nobody./I don't know anybody.*

Formation of Negation in Simple Tenses

Spanish, Portuguese and Italian negative sentence are formed by putting the word Sp. **no**, Port. **não**, It. **non** before the verb.

In French the combination **ne...pas** is used where **ne** is placed before the verb and **pas** after it. It should be noted that **ne** becomes **n'** before words that begin with a *vowel* or *h*.

Below are the examples demonstrating the formation of negative sentences from affirmative in Romance languages:

Affirmative:	Negative:
Sp. Yo trabajo; Port. Eu trabalho; It. il lavoro; Fr. Je travaille - <i>I work.</i>	Sp. Yo no trabajo; Port. Eu não trabalho; It. io non lavoro; Fr. je ne travaille pas - <i>I don't work.</i>
Affirmative:	Negative:
Sp. Ella escribe un libro; Port. Ela escreve um livro; It. lei scrive un libro; Fr. Elle écrit un livre - <i>She writes a book.</i>	Sp. Ella no escribe un libro; Port. Ela não escreve um livro; It. lei non scrive un libro; Fr. Elle n' écrit pas un livre - <i>She doesn't write a book.</i>

If an object pronoun (See **Object Pronoun p.98, p.108**) precedes the verb, the negative word should be placed before the object pronoun in Romance languages. In French **ne** is put before the object pronoun and **pas** is placed after the verb. For example:

Affirmative:	Negative:
--------------	-----------

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Sp. La conozco; Port. Eu a conheço; It. Lo conosco; Fr. Je la connais - <i>I know her.</i>	Sp. No la conozco; Port. Eu não a conheço; It. Non la conosco; Fr. Je ne la connais pas - <i>I don't know her.</i>
--	---

If there is an infinitive which follows the verb in a sentence, the negative word is placed before the main verb. In French **ne** is put before the main verb and **pas** is placed after the main verb. For instance:

Affirmative:	Negative:
Sp. Quiero dormir; Port. Quero dormir; It. Voglio dormire; Fr. je veux dormir - <i>I want to sleep.</i>	Sp. No quiero dormir; Port. Eu não quero dormir; It. Io non voglio dormire; Fr. Je ne veux pas dormir - <i>I don't want to sleep.</i>

Omission of **Pas** in French

In French **pas** can be omitted in the negative sentences after such verbs as **pouvoir** (can), **savoir** (to know), **oser** (dare) and **cesser** (to cease) when they are accompanied by an infinitive, for example:

Je **ne** sais que dire - *I don't know what to say;*

Ils **ne** peuvent le faire - *They cannot do it;*

Tu **n'**oses y aller - *You don't dare go there;*

Il **ne** cesse de pleuvoir - *It doesn't stop raining.*

Negation of the Infinitive

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

In order to make an infinitive negative, you should put the negative words Sp. **no**, Port. **não**, It. **non**, Fr. **ne pas** before the infinitive. Study the following:



Did you know?

Spain's central capital, Madrid, is a European Cultural Capital. It's a city of overwhelming cultural venues and activities. It's renowned for its stunning museums like the Prado museum, museum of 12th-19th century European and Spanish art, and Reina Sofia Museum of Modern Art.

Sp. Me dijo **no** lo hagas;

Port. Ele me disse para **não** o fazer;

It. Mi ha detto di **non** farlo;

Fr. Il m'a dit de **ne pas** le faire

- He told me **not** to do it.

Sp. Ella me dijo **no** vayas allí;

Port. Ela me disse para **não** ir lá;

It. Lei mi ha detto di **non** andarci;

Fr. Elle m'a dit de **ne pas** y aller.

- He told me **not** to go there.

Negation with Adjectives and the Adverb Very

The negative words Sp. **no**, Port. **não**, It. **non**, Fr. **pas** can also be used to negate adjectives or the adverb Sp. **muy**, Port. **muito**, It. **molto**, Fr. **très** - very. For example:

Sp. un filme **no interesante**;

Port. um filme **não interessante**;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

It. un film **non interessante**;

Fr. un film **pas intéressant**

- *An uninteresting film.*



Did you know?

Portugal is named after the city of Porto. The Latin name for Porto was Pontus Cale and the region itself was known as "Condado Portucalense" (County of Portucale), which eventually became the name of the country of Portugal.

Sp. una casa **no muy** grande;

Port. uma casa **não muito** grande;

It. una casa **non molto** grande;

Fr. une maison **pas très** grande.

- *A **not very** big house.*

Formation of Negation in Compound Tenses

Compound tenses in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian negative sentences are formed by placing the negative word (Sp. **no**, Port. **não**, It. **non**) before the auxiliary verb, while in French **ne** is put before and **pas** after the auxiliary verb.

In Romance languages auxiliary verbs are Sp. **haber**; Port. **ter**; It. **avere**; Fr. **avoir** - *to have*. The auxiliary verb: It. **essere**; Fr. **être** - *to be* is also used in Italian and French with reflexive and intransitive verbs (**See Formation of the Present Perfect with the Verb to be in Italian and French p.282**) For instance:

Affirmative:	Negative:
Sp. Ha terminado;	Sp. No ha terminado;
Port. Ele tem terminado;	Port. Ele não tem terminado;
It. Ha finito;	It. Non ha finito;
Fr. Il a fini	Fr. Il n'a pas fini
- <i>He has finished.</i>	- <i>He hasn't finished.</i>

Other Negative Expressions

There are many other negative expressions, which are used in the Romance languages. Below is a table demonstrating the most common negative combinations and expressions, which consist of the negative word Sp. **no**, Port. **não**, It. **non**, Fr. **ne** + **an adjective, pronoun** or **adverb**.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
no...nadie	não...ninguém	non...nessuno	ne...personne	<i>no one, nobody</i>
no...nada	não...nada	non...niente; non...nulla	ne...rien	<i>nothing</i>
no...ni...ni	não...nem...nem	non...né...né	ne...ni...ni	<i>neither...nor</i>
no...nunca, (jamás)	não...nunca, (jamais)	non...mai	ne...jamais	<i>never</i>
no...más	não...mais	non...più	ne...plus	<i>no longer</i>
no...ningún (-o,-a,-os,-as)	não...nenhum (-a)	non...nessun (-o,-a,-i,-e)	ne...aucun (-e)	<i>not any, none</i>
en absoluto; en mi/la vida	de modo nenhum; de modo algum	non...affatto; non...punto	ne...pas du tout; ne...point	<i>not at all, absolutely not</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
ni siquiera; ni tan siquiera	nem sequer; tão sequer	non... neanche; non... nemmeno; non... neppure	ne...même pas	<i>not even</i>
no... más que/sino	não...mais que	non...che	ne...que	<i>only</i>

It should be remembered that the negative words Sp. **no**, Port. **não**, It. **non**, Fr. **ne** always preceded the main verb in simple tenses or the auxiliary verb in compound tenses, while the placement of adjectives, pronouns or adverbs in the sentence can vary.

Therefore, it is important to consider all the expressions in order to demonstrate their positions in which they can be used in the sentence.

No one, Nobody

Sp. no...nadie; Port. não...ninguém; It. non...nessuno; Fr. ne...personne

1. If the pronouns *no one, nobody* (Sp. **nadie**, Port. **ninguém**, It. **nessuno**, Fr. **personne**) precede the verb, the negative words Sp. **no**; Port. **não**; It. **non** are omitted in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian.



NOTE:

*In French **ne** is not omitted and the negative word **personne** is placed before it. Study the following:*

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Sp. **Nadie** me mira;
Port. **Ninguém** olha para mim;
It. **Nessuno** mi guarda;
Fr. **Personne ne** me regarde
- *No one looks at me.*

Sp. **Nadie** vino;
Port. **Ninguém** veio;
It. **Nessuno** è venuto;
Fr. **Personne n'est** venu
- *No one came.*

2. If they are used with the negative words Sp. **no**, Port. **não**, It. **non**, Fr. **ne**, the pronouns *no one, nobody* (Sp. **nadie**, Port. **ninguém**, It. **nessuno**, Fr. **personne**) follow the main verb in simple tenses and the past participle in compound tenses in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. To illustrate:

Sp. **No** veo a **nadie**;
Port. Eu **não** vejo **ninguém**;
It. **Non** vedo **nessuno**;
Fr. Je **ne** vois **personne**
- *I see no one.*

Sp. Él **no** ha visto a **nadie**;
Port. Ele **não** tem visto **ninguém**;
It. **Non** ha visto **nessuno**;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Fr. Il *n'a* vu **personne**

- *He has seen no one.*

It should be remembered that Sp. **nadie**, Port. **ninguém**, It. **nessuno**, Fr. **personne** are always placed after the verb when they function as the object. When they are the subject, they are put before the verb.

3. If an infinitive is used in the sentence, the negative words Sp. **no**, Port. **não**, It. **non**, Fr. **ne** precede the main verb or the auxiliary verb and Sp. **nadie**, Port. **ninguém**, It. **nessuno**, Fr. **personne** follow the infinitive. For instance:

Sp. **No** quiero ver a **nadie**;

Port. Eu **não** quero ver **ninguém**;

It. **Non** voglio vedere **nessuno**;

Fr. Je **ne** veux voir **personne**

- *I want to see no one.*

Nothing

Sp. **no...nada**; Port. **não...nada**; It. **non...niente**, **non...nulla**; Fr. **ne...rien**

Like *no one* and *nobody*, *nothing* has similar rules of placement in the sentence in the Romance languages.

1. If *nothing* (Sp. **nada**, Port. **nada**, It. **niente** (**nulla**), Fr. **rien**) precedes the verb, the negative words Sp. **no**; Port. **não**; It. **non** is dropped in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, whereas in French *ne* is not omitted and the pronoun *rien* is placed before it. Observe the following:

Sp. **Nada** me agrada;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Port. **Nada** me agrada;

It. **Niente** mi piace;

Fr. **Rien ne** me plait

- *I like nothing (Nothing pleases me).*

2. When they are used with the negative words Sp. **no**, Port. **não**, It. **non**, Fr. **ne**, the pronouns nothing Sp. **nada**, Port. **nada**, It. **niente** (*nulla*), Fr. **rien** follow the main verb in simple tenses. In compound tenses they follow the past participle in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian.



NOTE:

*In French **rien** precedes the past participle in compound tenses.*

Sp. **No** veo **nada**;

Port. Eu **não** vejo **nada**;

It. **Non** vedo **niente**;

Fr. Je **ne** vois **rien**

- *I see nothing.*

Sp. **No** he visto **nada**;

Port. **Não** tenho visto **nada**;

It. **Non** ho visto **niente**;

Fr. Je **n'ai rien** vu

- *I have seen nothing.*

3. When there is an infinitive in the sentence, Sp. **no**, Port. **não**, It. **non**, Fr. **ne** precede the main verb or the auxiliary verb and

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish **nada**, Portuguese **nada** and Italian **niente** (**nulla**) follow the infinitive; in French **rien** is placed before the infinitive. For example:

Sp. **No** quiero comer **nada**;

Port. Eu **não** quero comer **nada**;

It. **Non** voglio mangiare **nulla**;

Fr. Je **ne** veux **rien** manger

- *I want to eat **nothing**.*

Neither...nor

Sp. no...ni...ni; Port. não...nem...nem; It. non...né...né; Fr. ne...ni...ni

These negative words are usually placed after the main verb in simple tenses or after the past participle in compound tenses in the Romance languages. It should be mentioned that the negative words Sp. **no**, Port. **não**; It. **non**; Fr. **ne** always precede the main verb in simple tenses or the auxiliary verb in compound tenses. For instance:

Sp. **No** hablan **ni** español **ni** portugués;

Port. Eles **não** falam **nem** espanhol **nem** português;

It. **Non** parlano **né** spagnolo **né** portoghese;

Fr. Ils **ne** parlent **ni** espagnol, **ni** portugais

- *They speak **neither** Spanish **nor** Portuguese.*

Sp. **No** he viajado **ni** a España **ni** a Brasil;

Port. Eu **não** tenho viajado **nem** para a Espanha **nem** para o Brasil;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

It. **Non** ho viaggiato **né** in Spagna **né** in Brasile;

Fr. Je **n'ai** voyagé **ni** en Espagne **ni** au Brésil

- *I have travelled **neither** to Spain **nor** to Brazil.*

It worth noting that Sp. **ni**; Port. **nem**; It. **né**; Fr. **ni** can be used in the sentence more than twice. Observe the following:

Sp. **No** quiere **ni** comer, **ni** beber, **ni** dormir;

Port. Ela **não** quer **nem** comer, **nem** beber, **nem** dormir;

It. **Non** vuole **né** mangiare, **né** bere, **né** dormire;

Fr. Elle **ne** veut **ni** manger, **ni** boire, **ni** dormir

- *She wants **neither** to eat, **nor** to drink, **nor** to sleep.*

Never

Sp. **no...nunca**, (**jamás**); Port. **não...nunca**, (**jamais**); It. **non...mai**; Fr. **ne...jamais**

1. Unlike in French, in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian the adverbs Sp. **nunca** (**jamás**); Port. **nunca**, (**jamais**); It. **mai** - *never* can be used before the main verb. In this case, the negative words Sp. **no**; Port. **não**; It. **non** should be dropped.



NOTE:

In French **jamais** must be used with **ne** where **ne** precedes the verb and **jamais** follows it.

Sp. **Nunca** me visita;

Port. Ele **nunca** me visita;

It. **Mai** mi visita;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Fr. Il **ne** me rend **jamaïs** visite.

- *He **never** visits me.*

2. The adverbs Sp. **nunca** (**jamás**); Port. **nunca**, (**jamaïs**); It. **mai**; Fr. **jamaïs** - *never* are also used in combination with the negative words Sp. **no**; Port. **não**; It. **non**; Fr. **ne**. In this case, *never* follows the main verb in simple tenses in all the Romance languages. In compound tenses it follows the past participle in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian. However in Italian *never* can also be placed before the past participle.



NOTE:

*In French **never** must precede the past participle in compound tenses.*

Sp. **No** me visita **nunca**;

Port. Ele **não** me visita **nunca**;

It. **Non** mi visita **mai**;

Fr. Il **ne** me rend **jamaïs** visite

- *He **never** visits me.*

Sp. **No** he viajado **nunca**;

Port. Eu **não** tenho viajado **nunca** (or Eu **nunca** viajei);

It. **Non** ho **mai** viaggiato (or **Non** ho viaggiato **mai**);

Fr. Je **n'ai** **jamaïs** voyagé

- *I have **never** travelled.*



NOTE:

*In French **de** is used instead of the partitive article after **ne...jamaïs**. Example:*

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Fr. Je **ne** mange **jamais de** champignons
- I never eat mushrooms.

No longer, Anymore Sp. **no...más**; Port. **não...mais**; It. **non...più**; Fr. **ne...plus**

The adverbs Sp. **más**; Port. **mais**; It. **più**; Fr. **plus** - *no longer, anymore* can only be used in combination with the negative words Sp. **no**; Port. **não**; It. **non**; Fr. **ne**. Therefore, *no longer, anymore* follows the main verb in simple tenses in all the Romance languages. In compound tenses it follows the past participle in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian. In Italian, however, *no longer, anymore* can also be placed before the past participle.



NOTE:

*In French **no longer, anymore** Fr. **plus** must precede the past participle in compound tenses.*

Sp. **No** trabaja **más** en el hospital;

Port. Ele **não** trabalha **mais** no hospital;

It. **Non** lavora **più** in ospedale;

Fr. Il **ne** travaille **plus** à l'hôpital

- He doesn't work at the hospital **anymore**.

Sp. **No** lo he visto **más**;

Port. Eu **não** o tenho visto **mais**;

It. **Non** l'ho visto **più**;

Fr. Je **ne** l'ai **plus** vu

- I haven't seen him **anymore**.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

When there is an infinitive in the sentence, *no longer*, *anymore* follow the infinitive in Spanish and Portuguese, while in Italian and French it is placed before the infinitive. For example:

Sp. **No** quiero comer **más**;
Port. Eu **não** quero comer **mais**;
It. **Non** voglio **più** mangiare;
Fr. Je **ne** veux **plus** manger
- *I don't want to eat **anymore**.*

Not any, None

Sp. **no...ningún**; Port. **não...nenhum**; It. **non...nessun**; Fr. **ne...aucun**

Sp. **ningún**; Port. **nenhum**; It. **nessun**; Fr. **aucun** - *not any*, none are used as adjectives and must agree in gender and number with the noun. When used with the negative words Sp. **no**; Port. **não**; It. **non**; Fr. **ne**, these adjectives always follow the main verb in simple tenses and the past participle in compound tenses in all the Romance languages. For example:

Sp. **No** veo **ningún** hombre;
Port. Eu **não** vejo **nenhum** homem;
It. **Non** vedo **nessun** uomo;
Fr. Je **ne** vois **aucun** homme
- *I don't see **any** man.*

Sp. **No** he visto a **ninguna** mujer;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Port. Eu **não** tenho visto **nenhuma** mulher;

It. **Non** ho visto **nessuna** donna;

Fr. Je **n'**ai vu **aucune** femme.

- I didn't see **any** woman.

Not at all, Absolutely not

Sp. en absoluto, en mi/la vida; Port. de modo nenhum, de modo algum; It. non... affatto, non...punto; Fr. ne...pas du tout, ne...point

The negative expression *not at all* is quite different in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, so it needs to be considered separately in each Romance language.

Spanish

En absoluto en mi (tu,su)/la vida seem like affirmative phrases in Spanish, but nonetheless they are commonly used to convey negative meaning, meaning "*not at all*" or "*absolutely not*". These phrases can be placed either in the beginning or at the end of a sentence. For example:

Sp. Él no vino **en absoluto**/ **En absoluto** él no vino (Él no vino **en su vida**)

- He didn't come **at all**.

Portuguese

De modo nenhum, de modo algum are negative phrases which are used to express "*not at all*". They are placed at the end of a sentence. For instance:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Port. Ele não veio **de modo nenhum** (Ele não veio **de modo algum**)

- *He didn't come **at all**.*

Italian

Affatto, if used with **non**, can be put either between the auxiliary verb and the past participle or after the past participle, while **punto** always come before the past participle in compound tenses. Study the following:

It. Non è venuto **affatto** (**Non** è **punto** venuto)

- *He didn't come **at all**.*

French

Pas du tout, **point**, if used with **non**, should be placed after the main verb in simple tenses and after the auxiliary verb in compound tenses. For example:

Fr. Il **n'est pas du tout** venu (Il **n'est point** venu)

- *He didn't come **at all**.*

Not even

Sp. ni siquiera, ni tan siquiera; Port. nem sequer, tão sequer; It. non...neanche, non...nemmeno, non...neppure; Fr. ne...même pas

Spanish negative expression **ni siquiera, ni tan siquiera** should be regarded along with Portuguese **nem sequer, tão sequer** since they have more grammatical and lexical similarities between them; rather than with Italian and

French. On the other hand, Italian **non...neanche**, **non...nemmeno**, **non...neppure** should be considered in pair with French **ne...même pas**, for they are quite alike in terms grammatical usage.

Spanish and Portuguese

Sp. **ni siquiera**, **ni tan siquiera** and Port. **nem sequer**, **tão sequer** should be placed in the beginning of a sentence. For example:

Sp. **Ni siquiera** me saludó (**Ni tan siquiera** me saludó);

Port. **Nem sequer** me cumprimentou (**tão sequer** me cumprimentou)

- *She **didn't even** greet me.*

Italian and French

It. **neanche**, **nemmeno**, **neppure** and Fr. **même pas** are usually placed after the main verb in simple tenses and after the auxiliary verb in compound tenses. However, in Italian they can be put either between the auxiliary verb and the past participle or after the past participle. For example:

It. **Non** mi ha salutato **neanche/ nemmeno/ neppure** (**Non** mi ha **neanche** salutato);

Fr. Elle **ne** m'a **même pas** salué

- *She **didn't even** greet me.*

Only

Sp. **no...más que/sino**; Port. **não...mais que**; It. **non...che**; Fr. **ne...que**



Did you know?

Bologna, the capital of Emilia-Romagna region in Northern Italy, is popular for The Two Towers (Le due torri), that stand next to each other. The tower of Asinelli and the tower of Garisenda. The names derive from families who built them between 1109 and 1119. The construction was a competition between the two families to demonstrate which was the wealthier family.

Sp. **más que/sino**; Port. **mas que**; It. **che**; Fr. **que**, if used with **no/non/ne**, should be placed after the main verb in simple tenses and follow the past participle in compound tenses. For example:

Sp. **No** tengo **más que** una hermana (**No** tengo **sino** una hermana);

Port. Eu **não** tenho **mais que** uma irmã;

It. **Non** ho **che** una sorella;

Fr. Je **n'ai que** une soeur

- I have **only** one sister.

Sp. Ella **no** ha leído **más que** un libro;

Port. Ela **não** tem lido **mais que** um livro;

It. **Non** ha letto **che** un libro;

Fr. Elle **n'a** lu **qu'**un livre.

- She has read **only** one book.

The Imperfect Tense

Formation of the Imperfect

The imperfect tense (Sp. el imperfecto, Port. o pretérito imperfeito, It. l'imperfetto Fr. l'imparfait) is formed by dropping the infinitive ending and adding the appropriate personal ending to the root of a verb.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS



NOTE:

*In French the Imperfect tense is formed by dropping the ending **-ons** of the 1st person plural of the present tense and adding the appropriate endings.*

Below is a table demonstrating the endings of the imperfect tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1st conj.: -AR: -aba, -abas, -aba, -ábamos, -abais, -aban;	1st conj.: -AR: -ava, -avas, -ava, -ávamos, -áveis, -avam;	1st conj.: -ARE: -avo, -avi, -ava, -avamo, -avate, -avano;	all the conj.: -ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient;
2nd conj.: - ER: -ía, -ías, -ía, -íamos, -íais, -ían;	2nd conj.: - ER: -ia, -ias, -ia, -íamos, -íeis, -íam;	2nd conj.: - ERE: -evo, -evi, -eva, -evamo, -evate, -evano	
3rd conj.: - IR: -ía, -ías, -ía, -íamos, -íais, -ían;	3rd conj.: - IR: -ia, -ias, -ia, -íamos, -íeis, -íam;	3 conj.: - IRE: -ivo, -ivi, -iva, -ivamo, -ivate, -ivano;	

Below is the table showing the example of conjugation of regular verbs in the imperfect tense :

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1 conjugation			

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Sp.: hablar	Port.: falar	It.: parlare	Fr.: parler
<i>yo</i> hablaba <i>tú</i> hablabas <i>él\ella\usted</i> hablaba <i>nosotros\as</i> hablábamos <i>vosotros\as</i> hablabais <i>ellos\ellas\usted-</i> <i>es</i> hablaban	<i>eu</i> falava <i>tu</i> falavas <i>ele\ela\você</i> falava <i>nós</i> falávamos <i>vós</i> faláveis <i>eles\elas\voc</i> <i>ês</i> falavam	<i>io</i> parlavo <i>tu</i> parlavi <i>lui\lei\Lei</i> parlava <i>noi</i> parlavamo <i>voi</i> parlavate <i>loro\Loro</i> parlavano	<i>je</i> parlais <i>tu</i> parlais <i>il\elle\on</i> parlait <i>nous</i> parlions <i>vous</i> parliez <i>ils\elles</i> parlaient
2 conjugation			
vender	vender	vendere	vendre
vendía vendías vendía vendíamos vendíais vendían	vendia vendias vendia vendíamos vendíeis vendiam	vendevo vendevi vendeva vendevamo vendevate vendevano	vendais vendais vendait vendions vendiez vendaient
3 conjugation			
partir	partir	partire	partir

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
partía partías partía partíamos partíais partían	partia partias partia partíamos partíeis partiam	partivo partivi partiva partivamo partivate partivano	partais partais partait partions partiez partaient



NOTE:

In French verbs ending in **-cer** and **-ger**, the spelling changes before **a** take place, which is in order to preserve the initial sound. For example:

Commencer (to begin): je commençais - tu commençais - il/elle/on commençait - nous commençons - vous commencez - ils/elles commençaient.

Manger (to eat): je mangeais - tu mangeais - il/elle/on mangeait - nous mangions - vous mangiez - ils/elles mangeaient.

Irregular Verbs in the Imperfect

The most common irregular verb of the imperfect tense in the Romance languages is the verb *to be*:

Sp. **Ser**: yo **era**; tú **eras**; él\ella\usted **era**; nosotros\as **éramos**; vosotros\as **erais**; ellos\ellas\ustedes **eran**.

Port. **Ser**: eu **era**; tu **eras**; ele\ela\você **era**; nós **éramos**; vós **éreis**; eles\elas\vocês **eram**.

It. **Essere**: io **ero**; tu **eri**; lui\lei\Lei **era**; noi **eravamo**, voi **eravate**, loro\Loro **erano**.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Fr. **Être**: j'**étais**, tu **étais**, il\elle\on **était**, nous **étions**, vous **étiez**, ils\elles **étaient**.

- **To be**: I **was**; you **were**; he, she, it **was**; we **were**; you **were**; they **were**.



NOTE:

Spanish and Portuguese also have their own irregular verbs, which should be regarded as well.

Spanish

Ir (to go): **iba, ibas, iba, íbamos, ibais, iban**

Ver (to see): **veía, veías, veía, veíamos, veíais, veían**

Portuguese

Ter (to have): **tinha, tinhas, tinha, tínhamos, tínheis, tinham**

Vir (to come): **vinha, vinhas, vinha, vínhamos, vínheis, vinham**

Use of the Imperfect

Generally speaking the imperfect tense in the Romance languages is used to talk about what someone was doing or used to do. Therefore, the imperfect tense in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French is used to express:

• **Actions repeated habitually or regularly**

You use it when you talk about activities that you did repeatedly for a long period of undetermined time. The beginning and the end of the action is not specified. For example:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Sp. **Comíamos** en este restaurante todos los días;
Port. **Comíamos** neste restaurante todos os dias;
It. **Mangiavamo** in questo ristorante tutti i giorni;
Fr. Nous **mangions** dans ce restaurant tous les jours.
- *We **used to eat** at this restaurant every day.*

• Two simultaneous actions

Use it to talk about actions that were taking place at the same time in the past:

Sp. Mientras ella **dormía**, él **leía** el periódico;
Port. Enquanto ela **dormia**, ele **lia** o jornal;
It. Mentre lei **dormiva**, lui **leggeva** il giornale;
Fr. Pendant qu'elle **dormait**, il **lisait** le journal.
- *While she **was sleeping**, he **was reading** the newspaper.*

• Background actions that set stage for other actions

The background action is expressed in the imperfect, while the action that interrupts the background action is used in the preterite:

Sp. **Dormías** cuando llegué;
Port. **Dormias** (Você **dormia**) quando cheguei;
It. **Dormivi** quando sono venuto;
Fr. Tu **dormais** quand je suis arrivé.
- *You **were sleeping** when I arrived.*

CHAPTER 6: VERBS



NOTE:

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian the background action can also be expressed by the imperfect progressive (**See The Continuous Tenses p.465**). Study the following:

Sp. **Estabas durmiendo** cuando llegué;

Port. **Estavas a dormir** (Você **estava dormindo**) quando cheguei;

It. **Stavi dormendo** quando sono venuto.

- You **were sleeping** when I arrived.

• Time and dates in the past

Sp. **Eran** las dos de la tarde;

Port. **Eram** duas horas da tarde;

It. **Erano** le due del pomeriggio;

Fr. Il **était** deux heures de l'après-midi.

- It **was** two o'clock in the afternoon.

Sp. **Era** lunes;

Port. **Era** segunda-feira;

It. **Era** lunedì;

Fr. C'**était** lundi.

It **was** Monday.

• Descriptions in the past

The imperfect tense is used to describe a scene, circumstances or person in the past:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Sp. **Hacía** frío esa noche;
Port. **Fazia** frio naquela noite;
It. **Faceva** freddo quella notte;
Fr. Il **faisait** froid cette nuit.
- *It **was** cold that night.*

Sp. **Tenía** cuarenta años;
Port. Ele **tinha** quarenta anos;
It. Egli **aveva** quarant'anni;
Fr. Il **avait** quarante ans.
- *He **was** forty years old.*



Did you know?

Toulouse, the capital of France's southern Occitanie region, is known as La Ville Rose (The Pink City) owing to the pale coloured terra-cotta bricks used in most of its buildings.

Sp. **Era** alta y bonita;
Port. Ela **era** alta e bonita;
It. **Era** alta e bella;
Fr. Elle **était** grande et belle.
- *She **was** tall and beautiful.*

• **Verbs denoting mental and emotional states, desires or conditions**

As most mental processes include duration, verbs of mental states or conditions are usually expressed in the imperfect when used in the past. The following is a list of the most common verbs describing mental states:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
amar	amar	amare	aimer	to love
ser	ser	essere	être	to be
tener	ter	avere	avoir	to have
creer	crer	credere	croire	to believe
desear	desejar	desiderare	désirer	to desire
esperar	esperar	sperare	espérer	to hope
pensar	pensar	pensare	penser	to think
poder	poder	potere	pouvoir	to be able
preferir	preferir	preferire	préférer	to prefer
saber	saber	sapere	savoir	to know
querer	querer	volere	vouloir	to want
reflejar	refletir	riflettere	réfléter	to reflect

Sp. Yo **quería** ir a Francia;

Port. Eu **queria** ir para a França;

It. **Volevo** andare in Francia;

Fr. Je **voulais** aller en France.

- *I wanted to go to France.*

Sp. No **sabía** la respuesta;

Port. Ele não **sabia** a resposta;

It. Non **sapeva** la risposta;

Fr. Il ne **savait** pas la réponse.

- *He didn't know the answer.*

Sp. *desde hace*; Port. *desde*; It. *da*; Fr. *depuis* + The Imperfect Tense

We have already studied the use of Sp. *desde*; Port. *desde*; It. *da*; Fr. *depuis* (*for/since*) with the present indicative (See **Special Use of the Present Tense and Prepositions p. 274**). In the Romance languages the prepositions Sp. *desde hace*; Port. *desde*; It. *da*; Fr. *depuis* can also be used with the imperfect tense meaning *had been*. For instance:

Sp. *Esperaba desde hace* dos horas;

Port. *Esperava desde* as duas horas;

It. *Aspettavo da* due ore;

Fr. *J'attendais depuis* deux heures.

- *I had been waiting for two hours.*

The following are the most common adverbial expressions that are usually used with the imperfect tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
siempre	sempre	sempre	toujours	<i>always</i>
a veces	às vezes	a volte	parfois	<i>at times</i>
como siempre	como sempre	come sempre	comme toujours	<i>as always</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
como de costumbre, acostumbr adamente	como de costume usualmente, habitual- mente, costumeira mente	come d'uso, usualmente	d'habitude, habituelle ment	<i>usually</i>
algunas veces	algumas vezes	certe volte	quelquefois	<i>sometim es</i>
frecuente mente	frequente- mente	con frequenza, frequente- mente	fréquem- ment	<i>frequent ly</i>
a menudo	frequente- mente	spesso	souvent	<i>often</i>
continua- mente	continua- mente	continua- mente	continuelle ment	<i>continuo usly</i>
de vez en cuando, de cuando en cuando	de vez em quando	di quando in quando, di tanto in tanto	de temps en temps	<i>from time to time</i>
sin interrup- ción	sem interrupção	ininterrotta mente	sans interrup- tion	<i>without interrup tion</i>
repetida- mente	repetida- mente	ripetuta- mente	à plusieurs reprises	<i>repeated ly</i>
sin cesar	sem parar	senza sosta	sans cesse	<i>without stopping</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
cada día, todos los días	cada dia, todos os dias	ogni giorno, tutti i giorni	chaque jour, tous les jours	<i>every day</i>
diaria- mente	diariamente	quotidiana mente	quotidienn ement	<i>daily</i>
los domingos	aos domingos	la domenica	le dimanche	<i>on Sundays</i>
en aquel entonces	naquele momento	in quel momento	en ce moment	<i>at that moment</i>

Difference between the Preterite and the Imperfect in the Romance Languages

Generally speaking, the imperfect tense is used to express a continuing and habitual action in the past, whereas the preterite describes an action that began and finished in the past independently of its continuance. For instance:

The Preterite	The Imperfect
Sp. <i>Jugué</i> al tenis <i>ayer</i> ; Port. Eu <i>joguei</i> ténis <i>ontem</i> ; It. <i>Ho giocato</i> a tennis <i>ieri</i> ; Fr. J' <i>ai joué</i> au tennis <i>hier</i> . <i>- I played tennis yesterday.</i>	Sp. <i>Jugaba</i> al tenis <i>de vez en cuando</i> ; Port. Eu <i>jogava</i> ténis <i>de vez em quando</i> ; It. <i>Giocavo</i> a tennis <i>di quando in quando</i> ; Fr. Je <i>jouais</i> au tennis <i>de temps en temps</i> . <i>- I used to play tennis from time to time.</i>

Compound Tenses in The Past

Overview

The compound tenses in the Romance languages are formed in the same way by using the auxiliary verb (Sp. **haber**, Port. **ter**, It. **avere** or **essere**, Fr. **avoir** or **être**) in the appropriate tense and the past participle.



NOTE:

*It should be noted that Portuguese compound tenses differ from other Romance languages. In this case, Portuguese tense **pretérito mais-que-perfeito simples** is not compound, since it is not formed with the help of the auxiliary verb. The distinctive feature of the Portuguese language is that it has two types of the pluperfect tenses, which are simple and compound (**pretérito mais-que-perfeito simples**, **pretérito mais-que-perfeito composto**).*

The Pluperfect Tense

Formation of the Pluperfect

In Spanish, Italian and French the pluperfect tense is formed by using the imperfect tense of the verb Sp. **haber**, It. **avere** or **essere**, Fr. **avoir** or **être** with the past participle.



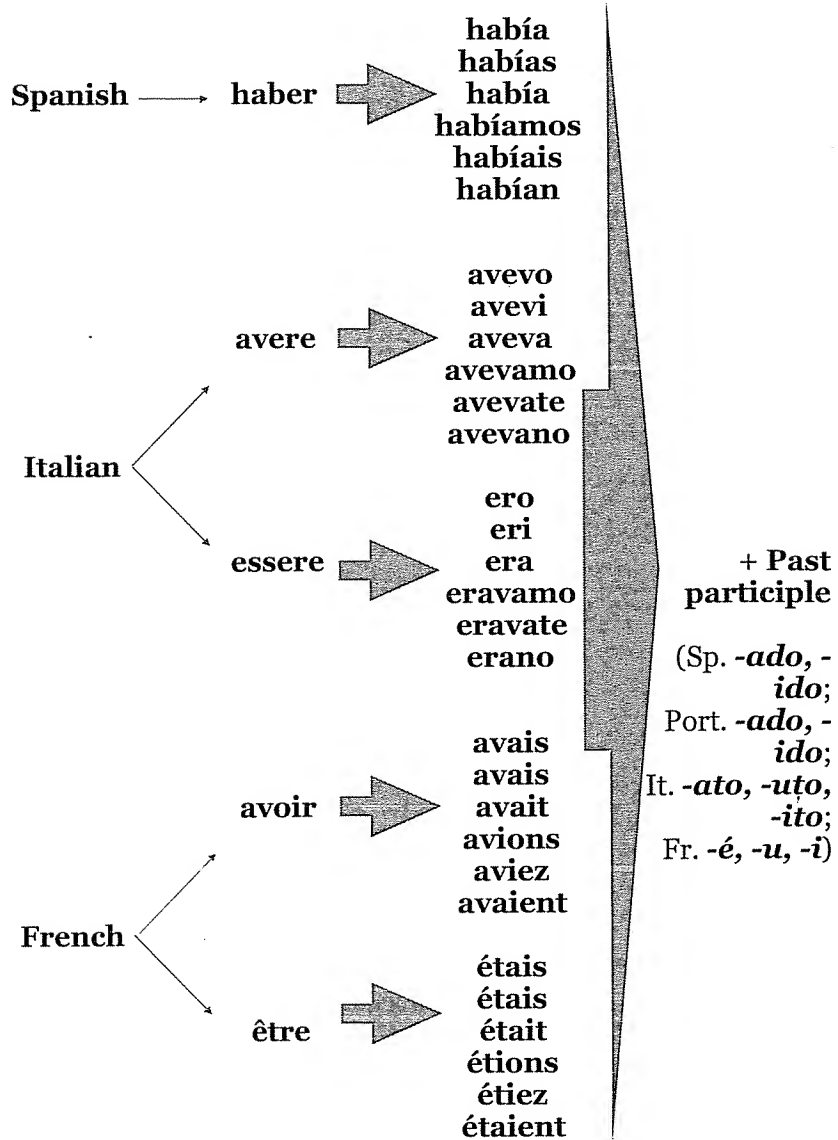
NOTE:

In Portuguese this tense is formed by using the appropriate ending that is added to the infinitive.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

The formation of the pluperfect of the Romance languages is presented in the drawing below:

Pluperfect Formula



CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Portuguese → Infinitive + -a, -as, -a, -
se amos,
-eis, -am;



NOTE:

*Like in the Present Perfect, in the Pluperfect as well as other compound tenses the auxiliary verbs It. **essere**; Fr. **être** (to be) are also used with reflexive and intransitive verbs in Italian and French. Also, the past participle that is used with the auxiliary verb to be (It. **essere**, Fr. **être**) always agrees in gender and number with the subject. This means that the endings change in the feminine and plural forms the way they change in adjectives: in French **-e** is added to agree with the feminine and **-s** is added for the plural, in Italian to agree with the feminine **-a** is used and **-i, -e** with the masculine and feminine plurals respectively.*

Below is the table showing the example of conjugation of verbs in the pluperfect tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Haber	Ter	Avere	Avoir
yo había hablado	eu falara	io avevo parlato	j' avais parlé

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
tú habías hablado	tu falaras	tu avevi parlato	tu avais parlé
él/ella/usted había hablado	êle/ela/você falara	lui/lei/Lei aveva parlato	il/elle avait parlé
nosotros(as) habíamos hablado	nós falaramos	noi avevamo parlato	nous avions parlé
vosotros(as) habíais hablado	vós falareis	voi avevate parlato	vous aviez parlé
ellos/ellas/ustedes habían hablado	eles/elas/vocês falaram	loro/Loro avevano parlato	ils/elles avaient parlé
—	—	<i>Essere</i>	<i>Être</i>
—	—	io ero partito (-a)	j'étais parti (-e)
—	—	tu eri partito (-a)	tu étais parti(-e)
—	—	lui/lei/Lei era partito (-a)	il/elle était parti (-e)
—	—	noi eravamo partiti(-e)	nous étions parti (-e)s
—	—	voi eravate partiti(-e)	vous étiez parti (-e)s

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
—	—	loro/Loro erano partiti (-e)	ils/elles étaient parti(-e)s

For example:



Did you know?

Venezuela, the 43rd most populous country in the world (over 31 million people), has provided 6 Miss World winners and 7 Miss Universe winners, which is more than any other nation on Earth.

Sp. **Habíamos hablado** y luego se fue;

Port. Nós **faláramos** e depois ela foi embora;

It. **Avevamo parlato** e poi è andata via;

Fr. Nous **avions parlé** et puis elle est partie.

- We **had spoken** and then she left.

Sp. Ya **había partido** cuando llegué;

Port. Ela já **partira** quando eu cheguei;

It. **Era** già **partita** quando sono arrivato;

Fr. Elle **était** déjà **partie** quand je suis arrivé.

- She **had** already **left** when I arrived.

Use of the Pluperfect Tense

The pluperfect tense is used the same in the Romance languages as in English to express:

- **Past action completed prior to another action in the past.** Study the following:



Did you know?

The Azores, an autonomous region of Portugal, are a group of 9 volcanic islands located in the mid-Atlantic (850 miles west of continental Portugal). The Azores are known for blue-green lakes, fishing villages, green pastures, volcanic craters and 15th century churches.

Sp. No sabía si ella me **había visto**;

Port. Eu não sabia se ela **vera**;

It. Non sapevo se mi **aveva visto**;

Fr. Je ne savais pas si elle **m'avait vu**.

- *I didn't know if she **had seen** me.*

Peculiarities of Use of the Pluperfect in the Romance Languages

In Spanish, Italian and French this tense is used in spoken language. However, in Portuguese the pluperfect is mainly used in literary language. Normally, in colloquial Portuguese, the past perfect is used instead.

Irregular Verbs of the Pluperfect in Portuguese

Portuguese has a number of irregular verbs in the pluperfect, which are:

Ser (*fora, foras, fora, fôramos, fôreis, foram*) - to be;

Dar (*dera, deras, dera, déramos, déreis, deram*) - to give;

Ir (*fora, foras, fora, fôramos, fôreis, foram*) - to go;

Vir (*viera, vieras, viera, viéramos, viéreis, vieram*) - to come;

Fazer (*fizera, fizeras, fizera, fizéramos, fizéreis, fizeram*)
- to do.

The Past Perfect (Anterior) Tense

Formation of The Past Perfect (Anterior)

In the Romance languages the past perfect (anterior) tense is formed by using the preterite of the verb Sp. **haber**, It. **avere** or **essere**, Fr. **avoir** or **être** with the past participle.



NOTE:

It should be remembered that in Spanish, Italian and French the past perfect (anterior) tense is used mostly in literary contexts, whereas in Portuguese this tense is used in colloquial language.



Did you know?

Verona, an Italian city of 270 thousand inhabitants, is the city where 3 of William Shakespeare's plays are set: *Romeo and Juliet*, *The Two Gentlemen of Verona* and *The Taming of the Shrew*. Verona is considered one of the most beautiful cities in the world due to its architecture.

Below is the drawing demonstrating the formation of the past perfect (anterior) in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	haber	hube hubiste hubo hubimos hubisteis hubieron
Portuguese	ter	tinha tinhas tinha tínhamos tínheis tinham
Italian	avere	ebbi avesti ebbe avemmo aveste ebbero
	essere	fui fosti fu fummo foste furono
French	avoir	eus eus eut eûmes eûtes eurent
	être	fus fus fut fûmes fûtes furent

+ Past
participle
(Sp. *-ado*,
-ido;
Port. *-ado*,
-ido;
It. *-ato*, *-uto*,
-ito;
Fr. *-é*, *-u*, *-i*)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Below is the table showing the example of conjugation of verbs in the past perfect (anterior) tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
<i>Haber</i>	<i>Ter</i>	<i>Avere</i>	<i>Avoir</i>
yo hube hablado	eu tinha falado	io ebbi parlato	j`eus parlé
tú hubiste hablado	tu tinhas falado	tu avesti parlato	tu eus parlé
él/ella/usted hubo hablado	ele/ela/você tinha falado	lui/lei/Lei ebbe parlato	il/elle eut parlé
nosotros(as) hubimos hablado	nós tínhamos falado	noi avemmo parlato	nous eûmes parlé
vosotros(as) hubisteis hablado	vós tínheis falado	voi aveste parlato	vous eûtes parlé
ellos/ellas/ustedes hubieron hablado	eles/elas/vocês tinham falado	loro/Loro ebbero parlato	ils/elles eurent parlé
—	—	<i>Essere</i>	<i>Être</i>
—	—	io fui partito(-a)	je fus parti (-e)
—	—	tu fosti partito(-a)	tu fus parti (-e)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
—	—	lui/lei/Lei fu partito (-a)	il/elle fut parti(-e)
—	—	noi fummo partiti(-e)	nous fûmes parti(-e)s
—	—	voi foste partiti(-e)	vous fûtes parti (-e)s
—	—	loro/Loro furono partiti(-e)	ils/elles furent parti(-e)s



Did you know?

The Central African Republic is a landlocked nation situated in Central Africa. The CAR's 2 official languages are French and Sango. The country has 5 national parks and 33 protected areas. They are home to around 3,500 species of plants, 660 birds, 130 mammals, 185 reptiles and 25 amphibians.

For example:

Sp. Después que **hubo terminado** el trabajo, partió;

Port. Depois que **tinha terminado** o trabalho, ele partiu;

It. Dopo che **ebbe finito** il lavoro, è partito;

Fr. Après qu'il **eut terminé** le travail, il est parti.

- When he **had finished** the work, he left.

Sp. Cuando **hubo partido**, llegué;

Port. Quando ela já **tinha partido**, eu cheguei;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

It. Quando **fu partita**, sono arrivato;

Fr. Quand elle **fut partie**, je suis arrivé.

- When she **had left**, I arrived.

Use of the Past Perfect (Anterior) Tense

Like the pluperfect tense, the past perfect (anterior) is also used to express a past action that *had* occurred before another action in the past. This tense is generally used in subordinate clauses after temporal conjunctions, which indicate a past action instantly preceding another. In such sentences the main verb is in the preterite.

The following are the most common temporal conjunctions that are usually used in the past perfect (anterior) tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
después (de) que	depois que	dopo che (dopoiché)	après que	after
cuando	quando	quando	quand (lorsque)	when
luego que, apenas	logo que, apenas	come, appena	dès que (aussitôt que), à peine	as soon as, scarcely (hardly)

Sp. **Luego que hube vuelto** a casa, me llamó;

Port. **Logo que eu tinha voltado** para casa, ela me chamou;

It. **Appena fui tornato** a casa, mi ha chiamato;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Fr. **Dès que je fus rentré** à la maison, elle m'a appelé.

- **As soon as I had returned home**, she called me.



NOTE:

In French the subject and verb are inverted after **à peine**.

Fr. **À peine fus-je rentré** à la maison,
qu'elle m'a appelé.

- **I had hardly returned home** when she
called me.

However, in modern spoken language the past perfect (anterior) is usually replaced by the preterite in the Romance languages:

Sp. **Luego que volví** a casa, me llamó;

Port. **Logo que voltei** para casa, ela me chamou;

It. **Appena sono tornato** a casa, mi ha chiamato;

Fr. **Dès que je suis rentré** à la maison, elle m'a appelé.

- **As soon as I returned home**, she called me.

The Future Tense

Regular Formation of the Future

The future tense of most verbs is formed by adding the appropriate endings to the infinitive in all the conjunctions.

Below is the table demonstrating the endings of the future tense in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1 st , 2 nd and 3 rd person singular	-é, -ás, -á,	-ei, -ás, -á,	-ò, -ai, -à,	-ai, -as, -a,
1 st , 2 nd and 3 rd person plural	-emos, - éis, -án;	-emos, -eis, -ão;	-emo, -ete, -anno;	-ons, -ez, - ont;



NOTE:

The final **-e** of the 2nd conjunction (**-re** verbs) in French, as well as the final **-e** of all the conjunctions in Italian is dropped before adding the future endings (e.g. It. **partire** (to leave) io partirò - I will leave; Fr. **attendre** (to wait) j'attendrai - I will wait).

Also, Italian future tense of the 1st conjunction (**-are** verbs) is formed by changing the infinitive ending **-are** into **-er** (we changed the initial **-a-** to **-e-** and dropped the final **-e-**) before adding the appropriate future endings (e.g. It. **aspettare** (to wait) io aspetterò - I will wait).

The following is the table showing the example of conjugation of regular verbs in the future tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
hablar	falar	parlare	parler

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
yo hablaré tú hablarás él\ella\usted hablará nosotros\as hablaremos vosotros\as hablaréis ellos\ellas\usted es hablarán	eu falarei tu falarás ele\ela\você falará nós falaremos vós falareis eles\elas\vo cês falarão	io parlerò tu parlerai lui\lei\Lei parlerà noi parleremo voi parlerete loro\Loro parleranno	je parlerai tu parleras il\elle\on parlera nous parlerons vous parlerez ils\elles parleront



NOTE:

In French the 2nd and 3rd person singular forms sound alike (e.g. tu parleras; il\elle parlera); the 1st person singular and the 2nd person plural sound alike (e.g. je parlerai; vous parlerez), and then the 1st and 3rd person plurals also sound alike (e.g. nous parlerons; ils\elles parleront). However, these forms are all spelled differently.

Irregular Verbs in The Future

The following is a table presenting irregular verbs in the future tense, which are common for all or several Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
ser (regular)	ser (regular)	essere (sarò, sarai, sarà, saremo, sarete, saranno)	être (serai, seras, sera, serons, serez, seront)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
estar (regular)	estar (regular)	stare (starò, starai, starà, staremo, starete, staranno)	—
haber (habré, habrás, habrá, habremos, habréis, habrán)	haver (regular)	avere (avrò, avrai, avrà, avremo, avrete, avranno)	avoir (aurai, auras, aura, aurons, aurez, auront)
tener (tendré, tendrás, tendrá, tendremos, tendréis, tendrán)	ter (regular)	tenere (terrò, terrai, terrà, terremo, terrete, terrano)	tenir (tiendrai, tiendras, tiendra, tiendrons, tiendrez, tiendront)
hacer (haré, harás, hará, haremos, haréis, harán)	fazer (farei, farás, fará, faremos, fareis, farão)	fare (farò, farai, farà, faremo, farete, faranno)	faire (ferai, feras, fera, ferons, ferez, feront)
venir (vendré, vendrás, vendrá, vendremos, vendréis, vendrán)	vir (regular)	venire (verrò, verrai, verrà, verremo, verrete, verranno)	venir (viendrai, viendras, viendra, viendrons, viendrez, viendront)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
saber (sabr�, sabr�s, sabr�, sabremos, sabr�is, sabr�n)	saber (regular)	sapere (sapr�, saprai, sapr�, sapremo, saprete, sapranno)	savoir (saurai, sauras, saura, saurons, saurez, sauront)
ver (regular)	ver (regular)	vedere (vedr�, vedrai, vedr�, vedremo, vedrete, vedranno)	voir (verrai, verras, verra, verrons, verrez, verront)
morir (regular)	morrer (regular)	morire (morr�, morrai, morr�, morremo, morrete, morranno)	mourir (mourrai, mourras, mourra, mourrons, mourrez, mourront)
dar (regular)	dar (regular)	dare (dar�, darai, dar�, daremo, darete, daranno)	donner (regular)
decir (dir�, dir�s, dir�, diremos, dir�is, dir�n)	dizer (direi, dir�s, dir�, diremos, direis, dir�o)	dire (regular)	dire (regular)
querer (querr�, querr�s, querr�, querremos, querr�is, querr�n)	querer (regular)	volere (vorr�, vorrai, vorr�, vorremo, vorrete, vorranno)	vouloir (voudrai, voudras, voudra, voudrons, voudrez, voudront)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
deber (regular)	dever (regular)	dovere (dovrò, dovrai, dovrà, dovremo, dovrete, dovranno)	devoir (devrai, devras, devra, devrons, devrez, devront)
poder (podré, podrás, podrá, podremos, podréis, podrán)	poder (regular)	potere (potrò, potrai, potrà, potremo, potrete, potranno)	pouvoir (pourrai, pourras, pourra, pourrons, pourrez, pourront)
ir (regular)	ir (regular)	andare (andrò, andrai, andrà, andremo, andrete, andranno)	aller (irai, iras, ira, irons, irez, iront)



Did you know?

Havana (La Habana), the capital city and major port of Cuba, has a nickname: Ciudad de las Columnas (The City of Columns) because of its notable colonial architecture. Havana was selected as one of the New7Wonders Cities and attracts over 1 million tourists every year.

As it is seen from the table, Italian and French have almost the same set of regular and irregular verbs in comparison with other Romance languages. Similarly, Spanish and Portuguese also have almost identical number of regular and irregular verbs between each other, which demonstrate their pair convergence. Therefore, it will be much easier to memorize these irregular verbs in pairs where Italian make a pair with French on the one hand, and Spanish with Portuguese on the other.

Irregularities in Formation of the Future in French

However, despite the majority of similar irregular verbs with other Romance languages, French has its own number of irregular verbs with specific models of conjugation. Some verbs, in order to form the future tense, use the 3rd person singular of the present tense rather than the infinitive.

Below are the most common verbs that use the 3rd person singular form while forming the future tense in French:

Infinitive	the 3rd form singular	Future
<i>acheter</i> (to buy)	<i>achète</i>	<i>j'achèterai</i>
<i>appeler</i> (to call)	<i>appelle</i>	<i>j'appellerai</i>
<i>employer</i> (to employ)	<i>emploie</i>	<i>j'emploierai</i>
<i>ennuyer</i> (to be bored)	<i>ennuie</i>	<i>j'ennuierai</i>
<i>essayer</i> (to try)	<i>essaie</i>	<i>j'essaierai</i>
<i>essuyer</i> (to dry)	<i>essuie</i>	<i>j'essuierai</i>
<i>jeter</i> (to throw)	<i>jette</i>	<i>je jetterai</i>
<i>lever</i> (to lift)	<i>lève</i>	<i>je lèverai</i>
<i>mener</i> (to lead)	<i>mène</i>	<i>je mènerai</i>
<i>nettoyer</i> (to clean)	<i>nettoie</i>	<i>je nettoierai</i>
<i>payer</i> (to pay)	<i>paie</i>	<i>je paierai</i>
<i>peser</i> (to weigh)	<i>pèse</i>	<i>je pèserai</i>

Use of The Future Tense

Like in English, the future tense in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French is used:

- **to express an action that will occur in the future:**



Did you know?

Equatorial Guinea, a Central African nation, is the only sovereign country in Africa in which Spanish is an official language. The population of the country is over 1.2 million people.

Sp. Le **visitaré** mañana;

Port. **Visitarei-o** amanhã;

It. lo **visiterò** domani;

Fr. je le **visiterai** demain.

- **I will visit** him tomorrow.

Also, the present tense can be used to express an action or intention that will occur in the future:

Sp. **voy** a París mañana;

Port. eu **vou** para Paris amanhã;

It. **vado** a Parigi domani;

Fr. je **vais** à Paris demain.

- **I am going** to Paris tomorrow.

- **to express probability and assumption:**

In conversational Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French the future can be used to express probability. In questions it is used to express surprise. As it is used in conversation, it is necessary to convey the meaning with intonation and use it in context. In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French the verbs *to be* and *to have* (Sp. **estar**, **ser**, **tener**; Port. **estar**, **ser**, **ter**; It.

essere, avere; Fr. *être, avoir*) are generally used in order to express probability in the future.

Sp. ¿Donde **estará** tu hermano? - **Estará** en casa;

Port. Onde **estará** o seu irmão? - **Estará** em casa;

It. Dove **sarà** tuo fratello? - **Sarà** a casa;

Fr. Où **sera** ton frère? - Il **sera** à la maison.

- Where **will** your brother **be**? - He **will be** at home.

The Informal Future

In the Romance languages the informal future is used primarily in colloquial language in order to express future actions. In Spanish, Portuguese and French it is formed by the verb *to go* of the present tense which is placed right before the infinitive. This expression is the equivalent of the English *to be going to*.

The formula of the informal future of Spanish, Portuguese and French is the following:

Sp. **ir a**, Port. **ir**, Fr. **aller** + **Infinitive**



NOTE:

*It should be added that in Spanish the preposition **a** is put after the verb **ir** and before an infinitive to form informal future.*

In Italian this expression is formed by using the verb **stare** (to be) and the preposition **per**, which are put before an infinitive:

It. **stare per** + **Infinitive**

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Sp. **Va a leer** un libro,
Port. Ele **vai ler** um livro,
It. **Sta per leggere** un libro,
Fr. Il **va lire** un livre
- **He is going to** read a book.

Special Use of the Future



Did you know?

São Tomé and Príncipe is a Portuguese-speaking island nation located in the equatorial Atlantic and Gulf of Guinea. It is the smallest of all Portuguese-speaking countries with a population of about 200 thousand. The people are friendly and it is safe to walk in the parks at night or sleep on the beaches.

In Romance languages the future tense can also be used after certain conjunctions when the verb of the main clause is in the future tense, as well as in the dependent clause. It should be noted that, unlike in the Romance languages, in English the verb of the main clause is used in the present tense. However, in Spanish, the subjunctive present is used in the main clause. In Portuguese, the subjunctive future should be used in the main clause in this case.

The following are the most common conjunctions used with the future tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
cuando	quando	quando	quand, lorsque, au moment où	<i>when</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
luego que, apenas, tan pronto como	logo que, apenas, assim que	come, appena	dès que, aussitôt que	<i>as soon as</i>
mientras que, en tanto que	enquanto que, no tanto que	mentre (ché), intanto che	pendant que, tandis que	<i>while</i>

Sp. *Cuando llegue*, voy a verla (*Cuando llegue*, la veré);

Port. *Quando ela chegar*, eu vou vê-la (*Quando ela chegar*, verei-a);

It. *Quando sta per arrivare*, sto per vederla (*Quando arriverà*, la vedrò);

Fr. *Quand elle va arriver*, je vais la voir (*Quand elle arrivera*, je la verrai).

- *When she arrives, I will see her.*

Sp. Vamos a hablar *apenas venga* (Hablaremos *apenas venga*);

Port. Vamos falar *logo que chegar* (Falaremos *logo que chegar*);

It. Stiamo per parlare *appena sto per venire* (Parleremo *appena verrò*).

Fr. On va parler *dès que je vais arriver* (Nous parlerons *dès que j'arriverai*).

- *We will talk as soon as I come.*

The Future Perfect Tense

Formation of the Future Perfect

Like other compound tenses, The future perfect in the Romance languages is formed similarly by using the auxiliary verb (Sp. **haber**, Port. **ter**, It. **avere** or **essere**, Fr. **avoir** or **être**) in the future tense and the past participle. The future perfect is generally used to express an action that *will have been* completed at a certain moment in the future.



Did you know?

The Italian language has a co-official status in Slovenia. About 4000 Slovenian people speak Italian as their mother tongue. Around 15% Slovenians speak Italian as a second language.

The drawing below shows the ways of forming the future perfect in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Future Perfect Formula

Spanish	→ haber	→	habré habrás habrá habremos habréis habrán
Portuguese	→ ter	→	terei terás terá teremos tereis terão
Italian	↗ avere	→	avrò avrà avrà avremo avrete avranno
	↘ essere	→	sarò sarai sarà saremo sarete saranno
French	↗ avoir	→	aurai auras aura aurons aurez auront
	↘ être	→	serai seras sera serons serez seront

+ Past
participle

(Sp. -ado, -
ido;

Port. -ado, -
ido;

It. -ato, -uto,
-ito;

Fr. -é, -u, -i)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Below is the table that demonstrates the example of conjugation of verbs in the future perfect tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
<i>Haber</i>	<i>Ter</i>	<i>Avere</i>	<i>Avoir</i>
yo habré hablado	eu terei falado	io avrò parlato	j` aurai parlé
tú habrás hablado	tu terás falado	tu avrà parlato	tu auras parlé
él/ella/usted habrá hablado	ele/ela/você terá falado	lui/lei/Lei avrà parlato	il/elle aura parlé
nosotros(as) habremos hablado	nós teremos falado	noi avremo parlato	nous aurons parlé
vosotros(as) habréis hablado	vós tereis falado	voi avrete parlato	vous aurez parlé
ellos/ellas/ustedes habrán hablado	eles/elas/vocês terão falado	loro/Loro avranno parlato	ils/elles auront parlé
		<i>Essere</i>	<i>Être</i>
		io sarò partito(-a)	je serai parti(-e)
		tu sarai partito(-a)	tu seras parti(-e)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
		lui/lei/Lei sarà partito(-a)	il/elle sera parti(-e)
		noi saremo partiti(-e)	nous serons parti(-e)s
		voi sarete partiti(-e)	vous serez parti(-e)s
		loro/Loro saranno partiti(-e)	ils/elles seront parti(-e)s

Observe the example:

Sp. Cuando ella llegue, yo **habré partido**;

Port. quando ela chegar, eu **tereí partido**;

It. Quando lei arriverà, **sarò partito**;

Fr. Quand elle arrivera, je **serai parti**.

- *I will have already left when she arrives.*

Use of the Future Perfect Tense

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French the future perfect tense is used:

- To express a future action that will have been completed before another action in the future:

Sp. Mañana a las nueve, **habrán llegado** a Buenos Aires;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Port. Amanhã às nove horas, eles **terão chegado** em Buenos Aires;

It. Domani alle nove, **saranno arrivati** a Buenos Aires;

Fr. Demain à neuf heures, ils **seront arrivés** à Buenos Aires.

- *Tomorrow at nine o'clock, they **will have arrived** in Buenos Aires.*

Sp. **Habremos terminado** el trabajo para enero;

Port. **Teremos terminado** o trabalho em janeiro;

It. **Avremo terminato** il lavoro per gennaio;

Fr. Nous **aurons fini** le travail pour janvier.

- *We **will have finished** the work by January.*

- Like the future tense, the future perfect is also used to express probability in the Romance languages. However, it is used in this way with all verbs (See Use of the Future Tense p.361).



Did you know?

Monaco is a French-speaking micro-state in Western Europe. It is surrounded by France on 3 sides while the other side borders the Mediterranean Sea. The most famous Casino de Monte-Carlo was opened in Monaco 155 years ago, in 1863.

Sp. Ella **habrá salido** de Madrid;

Port. Ela **terá deixado** Madrid;

It. lei **avrà lasciato** Madrid;

Fr. Elle **sera partie de** Madrid.

- *She **must have left** Madrid.*

Special Use of the Future Perfect

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Like the future tense, the future perfect tense can also be used after certain conjunctions with the future or future perfect in the main clause in Romance languages. Note that in Portuguese the subjunctive future can be used here as well.

The following are the most common conjunctions that are usually used in the future perfect tense in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
después (de) que	depois que	dopo che (dopoché)	après que	<i>after</i>
cuando	quando	quando	quand	<i>when</i>
luego que, apenas	logo que, apenas	come, appena	dès que, aussitôt que	<i>as soon as, scarcely</i>

Study the following:

Sp. **Después de haber comprado** un billete de avión, volará a Italia;

(**Después de que comprará** un billete de avión, volará a Italia).

Port. **Depois que ele terá comprado** (or **comprar**) um bilhete de avião, ele voará para a Itália;

(**Depois que ele comprará** (or **comprar**) um bilhete de avião, ele voará para a Itália).

It. **Dopo che avrà comprato** un biglietto aereo, volerà in Italia;

(**Dopo che comprerà** un biglietto aereo, volerà in Italia).

Fr. **Après qu'il aura acheté** un billet d'avion, il volera en Italie;

(**Après qu'il achètera** un billet d'avion, il volera en Italie).

- *After he has bought an plane ticket, he'll fly to Italy.*

The Conditional Tense

Overview

Like in English, in the Romance languages the conditional tense is generally used to express what *would* happen in the future, which means that it refers to possible and hypothetical situations.

Formation of the Present Conditional



Did you know?

Honduras is a Central American nation with the Caribbean Sea coastline to the north and the Pacific Ocean to the south. The term "Honduras" literally means Great Depths in Spanish. When Christopher Columbus discovered the country, he exclaimed: "Thank God we have departed from those great depths" (Gracias a Dios que hemos salido de esas Honduras).

The present conditional is formed by adding the appropriate endings to the future stem of the verb in the Romance languages. It should also be noted that the endings are similar to those of the imperfect tense in Spanish, Portuguese and French. However, Italian has different endings, which requires more attention while memorizing them.

Below is the table displaying the endings of the present conditional tense in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1 st , 2 nd and 3 rd person singular	-ía, -ías, -ía,	-ia, -ias, -ia,	-ei, -esti, -ebbe,	-ais, -ais, -ait,
1 st , 2 nd and 3 rd person plural	-íamos, -íais, -ían;	-íamos, -íeis, -iam;	-emmo, -este, -ebbero;	-ions, -iez, -aient;

The following is the table showing the example of conjugation of regular verbs in the present conditional tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
hablar	falar	parlare	parler
yo hablar ía	eu falar ia	io parlerei	je parler ais
tú hablar ías	tu falar ias	tu parler esti	tu parler ais
él\ella\usted hablar ía	ele\ela\você falar ia	lui\lei\Lei parlere bbe	il\elle parler ait
nosotros\as hablar íamos	nós falar íamos	noi parler emmo	nous parler ions
vosotros\as hablar íais	vós falar íeis	voi parler este	vous parler iez
ellos\ellas\ustedes hablar ían	eles\elas\vocês falar iam	loro\ Loro parlere bbbero	ils\elles parler aient



NOTE:

In Italian verbs that end in **-ciare** and **-giare** drop the **i** get **-ce** and **-ge** respectively in the present conditional root. Also, verbs ending in **-care** and **-gare** add an **h** in order to preserve the sound of the **c** and **g**, and therefore get **-che** and **-ghe**.

Irregular Verbs in the Conditional

The very verbs that are irregular in the future are also irregular in the conditional in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, which definitely makes it easier to learn and memorize them.

The following is a table presenting some irregular verbs in the conditional tense, which are common for all or several Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
ser (regular)	ser (regular)	essere (sarei, saresti, sarebbe, saremmo, sareste, sarebbero)	être (serais, serais, serait, serions, seriez, seraient)
estar (regular)	estar (regular)	stare (starei, staresti, starebbe, staremmo, stareste, starebbero)	—
haber (habría, habrías, habría, habríamos, habríais, habrían)	haver (regular)	avere (avrei, avresti, avrebbe, avremmo, avreste, avrebbero)	avoir (aurais, aurait, aurions, auriez, auraient)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
tener (tendría, tendrías, tendría, tendríamos, tendríais, tendrían)	ter (regular)	tenere (terrei, terresti, terrebbe, terremmo, terreste, terrebbero)	tenir (tiendrais, tiendrais, tiendrait, tiendrions, tiendriez, tiendraient)
hacer (haría, harías, haría, haríamos, haríais, harían)	fazer (faria, farias, faria, fariamos, fariéis, fariam)	fare (farei, faresti, farebbe, faremmo, fareste, farebbero)	faire (ferais, ferais, ferait, ferions, feriez, feraient)
venir (vendría, vendrías, vendría, vendríamos, vendríais, vendrían)	vir (regular)	venire (verrei, verresti, verrebbe, verremmo, verreste, verrebbero)	venir (viendrais, viendrais, viendrait, viendrions, viendriez, viendraient)
saber (sabría, sabrías, sabría, sabríamos, sabríais, sabrían)	saber (regular)	sapere (saprei, sapresti, saprebbe, sapremmo, sapreste, saprebbero)	savoir (saurais, saurais, saurait, saurions, sauriez, sauraient)
ver (regular)	ver (regular)	vedere (vedrei, vedresti, vedrebbe, vedremmo, vedreste, vedrebbero)	voir (verrais, verrais, verrait, verrions, verriez, verraient)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
morir (regular)	morrer (regular)	morire (morrei, morresti, morrebbe, morremmo, morreste, morrebbero)	mourir (mourrais, mourrais, mourrait, mourrions, mourriez, mourraient)
dar (regular)	dar (regular)	dare (darei, daresti, darebbe, daremmo, dareste, darebbero)	donner (regular)
decir (diría, dirías, diría, diríamos, diríais, dirían)	dizer (diria, dirias, diria, diríamos, diríeis, diriam)	dire (regular)	dire (regular)
querer (querría, querrías, querría, querríamos, querríais, querrían)	querer (regular)	volere (vorrei, vorresti, vorrebbe, vorremmo, vorreste, vorrebbero)	vouloir (voudrais, voudrais, voudrait, voudrions, voudriez, voudraient)
deber (regular)	dever (regular)	dovere (dovrei, dovresti, dovrebbe, dovremmo, dovreste, dovrebbero)	devoir (devrais, devrais, devrait, devrions, devriez, devraient)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
poder (podría, podrías, podría, podríamos, podrías, podrían)	poder (regular)	potere (potrei, potresti, potrebbe, potremmo, potreste, potrebbero)	pouvoir (pourrais, pourrais, pourrait, pourrions, pourriez, pourraient)
ir (regular)	ir (regular)	andare (andrei, andresti, andrebbe, andremmo, andreste, andrebbero)	aller (irais, irais, irait, irions, iriez, iraient)

Irregularities in Formation the Conditional in French

French has a number of verbs that have irregular stems in the conditional. Some of them are the same as in the future tense.

Infinitive	Conditional
acheter (to buy)	j'achèterais
appeler (to call)	j'appellerais
employer (to employ)	j'emploierais
envoyer (to send)	j'enverrais
 falloir (to need)	il faudrait
recevoir (to receive)	je recevrais
valoir (to value)	je vaudrais
apercevoir (to notice)	j'apercevrais

décevoir (to disappoint)	je décevrais
courir (to run)	je courrais

Use of the Conditional Tense

In the Romance languages the conditional is used:

- **To express and describe an action that would happen if it were not for some other circumstances.** It is expressed by *would* in English (See Conditional Clauses p.383):

Sp. Si yo tuviera el tiempo, **iría** a Lisboa;

Port. Se eu tivesse o tempo, **iria** a Lisboa;

It. Se avessi tempo, **andrei** a Lisbona;

Fr. Si j'avais le temps, j'**irais** à Lisbonne.

- *If I had time, I **would** go to Lisbon.*

- **To express a polite request, desire or advice:**



Did you know?

Brasília, the federal capital of Brazil, was built in 41 months, from 1956 to April 21, 1960. The city was designed and developed by Lúcio Costa and Oscar Niemeyer, and is distinguished by its modernist architecture and artistic urban planning.

Sp. **Me gustaría** ir a Lisboa;

Port. **Gostaria de** ir para Lisboa;

It. **Vorrei** andare a Lisbona;

Fr. J'**aimerais** aller à Lisbonne.

- *I **would like** to go to Lisbon.*

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Sp. ¿**Podría** darme un vaso de agua?;
Port. **Poderia** me dar um copo de água?;
It. **Potrei** avere un bicchiere d'acqua?;
Fr. **Pourrais**-je avoir un verre d'eau?
- **Could** I have a glass of water?

- **To express a future action in indirect speech** when the main verb is in the past tense. In this case, the present conditional can be equivalent to a simple future in the past in English:

Sp. Ella dijo que **vendría**;
Port. Ela disse que **viria**;
It. lei ha detto che **verrebbe**;
Fr. Elle m'a dit qu'elle **viendrait**.
- *She told me that she **would** come.*



NOTE: In this use the imperfect tense of **ir** + **infinitive** is more common in Spanish. Study the following:

Sp. Ella dijo que **iba a venir**.

It should be remembered that if the verb in the main sentence is in the present tense, the future tense is used. Observe the following:

Sp. Ella dice que **vendrá**;
Port. Ela diz que **virá**;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

It. lei dice che **verrà**;

Fr. Elle dit qu'elle **viendra**.

- *She says that she **will come**.*

The Conditional Perfect Tense

Overview

Like in English, in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French the conditional tense expresses an action in the past that *would have* happened but did not because of another event.

Formation of the Conditional Perfect



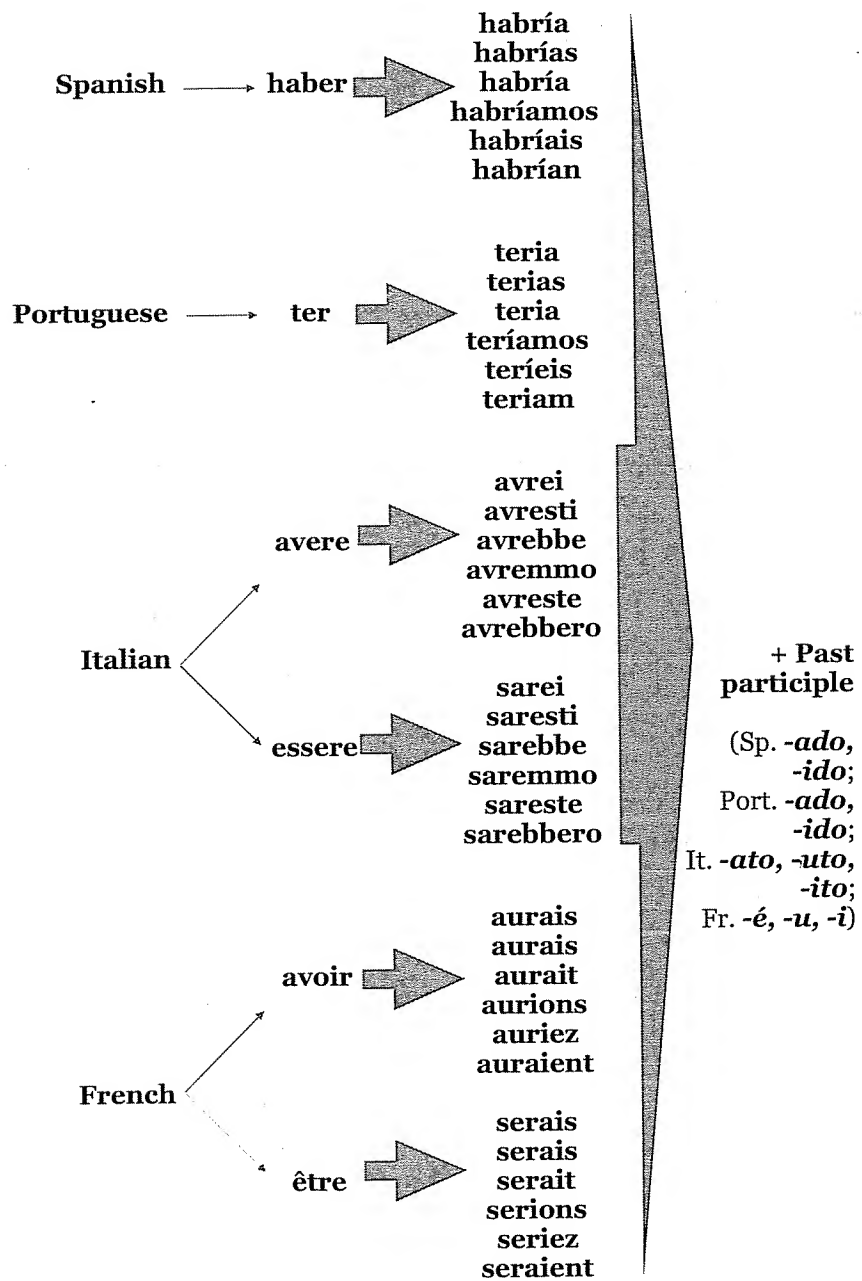
Did you know?

The Italian language is an officially recognized minority language in Croatia. It is spoken by around 7% of the population in Istria County. Native Italian speakers are mainly concentrated along the western coast of the Istrian peninsula.

The conditional perfect is formed by using the present conditional of the auxiliary verb (Sp. **haber**; Port. **ter**; It. **avere** or **essere**; Fr. **avoir** or **être**) and the past participle in the Romance languages.

The drawing below demonstrates the ways of forming the conditional perfect in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Conditional Perfect Formula



CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Below is the table demonstrating examples of verb conjugation in the conditional perfect tense:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
<i>Haber</i>	<i>Ter</i>	<i>Avere</i>	<i>Avoir</i>
yo habría hablado	eu teria falado	io avrei parlato	j' aurais parlé
tú habrías hablado	tu terias falado	tu avresti parlato	tu aurais parlé
él/ella/usted habría hablado	ele/ela/você teria falado	lui/lei/Lei avrebbe parlato	il/elle aurait parlé
nosotros(as) habríamos hablado	nós teríamos falado	noi avremmo parlato	nous aurions parlé
vosotros(as) habríais hablado	vós teríeis falado	voi avreste parlato	vous auriez parlé
ellos/ellas/ustedes habrían hablado	eles/elas/vocês teriam falado	loro/Loro avrebbero parlato	ils/elles auraient parlé
		<i>Essere</i>	<i>Être</i>
—	—	io sarei partito(-a)	je serais parti(-e)
—	—	tu saresti partito(-a)	tu serais parti(-e)
—	—	lui/lei/Lei sarebbe partito(-a)	il/elle serait parti(-e)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
—	—	noi saremmo partiti(-e)	nous serions parti(-e)s
—	—	voi sareste partiti(-e)	vous seriez parti(-e)s
—	—	loro/Loro sarebbero partiti(-e)	ils/elles seraient parti(-e)s

Use of the Conditional Perfect Tense

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French the conditional perfect tense is used:

- To express what would have happened if something else had not prevented it (See Conditional Clauses p. 383):

Sp. Si hubiéramos tenido tiempo, nos **habríamos ido** a Lisboa;

Port. Se tivéssemos tido tempo, **teríamos ido** a Lisboa;

It. Se avessimo avuto tempo, **saremmo andati** a Lisbona;

Fr. Si nous avions eu le temps, nous **serions allés** à Lisbonne.

- If we had had time, we **would have gone** to Lisbon.

Sp. Yo **habría comprado** este libro, si tenía dinero;

Port. Eu **teria comprado** este livro, se eu tivesse tido dinheiro;



Did you know?

The Republic of the Congo (or simply Congo) is a country in Central Africa with great rainforest reserves. The Nouabalé-Ndoki National Park is known as the world's "Last Eden". This region of swampy forest is home to western lowland gorillas, chimpanzees, bongo and forest elephants. In 2012, Unesco declared the Park a World Heritage Site.

It. **Avrei comprato** questo libro, se avessi avuto i soldi;

Fr. J'**aurais acheté** ce livre, si j'avais d'argent.

- **I would have bought** this book if I had had the money.

Conditional Clauses

A conditional clause refers to an event (often hypothetical), which may or may not happen in reality. Conditional sentences have two parts: the conditional or *if* clause, and the main clause, for instance: "*If you have time, we will go to the cinema*". In this sentence the conditional clause or *if* clause "*If you have time*" refers to a hypothetical event, the main clause "*we will go to the cinema*" shows what will happen if the condition of the *if* clause is met.

Normally, conditional clauses are introduced by *if* (Sp. **si**; Port. **se**; It. **se**; Fr. **si**) in the Romance languages.

Conditional clauses have a particular sequence of tenses that needs to be followed. However, the sequence of tenses slightly differs in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, which requires more attention while learning. There are three types of *if* clauses in the Romance languages.

1. Possible Condition

Below is the formation of the first type of *if* clause in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, which is **Possible Condition**:

If Clause	Main Clause
Sp. si ; Port. si ; It. se ; Fr. si + Present Indicative	Present Indicative or Future or Imperative

**NOTE:**

In this case in Portuguese **Future Subjunctive** (See **Future subjunctive p.435**) can also be used in the **if** clause.

The first type of the conditional clause is used to demonstrate that the condition is likely to be implemented and therefore the consequence is regarded as possible. Observe the following:

Sp. **Si tienes** hambre, **compra** algo para comer;

Port. **Se estás** (**você está**) com fome, **eu compro** algo para comer (**Se estiveres** (**você estiver**) com fome, **eu compro** algo para comer);

It. **Se hai** fame, **compro** qualcosa da mangiare;

Fr. **Si tu as** faim, **j'achète** quelque chose à manger.

- **If you're hungry, I'll buy something to eat.**

Sp. **Si él tiene** bastante tiempo, **irá** a América del Sur;

Port. **Se ele tem** bastante tempo, **ele irá** para a América do Sul (**Se ele tiver** bastante tempo, ele **irá** para a América do Sul);

It. **Se lui ha** abbastanza tempo, **andrà** in America del Sud;

Fr. **S'il a** assez de temps, **il ira** en Amérique du Sud.

- **If he has enough time, he will go to South America.**

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Sp. *Si sabes* dónde está, *dímelo*;

Port. *Se sabes* (*você sabe*) onde ele está, *diga-me* (*Se souberes* (*você souber*) onde ele está, *diga-me*);

It. *Se sai* dove lui sta, *dimmelo*;

Fr. *Si tu sais* où il est, *dis-le moi*.

- *If you know where he is, tell me!*

2. Impossible condition

The following is the formation of the second type of *if* clause in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, which is called **impossible condition**:

If Clause	Main Clause
Sp. <i>si</i> ; Port. <i>se</i> ; It. <i>se</i> ; Fr. <i>si</i> + <i>Imperfect Tense</i>	<i>Conditional Present</i>



NOTE:

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian **the Imperfect Subjunctive** is used in the *if* clause, whereas in French **the Imperfect Indicative** is used in this case.

It should be mentioned that in Portuguese **the Imperfect Indicative** can also be used in the main clause of the second type of conditional clause.

The second type of conditional clause is contrary to the reality of the present and so the consequence is considered to be impossible. For example:

Sp. *Si yo tuviera* bastante tiempo, *iría* a América del Sur;

Port. *Se eu tivesse* tempo suficiente, *eu iria* para a América do Sul (*Se eu tivesse* tempo suficiente, *eu ia* para a América do Sul);

It. *Se io avessi* abbastanza tempo, *andrei* in Sud America;

Fr. *Si j'avais* assez de temps, *j'irais* en Amérique du Sud.

- *If I had enough time, I would go to South America.*

3. Impossible condition in the past

The following is the formation of the third type of *if* clause in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, which is called **impossible condition in the past**:

If Clause	Main Clause
Sp. <i>si</i> ; Port. <i>se</i> ; It. <i>se</i> ; Fr. <i>si</i> + Pluperfect Tense	Past Conditional



NOTE:

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian **the Pluperfect Subjunctive** is used in the *if* clause, whereas in French **the Pluperfect Indicative** is used in this case.

It should be remembered that in Portuguese **the Pluperfect Indicative** can also be used in the main clause of the third type of conditional clause.

The third type of conditional clause is predominantly used for the situations that are contrary to the reality of the past. Therefore, it describes an unrealized past possibility. For instance:

Sp. *Si yo hubiera tenido* bastante tiempo, *habría ido* a América del Sur;

Port. **Se eu tivesse tido** tempo suficiente, eu **teria ido** para a América do Sul (Se **eu tivesse tido** tempo suficiente, **eu tinha ido** para a América do Sul);

It. **Se io avessi avuto** abbastanza tempo, **sarei andato** in Sud America;

Fr. **Si j'avais eu** assez de temps, **je serais allé** en Amérique du Sud.

- **If I had had** enough time, **I would have gone** to South America

The Subjunctive Mood

Overview



Did you know?

The Canary Islands (Las Islas Canarias) are a Spanish autonomous community made up of an archipelago of 7 islands situated on the Atlantic Ocean, about 100 kilometres (62 miles) west of Morocco. The Islands are home to a whistling language called "Silbo Gomero". It was developed on the island of La Gomera in order to communicate across valleys.

The subjunctive is one of the most difficult features of language for those who speak English, since the subjunctive is rarely used in English, whereas it is widely used in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

At first let's look at the difference between the indicative and subjunctive moods in the Romance languages. *The indicative mood* is used to express a truth, fact, probability or action which is not dependent on an opinion or condition, while *the subjunctive mood*

conveys desires, doubts, emotions or actions which are possible, uncertain, doubtful or unreal. Such ideas are dependent on an opinion or condition.

Basic Rules for Indicative and Subjunctive

The Indicative mood is

- generally used to talk about events, states or actions that are considered to be facts or true;
- quite common in speech to make real, accurate and factual statements or for describing evident qualities while referring to a situation or person.

The Subjunctive mood is

- generally used to talk about desires, doubts, emotions, the abstract and other unreal situations;
- commonly used in speech for making recommendations and expressing how particular things make you feel;
- widely used to express opinions concerning another action.

Study the following:

Indicative mood	Subjunctive mood
<p><i>Example 1</i></p> <p>Sp. Sé que ella viene; Port. Eu sei que ela chega; It. So che lei arriva; Fr. Je sais qu'elle arrive. - <i>I know that she is coming.</i></p>	<p><i>Example 1</i></p> <p>Sp. Dudo que ella venga; Port. Duvido que ela chegue; It. Dubito che arrivi; Fr. Je doute qu'elle arrive. - <i>I doubt that she is coming.</i></p>
<p><i>Example 2</i></p> <p>Sp. John va al cine; Port. John vai ao cinema; It. John va al cinema; Fr. John va au cinéma. - <i>John goes to the cinema.</i></p>	<p><i>Example 2</i></p> <p>Sp. Él quiere que John vaya al cine; Port. Ele quer que John vá ao cinema; It. Egli vuole che John vada al cinema; Fr. Il veut que John aille au cinéma. - <i>He wants John to go to the cinema.</i></p>

In the second example, it can be seen that even though he wants John to go to the cinema, it is uncertain whether John will fulfill his desire, and so the action is conveyed in the subjunctive. In this case, in English an infinitive is used (he wants John **to go** to the cinema).



NOTE:

It should be mentioned that the subjunctive mood has many of the same verb tenses as the indicative mood, but not all. Moreover, the number of tenses in the subjunctive mood differs among Romance languages. Subjunctive in Italian and French has four tenses, which are present subjunctive, present perfect subjunctive, past subjunctive and past perfect subjunctive, whereas Spanish and Portuguese possess six tenses, in addition to the mentioned above there are also the future subjunctive and future perfect subjunctive.

The Present Subjunctive

Formation of the Present Subjunctive

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian regular verbs form the present subjunctive by dropping the final **-o** of the 1st person singular of the present indicative and adding the appropriate personal ending to the root of a verb.



NOTE:

*However, in French the **-ent** ending from the 3rd person plural of the indicative is dropped before adding the endings in order to form the present subjunctive.*

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Below is a table demonstrating the endings of the present subjunctive in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1st conj.: -AR: -e, -es, -e, -emos, -éis, -en;	1st conj.: -AR: -e, -es, -e, -emos, -eis, -em;	1st conj.: -ARE: -i, -i, -i, -iamo, -iate, -ino;	1st, 2nd and 3rd conj.: -ER, -RE and -IR: -e, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent;
2nd and 3rd conj.: -ER and -IR: -a, -as, -a, -amos, -áis, -an;	2nd and 3rd conj.: -ER and -IR: -a, -as, -a, -amos, -ais, -am;	2nd and 3rd conj.: -ERE and -IRE: -a, -a, -a, -iamo, -iate, -ano;	

Below is the table displaying the examples of conjugation of regular verbs in the present subjunctive in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1 conjugation			
hablar	falar	parlare	parler
que yo hable	que eu fale	che io parli	que je parle
que tú hables	que tu fales	che tu parli	que tu parles
que él\ella\usted hable	que ele\ela\você fale	che lui\lei\Lei parli	qu'il\elle parle
que nosotros\as hablemos	que nós falemos	che noi parliamo	que nous parlions
que vosotros\as habléis	que vós faleis	che voi parliate	que vous parliez

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
que ellos\ellas\uste des hablen	que eles\elas\voc ês fale m	che loro\Loro parl ino	qu'ils\elles parl ent
2 conjugation			
vender	vender	vendere	vendre
que venda	que venda	che venda	que je vende
que vendas	que vendas	che venda	que tu vendes
que venda	que venda	che venda	qu'il\elle vende
que vendamos	que vendamos	che vendiamo	que nous vendions
que vendáis	que vendais	che vendiate	que vous vendiez
que vendan	que vendam	che vendano	qu'ils\elles vendent
3 conjugation			
partir	partir	partire	partir
que parta	que parta	che parta	que je parte
que partas	que partas	che parta	que tu partes
que parta	que parta	che parta	qu'il\elle parte
que partamos	que partamos	che partiamo	que nous partions
que partáis	que partais	che partiate	que vous partiez

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
que partan	que partam	che partano	qu'ils\elles partent

Irregular Verbs in the Present Subjunctive

Below is a table presenting irregular verbs in the present subjunctive, which are common for all or several Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
ser (sea, seas, sea, seamos, seáis, sean)	ser (seja, sejam, seja, sejam, sejais, sejam)	essere (sia, sia, sia, siamo, siate, siano)	être (sois, sois, soit, soyons, soyez, soient)
estar (esté, estés, esté, estén)	estar (esteja, estejam, estejam, estejam, estejam, estejam)	stare (stia, stia, stia, stiano)	—
haber (haya, haya, haya, hayamos, hayáis, hayan)	haver (haja, haja, haja, hajamos, hajais, hajam)	avere (abbia, abbia, abbia, abbiamo, abbiate, abbiano)	avoir (aie, aies, ait, ayons, ayez, aient)
tener (tenga, tenga, tenga, tengamos, tengáis, tengan)	ter (tenha, tenha, tenha, tenhamos, tenhamos, tenhamos)	tenere (tenga, tenga, tenga, tengano)	tenir (tienne, tiennes, tienne, tiennent)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
hacer (haga, hagas, haga, hagamos, hagáis, hagan)	fazer (faça, façás, faça, façamos, façais, façam)	fare (faccia, faccia, faccia, facciamo, facciate, facciano)	faire (fasse, fasses, fasse, fassions, fassiez, fassent)
venir (venga, vengas, venga, vengamos, vengáis, vengan)	vir (venha, venhas, venha, venhamos, venhais, venham)	venire (venga, venga, venga, vengano)	venir (viene, viennent, vienne, viennent)
saber (sepa, sepa, sepa, sepamos, sepáis, sepan)	saber (saiba, saiba, saiba, saibamos, saibais, saibam)	sapere (sappia, sappia, sappia, sappiamo, sappiate, sappiano)	savoir (sache, sache, sache, sachions, sachiez, sachent)
ver (vea, veas, vea, veamos, veáis, vean)	ver (veja, veja, veja, vejamos, vejais, vejam)	vedere (vegga (veda), vegga (veda), vegga (veda), veggano (vedano))	voir (voie, voies, voie, voyions, voyiez, voient)
morir (muera, muera, muera, muramos, muráis, mueran)	morrer (regular)	morire (muoia, muoia, muoiano)	mourir (meure, meures, meure, meurent)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
dar (dé, des, de, demos deis, den)	dar (dê, dês, dê, demos, deis, dêem)	dare (dia, dia, dia, diano)	donner (regular)
decir (diga, digas, diga, digamos, digáis, digan)	dizer (diga, digas, diga, digamos, digais, digam)	dire (dica, dica, dica, diciamo, diciat e, dicano)	dire (dise, dises, dise, disions, disiez, disent)
querer (quiera, quieras, quiera, queramos, quieran)	querer (queira, queiras, queira, queiramos, queirais, queiram)	volere (voglia, voglia, voglia, vogliamo, vogliate, vogliano)	vouloir (veuille, veuilles, veuille, veullent)
deber (regular)	dever (regular)	dovere (debba (deva), debba (deva), debba (deva), dobbiamo, dobbiare, debbano (devano))	devoir (doive, doives, doive, doivent)
poder (pueda, puedas, pueda, podamos, puedan)	poder (possa, possas, possa, possamos, possais, possam)	potere (possa, possa, possa, possiamo, possiate, possano)	pouvoir (puisse, puisses, puisse, puissions, puissiez, puissent)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
ir (vaya, vayas, vaya, vayamos, vayáis, vayan)	ir (vá, vás, vá, vamos, vades, vão)	andare (vada, vada, vada, vadano)	aller (aille, ailles, aille, aillent)

Use of the Present Subjunctive

As it has been explained before, the present subjunctive is used in clauses following verbs which designate desires, doubts, emotions, feelings, requests, uncertainty, necessity, etc. in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. The subjunctive verb is usually introduced by Sp. **que**, Port. **que**, It. **che**, Fr. **que**.

The present subjunctive is commonly used after the following verbs and expressions in the Romance languages:

1. Verbs expressing wishing, desire or preference:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
querer que	querer que	volere che	vouloir que	<i>to want</i>
desear que	desejar que	desiderar e che	desirer que	<i>to wish, to desire</i>
preferir que	preferir que	preferire che	préférer que	<i>to prefer</i>
—	—	augurare che	souhaiter que	<i>to wish</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
esperar que	esperar que	sperare che	espérer que (indicative)	to hope
sugerir que	sugerir que	suggerire che	suggérer que (proposer)	to suggest
ojalá (que)	—	—	—	if only



NOTE:

French **espérer** is followed by the indicative.

Study the following examples:



Did you know?

Belo Horizonte (Beautiful Horizon) is the capital of the state of Minas Gerais. It is the first planned modern metropolis in Brazil. It was planned and built in the 1890s. Belo Horizonte also has chic resorts, skyscrapers, spacious parks and a tropical climate.

Sp. **Quiero que** ella **venga**;

Port. Eu **quero que** ela **venha**;

It. **Voglio che** lei **venga**;

Fr. Je **veux qu'elle vienne**.

- I want her to come.

Sp. **Espero que puedas** venir mañana;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Port. ***Eu espero que possas*** (você ***possa***) vir amanhã;

It. ***Spero che tu possa*** venire domani;

Fr. ***J'espère que tu peux*** venir demain.

- *I hope you can come tomorrow.*

Sp. ***Ojalá (que)***

Sp. ***ojalá*** comes from Arabic saying “*Oh, Allah!*” and was probably used in prayers. Nowadays, this expression means “*I hope...*” or “*if only...*” and is used with the subjunctive and pronoun ***que***, which is placed right after Sp. ***ojalá***. However, this expression can be used without pronoun ***que***. Observe the following:

Sp. ***¡Ojalá que veas*** a tu padre!

- *I hope you see your father!*

Sp. ***¡Ojalá él sepa!***

- *If only he knew!*



NOTE:

*In Portuguese, Italian and French such expression does not exist. The possible equivalents of these expressions are Port. ***Quem dera***; It. ***Spero*** (or ***Se solo/soltanto***); Fr. ***J'espère*** (or ***Si seulement***) - *I hope or if only*. Observe the following:*

Port. ***Quem dera*** ele soubesse!

It. ***Se soltanto*** sapesse!

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Fr. *Si seulement il savait!*

- *If only he knew!*

2. Verbs of denial:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
negar que	negar que	negare che	nier que	<i>to deny</i>

Sp. *Niegan que* nos **conozcan**;

Port. Eles **negam que** eles nos **conheçam**;

It. *Negano che* ci **conoscano**;

Fr. Ils **nient qu'**ils nous **connaissent**.

- *They deny that they know us.*

3. Verbs of doubt:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
dudar que	duvidar que	dubitare che	douter que	<i>to doubt</i>

Sp. *Dudo que* ella lo **sepa**;

Port. *Duvido que* ela o **saiba**;

It. *Dubito che* lei lo **sappia**;

Fr. Je **doute qu'**elle le **sache**.

- *I doubt that she knows.*

4. Verbs which express emotions and feelings:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
estar contento que	estar contente que	essere contento che	être content que	<i>to be glad that</i>
estar feliz que	estar feliz que	essere felice che	être heureux que	<i>to be happy that</i>
estar enojado que	estar com raiva que	essere arrabbiato che	être fâché que	<i>to be angry that</i>
estar triste que	estar triste que	essere triste che	être triste que	<i>to be sad that</i>
lamentar que	lamentar que	essere spiacente che	être désolé que	<i>to be sorry that</i>
estar orgullos o que	estar orgulhoso que	essere orgoglioso che	être fier que	<i>to be proud that</i>
estar sorprend ido que	estar sorpreso que	essere sorpreso che	être surpris que	<i>to be surprise d that</i>
estar furioso que	estar furioso que	essere furioso che	être furieux que	<i>to be furious that</i>
tener miedo que	ter medo que	avere paura che	avoir peur que	<i>to be afraid that</i>
—	—	—	avoir crainte que	<i>to be afraid that</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
temer que	temer que	temere che	craindre que	to fear that
lamentar que	lamentar que	lamentare che	regretter que	to be sorry that
enojarse que	ficar com raiva que	arrabbiarsi i che	se fâcher que	to get angry
regocijar se que	regozijar- se que	gioire che	se réjouir que	to rejoice, to be delighted

Sp. *Estoy feliz que estés aquí;*

Port. *Estou feliz que estejas* (você *esteja*) aqui;

It. *Sono felice che tu sia* qui;

Fr. *Je suis heureux que tu sois* ici.

- I am happy that you are here.



Did you know?

Padua (It. Padova) is a city in Northern Italy. The University of Padua, one of the oldest universities in Italy, was founded in 1222. It established the first anatomy hall in Europe in 1594. Galileo Galilei was a lecturer at the university (1592-1610).

Sp. *Estoy sorprendido que te guste* esta canción;

Port. *Estou surpreso que gostes* (você *goste*) dessa canção.

It. *Sono sorpreso che ti piaccia* questa canzone;

Fr. *Je suis surpris que tu aimes* cette chanson.

- I am surprised that you like this song.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Sp. ***Estamos tristes que dejes*** el trabajo;

Port. ***Estamos tristes que deixes*** (você ***deixe***) o trabalho;

It. ***Siamo tristi che tu lasci*** il lavoro;

Fr. ***Nous sommes tristes que tu quittes*** le travail.

- *We are sad that you are leaving the work.*

5. Verbs expressing commands or requirements:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
comandar que	comandar que	comandar e che	command er que	to command
exigir que	exigir que	esigere che	exiger que	to demand
ordenar que	ordenar que	ordinare che	ordonner que	to order
requerir que	requerer que	richieder e che	requérir que	to require

Sp. Ella ***exige que*** usted ***venga*** a tiempo mañana;

Port. Ela ***exige que*** o senhor ***venha*** a tempo amanhã;

It. Lei ***esige che*** Lei ***venga*** a tempo domani;

Fr. Elle ***exige que*** vous ***veniez*** à temps demain.

- *She demands that you be on time tomorrow.*

6. Verbs demonstrating permission or refusal of permission:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
permitir que	permitir que	permettere che	permettre que	to permit
consentir que	consentir que	consentire che	consentir que	to consent
prohibir que	proibir que	proibire che	interdire que	to forbid
requerir que	requerer que	impedire che	empêcher que	to prevent

Sp. Ella **permite que** él **vaya** allí;

Port. Ela **permite que** ele **vá** para lá;

It. Lei **permette che** lui ci **vada**;

Fr. Elle **permet qu'il y aille**.

- She permits him to go there.

Sp. Te **prohíbo que hagas** eso;

Port. Eu **proíbo que faças** (você **faça**) isso;

It. Ti **proibisco che tu faccia** questo;

Fr. J'**interdis que tu fasses** cela.

- I forbid you to do that.

7. Impersonal expressions that convey opinion or emotions:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
es tiempo que	é tempo que	è tempo che	il est temps que	<i>it is time that/for</i>
es mejor que	é melhor que	è meglio che	il vaut (vaudrait) mieux que	<i>it is better that/for</i>
es preferible que	é preferível que	è preferibile che	il est préférable que	<i>it is better that/for</i>
es necesario que	é necessário que	è necessario che	il est nécessaire que	<i>it is necessary that</i>
hace falta que	faz falta que	bisogna che	il faut (faudrait) que	<i>it is necessary that</i>
es importante que	é importante que	è importante che	il est important que	<i>it is important that</i>
importa que	importa que	importa che	il importe que	<i>it is important that</i>
es esencial que	é essencial que	è essenziale che	il est essentiel que	<i>it is essential that</i>
es justo que	é justo que	è giusto che	il est juste que	<i>it is right that</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
es suficient e que	é suficiente que	è sufficient e che	il suffit que	it is enough that
es indispens able que	é indispens ável que	è indispens abile che	il est indispens able que	it is indispens able that
es convenie nte que	é convenie nte que	è convenie nte che	il est convenab le que	it is proper that
conviene que	convém que	conviene che	il convient que	it is fitting that
es posible que	é possível que	è possibile che	il est possible que	it is possible that/for
puede que	se pode que	si può che	il se peut que	it is possible that/for
es imposibl e que	é impossí- vel que	è impossi- bile che	il est impossi- ble que	it is impossibl e that/for
es útil que	é útil que	è utile che	il est utile que	it is useful that/for
es inútil que	é inútil que	è inutile che	il est inutile que	it is useless that/for

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
es dudoso que	é duvidoso que	è dubbio che (si dubita che)	il est douteux que	<i>it is doubtful that</i>
es poco probable que	é pouco provável que	è poco probabile che	il est peu probable que	<i>it is unlikely that</i>
no es cierto que	não é certo que	non è certo che	il n'est pas certain que	<i>it is uncertain that</i>
es afortunado que	é afortunado que	è fortunato che	il est heureux que	<i>it is fortunate that</i>
es bueno que	é bom que	è bene che	il est bon que	<i>it is good that</i>
es una lastima que	é uma pena que	è un peccato che	c'est (il est) dommage que	<i>it is a pity that</i>
parece que	parece que	sembra che	il semble que	<i>it seems that</i>
es vergonzoso que	é vergonhoso que	è vergognoso che	il est honteux que	<i>it is shameful that</i>
es triste que	é triste que	è triste che	il est triste que	<i>it is sad that</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
es sorprendente que (sorprende que)	é surpreendente que (surpreende que)	è sorprendente che (sorprende che)	il est surprenant que (il surprend que)	it is surprising that
es asombroso que	é espantoso que	è stupefaciente che	il est étonnant que	it is astounding that
es urgente que	é urgente que	è urgente che	il est urgent que	it is urgent that

Sp. *Es necesario que estudies;*

Port. *É necessário que estudes* (você *estude*);

It. *È necessario che tu studi;*

Fr. *Il est nécessaire que tu étudies.*

- *It is necessary that you to study.*

Sp. *Es posible que ella me llame hoy;*

Port. *É possível que ela me chame hoje;*

It. *È possibile che mi chiami oggi;*

Fr. *Il est possible qu'elle m'appelle aujourd'hui.*

- *It is possible that she will call me today.*

Sp. *Es una lástima que él esté enfermo;*

Port. *É uma pena que ele esteja doente;*

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

It. *È un peccato che* lui *sia* malato;
 Fr. *Il est dommage qu'il soit* malade.
 - *It is a pity that he is ill.*

Sp. *Es triste que partan* tan temprano;
 Port. *É triste que* eles *partam* tão cedo;
 It. *È triste che partano* così presto;
 Fr. *Il est triste qu'ils partent* si tôt.
 - *It is sad that they are leaving so early.*

Use of the Present Indicative instead of Subjunctive

The present indicative is normally used with the verbs and expressions that involve certainty in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

The following is a list of the most common verbs and expressions that are used in the present indicative:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
pensar que	pensar que	pensare che	penser que	<i>to think</i>
creer que	acreditar que	credere che	croire que	<i>to believe</i>
es cierto que	é certo que	è certo che	il est certain que	<i>it is certain that</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
es seguro que	é seguro que	è sicuro che	il est sûr que	it is sure that
es probable que	é provável que	è probabile che	il est probable que	it is probable that
es evidente que	é evidente que	è evidente che	il est évident que	it is evident that
es exacto que	é exato que	è esatto che	il est exact que	it is correct that
es claro que	é claro que	è chiaro che	il est clair que	it is clear that
es verdad que	é verdade que	è vero che	il est vrai que	it is true that

Sp. *Pienso que vienen;*

Port. Eu *penso que eles vêm;*

It. *Penso che vengono;*

Fr. Je *pense qu'ils viennent.*

- *I think they are coming.*



Did you know?

Corsica (Fr. *Corse*) is a French mountainous island in the Mediterranean Sea. Corsica was sold to France in 1768. A year later, in 1769, Napoleon Bonaparte was born in the Corsican capital of Ajaccio. Today, his home "Maison Bonaparte" is used as a museum.

Sp. ***Es verdad que él sabe nadar;***

Port. ***É verdade que ele sabe nadar;***

It. ***È vero che lui sa nuotare;***

Fr. ***Il est vrai qu'il sait nager.***

- *It is true that he can swim.*

However, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French forms of the above expressions are used in the subjunctive for the negative and interrogative, since uncertainty is expressed:

Sp. ***No creo que vengan;***

Port. ***Eu não acredito que eles venham;***

It. ***Non credo che vengano;***

Fr. ***Je ne crois pas qu'ils viennent.***

- *I don't believe they are coming.*

Sp. ***No es cierto que él sepa nadar;***

Port. ***Não é certo que ele saiba nadar;***

It. ***Non è certo che lui sappia nuotare;***

Fr. ***Il n'est pas certain qu'il sache nager.***

- *It is not certain that he can swim.*

Subjunctive with Subordinate Conjunctions

The following is a list of conjunctions that require the subjunctive in the Romance languages:

1. Conjunctions of time:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
antes que	antes que	prima che	avant que	<i>before</i>
después que	depois que	dopo che	<u>après que</u> (indicative)	<i>after</i>
luego que, así que,	logo que, assim que,	non appena che	<u>aussitôt que</u> (indicative)	<i>as soon as</i>
mientras que	enquanto	mentre che	<u>pendant que</u> (indicative)	<i>while</i>
cuando	quando	quando	<u>quand</u> (indicative)	<i>when</i>
hasta que	até que	finché (fino a quando)	en attendant que (jusqu'à ce que)	<i>until</i>



NOTE:

In French ***après que***, ***aussitôt que***, ***pendant que*** and ***quand*** always take the indicative.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Sp. Hablaremos **antes que** ella **salga**;

Port. Falaremos **antes que** ela **saia**;

It. Parleremo **prima che** lei **esca**;

Fr. Nous parlerons **avant qu'elle sorte**.

- *We will talk before she leaves.*

2. Conjunctions of cause or negation:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
no que	não que	non che; (nonché)	non que	not that
sin que	sem que	senza che	sans que	without

Sp. Él partió **sin que** yo le **hable**;

Port. Ele partiu **sem que** eu lhe **falasse**;

It. Lui è partito **senza que** io le **parlassi**;

Fr. Il est parti **sans que** je lui **parle**.

- *He left without me speaking to him.*



NOTE:

In Portuguese and Italian the Imperfect Subjunctive Port. **falasse** (not the Present Subjunctive **fale**) and It. **parlassi** (the Present Subjunctive **parli**) should be used in the above example.

3. Conjunctions of purpose:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a fin de que	a fim de que	affinché	afin que	in order that, so that
para que	para que	perché	pour que	in order that, so that
de manera que, de forma que, de modo que	de maneira que, de forma que, de modo que	in maniera che, in forma che, in modo che	de manière que, de façon que, de sorte que	so that
por miedo que	por medo que	per paura che	de crainte que, de peur que	for fear that

Sp. Lo decimos **para que** tu **sepas**;

Euro. Port. Nós o dizemos **para que** tu **saibas** (Braz. Port. você **saiba**);

It. Lo diciamo **perché** tu lo **sappia**;

Fr. Nous le disons **pour que** tu le **saches**;

- We say it so that you know it.



NOTE:

However, in certain cases, Sp. **de manera que, de forma que, de modo que**; Port. **de maneira que, de forma que, de modo que**; It. **in maniera che, in**

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

forma che, in modo che; Fr. de manière que, de façon que, de sorte que are followed by the indicative, especially when the result is an implemented and supposedly irrevocable fact or action.

In this case, these expressions can be translated in English as **so**. For example:

Sp. Llegué temprano **de modo que** nadie me **vio**;

Port. Eu vim cedo **de modo que** ninguém me **viu**;

It. Sono venuto presto **in modo che** nessuno mi **ha visto**;

Fr. Je suis venu tôt **de façon que** personne ne m'**a vu**.

- I came early (in a way) so (that) nobody saw me.

4. Conjunctions of concession:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
	se			
aunque	embora, mais que	benché, quantunque, sebbene	bien que, quoique, encore que	although, though
a pesar de que	apesar de	malgrado che	malgré que	despite that

Sp. **Aunque** yo **esté** muy ocupado, voy a llamarte;

Port. **Embora** eu **esteja** muito ocupado, vou te telefonar (vou telefonar para você);

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

It. **Benché** io **sia** molto impegnato, ti telefonerò.

Fr. **Bien que** je **sois** très occupé, je vais te téléphoner.

- *Although I am very busy, I will call you.*

5. Conjunctions of condition:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
con la (a) condición de que	com a (na) condição de que	a condizione che	à condition que	on the condition that
en caso de que	em caso de que	in caso che	en cas que	in the case that
siempre que, (con tal (de) que	contanto que	purché	pourvu que	provided that
supuesto que	suposto que	supposto che, posto che	supposé que	supposing that
a menos que	a menos que	a meno che (non)	à moins que	unless
sea que...sea que	seja que...seja que	sia che... sia che	soit que... soit que	whether... or

Sp. Voy a dar un paseo **con la condición de que haga** buen tiempo;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Port. Vou dar um passeio **com a condição de que** o tempo **esteja** bom;

It. Sto per fare una passeggiata **a condizione che faccia** bel tempo;

Fr. Je vais faire un tour **à condition qu'il fasse** beau.

- I will go for a walk on the condition that the weather is good.



NOTE:

In French the negative particle **ne** is normally used after **à moins que, avant que, de peur que, de crainte que, de manière que, de sorte que** when the verb in the dependent clause is affirmative. **Ne...pas** is used if the verb is negative. For instance:

Fr. J'irai au marché **à moins qu'il ne** fasse mauvais.

- I will go to the market unless the weather is bad.

Fr. Je viens plus tôt **de crainte qu'il ne** m'attende **pas**.

- I come early for fear that he will not wait for me.

The following conjunction does not take the subjunctive in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
porque	porque	perché	parce que	because

Indirect Commands in Romance languages

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

The present subjunctive may be used in indirect commands, which are quite common for stating a wish or hope that something will occur. They are normally used to refer to a third person.

The following is the formula to form indirect commands in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Sp. Port. Fr. <i>Que</i> , It. <i>Che</i> + <i>Present Subjunctive</i>

Study the following:

Sp. ***Que*** ella ***trabaje***!

Port. ***Que*** ela ***trabalhe***!

It. ***Che*** lei ***lavori***!

Fr. ***Qu'elle*** ***travaille***!

- *Let her work!*

Subjunctive after Affirmation in Romance Languages

The subjunctive is used with the following expression of affirmation in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
que yo sepa	que eu saiba	che io sappia	que je sache	as far as I know

Observe the following:

Sp. Nadie lo sabe, ***que yo sepa***;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Port. Ninguém o sabe, **que eu saiba**;

It. Nessuno lo sa, **che io sappia**;

Fr. Personne ne le sait, **que je sache**.

- *No one knows **as far as I know**.*

Subjunctive in Relative Clauses

The subjunctive is usually used in relative clauses when the antecedent is indefinite, meaning a noun or pronoun that represents somebody or something that is not yet found or identified. The indicative is used when the antecedent is definite. Compare the following:



Did you know?

Mexico City is the oldest capital in the Americas. The city was built on an island of Lake Texcoco by the Aztecs in 1325. Its original name in the local indigenous language was Tenochtitlan or México-Tenochtitlan. In 1585 it was officially named as Ciudad de México (Mexico City).

Sp. **Conocemos** un hombre que **puede** viajar con nosotros;

Port. **Conhecemos** um homem que **pode** viajar conosco;

It. **Conosciamo** un uomo che **può** viaggiare con noi;

Fr. Nous **connaissons** un homme qui **peut** voyager avec nous.

- *We know a man who can travel with us.*

Sp. **Buscamos** un hombre que **pueda** viajar con nosotros;

Port. **Procuramos** um homem que **possa** viajar conosco;

It. **Cerchiamo** un uomo che **possa** viaggiare con noi;

Fr. Nous **cherchons** un homme qui **puisse** voyager avec nous.

- *We are looking for a man who can travel with us.*

Subjunctive with the Superlative and It. **solo**, **unico**; Fr. **seul**, **unique**

The present subjunctive is also used in a relative clause after a superlative expression and after It. **solo**, **unico**; Fr. **seul**, **unique** that are preceded by the appropriate definite article when these expressions express judgment or exaggeration. For instance:

It. È **il miglior film che** io **conosca**;

Fr. C'est **le meilleur film que** je **connaisse**.

- *It is the best film that I know.*

It. Egli è **l'unico studente che studi** bene;

Fr. Il est **le seul étudiant qui étudie** bien.

- *He is the only student who studies well.*



NOTE:

Unlike in French and Italian, in Spanish and Portuguese, the present indicative is used in a relative clause after a superlative expression and after Sp. **único**, **solo**; Port. **único**, **só**. For instance:

Sp. Es **la mejor película que** yo **conozco**;

Port. É **o melhor filme que** eu **conheço**;

- *It is the best film that I know.*

Sp. Él es **el único estudiante que estudia** bien;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Port. Ele é **o único aluno que estuda** bem;

- *He is the only student who studies well.*

Subjunctive with Indefinite Words

The subjunctive is also used after the following indefinite words in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
por más...que por mucho... que	por mais...que	comunque ...che	si... qué	however
de cualquier modo (manera) que	de qualquer modo (maneira) que	in qualche modo che	de quelque manière que	however
lo que sea que...	o que quer que...	checcché...	quoi que ce soit...	whatever
cualquier ...que, cual- quiera que sea... que	qualquer ...que, qualquer que seja... que, seja qual(s) for...que	qualunque ...ché	quelque (s)...que, quel que soit...que	whatever / whichever (with a noun)
cualquier a que...	quem quer que...	chiunque ..., chicche- ssia...	qui que ce soit...	whoever

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
donde quiera que...	onde quer que...	ovunque ..., dovunque ...	où que...	wherever

Sp. *Cualquiera que sea* el libro *que leas*, debes terminarlo;

Port. *Qualquer que seja* o livro *que leias* (Braz. Port. você *leia*), debes (Braz. Port. você deve) terminá-lo;

It. *Qualunque* libro *che* tu *legga*, devi finirlo;

Fr. *Quel que soit* le livre *que* tu *lises*, tu dois le finir.

- *Whichever book you read, you must finish it.*

Sp. *Cualquiera que* lo *diga*, no lo creería;

Port. *Quem quer que* o *diga*, não o acredita (Braz. Port. não o acredite);

It. *Chiunque* lo *dica*, non crederci;

Fr. *Qui que ce soit qui* te le *dise*, ne le crois pas.

- *Whoever says it, do not believe him.*

The Present Perfect Subjunctive

Formation of the Present Perfect Subjunctive



Did you know?

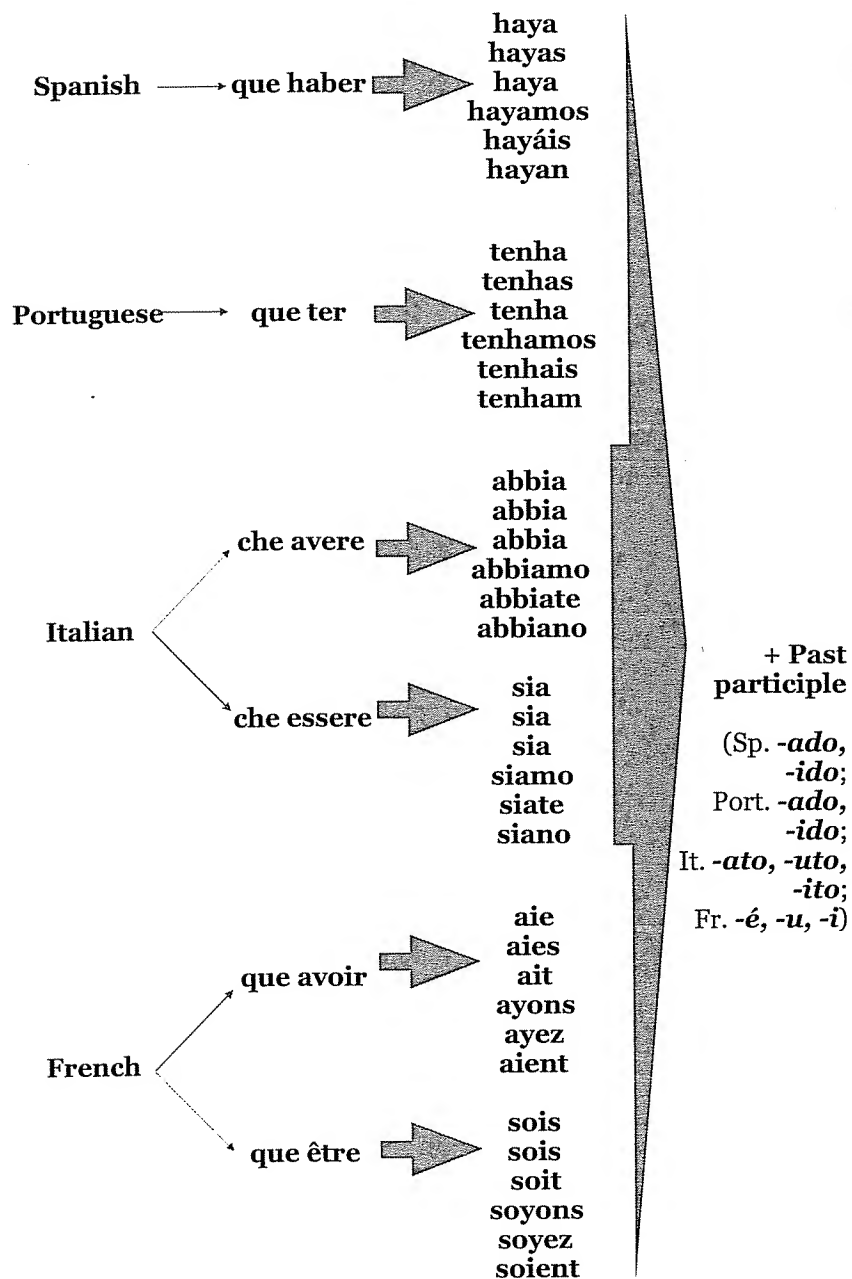
Madeira is a Portuguese autonomous archipelago of 4 islands located in the north Atlantic Ocean, southwest of Portugal. The capital of Madeira is Funchal. The Madeira islands have the largest fireworks show for New Year celebrations in the world. It was officially recognized by Guinness World Records in 2006.

The present perfect subjunctive in the Romance languages is formed by using the present subjunctive of the auxiliary verb (Sp. **haber**, Port. **ter**, It. **avere** or **essere**, Fr. **avoir** or **être**) and the past participle.

The drawing below demonstrates the ways of forming the present perfect subjunctive in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Present Perfect Subjunctive Formula



CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Below is the table that illustrates the example of verb conjugation in the present perfect subjunctive in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
<i>Haber</i>	<i>Ter</i>	<i>Avere</i>	<i>Avoir</i>
que yo haya hablado	que eu tenha falado	che io abbia parlato	que j`aie parlé
que tú hayas hablado	que tu tenhas falado	che tu abbia parlato	que tu aies parlé
que él/ella/ usted haya hablado	que ele/ela/ você tenha falado	che lui/lei/ Lei abbia parlato	que il/elle ait parlé
que nosotros(as) hayamos hablado	que nós tenhamos falado	che noi abbiamo parlato	que nous ayons parlé
que vosotros(as) hayáis hablado	que vós tenhais falado	che voi abbiate parlato	que vous ayez parlé
que ellos/ellas/ ustedes hayan hablado	que eles/ elas/ vocês tenham falado	che loro/Loro abbiano parlato	que ils/elles aient parlé
—	—	<i>Essere</i>	<i>Être</i>
—	—	che io sia partito (-a)	que je sois parti(-e)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
—	—	che tu sia partito (-a)	que tu sois parti(-e)
—	—	che lui/lei/ Lei sia partito (-a)	que il/elle soit parti(-e)
—	—	che noi siamo partiti(-e)	que nous soyons parti(-e)s
—	—	che voi siate partiti(-e)	que vous soyez parti (-e)s
—	—	che loro/Loro siano partiti(-e)	que ils/elles soient parti(-e)s

Use of the Present Perfect Subjunctive



Did you know?

Until 1934 Italian was the official language of Malta. Even though Italian has since been replaced by English as the official language, today, 68% of the Maltese population speaks Italian, and 10% of the population use it in everyday conversations.

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French the present perfect subjunctive is used:

- when a present indicative or future verb in a main clause governs a verb that requires the subjunctive which refers to a past action in a dependent clause, for example:

Sp. **Estoy feliz que hayas venido;**

Port. **Estou feliz que tenhas (você tenha) vindo;**

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

It. *Sono felice che tu sia venuto;*

Fr. *Je suis heureux que tu sois venu.*

- *I am happy that you came.*

Sp. *Estoy triste que ella me haya dejado;*

Port. *Estou triste que ela tenha me deixado;*

It. *Sono triste che lei mi abbia lasciato;*

Fr. *Je suis triste qu'elle m'ait laissé.*

- *I am sad that she left me.*

The Imperfect Subjunctive

Formation of the Imperfect Subjunctive

In Spanish and Portuguese the imperfect subjunctive is formed by dropping the Sp. **-ron** and Port. **-ram** of the 3rd person plural of the preterite and adding the proper ending. It is important to remember that the diacritic marks must be put above the stressed vowel in the 1st person plural, which is right before the attached ending of the imperfect subjunctive in Spanish and Portuguese (e.g. Sp. que trabajáramos; Port. que trabalhássemos - *that we work*).

In Italian and French the imperfect subjunctive is formed by dropping the Fr. **-s** and It. **-sti** of the 2nd person singular of the preterite tense (Fr. *le passé simple*; It. *il passato remoto*) and adding the appropriate endings. In French the diacritic mark must be put above the stressed vowel in the 3rd person singular, which is also before the attached ending of the imperfect subjunctive (e.g. que travaillât - *that he works*). However, Italian does not have any diacritical marks in the imperfect subjunctive.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

The following is a table demonstrating the endings of the imperfect subjunctive in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1st variant -ra, -ras, -ra, -ramos, -rais, -ran; 2nd variant -se, -ses, -se, -semos, -seis, -sen;	-sse, -sses, - sse, -ssemos, - sseis, -ssem;	-ssi, -ssi, -sse, -ssimo, -ste, - ssero;	-sse, -sses, -t, -ssions, -ssiez, -ssent;



NOTE:

In Spanish there are two variants of conjugation for the imperfect subjunctive. The 1st variant is generally used in speech in Spain and Latin America, whereas the 2nd variant is used predominantly in written language and in the country of Spain.

Below is the table illustrating the example of conjugation of regular verbs of all conjugations in the imperfect subjunctive:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1 conjugation			
Sp.: hablar	Port.: falar	It.: parlare	Fr.: parler

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish		Portuguese	Italian	French
		se		
1st variant: que yo hablara	2nd variant: que yo hablase	que eu falasse	che io parlassi	que je parlasse
que tu hablaras	que tu hablastes	que tu falasses	che tu parlassi	que tu parlasses
que el, ella hablara	que el, ella hablase	que ele\ela falasse	che lui\lei parlasse	que il\elle parlât
que nosotros\as habláramos	que nosotros\as hablásemos	que nos falássemos	che noi parlassimo	que nous parlussions
que vosotros\as hablarais	que vosotros\as hablaseis	que vos falásseis	che voi parlaste	que vous parlassiez
que ellos\ellas hablaran	que ellos\ellas hablasen	que eles\elas falassem	che loro parlassero	que ils\elles parlaient
2 conjugation				
vender		vender	vendere	vendre
que vendiera	que vendiese	que vendesse	che vendessi	que vendisse
que vendieras	que vendieses	que vendesses	che vendessi	que vendisses
que vendiera	que vendiese	que vendesse	che vendesse	que vendît

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish		Portuguese	Italian	French
		se		
que vendie- ramos	que vendie- semos	que vend- êssemos	che vende- ssimo	que vendi- ssions
que vendierais	que vendieseis	que vend- êsseis	che vendeste	que vendissiez
que vendieran	que vendiesen	que vende- ssem	che vende- ssero	que vendi- ssent
3 conjugation				
partir		partir	partire	partir
que partiera	que partiese	que partisse	che partissi	que partisse
que partieras	que partieses	que partisses	che partissi	que partisses
que partiera	que partiese	que partisse	che partisse	que partît
que partié- ramos	que partie- semos	que part- íssemos	che parti- ssimo	que parti- ssions
que partierais	que partieseis	que partísseis	che partiste	que partissiez
que partieran	que partiesen	que partissem	che partissero	que partissent

Irregular Verbs in the Imperfect Subjunctive

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

All verbs that are considered to be irregular in the preterite are also irregular in the imperfect subjunctive in the Romance languages. (**See The Preterite p.287**)

Use of the Imperfect Subjunctive

In the Romance languages the imperfect subjunctive is used:

- in subordinate or dependent clauses when the verb in the main clause is in the preterite, imperfect indicative, present perfect or conditional. That is to say the imperfect subjunctive expresses emotions, doubts and etc. that occurred in the past. Study the following:



Did you know?

French is one of the prestige languages in Morocco. It is often used in international commerce, media, government and diplomacy. French is taught at all schools. 34% of Moroccans speak French fluently.

Sp. Yo **quería que** él **fuera** al hospital;

Port. Eu **queria que** ele **fosse** para o hospital;

It. **Volevo che** lui **andasse** in ospedale;

Fr. Je **voulais qu'il allât** à l'hôpital.

- *I wanted him to go to the hospital.*



NOTE:

In French the imperfect subjunctive is used only in written language. In spoken language, the present subjunctive normally replaces the imperfect subjunctive, for example:

*Fr. Je **voulais qu'il aille** à l'hôpital.*

The Pluperfect (Past Perfect) Subjunctive

Overview

The pluperfect subjunctive expresses a completed action that *had* happened before another action in the past in all the cases that the subjunctive would be used in the Romance languages.

It is worth saying that the pluperfect is usually used with conditional perfect independent clauses to show hypothetical situations.

Formation of The Pluperfect Subjunctive

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French the pluperfect subjunctive is formed by using the imperfect subjunctive of the verb Sp. **haber**, Port. **ter**, It. **avere** or **essere**, Fr. **avoir** or **être** with the past participle.



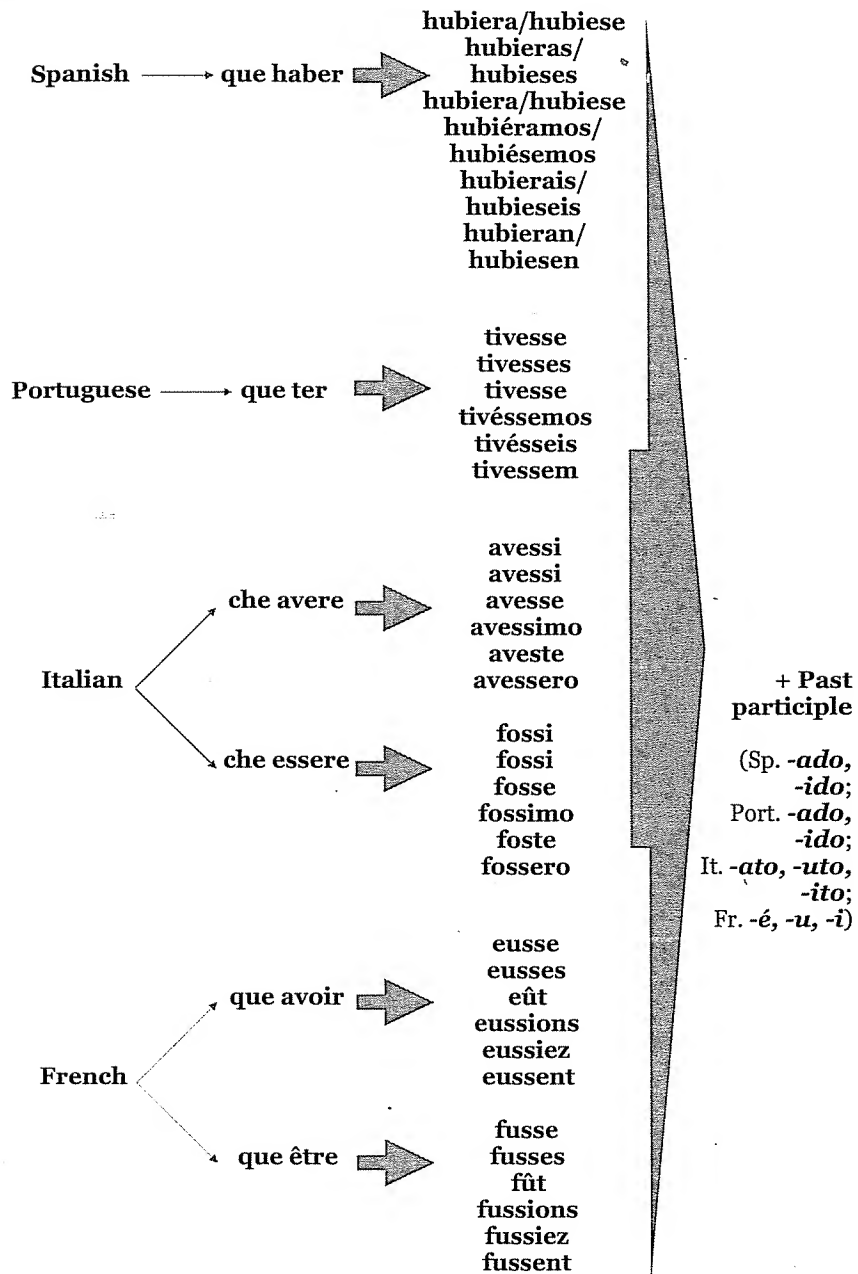
Did you know?

Ceuta is a Spanish autonomous city situated on the north coast of Africa. It is separated from the Spanish mainland by the Strait of Gibraltar and shares land boarder with the Kingdom of Morocco. It has a population of over 80 thousand.

The formula of the pluperfect subjunctive of the Romance languages is presented in the drawing below:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Pluperfect Subjunctive Formula



CHAPTER 6: VERBS



NOTE:

It should be remembered that in the pluperfect subjunctive as well as other compound tenses, the auxiliary verbs *It. essere*; *Fr. être* (to be) are also used with reflexive and intransitive verbs in Italian and French. Also, the past participle which is used with the auxiliary verb to be (*It. essere*, *Fr. être*) always agrees in gender and number with the subject. This means that the endings change in the feminine and plural forms the way they change in adjectives: in French *-e* is added to agree with the feminine and *-s-* is added for the plural, in Italian to agree with the feminine *-a* is used and *-i*, *-e-* with the masculine and feminine plurals respectively.

Below is the table demonstrating the example of conjugation of verbs in the pluperfect subjunctive:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Haber	Ter	Avere	Avoir
que yo hubiera/ hubiese hablado	que eu tivesse falado	che io avessi parlato	que j'eusse parlé
que tú/vos hubieras/ hubieses hablado	que tu tivesses falado	che tu avessi parlato	que tu eusses parlé

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
que él/ella/ usted hubiera/ hubiese hablado	que ele/ela/ você tivesse falado	che lui/lei/Lei avesse parlato	que il/elle eût parlé
que nosotros(as) hubiéramos/ hubiésemos hablado	que nós tivéssemos falado	che noi avessimo parlato	que nous eussions parlé
que vosotros(as) hubierais/ hubieseis hablado	que vós tivésseis falado	che voi aveste parlato	que vous eussiez parlé
que ellos/ ellas/ustedes hubieran/ hubiesen hablado	que eles/ elas/ vocês tivessem falado	che loro/Loro avessero parlato	que ils/elles eussent parlé
		Essere	Être
		che io fossi partito (-a)	que je fusse parti (-e)
		che tu fossi partito (-a)	que tu fusses parti(-e)
		che lui/lei/Lei fosse partito(-a)	que il/elle fût parti(-e)

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
		che noi fossimo partiti(-e)	que nous fussions parti(-e)s
		che voi foste partito(-a)s	que vous fussiez parti(-e)s
		che loro/Loro fossero partiti(-e)	que ils/elles fussent parti(-e)s

Use of the Pluperfect Subjunctive

In the Romance languages the pluperfect subjunctive is used:

- in completed actions that had happened before another action in the past where the pluperfect is used in clauses that require the subjunctive and the main verb is put in a past tense. Observe the following:



Did you know?

Luanda is the capital and biggest city in Angola. Its metropolitan population is over 6 million. It is the world's 3rd most populous Portuguese-speaking city (behind São Paulo and Rio de Janeiro), and the most populous Portuguese-speaking capital city in the world.

Sp. Ella **dudaba** que él **hubiera/hubiese dicho** eso;

Port. Ela **duvidava** que ele **tivesse dito** isso;

It. Lei **dubitava** che lui **avesse detto** questo;

Fr. Elle **doutait** qu'il **eût dit** cela.

- She doubted that he had said that.

Sp. *Parecía que* ella *hubiera/hubiese ido* a Brasil;

Port. *Parecia que* ela *tivesse* (or *tinha*) *ido* para o Brasil;

It. *Sembrava che* lei *fosse andata* in Brasile;

Fr. Il *semblait qu'elle fût allée* au Brésil.

- *It seemed that she had gone to Brazil.*



NOTE:

In French the pluperfect subjunctive is also used in written language. In conversation, the past subjunctive usually replaces the pluperfect subjunctive, for example:

Fr. Elle *a regretté qu'elle ait dit* cela.

- *She was sorry that she had said that.*

The Future Subjunctive in Spanish and Portuguese

Overview

The future subjunctive is only typical for Spanish and Portuguese. Italian and French do not have this tense. Unlike in Portuguese, the future subjunctive, however, is rarely used in modern Spanish, as it was historically used in complex sentences that require subjunctive clauses in order to express a hypothetical future action. Nevertheless the future subjunctive still appears in legal documents and literary contexts in Spanish, so it might be useful to know it.

Formation of the Future Subjunctive

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

The future subjunctive is formed similarly to the imperfect subjunctive by adding the appropriate endings to the stem of the 3rd person plural of the preterite without the Sp. **-ron** and Port. **-ram** at the end (e.g. Sp. **que trabajare**; Port. **que trabalhar** - that I work).

The following is the table illustrating the endings of the future subjunctive in Spanish and Portuguese:

	Spanish	Portuguese
<i>1st, 2nd and 3rd person singular</i>	-re, -res, -re,	-r, -res, -r,
<i>1st, 2nd and 3rd person plural</i>	-remos, -reis, -ren;	-rmos, -rdes, -rem;

The future subjunctive endings are the same for all the conjugations in Spanish and Portuguese.

There is the table showing the example of conjugation of verbs in the future subjunctive below:

Spanish	Portuguese
hablar	falar
yo hablare tu hablares el\ella hablare nosotros\as hablaremos vosotros\as hablareis ellos\ellas hablaren	eu falar tu falares ele\ela falar nos falarmos vos falardes eles\elas falarem

Irregular verbs in the Future Subjunctive

All verbs that are irregular in the 3rd person plural of the preterite are also irregular in the future subjunctive in Spanish and Portuguese. (See **The Preterite p.287**)

Use of The Future Subjunctive

In Spanish and Portuguese the future subjunctive is used:

- to indicate eventuality of a future action after words and expressions that refer to a future or uncertain action such as:



Did you know?

Siena is a city in Tuscany, Italy. It is famous for its art, museums, cuisine and the Palio - a horse race, which is held twice a year (on 2 July and 16 August).

Sp. **si**, Port. **se** (if),

Sp. **cuando**, Port. **quando** (when),

Sp. **luego que**, Port. **logo que** (after),

Sp. **así que**, Port. **assim que** (as soon as) and

Sp. **en cuanto**, Port. **enquanto** (as soon as) and etc.

For example:

Sp. Puedes venir, **si quisieres**.

Port. Podes (você pode) vir, **se quiseres**.

- You can come, **if you wish**.



NOTE:

Spanish and Portuguese future subjunctive is translated to the present indicative in English in this case.

The Future Perfect Subjunctive

Overview

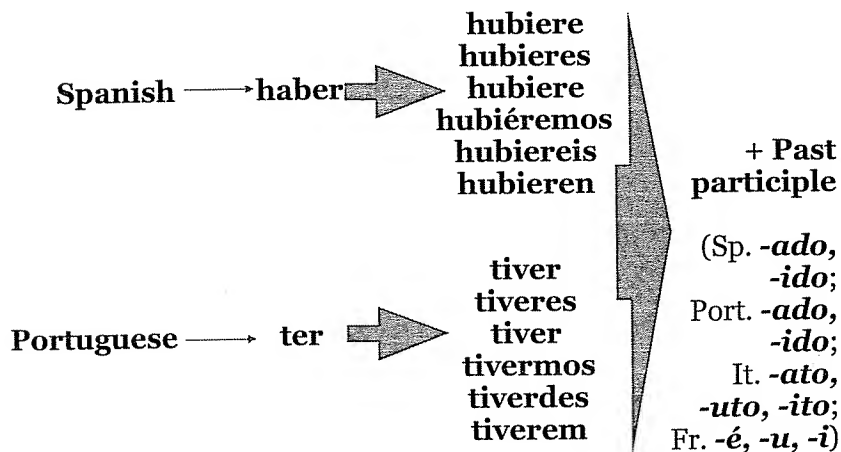
The future perfect subjunctive also exists only in Spanish and Portuguese and it is also rarely used in modern Spanish and may only be seen in legal documents and literary contexts. Generally it is used to express actions that *will have* happened in the future at a certain point in Spanish and Portuguese.

Formation of the Future Perfect Subjunctive

The future perfect subjunctive is formed by using the future subjunctive form of the verb Sp. **haber**, Port. **ter** and the *past participle*.

The drawing below shows the ways of forming the future perfect subjunctive in Spanish and Portuguese:

Future Perfect Subjunctive Formula



CHAPTER 6: VERBS

The following is the table that demonstrates the example of conjugation of verbs in the future perfect subjunctive:

Spanish	Portuguese
yo hubiere hablado	eu tiver falado
tú/vos hubieres hablado	tu tiveres falado
él/ella/usted hubiere hablado	êle/ela/você, o/a senhor(a) tiver falado
nosotros(as) hubiéremos hablado	nós tivermos falado
vosotros(as) hubiereis hablado	vós tiverdes falado
ellos/ellas/ustedes hubieren hablado	eles/elas/ vocês, os/as senhores(as) tiverem falado

Use of The Future Perfect Subjunctive

In Spanish and Portuguese the future subjunctive is used:

- to indicate a future action that will happen prior to another action also in the future. In Spanish and Portuguese the future subjunctive normally follows the words such as

Sp. **si**, Port. **se** (*if*),

Sp. **cuando**, Port. **quando** (*when*),

Sp. **luego que**, Port. **logo que** (*after*), and

Sp. **así que**, Port. **assim que** (*as soon as*), as well as other words and expressions that require the use of the subjunctive after them.



Did you know?

French Guiana is an overseas department of France, situated on the north Atlantic coast of South America. It borders Brazil and Suriname. French Guiana is home to the Guiana Space Centre (Fr. Le Centre Spatial Guyanais), which is a European spaceport.

However, in modern Spanish, the future perfect subjunctive is replaced by the past perfect subjunctive in most cases. Therefore, along with an example in which the future perfect subjunctive is used, there will be an example of sentence using the past perfect subjunctive as well in Spanish:

Sp. Cuando tenga 40 años, **hubiere comprado** una casa muy grande;

(Cuando tenga 40 años, **hubiera comprado** una casa muy grande).

Port. Quando eu tiver 40 anos, **tiver comprado** uma casa muito grande.

- When I am 40, I **will have bought** a very big house.



NOTE:

However, in Spanish and Portuguese, instead of using the future perfect subjunctive, the future perfect indicative is used in spoken language in this case. Observe the following:

Sp. Cuando tenga 40 años, **habré comprado** una casa muy grande;

(Cuando tenga 40 años, **habré comprado** una casa muy grande).

Port. Quando eu tiver 40 anos, **tereí comprado** uma casa muito grande.

- When I am 40, I **will have bought** a very big house.

Sp. Si yo **hubiere terminado** el trabajo cuando llegues, vamos

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
hagame el favor de + inf.	faça-me o favor de + inf.	mi faccia il favore di + inf.	faites-moi la faveur de + inf.	do me a favor
por favor	por favor	per favore; per piacere	s'il te plait; s'il vous plaît	please

juntos al teatro;

(Si yo **hubiera terminado** el trabajo cuando llegues, vamos
juntos al teatro).

Port. Se eu **tiver terminado** o trabalho quando chegares (você
chegar), vamos juntos ao teatro;

- *If I **have finished** my work by the time you come, we will go to
the theater together.*



NOTE:

*In this example the Spanish and Portuguese
future perfect subjunctive is normally
translated to the present perfect in English.*

The Sequence of Tenses with the Subjunctive

As there are fewer subjunctive tenses than indicatives in the Romance languages, it might be helpful to demonstrate the most common sequence of these subjunctive tenses with their indicative equivalents. However, it should be mentioned that it is as a common pattern in the sequence of tenses rather than a fixed rule since everything depends on contexts while conveying the correct meaning of a phrase.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

The following is a table that illustrates the common sequence of indicative tenses with their subjunctive counterparts in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Verbs in main clause		Subjunctive in subordinate clause
<i>present, future, perfect indicative</i>	➔	<i>present, perfect</i>
<i>preterite, imperfect, pluperfect indicative, conditional</i>	➔	<i>imperfect, pluperfect</i>
<i>command</i>	➔	<i>present</i>



NOTE:

Instead of the preterite, the Italian and French conversational past tense (it. passato prossimo; fr. passé composé) - **present perfect** is followed by the **imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive**.

Sp. *Estoy orgulloso que ella **haya** ganado;*

Port. *Estou orgulhoso que ela **tenha** ganhado;*

It. *Sono orgoglioso che lei **abbia** guadagnato;*

Fr. *Je suis fier qu'elle **ait** gagné.*

- I am proud that she won.

Sp. *Será útil que **haga** los ejercicios por las mañanas;*

Port. *Será útil que ele **faça** os exercícios da manhã;*

It. *Sarà utile che **faccia** gli esercizi la mattina;*

Fr. *Il sera utile qu'il fasse* les exercices le matin.

- *It will be useful for him to do exercises in the morning.*



Did you know?

Quito is the capital city of Ecuador. The popular tourist attraction La Mitad del Mundo (the middle of the world) is located 26 km north of the center of the city. The grounds contain the Monument to the Equator, marking the exact location of the Equator, and the Museo Etnográfico Mitad del Mundo (Ethnographic Museum Middle of the Earth).

Sp. Yo le **prohibí** que me **molestara**;

Port. Eu o **proibi** que ele me **incomodasse**;

It. L'**ho proibito** che mi **molestassi**;

Fr. Je lui **ai interdit** qu'il me **dérangeasse** (Je lui **ai interdit** qu'il me **dérange**)

- *I prohibited him to disturb me.*

The Imperative Mood

The imperative mood is usually used to express commands. The exclamation marks must be used in the imperative. The Romance languages have several categories of commands that include both affirmative and negative commands. They are: **informal commands**, **formal commands**, **let's commands** and **indirect commands**.

1. Informal Commands

Affirmative informal commands, are used to tell your friend, family member or child to do something. The singular form of the affirmative informal command, or Sp. **tú**, Port. **tu**, It. **tu**, Fr. **tu** command is identical with the 3rd person of the present indicative in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, whereas in French the 2nd person singular is used for all conjugations except for **-er** verbs where **s** is usually dropped from the 2nd person singular in

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

order to form the imperative. The plural form of the affirmative informal command (Sp. **vosotros**, Port. **vós**, It. **voi**, Fr. **vous**) is also formed differently in the Romance languages.



NOTE:

*To form Italian and French plural form of the affirmative informal command, or Sp. **vosotros**, Port. **vós**, It. **voi**, Fr. **vous** command we should use the 2nd person plural form of the present indicative. Whereas Spanish and Portuguese plural form is attained by replacing the Spanish and Portuguese final **-r** of the infinitive with **-d** in Spanish and **-i** in Portuguese, respectively. It should be noted that Spanish plural form of the affirmative informal command is used only in Spain.*

Observe the example of the singular and plural forms of the affirmative informal commands in the Romance languages:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
<i>Singular form of the informal command</i>	¡Habla! ¡Escribe!	Fala! Escreve!	Parla! Scrivi!	Parle! Écris!
<i>Plural form of the informal command</i>	¡Hablad! ¡Escribid!	Falai! Escrevei!	Parlate! Scrivete!	Parlez! Écrivez!

Informal Commands with Vos in Latin America

In some regions of Latin America where the Vos form is usually used (esp. in Argentina and Paraguay), one can notice that a singular, familiar imperative is formed by dropping the final **-d** from the **vosotros** form.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

While forming the imperative with *vos*, a written accent is put over the final vowel, except the verbs with one syllable in the imperative (e.g. ***¡da!*** - give!; ***¡ve!*** - see!). Observe the following:

Spanish		English
<i>Vos</i>	<i>Tú</i>	
¡Hablá!	¡Habla!	<i>Speak!</i>
¡Probá!	¡Prueba!	<i>Try!</i>
¡Escribé!	¡Escribe!	<i>Write!</i>
¡Tené!	¡Ten!	<i>Take!</i>
¡Volvé!	¡Vuelve!	<i>Return!</i>
¡Decí!	¡Di!	<i>Give!</i>
¡Dormí!	¡Duerme!	<i>Sleep!</i>
¡Viví!	¡Vive!	<i>Live!</i>
¡Seguí!	¡Sigue!	<i>Go on!</i>

2. Formal Commands

Formal commands, or Sp. **usted** (**ustedes**), Port. **você** (**vocês**), It. **Lei** (**Loro**), Fr. **vous** commands are usually used while addressing people you do not know very well, people older than you or people you show respect, such as teachers, bosses and etc.

Spanish and Portuguese singular form of the formal commands is formed by dropping the infinitive ending and adding **-e** to the **-ar** (1st conjugation) verbs and **-a** to the **-er** and **-ir** (2nd and 3rd conjugation) verbs and to form the plural form of the formal commands Spanish **-en** and Portuguese **-em** is added to the **-ar** verbs and **-an** in Spanish and **-am** in Portuguese to the **-er** and **-ir** verbs, respectively.

In Italian **-i** is added to the **-are** verbs and **-a** to the **-ere** and **-ire** verbs for singular form of the formal commands. Italian plural form of the formal commands is obtained by adding **-ino** to the **-are** verbs and **-ano** to the **-ere** and **-ire** verbs.



NOTE:

It should be noted that French has a similar

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

*form for the plural informal commands
and formal commands.*

Study the example of the singular and plural forms of the affirmative formal commands in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
<i>Singular form of the formal command</i>	¡Hable! ¡Escriba!	Fale! Escreva!	Parli! Scriva!	Parlez! Écrivez!
<i>Plural form of the formal command</i>	¡Hablen! ¡Escriban!	Falem! Escrevam!	Parlino! Scrivano!	Parlez! Écrivez!

3. Let's Commands

The let's commands, or Sp. **nosotros**, Port. **nós**, It. **noi**, Fr. **nous** commands are normally used when someone suggests an action to be fulfilled by a group of people.

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
<i>Let's commands</i>	¡Habl- emos! ¡Escr- ibamos!	Falemos! Escrev- amos!	Parliamo! Scriv- iamo!	Parlons! Écrivons!



NOTE:

In Italian and French such commands are formed by simply using the 2nd person plural of the present indicative. Whereas, in order to form the let's commands in

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

*Spanish and Portuguese, you must drop the infinitive ending and add **-emos** to the **-ar** (1st conjugation) verbs and **-amos** to the **-er** and **-ir** (2nd and 3rd conjugation) verbs, respectively.*

*In French the imperative forms of the verb **aller** are **va**, **allons** and **allez**. It should be remembered that **va** becomes **vas** and the familiar form of the imperative of the **-er** verbs adds **s** before such pronouns as **y** and **en**, for example: **Vas-y!** - Go there!; **Parles-en!** - Speak about it!*

Spanish and Portuguese Let's Commands with the Verb **Ir**

There is another way to form the let's commands in Spanish and Portuguese, which is by using the following construction:

Spanish	Portuguese
<i>ir + a + infinitive form</i>	<i>ir + infinitive form</i>

You must put the verb **ir** in the 2nd form plural of the present indicative in Spanish and Portuguese, for example:

Sp. ¡**Vamos a ver** la película!

Port. **Vamos ver** o filme!

- *Let's see the movie.*

4. Indirect Commands

Indirect commands are given to an unspecific recipient and are used in a general sense applying to all listeners (**See The**

Present Subjunctive: Indirect Commands in Romance languages p.415).



NOTE:

Spanish, however, has one more type of the indirect commands, which is Infinitive commands. Spanish infinitive commands are generally used in signs and instructions. In order to form the infinitive commands in Spanish, we must use the infinitive form of the verb. Observe the following:

*Sp. **Abrir** aquí.*

- Open here.

Irregular Imperative

There are several verbs that have completely irregular imperative forms in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Ser (tú) ¡ Sé! (nosotros) ¡ Seamos! (usted) ¡ Sea!	Ser (tu) Sê! (nós) Sejamos! (vós) Sede!	Essere (tu) Sii! (voi) Siate! (Lei) Sia! (Loro) Siano!	Être (tu) Sois! , (nous) Soyons! (vous) Soyez!
Estar (tú) ¡ Está! (usted) ¡ Estad!	Estar (tu) Está! (nós) Estejamos! (vós) Estai!	Stare (tu) Sta'! (voi) State! (Lei) Stia! (Loro) Stiano!	—

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Tener (tú) ¡Ten!	Ter (vós) Tende!	Tenere (regular)	Tenir (regular)
Hacer (tú) ¡Haz!	Fazer (nós) Façamos!	Fare (tu) Fa'! (Lei) Fai! (Loro) Facciano!	Faire (regular)
Venir (tú) ¡Ven!	Vir (vós) Vinde!	Venire (regular)	Venir (regular)
Saber (regular)	Saber (regular)	Sapere (tu) Sappi! (voi) Sappiate! (Lei) Sappia! (Loro) Sappiano!	Savoir (tu) Sache! (vous) Sachez!
Ver (regular)	Ver (nós) Vejamos! (vós) Vede!	Vedere (regular)	Voir (regular)
Dar (regular)	Dar (tu) Dá! (nós) Demos! (vós) Dai!	Dare (tu) Da'!	Donner (regular)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
Decir (tú) ¡Di! 	Dizer (tu) Diz! (nós) Digamos! (vós) Dizei!	Dire (tu) Di'!	Dire (regular)
Ir (tú) ¡Ve! 	Ir (tu) Vai! (nós) Vamos! (vós) Ide!	Andare (tu) Va'!	Aller (regular)

The Negative Imperative

Negative commands are formed differently in the Romance languages, except Spanish and Portuguese which have similar ways of forming negative commands.

Thus, Spanish and Portuguese negative commands should be regarded simultaneously while Italian and French - separately.



Did you know?

Dili is the capital, largest city and main port of East Timor (Port. Timor-Leste). One of the town's main landmarks is the Cristo Rei of Dili. It is a 27-metre (88.6 ft) tall statue of Jesus located on a hilltop east of the city. Most of landmarks in Dili represent the nation's struggle for independence from Portugal and Indonesia.

Spanish and Portuguese

In order to form Spanish and Portuguese negative commands, whether familiar or polite, one must place a negative word Sp. **no**; Port. **não** in front of the appropriate 2nd or 3rd person of the present subjunctive.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS



NOTE:

It should be mentioned that object pronouns usually precede the verb in negative commands in Spanish and Portuguese.

Sp. **No abras** el libro.

Port. **Não abras** o livro.

- *Do not open the book.*

Sp. **No parta** mañana.

Port. **Não parta** amanhã.

- *Do not leave tomorrow.*

Sp. **No lo digas**.

Port. **Não o diga**.

- *Do not say it.*

Italian

The negative singular forms of informal commands, or **tu** commands are formed by placing a negative word **non** before the infinitive in Italian. For example:

It. **Non aprire** il libro.

- *Do not open the book.*

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

The negative plural forms of informal commands, or **voi** command forms are formed by putting the negative word **non** in front of the affirmative **voi** form.

It. **Non partite** domani.

- *Do not leave tomorrow.*

The *let's not* commands are expressed by placing the negative word **non** before the command in Italian, for example:

It. **Non parliamo.**

- *Let's not talk.*

French

In French the negative commands are formed by placing **ne** or **n'** in front of the verb and **pas** after it, regardless whether the negative commands are informal or formal. Like in Spanish and Portuguese, in French object pronouns also precede the verb in negative commands. Observe the following:

Fr. **N'ouvre pas** le livre.

- *Do not open the book.*

Fr. **Ne partez pas** demain.

- *Do not leave tomorrow.*

Fr. **Ne le dis pas.**

- *Do not say it.*

Softened Commands in the Romance Languages

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French there special formulas that can be used to soften the commands to sound more polite.

Below are the most common patterns to use in polite speech:

Sp. **Hagame el favor de abrir** la ventana;

Port. **Faça-me o favor de abrir** a janela;

It. **Mi faccia il favore di aprire** la finestra;

Fr. **Faites-moi la faveur d'ouvrir** la fenêtre.

- Do me a favor - open the window.



Did you know?

Trieste is a city in northeast Italy, which occupies a narrow strip of land between the Adriatic Sea and Slovenia. Italian, Germanic and Slavic cultural influences are visible in its layout. The most iconic landmark of the city is Unity of Italy Square (It. Piazza Unità d'Italia). It is the main square in Trieste located between the 19th-century avenues and the old medieval city.

Sp. Cierra la puerta, **por favor**;

Port. Fecha a porta, **por favor**;

It. Chiudi la porta, **per favore**;

Fr. Ferme la porte, **s'il te plaît**.

- Close the door, please.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Alternatively softened commands can be expressed as questions in the Romance languages. For example:

Sp. *¿Me da un poco de agua?*

Port. *Você me dá um pouco de água?*

It. *Mi dai un po' d'acqua?*

Fr. *Vous me donnez un peu d'eau?*

- *Would you give me some water?*

The Present Participle (Gerund)

Overview

The present participles (gerunds) are used to indicate several continuous actions in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. Generally speaking the present participle (gerund) expresses the concept of “*while doing*”, “*in doing*” or “*by doing*” in the Romance languages.

The present participle (gerund) in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian ends in Sp. **-ando**, **-iendo**; Port. **-ando**, **-endo**, **-indo**; It. **-ando**, **-endo** and Fr. **-ant** in French, which is the equivalent to the English form of *-ing*.

It should be noted that nouns and adjectives that end in *-ing* in English cannot be expressed by a gerund in the Romance languages.

Formation of the Present Participle (Gerund)

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, the present participle (gerund) is formed by dropping the infinitive ending and adding **-ando** to the stem of **-ar** (it. **-are**) verbs and add Spanish **-iendo** to the stem of **-er** and **-ir** verbs and Italian **-endo** to the verb root

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

of **-ere** and **-ire** verbs. In Portuguese the ending **-endo** is added to stem of **-er** verbs and **-indo** to the stem of **-ir** verbs respectively.

Whereas, in French, the present participle is formed by dropping the ending **-ons** from the 1st person plural of the present tense and adding the present participle (gerund) ending **-ant** in all the conjugations.

Below is a table presenting how the present participle (gerund) is formed:

	<i>1st conj.</i>	<i>2nd conj.</i>	<i>3rd conj.</i>
Spanish	-ar; -ando (hablar – hablando)	-er; -iendo (vender – vendiendo)	-ir; -iendo (partir – partiendo)
Portuguese	-ar; -ando (falar – falando)	-er; -endo (vender – vendendo)	-ir; -indo (partir – partindo)
Italian	-are; -ando (parlare – parlando)	-ere; -endo (vendere – vendendo)	-ire; -endo (partire – partendo)
French	-er; -ant (parler – parlant)	-re; -ant (vendre – vendant)	-ir; -ant (partir – partant)

Irregularities in Formation of the Present Participle (Gerund) in Spanish and Italian

Unlike Portuguese and French, Spanish and Italian have a considerable number of irregularities in formation of the present participle (gerund), which should be remembered by learners.

Spanish

Unstressed *i* changes to *y*

In **-er** and **-ir** verbs the stem of which is ended in a vowel, for example: *cre-er*, *le-er*, *hu-ir*, *constru-ir*, **-iendo** changes to **-yendo** to form the present participle (gerund). Study the following:



Did you know?

La Paz is the de facto national capital and the 3rd most populous city in Bolivia. It is the highest administrative capital in the world situated at more than 3500 meters above sea level.

Creer: *creyendo* - believing;

Leer: *leyendo* - reading;

Huir: *huyendo* - fleeing;

Construir: *construyendo* - constructing.

Ir: *yendo* - going.

Orthographic changes

There are some verbs that change their stem before adding the present participle ending in order to preserve the pronunciation. **-ir** verbs that change their stem in the 3rd person preterite (*e - i*, *o - u*) will keep the same stem-change in the present participle (gerund) form in Spanish. The verb **poder** also maintains that preterite stem-change while forming the present participle (gerund). Observe the following:

Infinitive	Preterite (the 3 rd person)	Present Participle (Gerund)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

conseguir decir mentir pedir repetir seguir venir poder dormir morir	consiguió dijo mintió pidió repitió siguió vino pudo durmió murió	consiguiendo diciendo mintiendo pidiendo repitiendo siguiendo vinendo pudiendo durmiendo muriendo
---	--	--

Italian

In Italian, most verbs form the present participle (gerund) with the root of the 1st person singular (**io**) of the present indicative form without the personal ending.

Infinitive	Root (the 1st person)	Present Participle (Gerund)
bere dire fare tradurre	bev dic fac traduc	bevendo dicendo facendo traducendo

Use of Present Participle (Gerund)

Present participle (gerund) is generally used:

- **To indicate several ongoing actions:**

Present participles (Gerunds) can be used to express several continuous actions that occur at the same time in the Romance languages.



NOTE:

In French, in this case, the present participle (gerund) is used after the

preposition **en**.



Did you know?

Vanuatu is a Pacific island nation situated in the South Pacific Ocean. The official languages are Bislama, French and English. The city is home to the Vanuatu National Museum situated in the capital, Port Vila. It specializes in exhibits of the nation's Melanesian culture.

Sp. Ella leía el libro,
comiendo;

Port. Ela leu o livro,
comendo;

It. Lei ha letto il libro,
mangiando;

Fr. Elle a lu le livre, **en mangeant**.

- **While eating**, she read the book.

Sp. Me miró **sonriendo**;

Port. Ele olhou para mim **sorrindo**;

It. Mi guardò **sorridendo**;

Fr. Il me regarda **en souriant**.

- **He looked at me smiling**.

However, the French preposition **en** plus the present participle is not used after the verbs **commencer** and **finir**. The preposition **par** with the infinitive is normally used with these verbs (e.g. Elle **a fini par travailler** - *She finally started to work*; Il **a commencé par faire la cuisine** - *He began by cooking*.).

• **In place of a relative clause**

Present participles (Gerunds) are also used to modify or qualify a noun, in place of a relative clause in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS



NOTE:

In French, this usage is common in official language. In spoken language the relative clause is more likely to be used.

Sp. El hombre **cruzando** (que está cruzando) la calle es mi padre;

Port. O homem **cruzando** (que está cruzando) a rua é o meu pai;

It. L'uomo **attraversando** (che sta attraversando) la strada è mio padre;

Fr. Un homme **traversant** (qui est en train de traverser) la rue est mon père.

- The man **crossing** the street is my father.



NOTE:

This use of the present participle (gerund) is only possible in the case of action verbs. A relative clause must be used with other verbs in the Romance languages. Study the following:

Sp. un libro **que describe** la historia de su vida;

Port. um livro **que descreve** a história de sua vida;

It. un libro **che describe** la storia della sua vita;

Fr. un livre **qui décrit** l'histoire de sa vie.

- a book **that describes** the story of his life.

- To express the continuous tenses. (See The Continuous Tenses p.465).

No Use of Present Participle (Gerund)

There are some situations in which English uses words with -ing ending that cannot be expressed by a gerund in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

- **As a verbal noun**

The infinitive is used, rather than the gerund in order to form a verbal noun. Study the following:

Sp. Me gusta **nadar**;

Port. Eu gosto de **nadar**;

It. Mi piace **nuotare**;

Fr. J'aime **nager**.

- *I like **swimming**.*

- **As an adjective**

In English, the present participle (the -ing form) is used to express an adjective-like function (e.g. *a smiling girl*). In the Romance languages, the present participle (gerund) cannot be used to convey it. Instead, there is a number of ways to reflect this: Observe the following:

1. By adding the appropriate ending in order to make an adjective from some verbs. Thus, adjectives are formed by dropping the infinitive ending and adding the appropriate personal ending to the stem of a verb.

Below is a table showing the endings that transform some verbs into adjectives in the Romance languages:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1 st conj.	-ante	-ante	-ante	-ant(e)
2 nd conj.	-iente or - ente	-ente	-ente	
3 rd conj.				



NOTE:

*In this case, the present participle is used in French (See **The Present Participle p. 454**). Also, if the French present participle is used as an adjective, it agrees with the noun it modifies.*

*Sp. madre **sonriente**;*

*Port. mãe **sorridente**;*

*It. madre **sorridente**;*

*Fr. mère **souriante**.*

- smiling mother.

- By using the following prepositional phrase:

Sp. **de**, Port. **de**, It. **di**, Fr. **de** (**d'**) + **a noun** or **infinitive**.

*Sp. una clase **de equitación**;*

*Port. uma aula **de equitação**;*

*It. una lezione **di equitazione**;*

*Fr. une leçon **d'équitation**.*

- a riding lesson.

- **After prepositions**

With prepositions, the infinitive must be used rather than the present participle (gerund) in the Romance languages. (**See Use of The Infinitive p.469**).

How to Avoid Using the Present Participle (Gerund)

In order to avoid using the gerund one should use the following words to start the sentence in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
cuando	quando	quando	quand	<i>when</i>
mientras	enquanto	mentre	tandis que	<i>while</i>
pues (que), como	pois, como	poiché, siccome	puisque, comme	<i>since</i>
aunque, bien que	ainda que, se bem que, embora, mesmo que	sebbene, benché	même si, bien que	<i>although, even though</i>
no obstante	não obstante	nonostante	nonobstant	<i>notwithstanding</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a pesar de	apesar de	malgrado	malgré	<i>in spite of</i>



NOTE:

The majority of these words are followed by the subjunctive in the Romance languages. (See *The Subjunctive Mood* p.387).

Sp. **Cometiendo** errores, yo aprendo - **Cuando cometo** errores, yo aprendo;

Port. **Cometendo** erros, eu aprendo - **Quando** eu **cometo** erros, eu aprendo;

It. **Commettendo** errori, io imparo. - **Quando faccio** degli errori, imparo;

Fr. **En faisant** des erreurs, j'apprends - **Quand je fais** des erreurs, j'apprends.

- *By making mistakes, I learn; (When I make mistakes, I learn).*



Did you know?

Belém is the capital and the largest city of the state of Pará in Brazil. It is the gateway to the River Amazon. Belém is known as the City of Mango Trees (Port. Cidade das Mangueiras) owing to the great number of those trees all over the city.

Sp. Hablaban, **cocinando**. - **Mientras cocinaban**, hablaban;

Port. Falavam, **cozinhando**. - **Enquanto eles cozinhavam**, eles falavam;

It. Parlavano, **cucinando**. - **Mentre cucinavano**, parlavano;

Fr. Ils parlaient, **en cuisinant**. - **Tandis qu'ils**

cuisinaient, ils parlaient.

- **While** cooking, they talked.

The Compound Present Participle (Gerund) in Portuguese and Italian

The compound present participle (gerund) is particular only to Portuguese and Italian and doesn't exist in Spanish or French.

Formation of the Compound Present Participle (Gerund) in Portuguese and Italian

The Portuguese and Italian compound present participle (gerund) is formed with the present participle of the verbs Port. **ter**; It. **avere** or **essere** plus the past participle of the action verb.

Below is the formula of the compound present participle in Portuguese and Italian:

Portuguese	Italian
tendo + Past Participle	avendo or essendo + Past Participle
(tendo comido - having eaten)	(avendo mangiato - having eaten) (essendo stato - having been)

Use of the Compound Present Participle in Portuguese and Italian

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Like in English, in Portuguese and Italian the compound present participle is used to indicate contemporaneity of several actions where one action precedes another. Something also worth noting is that the compound present participle never follows a preposition. For example:

Port. **Tendo terminado** a carta, ela a levou para a estação de correios.

It. **Avendo terminato** la lettera, lei l'ha portata all'ufficio postale.

- **Having finished** the letter, she brought it to the post office.

The Continuous Tenses

Formation of Continuous Tenses

The progressive tenses show that the action of the verb is in the process of taking place in the Romance languages. In Spanish, Brazilian Portuguese and Italian, the continuous tenses are formed with the present participle (gerund) of the verb with an appropriate form of the verb Sp. **estar**; Port. **estar**; It. **stare**. In European Portuguese the following construction is preferred: **estar a + Infinitive**.

Whereas in French, there is only one combination used in order to express progressive tense, which is: the present tense of the verb **être** + **en train de + Infinitive**.



NOTE:

However, the French present simple along with the adverb **maintenant** (now) is frequently used in order to express the continuous action.

Sp. **Está trabajando;**

**Did you know?**

Rwanda is a landlocked state in Central and East Africa and one of the smallest countries in Africa. This country has a lot of lakes, the largest being Lake Kivu. It is one of the deepest lakes in the world with a depth of 480 meters.

Port. Ele **está trabalhando**;

It. **Sta lavorando**;

Fr. Il **est en train de travailler** (Il **travaille maintenant**).

- **He is working.**

The Romance languages have a different number of progressive tenses, except for French, which has only one progressive form (the present progressive). Nevertheless, in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian the continuous forms are most commonly used with the present indicative and the imperfect indicative, while the preterite, the present perfect, the past perfect, the pluperfect, the future, the present subjunctive, the imperfect subjunctive, and the conditional are rarely used.

Thus, regard the continuous constructions that demonstrate the present and imperfect indicative of the 1st person singular of the verb Sp. **trabajar**; Port. **trabalhar**; It. **lavorare**; Fr. **travailler** - to work.

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
<i>Present Continuous</i>	estoy trabajando (I am working)	estou trabalhando o (I am working)	sto lavorando (I am working)	je suis en train de travailler (I am working)
<i>Imperfect Continuous</i>	estaba trabajando (I was working at the moment)	estava trabalhando o (I was working at the moment)	stavo lavorando (I was working at the moment)	—

Use of Continuous Tenses

Like in English, in the Romance languages continuous tenses are normally used with action verbs in order to express that an action *is taking place*.

The Present Continuous

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French the present continuous is primarily used:

- **for an action that is taking place at the present moment.** For example:

Sp. ¿Qué ***estas haciendo?*** - ***Estoy comiendo;***

Braz. Port. O que você ***está fazendo?*** - Eu ***estou comendo***

(Euro. Port. O que você ***está a fazer?*** - Eu ***estou a comer***);

It. Che cosa ***stai facendo?*** - ***Sto mangiando;***

Fr. Qu'est-ce que tu ***fais maintenant?*** - Je ***suis en train de manger.***

- ***What are you doing?*** - ***I am eating.***

The Imperfect Continuous

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian this tense is used similarly as the present continuous, but referring to a past time.



NOTE:

In French, the present perfect or imperfect indicative is used in this case. Observe the following:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Sp. Cuando llegué **estaba leyendo**;
 Port. Quando cheguei ela **estava lendo**;
 It. Quando sono arrivato **stava leggendo**;
 Fr. Quand je suis arrivé elle **lisait**.
 - When I arrived she **was reading**.

The Infinitive

Overview

The Infinitive is the basic form of the verb in any language. In English, the infinitive is preceded by the preposition *to* (e.g. *to go, to speak, to do* etc.), while in the Romance languages, infinitives are separated into three conjugations according to their endings. In Spanish and Portuguese, infinitives have the following endings: **-AR**, **-ER**, and **-IR**; Italian infinitives are ended in **-ARE**, **-ERE**, and **-IRE** and French infinitive forms have the endings **-ER**, **-RE**, and **-IR**.

The infinitive forms show what an action is, but show nothing about who is doing the action or at what time the action is performed. In the Romance languages, in order to conjugate a verb, one needs to remove the infinitive ending and add the appropriate tense's ending to the stem of the verb.

Below is a table helping to find the stem from the infinitive of the regular verbs in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

	1st conj. (-AR, -ARE, -ER)		2nd conj. (-ER, -ERE, -RE)		3rd conj. (-IR, -IRE)	
	<i>Infinitive</i> <i>-ve</i>	<i>Stem</i>	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Stem</i>	<i>Infinitive</i> <i>-ve</i>	<i>Stem</i>
Spanish	hablar	habl-	vender	vend-	partir	part-

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Portugu ese	falar	fal-	vender	vend-	partir	part-
Italian	parlare	parl-	vendere	vend-	partire	part-
French	parler	parl-	vendre	vend-	partir	part-

Use of The Infinitive

The infinitive is generally used:

- **As a noun**

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, when a verb functions as a noun, the infinitive must be used, whereas in English the gerund (verb with *-ing* ending) is used in this case. In the Romance languages, the gerund is only used to express an action in progress. The infinitive can be used as the subject of a sentence or the object of another verb or preposition in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. Study the following:



Did you know?

Barranquilla is a city in Colombia located near the Caribbean Sea. Barranquilla is the largest city in the region, with a population of over 1.2 million people. It became Colombian's main port and, due to its high level of modernity, earned the city the nickname "Colombia's Golden Gate" (Sp. La Puerta de Oro de Colombia).

Sp. **Viajar** es alegre y educativo;

Port. **Viajar** é alegre e educacional;

It. **Viaggiare** è allegro ed educativo;

Fr. **Voyager** est allègre et éducatif.

- **Travelling** is enjoyable and educational.

Sp. A ella Le **gusta nadar**;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Port. Ela **gosta de nadar**;

It. Le **piace nuotare**;

Fr. Elle **aime nager**.

- *She likes swimming.*



NOTE: In Spanish one can use the definite article **el** in front of an infinitive as the subject of a sentence in order to make the sentence more formal, for example:

Sp. **El Viajar** es alegre y educativo

• After conjugated verbs without a preposition

If one verb follows another, the second verb takes the infinitive when the subject of the first verb is the same as that of the second in the Romance languages. It is common for the modal verbs (e.g. *can, should, must*), which are usually followed by an infinitive with no in-between preposition and also for verbs expressing feelings, necessity, and accomplishment in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. Observe the following:

Sp. **Puedo hablar** con él;

Port. Eu **posso falar** com ele;

It. **Posso parlare** con lui;

Fr. Je **peux parler** avec lui.

- *I can talk to him.*

Below is the list of the most common verbs which are followed by an infinitive without preposition in the Romance languages:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
deber	dever	dovere	devoir	<i>must, should</i>
poder	poder	potere	pouvoir	<i>to be able to, can</i>
saber	saber	sapere	savoir	<i>to know how to</i>
querer	querer	volere	vouloir	<i>to want to</i>
preferir	preferir	preferire	préférer	<i>to prefer to</i>
amar	amar	amare	aimer	<i>to love to</i>
desejar	desejar	desiderare	désirer	<i>to desire to</i>
lograr	alcançar	raggiungere	atteindre	<i>to manage to</i>
lamentar	lamentar	piangere	pleurer	<i>to regret</i>
pensar	pensar	* <u>pensare di</u>	penser	<i>to plan to, to intend to</i>
esperar	esperar	* <u>sperare di</u>	espérer	<i>to hope to, to expect to</i>
afirmar	afirmar	affermare	affirmer	<i>to affirm</i>
parecer	aparecer	apparire	apparaître	<i>to seem</i>



NOTE:

In Italian the verbs **pensare** and **sperare** are followed by the preposition **di**, which should be remembered.

• **After conjugated verbs with a preposition:**

In the Romance languages certain verbs are followed by prepositions and there is no common principal in terms of which prepositions follow which verbs, and therefore, this has to be memorized on a case-by-case basis. Nevertheless, there are a few generalizations that may help learners:

1. **Verbs followed by the preposition *a* (Spanish, Portuguese and Italian) and *à* (French) + *an infinitive*.**

Verbs meaning *beginning* and verbs that express preparation or readiness to perform an action or verbs of movement towards someplace or goal are usually followed by *a* (*à*) plus an infinitive in the Romance languages.

Below is the list of the most frequent verbs followed by *a* (*à*) + *infinitive* in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
ayudar a	ajudar a	aiutare a	aider à	to help to
aprender a	aprender a	apprendere a, imparare a	apprendre à	to learn how to
enseñar a	ensinar a	insegnare a	enseigner à	to teach how to
comenzar a, empezar a	começar a	cominciare a iniziare a	commencer à	to begin to, to start to
ponerse a	pôr-se a	mettersi a	se mettre à	to start to, to set about

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
invitar a	convidar a	invitare a	inviter à	to invite to
preparar se <u>para</u>	preparar -se a	preparar si a	se préparer à	to prepare to
dedicarse a	dedicar-se a	dedicarsi a	se consacrer à, se vouer à	to dedicate oneself to
decidirse a	decidir-se a	decidersi a	se décider à	to decide to, to make up one's mind
volver a	voltar a	tornare a	retourner à	to do something again
acostumb rarse a	acostum ar-se a	abituarsi a	s'habituer à	to become accustomed to
obligar a	obrigar a	obbligare a	obliger à	to oblige
<u>*dudar</u>	<u>*hesitar</u>	esitare a	hésiter à	to hesitate



NOTE:

In Spanish and Portuguese the verbs **dudar** and **hesitar** are used without any prepositions.

Sp. Ella **comenzó** (**empezó**) **a sonreír**;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Port. Ela **começou a sorrir**;

It. Ha **cominciato (iniziato) a sorridere**;

Fr. Elle **a commencé à sourire**.

- *She started to smile.*

Sp. **Aprendo a hablar** una lengua extranjera;

Port. Eu **aprendo a falar** uma língua estrangeira;

It. **Imparo a parlare** una lingua straniera;

Fr. J'**apprends à parler** une langue étrangère.

- *I learn how to speak a foreign language.*

2. Verbs followed by the preposition **de** (Spanish, Portuguese and French) and **di** (Italian) + **an infinitive**.

In the Romance languages, the preposition Sp., Port., Fr. **de** and It. **di** is used after verbs that indicate movement away from, like refraining from, which corresponds to English “from” + the gerund, and also used after verbs meaning “to stop” and “to finish”.

Below is the list of the most frequent verbs followed by **de** (**di**) + **infinitive** in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
	se			
acabar de	acabar de	—	venir de	<i>to have just done smth.</i>
acordarse de	lembrar-se de	ricordarsi di	se rappeler de	<i>to remember</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
alegrarse de	alegrar-se de	rallegrarsi di	se réjouir de	to be happy to
arrepentir se de	arrepender-se de	pentirsi di	se repentir de, regretter de	to regret, to repent of
cansarse de	cansar-se de	stancarsi di	se lasser de, se fatiguer de	to tire of, to grow tired of
dejar de, parar de, cesar de	deixar de, parar de, cessar de	smettere di, cessare di	arrêter de, cesser de	to stop doing smth.
depender de	depender de	dipendere da	dépendre de	to depend on
jactarse de	vangloriar -se de	vantarsi di	se vanter de	to boast of
olvidarse de	esquecer de	dimenticare di	oublier de	to forget
quejarse de	queixar-se de	lamentarsi di	se plaindre de	to complain of
terminar de	terminar de	finire di	finir de	to finish (doing smth.)
tratar de	<u>*tentar</u>	tentare di, cercare di	tenter de, essayer de	to try to

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
abstenerse de	abster-se de	astenersi da	se retenir de	to refrain from
disuadir de	dissuadir de	dissuadere da	dissuader de	to dissuade from
contemplar de	contemplar de	contemplare di	envisager de	to contemplate doing smth.



NOTE:

In Portuguese, the verb **tentar** is used without any prepositions.

In Italian, the meaning "having just done something" is conveyed by the word **appena** and the verb **finire** in the present perfect indicative (e.g. **Ho appena finito** la mia lettera. - I have just finished my letter.)

Sp. Ella **trató de convencerlo**;

Port. Ela **tentou convencê-lo**;

It. **Ha cercato (tentato) di convincerlo**;

Fr. Elle **a essayé (tenté) de le convaincre**.

- She tried to convince him.

Sp. **Acuerdate de telefonarme** más tarde hoy!

Braz. Port. **Lembre-se** (Euro. Port. **Lembra-te**) **de me telefonar** mais tarde hoje!

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

It. **Ricordati di telefonarmi** piu tardi oggi!

Fr. **Rappelle-toi de me téléphoner** plus tard aujourd'hui!

- Remember to call me later today!

Sp. **Acabo de llegar** en casa;

Port. **Acabei de chegar** em casa;

It. **Sono appena arrivato** a casa;

Fr. Je **viens d'arriver** à la maison.

- I have just arrived home.



NOTE:

In Spanish **acabar** must be used in the present simple indicative in order to express that someone has just done something, while the Portuguese verb **acabar** is used in the preterite in this case.

3. Verbs followed by the preposition **por** (Spanish and Portuguese), **per** (Italian) and **par** (French) + **an infinitive**.

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, these prepositions are found with verbs indicating *to begin* or *end by* or *opt to*.

Observe the list of the most frequent verbs followed by Sp., Port. **por**; It. **per**; Fr. **par** + **infinitive** in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
acabar por, terminar por	acabar por, terminar por	finire per	finir par	to end (by doing something)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
optar por	optar por	optare per	*<u>opter</u> <u>pour</u>	<i>to opt to</i>



NOTE:

*In French, the verb **opter** (to opt for) is used with the preposition **pour**.*

Sp. Él siempre **termina** (**acaba**) **por decir** eso;

Port. Ele sempre **termina** (**acaba**) **por dizer** isso;

It. Lui finisce sempre **per dire** questo;

Fr. Il finit toujours **par dire** cela.

- *He always **ends by saying** this.*

Sp. Al final **optó por aprender** francés;

Port. No final, ela **optou por aprender** francês;

It. Alla fine, **ha optato per imparare** francese;

Fr. En fin de compte, elle **a opté pour apprendre** français.

- *In the end she **opted to learn** French.*

4. Verbs followed by the preposition **en** (Spanish) and **em** (Portuguese) + **an infinitive**.

This matches the English *verb plus in or on plus gerund*. The list of verbs that are followed by the preposition sp. **en**, port. **em** are quite similar in Spanish and Portuguese, whereas, in French and Italian, there are no strict rules in terms of which preposition is used with which verb and so are best learned on their own in this case.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
insistir en	insistir em	insistere per	insister pour	<i>to insist on</i>
persistir en	persistir em	persistere in	persister à	<i>to persist</i>
pensar en	pensar em	pensare di	penser à	<i>to think about, to contemplate doing smth.</i>

Sp. Ella **insistió en venir** con ellos;

Port. Ela **insistiu em vir** com eles;

It. Ha **insistito per venire** con loro;

Fr. Elle **a insisté pour venir** avec eux.

- She **insisted on coming** with them.

- Verbs followed by the preposition **con** (Spanish) and **com** (Portuguese) and **de** (French) and **di** (Italian) + **an infinitive**.

Spanish and Portuguese have a few common verbs that are used with **con** and **com** plus an infinitive, while the same list of verbs in Italian and French are used with the prepositions **de** and **di** plus an infinitive. Observe the following:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
amenazar con	ameaçar com	minacciare di	menacer de	<i>to threaten with (to)</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
contar con	contar com	contare di	compter de	<i>to rely on, to remember</i>
soñar con	*<u>sonhar em</u>	sognare di	rêver de	<i>to think about, to contempla te doing smth.</i>



NOTE:

*In Portuguese, the verb **sonhar** (to think about) is used with the preposition **em**.*

Sp. Él **sueña con vivir** en Brasil;

Port. Ele **sonha em viver** no Brasil;

It. Lui **sogna di vivere** in Brasile;

Fr. Il **rêve de vivre** au Brésil.

- *He dreams of living in Brazil.*

6. Verbs followed by the preposition **que** (Spanish and Portuguese) and **de** (French) and **di** (Italian) + **an infinitive**.

Below are the verbs and verbal combinations that express necessity and are used with the preposition **que** in Spanish and Portuguese and **de** and **di** in French and Italian.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
tener que	ter que	avere bisogno di	avoir besoin de	<i>to have to</i>
hay que	tem que	*<u>bisogna</u>	*<u>il faut</u>	<i>must (used impersonally)</i>



NOTE:

In Italian and French the modal verb must which is used impersonally does not require any preposition at all.

Sp. **Tengo que partir** ahora;

Port. **Tenho que partir** agora;

It. **Ho bisogno di partire** ora;

Fr. **J'ai besoin de partir** maintenant.

- *I have to leave now.*

Other verbs that are used with prepositions in the Romance languages must be learned individually since they are followed by different prepositions, which makes it difficult to combine them.

• **After independent prepositions:**

In the Romance languages some prepositions are used independently, which means that they are not associated with a preceding verb.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Below are the most common independent prepositions after which the infinitive is used in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
antes de	antes de	prima di	avant de	<i>before</i>
para, con el fin de	para, a fim de	per, allo scopo di	pour, afin de	<i>in order to</i>
sin	sem	senza	sans	<i>without</i>

Sp. Él salió **sin mirarme**;

Port. Ele saiu **sem olhar** para mim;

It. Egli è uscito **senza guardarmi**;

Fr. Il est sorti **sans me regarder**.

- *He went out without looking at me.*

Sp. Lo dije **para recordarle**;

Port. Eu disse isso **para lembrá-lo**;

It. Ho detto che **per ricordargli**;

Fr. Je l'ai dit **pour lui rappeler**.

- *I said it to remind him.*

• After set phrases containing a preposition:

There are also a few set phrases consisting of the verbs *to have* or *to be*, a noun or an adjective and a preposition after which

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

an infinitive is used in the Romance languages. This pattern corresponds to English “to have/to be + adjective or noun + preposition + infinitive or gerund”. The following is a formula of such set phrases in the Romance languages.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
tener (ser/estar) + adjective/noun + preposition + infinitive	ter (ser/estar) + adjective/noun + preposition + infinitive	avere (essere/stare) + adjective/noun + preposition + infinitive	avoir (être) + adjective/noun + preposition + infinitive

This occurs with a few common set phrases in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
tener tiempo para	ter tempo para	avere il tempo di	avoir le temps de	to have time
tener ganas de	ter vontade de	avere voglia di	avoir envie de	to have an inclination (to feel like)
tener vergüenza	ter vergonha de	avere vergogna di	avoir honte de	to be ashamed
tener miedo de	ter medo	avere paura di	avoir peur de	to be afraid of
tener prisa	ter pressa	avere fretta di	avoir hate de	to be in a hurry

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
tener la oportunidad de	ter a oportunidade de	avere la possibilità di	avoir la possibilité de	to have an opportunity to
tener la suerte de / ser afortunado	ter a sorte de / ser sortudo	avere la fortuna di / essere fortunati	avoir de la chance / être chanceux	to be lucky
ser digno de	ser digno de	esser degno di	être digne de	to be worthy of
ser / estar contento	ser / estar contente	essere / stare contento di	être content de	to be glad to
ser / estar feliz	ser / estar feliz	essere / stare felice di	être heureux de	to be happy to

Sp. *Tengo la suerte de vivir aquí;*

Port. *Tenho a sorte de viver aqui;*

It. *Ho la fortuna di vivere qui;*

Fr. *J'ai de la chance de vivre ici.*

- *I am lucky to live here.*

Sp. *Tengo ganas de ir a la playa;*

Port. *Tenho vontade de ir à praia;*

It. *Ho voglia di andare in spiaggia;*

Fr. *J'ai envie d'aller à la plage.*

- *I feel like going to the beach.*

• **After expression with to be plus an adjective:**

In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, if used impersonally, expressions with Sp., Port. **ser** and It. **essere** + **an adjective** are usually followed by an infinitive, with no preceding preposition, while in French the preposition **de** is placed before an infinitive in this case. Also, the pronoun **Il** must be put before **être** (*to be*) when conjugated in French (e.g. **il est**), which is equivalent to English "*It is*". Observe the formula:

Spanish, Portuguese and Italian	French
Sp., Port. ser /It. essere + an adjective + infinitive	Il + être + adjective + de + infinitive

Sp. *Es fácil cantar;*

Port. *É fácil cantar;*

It. *È facile cantare;*

Fr. *Il est facile de chanter.*

- *It is easy to sing.*

Sp. *Es difícil traducir* este texto;

Port. *É difícil traduzir* este texto;

It. *È difficile tradurre* questo testo;

Fr. *Il est difficile de traduire* ce texte.

- *It is difficult to translate this text.*



NOTE:

Nevertheless, when this type of combination describes something particular or personal, **de** is used in Spanish and Portuguese and **di** in Italian before the infinitive. French always retains **de** before the infinitive in this sort of expressions. It is worth saying that it happens basically with such adjectives as easy and difficult. Study the following:

Sp. ¿Esta canción? Es **facil de** cantar;

Port. Esta música? É **facil de** cantar;

It. Questa canzone? È **facile di** cantare;

Fr. Cette chanson? Il est **facile de** chanter.

- This song? It is easy to sing.

Sp. Este texto es **difficil de** traducir;

Port. Este texto é **difficil de** traduzir;

It. Questo testo è **difficile di** tradurre;

Fr. Ce texte est **difficile de** traduire.

- This text is difficult to translate.

• **As an indirect command:**

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French the infinitive is used to give instruction in the affirmative in different situations. For example:

Sp. ¡**Empujar!**

Port. **Empurre!**

It. **Spingere!**

Fr. **Pousser!**

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

- *Push!*



NOTE:

In Italian, if the indirect command is in the negative, the past participle **vietato** (prohibited) normally precedes the infinitive:

Sp. *¡No Correr!*

Port. *Não Correr!* (or *Não corra!*)

It. **Vietato** Correre!

Fr. *Ne pas Courir!*

- *Do not run!*

Spanish **al** + Infinitive

In Spanish the combination **al** + **infinitive** is used to express “when”, which is equivalent to English *upon* + *-ing*. Observe the following:

Sp. *Al ver* lo que hizo, él se enfadó.

- *Upon seeing (When he saw) what she did, he got upset.*

Make in Causative Constructions in The Romance Languages

In the Romance languages the verb Sp. **hacer**, Port. **fazer**, It. **fare**, Fr. **faire** - *make* is used to express the causative, which indicates the idea of having someone do something or having something made or done, and which corresponds to English causative construction “*make someone do something or have something done or made*”.



NOTE:

Like English, in Spanish and Portuguese the object comes between the causative verb Sp. **hacer**, Port. **fazer** and an infinitive. However, in Italian and French the verb It. **fare**, Fr. **faire** is followed by an infinitive and the object is normally put at the end of the phrase.

Study the following:

Sp. **Hago a los niños cenar;**

Port. **Eu faço as crianças jantarem;**

It. **Faccio cenare i bambini;**

Fr. **Je fais dîner les enfants.**

- I make the children eat dinner.



NOTE: in Spanish the preposition **a** must be used before the cause.



Did you know?

Goiânia is the capital and the biggest city of the Brazilian state Goiás. The city is known for having the largest green area per inhabitant in Brazil and the second-most in the world (after Edmonton, Canada). 30% of the city is planted in trees. The most famous parks are the Parque Zoológico, Parque Vaca Brava, Parque Ecológico and Parque Areião.

It should be mentioned that when the object is a noun, it is placed before the infinitive in Spanish and Portuguese and follows the infinitive in Italian and French. However, when the object is a pronoun, it must precede the verb Sp. **hacer**, Port. **fazer**, It. **fare**, Fr. **faire** in all the Romance languages, whereas in English it is placed after the verb make. For example:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Sp. **Hago a los niños cenar - Los hago cenar;**
Port. **Eu faço as crianças jantar - Eu as faço jantar;**
It. **Faccio cenare i bambini - Li faccio cenare;**
Fr. **Je fais dîner les enfants - Je les fais dîner.**
- *I make (have) the children eat dinner - I make (have) them eat dinner.*

It must be remembered that in the affirmative imperative, the direct object noun must follow the infinitive, but nevertheless the direct object pronoun always precedes the infinitive in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

Sp. **Haz lavar el perro - Hazlo lavar;**
Port. **Faça lavar o cão - Faça o lavar (or Faça lavá-lo);**
It. **Fa' lavare il cane - Fallo lavare;**
Fr. **Fais laver le chien - Fais-le laver.**
- *Have the dog washed - Have it washed.*

When there are two objects in a causative sentence, one becomes the indirect object and the other will be the direct object. The indirect object is the person or thing being made to do something. The indirect object is introduced by the preposition **a** (in Italian and Spanish) or **à** (in French) alone or in its articulated form.



NOTE:

*In Spanish the preposition **a** precedes an animate object in the sentence. Portuguese doesn't require any prepositions at all.*

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Remember that all pronoun objects precede Sp. **hacer**, Port. **fazer**, It. **fare**, Fr. **faire** except in the affirmative imperative in the Romance languages.

One object:

Sp. La madre hace **a la** hija leer;

Port. A mãe faz **a** filha ler;

It. La madre fa leggere **la** figlia;

Fr. La mère fait lire **la** fille.

- *The mother has (makes) the daughter read.*

Two objects:

Sp. La madre hace **a la** hija leer el texto;

Port. A mãe faz **a** filha ler o texto;

It. La madre fa leggere il testo **alla** figlia;

Fr. La mère fait lire le texte **à** la fille.

- *The mother has (makes) the daughter read the text.*

If either one or more of the objects is a pronoun, the object pronouns must precede the verb Sp. **hacer**, Port. **fazer**, It. **fare**, Fr. **faire** in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. If necessary, revise object pronouns. Study the following:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
La madre hace a su hija leer el texto.	A mãe faz sua filha ler o texto.	La madre fa leggere il testo alla sua figlia.	La mère fait lire le texte à sa fille.	The mother has her daughter read the text.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
La madre lo hace leer a su hija.	A mãe o faz ler sua filha.	La madre lo fa leggere alla sua figlia.	La mère le fait lire à sa fille.	The mother has her daughter read it.
La madre le hace leer el texto.	A mãe lhe faz ler o texto.	La madre le fa leggere il testo.	La mère lui fait lire le texte.	The mother has her read the text.
La madre se lo hace leer.	A mãe lha faz ler.	La madre glielo fa leggere.	La mère le lui fait lire.	The mother has her read it.

Note that in Italian, the indirect pronoun is **loro** follows the infinitive, for example:

It. La madre ha fatto leggere i testi agli bambini.

La madre li ha fatti leggere ai bambini.

La madre ha fatto leggere **loro** i testi.

La madre li ha fatti leggere a **loro**.

- *The mother had the children read the texts.*

The mother had the children read them.

The mother had them read the texts.

The mother had them read them.

In Italian and French, in order to avoid possible ambiguity with the indirect object, the person doing the action can be introduced by **da** (in *Italian*) instead of **a**, and **par** (in *French*) instead of **à**. For instance, the sentence:

It. *Lei fa pulire una macchina a John*;

Fr. *Elle fait nettoyer une voiture à John*

can mean 1) *She has John clean a car* or 2) *She has a car cleaned to John*. If the first meaning is intended, It. **da** and Fr. **par** can replace It. **a** and Fr. **à**. Observe the following:

It. *Lei fa pulire una macchina da John*;

Fr. *Elle fait nettoyer une voiture par John*.

- *She has John clean a car*.

A reflexive pronoun can also be used with the verb Sp. **hacer**, Port. **fazer**, It. **fare**, Fr. **faire** in causative constructions in the Romance languages.

Let and Verbs of Perception + the Infinitive in the Romance Languages

In the Romance languages, after the verb Sp. **dejar**, Port. **deixar**, It. **lasciare** and Fr. **laisser** - *let* and after the verbs of perception the infinitive is used. A few common verbs of perception are:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
	se			
oír	ouvir	udire	entendre	<i>to hear</i>
ver	ver	(sentire)	voir	<i>to see</i>
escuchar	escutar	vedere	écouter	<i>to listen</i>
mirar	olhar	ascoltare	regarder	<i>to look at</i>
sentir	sentir	guardare	sentir	<i>to feel</i>
		sentire		

Unlike in English, in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, the infinitive precedes the noun. The pronoun is placed

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

before the main verb. Generally, these verbs function similarly to the verb Sp. **hacer**, Port. **fazer**, It. **fare**, Fr. **faire** in causative constructions. Study the following:

Sp. Dejo a Paula terminar la lección -> Le dejo terminar la lección
-> Se la dejo terminar.

Port. Eu deixo Paula terminar a lição -> Eu lhe deixo terminar a lição -> Eu lha deixo terminar.

It. Lascio Paula terminare la lezione -> Le lascio terminare la lezione -> Gliela lascio terminare.

Fr. Je laisse Paula terminer la leçon -> Je lui laisse terminer la leçon -> Je la lui laisse terminer or Je lui laisse la terminer.

- *I let Paula finish the lesson -> I let her finish the work -> I let her finish it.*



Did you know?

Lucca is a city in Tuscany, Central Italy near the Tyrrhenian Sea. The city is famous for its well-preserved Renaissance walls encircling the historic city center.

Sp. Veo leer a Ana -> La veo leer.

Port. Eu vejo Ana ler -> Eu a vejo ler.

It. Vedo leggere Ana -> La vedo leggere.

Fr. Je vois lire Ana -> Je la vois lire.

- *I see Ana reading -> I see her reading.*

Sp. Oyó cantar a su esposa -> La oyó cantar.

Port. Ele ouviu a sua esposa cantar -> Ele a ouviu cantar.

It. Ha sentito cantare sua moglie -> L'ha sentita cantare.

Fr. Il a entendu chanter sa femme -> Il l'a entendue chanter.

- *He heard his wife singing -> He heard her singing.*

**NOTE:**

In Italian and French the past participle agrees with the preceding direct object when the object fulfills the action indicated by the infinitive. That is to say, in the expression It. la moglie che lui ha sentita cantare and Fr. la femme qu'il a entendue chanter, the wife did the singing and, thus, the past participle agrees. But nevertheless, if the expression were It. **Ha sentito cantare la canzone** => **L'ha sentita cantare**; Fr. **Il a entendu chanter la chanson** => **il l'a entendu chanter** - He heard the song sung => He heard it sung, the past participle would not agree as it. *canzone*, Fr. *chanson* is the object of It. *cantare* and fr. *chanter*.

The Compound Infinitive

In the Romance languages, the compound infinitive is formed with the auxiliaries Sp. **haber**, Port. **ter**, It. **essere/avere** and Fr. **être/avoir** plus the past participle of the acting verb, which is the equivalent of *having* + *the past participle* in English. Remember that the past participle which is used with the auxiliary verb to be (It. **essere**, Fr. **être**) always agrees in gender and number with the subject in Italian and French.

Below is the table showing an example of the compound infinitive in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	se		
haber hablado	ter falado	avere parlato essere venuto(a)(i)(e)	avoir parlé être venu(e) (s)(es)

**NOTE:**

In Italian it is quite common to drop the final **-e** of the auxiliary verb (It. **avere**, **essere**) in the compound infinitive, for example: **aver parlato**, **esser venuto**.

Use of the Compound Infinitive

The compound infinitive is usually used after the prepositions:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
después de	depois de	dopo	après	<i>after</i>
sin	sem	senza	sans	<i>without</i>

**Did you know?**

Chad is a landlocked nation in Central Africa. It is the 5th biggest country in Africa in terms of area. The country's official languages are Arabic and French. The main religions of Chad are Islam (over 50%) and Christianity (around 5%). Its capital N'Djamena is the largest city.

Sp. **Después de haber terminado** el trabajo, fue al bar;

Port. **Depois de ter terminado** o trabalho, ele foi ao bar;

It. **Dopo aver terminato** il lavoro, è andato al bar;

Fr. **Après avoir terminé** le travail, il est allé au bar.

- **After having finished** his work, he went to the bar.

Sp. Ella regresó de Brasil **sin haber estado** en Río de Janeiro;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Port. Ela voltou do Brasil **sem ter estado** no Rio de Janeiro;

It. Lei è tornata dal Brasile **senza essere stata** a Rio de Janeiro;

Fr. Elle est revenue du Brésil **sans avoir été** à Rio de Janeiro.

- *She returned from Brazil **without having been** to Rio de Janeiro.*

Portuguese Personal Infinitive

Overview

Portuguese is the only Romance languages that uses personal infinitives. Generally speaking personal infinitive is used when the form of the verb which has no person or number and known as the infinitive, takes a subject in Portuguese.

In order to form the personal infinitive, one should take the infinitive and add appropriate endings. The following is the table displaying the forms of the personal infinitive in Portuguese:

Forms of the Personal Infinitive

	falar	vender	partir
<i>eu</i>	falar	vender	partir
<i>tu</i>	falares	venderes	partires
<i>ele, ela, você</i>	falar	vender	partir
<i>nós</i>	falamos	vendermos	partirmos
<i>vós</i>	falardes	venderdes	partirdes
<i>les, elas, vocês</i>	falarem	venderem	partirem

**NOTE:**

The 1st and 3rd persons don't add any endings to the verbs.

Use of Portuguese Personal Infinitive

In Portuguese personal infinitive is usually used:

- After expressions where the subject is undefined:

É necessário	<i>It's necessary for smb. to do smth.</i>
É bom	<i>It's good for smb. to do smth.</i>
É importante	<i>It's important for smb. to do smth.</i>
É difícil	<i>It's difficult for smb. to do smth.</i>
É possível	<i>It's possible for smb. to do smth.</i>
É provável	<i>It's probable for smb. to do smth.</i>
É impossível	<i>It's impossible for smb. to do smth.</i>
É incrível	<i>It's unbelievable for smb. to do smth.</i>
Não é mau	<i>It's not bad for smb. to do smth.</i>

For example:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Port. **É necessário eu ir** para casa agora.

- *It's necessary that I go home now.*

Port. **É importante irmos** ao hospital agora.

- *It's important for us to go to the hospital now.*

Port. **É incrível eles falarem** português.

- *It's unbelievable for them to speak Portuguese.*



NOTE:

With these expressions one shouldn't use **que**, since it implies the use of the subjunctive and not the Portuguese personal infinitive. Observe the following:

Port. **É necessário que eu vá** para casa agora.

- *It's necessary that I go home now.*

Port. **É importante que nós vamos** ao hospital agora.

- *It's important for us to go to the hospital now.*

Port. **É incrível que eles falem** português.

- *It's unbelievable for them to speak Portuguese.*

In fact, the Portuguese personal infinitive is used to avoid the use of the subjunctive in many cases.

- After prepositions such as:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Ao	<i>at/by/on</i>
Sem	<i>without</i>
Para	<i>in order to</i>
Por	<i>because/for the cause of</i>
Até	<i>until</i>
No caso de	<i>in case</i>
Depois de	<i>after</i>
Antes de	<i>before</i>
Apesar de	<i>inspite of/despite</i>

Euro. Port. **Sem estudiares** todos os dias não podes falar um idioma muito bem.

Braz. Port. **Sem estudar** todos os dias não pode falar um idioma muito bem.

- *Without studying every day you cannot speak a language very well.*

Port. Isto é para **lermos** esta noite.

- *This is for us to read tonight.*

It should be mentioned that in colloquial Portuguese, the personal infinitive often replaces the subjunctive in the following cases:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

sem que + Subjunctive Eu cheguei sem que ela visse. - <i>I came without being seen by her.</i>	sem + Personal Infinitive Eu cheguei sem ela ver. - <i>I came without being seen by her.</i>
para que + Subjunctive Eu comprei este livro para que leiamos. - <i>I bought this book for us to read.</i>	para + Personal Infinitive Eu comprei este livro para lermos. - <i>I bought this book for us to read.</i>

- **To make polite requests and commands:**

This can be regarded as an alternative to the imperative mood, which is more direct, for example:

Port. *Não grite, por favor.*

- *No screaming, please.*

Reflexive Verbs

Overview

In the Romance languages, reflexive verbs are always used with an object pronoun which refers to the same person or things as the verb's subject. In other words, the action of reflexive verbs is executed and received by the subject. In English, the object pronoun of reflexive verbs has such suffixes as *-self* or *-selves* (e.g. *I wash myself, they wash themselves*).

Formation of Reflexive Verbs

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, reflexive verbs are formed by using the appropriate reflexive pronouns (**See Reflexive Pronouns p.130**), which can change according to the subject of the verb. In the infinitive form, the reflexive pronoun is put after the verb in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, while in French it is placed before the verb (e.g. Sp. **lavarse**; Port. **lavar-se**; It. **lavarsi**; Fr. **se laver**).



NOTE:

In Spanish the reflexive pronoun is attached to the verb, whereas in Portuguese, the reflexive pronoun is linked to a verb by a hyphen. In Italian the -e of the infinitive ending is dropped before attaching a reflexive pronoun to it.

When conjugated, reflexive pronouns are placed before the verb in Spanish, Italian and French.



NOTE:

However, in European Portuguese the reflexive pronoun is normally placed after the verb and linked to it with a hyphen except in negative and interrogative sentences, and also after prepositions, relative clauses or conjunctions. On the other hand, like in Spanish, Italian and French, in spoken Brazilian Portuguese, the reflexive pronoun is always placed before the conjugated verb.

It must be remembered that in contrast with English, reflexive pronouns cannot be omitted in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

Observe the following forms of the present tense of Sp. **lavarse**, Port. **lavar-se**, It. **lavarsi**, Fr. **se laver** - to wash:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
yo me lavo	eu lavo-me (Braz. Port. me lavo)	io mi lavo	je, j' me lave	<i>I wash myself</i>
tú/vos te lavas/ lavás	tu lavas-te	tu ti lavi	tu te laves	<i>you wash yourself</i>
él/ella/ usted se lava	êle/ela/você lava-se (Braz. Port. se lava)	lui/lei/Lei si lava	il,elle,on se lave	<i>he/she/it wash himself/ herself/ itself</i>
nosotros(as) nos lavamos	nós lavamo-nos (Braz. Port. nos lavamos)	noi ci laviamo	nous nous lavons	<i>we wash ourselves</i>
vosotros(as) os laváis	vós lavais-vos	voi vi lavate	vous vous lavez	<i>you wash yourselves</i>
ellos/ellas/ ustedes se lavan	eles/elas/ vocês lavam-se (Braz. Port. se lavam)	loro/Loro si lavano	ils/elles se lavent	<i>they wash themselves</i>



NOTE:

In European Portuguese, the verb loses its final **-s** in the 2nd person plural (**lavamo-nos**). In French **me** becomes **m'**, **te** becomes **t'** and **se** becomes **s'** before a vowel or a mute **h** (e.g. je **m'**amuse; tu **t'**habille; il **s'**arrête.).

Reflexive Verbs with a Reflexive Meaning

Below is a list of the most common reflexive verbs of the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese se	Italian	French	English
levantarse	levantar-se	alzarsi	se lever	<i>to get up</i>
enojarse/ enfadarse	<i>ficar com raiva</i>	arrabbiarsi	se fâcher	<i>to get angry</i>
llamarse	chamar-se	chiamarsi	s'appeler	<i>to be called</i>
acostarse	deitar-se	coricarsi	se coucher	<i>to go to bed</i>
taparse	cobrir-se	coprirsi	se couvrir	<i>to cover oneself</i>
divertirse	divertir-se	divertirsi	se divertir/ s'amuser	<i>to have fun</i>
herirse	ferir-se	ferirsi	se blesser	<i>to wound oneself</i>
fiarse de/ confiarse de	<i>confiar em</i>	fidarsi di	se fier à	<i>to trust</i>
enamorarse	apaixonar- se	innamorarsi di	<i>tomber amoureux de</i>	<i>to fall in love with</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
quejarse	queixar-se	lamentarsi di	se plaindre	<i>to complain about</i>
lavarse	lavar-se	lavarsi	se laver	<i>to wash oneself</i>
ponerse	<i>pôr</i>	mettersi	se mettre	<i>to put on (clothing)</i>
arrepentirse de	arrepender-se de	pentirsi di	se repentir de	<i>to repent of</i>
prepararse para	preparar-se para	prepararsi per	se préparer pour	<i>to get ready</i>
limpiarse	limpar-se	pulirsi	se nettoyer	<i>to clean oneself</i>
afeitarse	barbear-se	radersi	se raser	<i>to shave</i>
acordarse de	lembrar-se de	ricordarsi di	se rappeler/ se souvenir de	<i>to remember</i>
sentarse	sentar-se	sedersi	s'asseoir	<i>to sit down</i>
sentirse	sentir-se	sentirsi	se sentir/ se porter	<i>to feel</i>
desvestirse	despir-se	spogliarsi	se déshabiller	<i>to undress</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
casarse con	casar-se com	sposarsi con	se marier avec	<i>to get married</i>
despertarse	<i>acordar</i>	svegliarsi	se réveiller	<i>to wake up</i>
vestirse	vestir-se	vestirsi	s'habiller	<i>to get dressed</i>
volverse	tornar-se	voltarsi	se tourner	<i>to turn</i>
<i>cuidar de/ salir de</i>	<i>cuidar de/ sair de</i>	sbrogliarsi/ cavarsi (togliersi) d'impiccio	se débrouiller / se tirer (d'affaire)	<i>to manage, to handle a situation</i>
preguntarse	perguntar- se	chiedersi	se demander	<i>to wonder</i>
apresurarse	apressar-se	affrettarsi	se dépêcher/ se presser	<i>to hurry</i>
interesarse por	interessar- se por	interessarsi a	s'intéresser à	<i>to be interested in</i>
burlarse de/ mofarse de	<i>gozar de</i>	farsi beffe di	se moquer de	<i>to make fun of</i>
ocuparse de	ocupar-se de	occuparsi di	s'occuper de	<i>to be busy with, to take care of</i>
pasarse	<i>acontecer</i>	<i>accadere</i>	se passer	<i>to happen</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
peinarse	pentear-se	pettinarsi	se peigner	<i>to comb one's hair</i>
<i>reposar/ descansar</i>	<i>descansar</i>	riposarsi	se reposer	<i>to rest</i>
encontrarse	achar-se	trovarsi	se trouver	<i>to be located</i>
aburrirse	chatear-se	annoiarsi	s'ennuyer	<i>to get bored</i>
pasearse	<i>passear</i>	<i>passeggiare</i>	se promener	<i>to take a walk</i>
dormirse	<i>adormecer</i>	addormentarsi	s'endormir	<i>to fall asleep</i>
bañarse	banhar-se	bagnarsi	se baigner	<i>to bathe</i>
cepillarse	<i>escovar</i>	pulirsi	se brosser	<i>to brush oneself</i>
distraerse	distrair-se	distrarsi	se distraire	<i>to distract oneself</i>
ducharse	<i>tomar banho</i>	docciarsi	se doucher	<i>to shower</i>
irse	<i>ir embora</i>	andarsene	s'en aller	<i>to leave</i>
maquillarse	maquiar-se	truccarsi	se maquiller	<i>to put on makeup</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
callarse	calar-se	azzittirsi	se taire	<i>to be quiet</i>

The verbs in *italics* are not reflexive.

Sp. **Me *acuesto*** más temprano hoy;

Port. **Deito-*me*** mais cedo hoje;

It. **Mi *corico*** più presto oggi;

Fr. **Je *me couche*** plus tôt aujourd'hui.

- *I go to bed earlier today.*



Did you know?

The Cathedral of La Plata, in the city of La Plata, Argentina, is the largest church in Argentina and the 58th tallest church in the world. This Neo-Gothic construction is situated in the geographical center of the city in front of the central square, Plaza Moreno, and City Hall.

Sp. Esta mujer ***se queja*** todo el tiempo;

Port. Esta mulher ***se queixa*** o tempo todo (todo o tempo).

It. Questa donna ***si lamenta*** tutto il tempo;

Fr. Cette femme ***se plaint*** tout le temps.

- *This woman complains all the time.*



NOTE:

In Portuguese, in the indicative future or conditional, the reflexive pronoun is usually put between the stem and the ending of the verb and each part is separated by a hyphen. Observe the following:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Portuguese			
<i>Future</i>	<i>Future Perfect</i>	<i>Conditional</i>	<i>Conditional Perfect</i>
Deitar-me-ei	Ter-me-ei deitado	Deitar-me-ia	Ter-me-ia deitado
(I will go to bed) etc.	(I will have gone to bed) etc.	(I would go to bed) etc.	(I would have gone to bed) etc.

Italian and French Compound Tenses with Reflexive Verbs

It must be memorized that all reflexive verbs are used with the appropriate conjugated verb **essere** (in *Italian*) and **être** (in *French*) - *to be* when forming compound tenses. Also, the past participle of reflexive verbs agrees in gender and number with the subject in Italian and French.

It. **Si è alzata** alle 6 di ieri;

Fr. **Elle s'est levée** à 6 heures hier.

- *She got up at 6 a.m. yesterday.*

It. I miei genitori **si sono sposati** vent'anni fa;

Fr. Mes parents **se sont mariés** il y a vingt ans.

- *My parents got married twenty years ago.*

Reflexive Verbs with Parts of the Body

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

In the Romance languages, if a part of the body is used with reflexive verbs, one should utilize the definite article rather than the possessive adjective. Study the following:

Sp. Mary se lava **la** cara;

Port. Mary lava **o** rosto;

It. Mary si lava **la** faccia;

Fr. Mary se lave **le** visage.

- *Mary washes her face.*



Did you know?

Campinas is a city in southeast Brazil, in São Paulo State. The most beautiful tourism spots in the city are: Portugal Park that contains a wide range of recreational activities, a planetarium, and electric tramway from the 20th century; and Castle Tower, a water tower, that offers a wide panorama view of the city.

Sp. María se lava **las** manos;

Port. Mary lava **as** mãos;

It. Mary si lava **le** mani;

Fr. Mary se lave **les** mains.

- *Mary washes her hands.*



NOTE:

Unlike in Spanish, Italian and French, In Portuguese, the reflexive verbs are not used in this case.

Reciprocal Reflexive Verbs

Reciprocal reflexive verbs refer to persons that are acting upon one another. This corresponds to English “*each other*” or

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

“one another”. Below is a partial list of the most frequent reflexive verbs with a reciprocal meaning in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
abrazarse	abraçar-se	abbracciarsi	s’embrasser	<i>to embrace each other (one another)</i>
ayudarse	ajudar-se	aiutarsi	s’aider	<i>to help each other (one another)</i>
amarse	amar-se	amarsi	s’aimer	<i>to love each other (one another)</i>
admirarse	admirar-se	ammirarsi	s’admirer	<i>to admire each other (one another)</i>
besarse	beijar-se	baciarsi	s’embrasser	<i>to kiss each other (one another)</i>
conocerse	conhecer-se	conoscersi	se connaître	<i>to know each other (one another)</i>
encontrarse	achar-se	incontrarsi	se rencontrer	<i>to meet each other</i>
enamorarse	apaixonar-se	innamorarsi	tomber amoureux	<i>to fall in love (with each other)</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
gustarse	gostar-se	piacersi	se plaire	<i>to like each other (one another)</i>
reconocerse	reconhecer-se	riconoscersi	se reconnaître	<i>to recognize each other (one another)</i>
respetarse	respeitar-se	rispettarsi	se respecter	<i>to respect each other (one another)</i>
verse de nuevo	rever-se	rivedersi	se revoir	<i>to see each other again (one another)</i>
saludarse	saudar-se	salutarsi	se saluer	<i>to greet each other (one another)</i>
escribirse	escrever-se	scriversi	s'écrire	<i>to write to each other (one another)</i>
casarse	casar-se	sposarsi	se marier	<i>to get married</i>
verse	ver-se	vedersi	se voir	<i>to see each other (one another)</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
visitarse	visitar-se	visitarsi	se visiter	to visit each other (one another)
quererse	amar-se	volersi bene	s'aimer bien	to like/love each other (one another)
consolarse	consolar-se	consolarsi	se consoler	to comfort each other (one another)



Did you know?

Bari is a port and university city on the Adriatic Sea, in southern Italy. It is known for its narrow streets, the 11th century Basilica of Saint Nicholas and the Cathedral of San Sabino. The Murat quartier has 19th-century architecture, a promenade on the sea, and major shopping areas.

Sp. Ellos no **se ven** muy frecuentemente;

Port. Eles não **se vêem** muito frequentemente;

It. Non **si vedono** molto frequentemente;

Fr. Ils ne **se voient** pas très fréquemment.

- They do not **see each other** very often.

Sp. Los maestros **se saludan** en la universidad cada mañana;

Port. Os professores **se saudam** na universidade todas as manhãs;

It. Gli insegnanti **si salutano** all'università ogni mattina;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Fr. Les enseignants **se saluent** à l'université tous les matins..

- Teachers **greet each other** in the university every morning.

Since the reflexive and the reciprocal forms are similar in the Romance languages, confusion may occur in some cases. For instance the phrase:

Sp. Ellos *se aman*;

Port. Eles *amam-se* (Br. Port. *se amam*);

It. Loro *si amano*;

Fr. Ils *s'aiment*.

could mean “*They love themselves*” or “*They love each other*”. In order to avoid ambiguity, the following phrases may be supplemented to reflexive verbs:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el uno al otro (<i>sing.</i>); (los) unos a (los) otros (<i>pl.</i>)	um ao outro (<i>sing. m.</i>); uma a outra (<i>sing. f.</i>); uns aos outros (<i>pl.</i>)	l'un l'altro	l'un l'autre	each other/ one another
mutuamente	mutuamente	reciprocamente (a vicenda)	réciiproquement	mutually

Sp. *Nos amamos el uno al otro*;

Port. *Nós amamos um ao outro*;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

It. ***Ci amiamo l'un l'altro;***

Fr. ***Nous nous aimons l'un l'autre.***

- *We love each other.*

Sp. Los oponentes ***se respetan mutuamente;***

Port. Os opositores ***se respeitam mutuamente;***

It. Gli avversari ***si rispettano reciprocamente;***

Fr. Les opposants ***se respectent mutuellement.***

- *Opponents respect each other.*

Reflexive Verbs Versus Non-Reflexive Verbs

In the Romance languages, verbs can function both reflexively and non-reflexively. Remember if the action is performed and received by the same subject, the verb is reflexive. However, when the action is executed on another person or object, the verb is not reflexive. Study the following sentences:

<i>Reflexive</i>	<i>Non-reflexive</i>
Sp. Tom se lava ; Port. Tom lava-se (Br. se lava); It. Tom si lava ; Fr. Tom se lave . - <i>Tom washes himself.</i>	Sp. Tom lava el perro ; Port. Tom lava o cão ; It. Tom lava il cane ; Fr. Tom lave le chien . - <i>Tom washes the dog.</i>
Sp. Sarah se acuesta ; Port. Sarah deita-se (Br. se deita); It. Sarah si corica ; Fr. Sarah se couche . - <i>Sarah goes to bed.</i>	Sp. Sarah acuesta los niños ; Port. Sarah deita as crianças ; It. Sarah corica i bambini ; Fr. Sarah couche les enfants . - <i>Sarah puts the children to bed.</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

It is noticeable that the non-reflexive verbs are transitive, i.e. they take a direct object. Observe the difference in meaning between the following reflexive and non-reflexive verbs in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

	<i>Reflexive</i>	<i>Non-reflexive</i>
Spanish	ayudarse	ayudar
Portuguese	ajudar-se	ajudar
Italian	aiutarsi	aiutare
French	s'aider	aider
English	<i>to help each other</i>	<i>to help (someone)</i>
Spanish	levantarse	levantar
Portuguese	levantar-se	levantar
Italian	alzarsi	alzare
French	se lever	lever
English	<i>to get up</i>	<i>to raise, to lift</i>
Spanish	llamarse	llamar
Portuguese	chamar-se	chamar
Italian	chiamarsi	chiamare
French	s'appeler	appeler
English	<i>to be called</i>	<i>to call (someone)</i>

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Spanish	prepararse	preparar
Portuguese	preparar-se	preparar
Italian	prepararsi	preparare
French	se préparer	préparer
English	<i>to get ready</i>	<i>to prepare (someone or something)</i>
Spanish	acordarse de	acordar
Portuguese	lembrar-se de	lembrar
Italian	ricordarsi di	ricordare
French	se rappeler de	rappeler
English	<i>to remember</i>	<i>to remind (someone or something)</i>
Spanish	vestirse	vestir
Portuguese	vestir-se	vestir
Italian	vestirsi	vestire
French	s'habiller	habiller
English	<i>to get dressed</i>	<i>to dress (someone), to wear (something)</i>

Reflexive Verbs in the Infinitive in the Romance languages

In Spanish and Italian, the reflexive pronoun either follows the reflexive verb, attaching to it, or precedes the first conjugated

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

verb in the sentence. In Portuguese the reflexive pronoun can be placed either after the reflexive verb separated by a hyphen from it or before the reflexive verb. However, in spoken Brazilian Portuguese, it is common to place the reflexive pronoun between the verbs. In French, the reflexive pronoun invariably precedes the reflexive verb in the infinitive. Remember that the pronoun always agrees with the subject in all the Romance languages.



Did you know?

Burkina Faso is a francophone, landlocked country in West Africa. The two words "Burkina" and "Faso" come from different languages spoken in the country. "Burkina" comes from Mossi and means "honest". "Faso" comes from the Dyula language and means "fatherland".

Sp. Necesitas **apresurarte**
or **Te** necesitas **apresurar**;

Port. Você precisa **se**
apressar or Você precisa
apressar-se;

It. **Ti** devi **affrettare** or
Devi affrettarti

Fr. Tu as besoin de **te**
dépêcher.

- You need to hurry up.

Sp. Voy a **vestirme** or **Me** voy a **vestir**;

Port. Vou **me vestir** or Vou **vestir-me**;

It. Sto per **vestirmi** or **Mi** sto per **vestire**;

Fr. Je vais **m'habiller**.

- I am going to get dressed.

Reflexive **se** (Spanish, Portuguese and French)
and **si** (Italian)
as an Indefinite Subject

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

The reflexive pronoun *se* in Spanish, Portuguese and French and *si* in Italian can be used as an impersonal or indefinite subject, which is equivalent to English *people, they, one* or *we*. In the Romance languages the verb is invariably 3rd person singular (**See also Alternatives to Passive Voice in the Romance Languages p.534**).



NOTE:

*In French, the impersonal pronoun **on** must be used in this case.*

Sp. ¿**Se puede** fumar aquí?

Port. **Pode-se** fumar aqui?

It. **Si può** fumare qui?

Fr. **Peut-on** fumer ici?

- *Can we smoke here?*

Frequent Reflexive Verb of **Becoming**

The following verb meaning “to become” must be memorized since it is very common and can be useful for the learners to apply. This verb implies intentional effort made by the subject.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
hacerse	ficar	farsi	se faire	<i>to become</i>



NOTE:

*Unlike in Spanish, Italian and French, in Portuguese the verb **ficar** - to become is not reflexive.*

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Sp. Él **se hizo** exitoso;

Port. Ele **ficou** bem sucedido;

It. Lui **si è fatto** conoscere;

Fr. Il **s'est fait** connaître.

- *He became successful.*

Affirmative Imperative of Reflexive verbs in the Romance Languages

In the affirmative imperative, in Spanish and Italian, the reflexive pronoun is attached to the end of the verb to form one word, while in Portuguese and French, the reflexive pronoun is joined to the verb by a hyphen.



NOTE:

*In Spanish, it is necessary to put an accent on the verb to show the stress and if **os** is used with the **vosotros** form, the imperative loses the **d** (e.g. **sentaos** - sit down). In Italian, the reflexive pronoun is separated from the verb in **loro** form. In French, **te** changes to **toi** in the affirmative imperative.*

Sp. ¡**Siéntate** aquí!

Port. **Senta-se** aqui! (Euro. port. **Senta-te** aqui!)

It. **Siediti** qui!

Fr. **Assieds-toi** ici!

- *Sit down here!*



Did you know?

Cusco, a city in southeastern Peruvian Andes, was the capital of the Inca Empire from the 13th until the 16th century. The city is considered as the Historical capital of Peru. It hosts over 2 million visitors a year.

Sp. ¡**Levántese!**

Port. **Levante-se!**

It. **Alzatevi!**

Fr. **Levez-vous!**

- Get up! (polite form)

Negative Imperative of Reflexive Verbs in the Romance Languages

In the negative imperative, the reflexive pronoun always precedes the verb in Spanish, Portuguese and French.



NOTE:

In Italian, the reflexive pronoun can be either joined to the verb or be separated and put before the verb. It is also notable that with formal **Lei**, the pronoun is always placed before the verb.

Sp. ¡No **te** quejas!

Port. **Não se** queixa! (Euro. port. **Não te** queixas!)

It. Non **lamentarti!** or Non **ti** lamentare!

Fr. **Ne te** plains pas!

- Do not complain!



NOTE:

In French, the reflexive pronoun **te** does not

alter in the negative imperative.

The Passive Voice

Overview

Generally, passive constructions are formed when the objects of active constructions become the subjects of the passive verbs. The following is the example of a passive construction in English:

<i>Active voice</i>	<i>Passive voice</i>
My friend wrote the book.	The book was written by my friend.

The passive voice in the Romance languages is not very different from English but it is used less frequently in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French than in English. Moreover, passive constructions are often replaced by alternatives in the Romance languages.

Formation of the Passive Voice

The passive voice is formed by using the conjugated forms of the verbs Sp. **ser/estar**, Port. **ser**, It. **essere** and Fr. **être** - *to be* plus the past participle of the verb. However, unlike in English, in the Romance languages the past participle agrees in gender and in number with the subject of the passive phrase. The person or the agent performing the action is normally introduced by the preposition **por** (in Spanish and Portuguese), **da** (in Italian) and **par** (in French), which corresponds to English *by*.



NOTE:

*In Portuguese and Italian the preposition Port. **por** and It. **da** contract with the*

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

definite articles (See Articles p.66):

Portuguese	Italian
<i>o, a, os, as + por = pelo, pela, pelos, pelas</i>	<i>il, lo, la, l' + da = dal, dallo, dalla, dall'</i>

Below is the table that shows the formation of the passive voice in the Romance languages:

Spanish	<i>ser/estar</i>	+ Past Participle +	<i>por</i>	Spanish
Portuguese	<i>ser</i>		<i>por</i>	Portuguese
Italian	<i>essere</i>		<i>da</i>	Italian
French	<i>être</i>		<i>par</i>	French

Active voice	Passive voice
Sp. Mi padre compró la casa. Port. Meu pai comprou a casa. It. Mio padre ha comprato la casa. Fr. Mon père a acheté la maison. <i>- My father bought the house.</i>	Sp. La casa fue comprada por mi padre. Port. A casa foi comprada pelo meu pai. It. La casa è stata comprata da mio padre. Fr. La maison a été achetée par mon père. <i>- The house was bought by my father.</i>

Like in English, in the Romance languages the passive voice can be used in all tenses, which means that all tenses in the active voice can be replaced by an equivalent with the verb in the passive voice.

Below is the illustration of all forms of the passive voice in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. The 1st person singular

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

of the regular verb Sp. **amar**; Port. **amar**; It. **amare**; Fr. **aimer** - to love was taken as an example.

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	<i>Indicative mood</i>			
	<i>Present tenses</i>			
<i>Present tense</i>	yo soy amado(a)	eu sou amado(a)	io sono amato(a)	je suis aimé(e)
<i>Present Perfect</i>	yo he sido amado(a)	eu tenho sido amado(a)	io sono stato amato(a)	j'ai été aimé(e)
	<i>Past tenses</i>			
<i>Preterite</i>	yo fui amado(a)	eu fora amado(a)	io fui amato(a)	je fus aimé(e)
<i>Imperfect</i>	yo era amado(a)	eu era amado(a)	io ero amato(a)	j'étais aimé(e)
<i>Past Perfect</i>	yo hube sido amado(a)s	eu tinha sido amado(a)	io fui stato amato(a)	j'eus été aimé(e)
<i>Pluperfect</i>	yo había sido amado(a)	eu fora sido amado(a)	io ero stato amato(a)	j'avais été aimé(e)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	<i>Future tenses</i>			
<i>Future</i>	yo seré amado(a)	eu serei amado(a)	io sarò amato(a)	je serai aimé(e)
<i>Future Perfect</i>	yo habré sido amado(a)	eu terei sido amado(a)	io sarò stato amato(a)	—
	<i>Conditionals</i>			
<i>Conditional</i>	yo sería amado(a)	eu seria amado(a)	io sarei amato(a)	je serais aimé(e)
<i>Conditional Perfect</i>	yo habría sido amado(a)	eu teria sido amado(a)	io sarei stato amato(a)	j'aurais été aimé(e)
	<i>Subjunctive mood</i>			
	<i>Present tenses</i>			
<i>Present tense</i>	que yo sea amado(a)	que eu seja amado(a)	che io sia amato(a)	que je sois aimé(e)

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

	Spanish		Portuguese	Italian	French
			se		
<i>Present Perfect</i>	que yo haya sido amado(a)		que eu tenha sido amado(a)	che io sia stato amato(a)	que j'aie été aimé(e)
	<i>Past tenses</i>				
<i>Past (Imperfect) tense</i>	que yo fuera amado(a)		eu fosse amado(a)	che io fossi amato(a)	que je fusse aimé(e)
<i>Past Perfect</i>	<u>1st option</u> que yo hubier a sido amado (a)	<u>2nd option</u> que yo hubies e sido amado (a)	eu tivesse sido amado(a)	che io fossi stato amato(a)	que j'eusse été aimé(e)
	<i>Future tenses</i>				
<i>Future tense</i>	que yo fuere amado(a)		que eu for amado(a)	_____	_____
<i>Future Perfect</i>	que yo hubiere sido amado(a)		que eu tiver sido amado(a)	_____	_____
	<i>Imperative mood</i>				

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	sé amado(a) (tu)	sê amado(a) (tu)	sii amato(a) (tu)	sois aimé(e) (tu)
	sed amado(a) (usted)	sede amado(a) (você)	sia amato(a) (Lei)	soyez aimé(e)s (es) (vous)
	seamos amados(as) (nosotros)	sejamos amados(as) (nós)	siamo amati(e) (noi)	soyons aimé(e)s (nous)
	sed amados(as) (vosotros)	sede amados(as) (vós)	siate amati(e) (voi)	soyez aimé(e)s (es) (vous)
	sed amados(as) (ustedes)	sede amados(as) (vocês)	siano amati(e) (Loro)	soyez aimé(e)s (es) (vous)
	<i>Infinitive</i>			
	ser amado(a)	ser amado(a)	essere amato(a)	être aimé(e)
	<i>Compound infinitive</i>			
	haber sido amado(a)	ter sido amado(a)	essere stato amato(a)	avoir été aimé(e)
	<i>Present Participle (Gerund)</i>			

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian		French
	siendo amado(a)	sendo amado(a)	(gerund) essendo o amato (a)	(part. pres) essere amato (a)	étant aimé(e)
	Compound Present Participle				
	_____	tendo sido amado(a)	_____	_____	_____
	Past Participle (Gerund)				
	amado(a)s	amado(a)s	essendo stato amato (a)i	stato amato (a)i	aimé(e)s ; ayant été aimé(e)s

Here are examples of all the forms of the passive voice used in sentences in the Romance languages. Even though some of the examples below may seem odd to a native speaker, they are given just in order to illustrate the usage of the passive voice:

Present simple:

Sp. La carta **es enviada** por su esposa.

Port. A carta **é enviada** pela sua esposa.

It. La lettera **è inviata** da sua moglie.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Fr. La lettre **est envoyée** par sa femme.

- The letter **is sent** by his wife.



Did you know?

Beira is the 3rd largest city in Mozambique. The city has the regionally important port of Beira, which serves as a gateway for the central interior part of the country, as well as the land-locked nations of Zambia, Zimbabwe and Malawi. Beira was historically founded by the Portuguese in the 19th century.

Present Perfect:

Sp. Últimamente, la carta **ha sido enviada** por su esposa.

Port. Ultimamente, A carta **tem sido enviada** pela sua esposa.

It. Ultimamente, la lettera **è stata inviata** da sua moglie.

Fr. Récemment, la lettre **a été envoyée** par sa femme.

- Lately, the letter **has been sent** by his wife.

Preterite:

Sp. La carta **fue enviada** por su esposa.

Port. A carta **foi enviada** pela sua esposa.

It. La lettera **fu inviata** da sua moglie.

Fr. La lettre **fut envoyée** par sa femme.

- The letter **was sent** by his wife.

Imperfect:

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Sp. Antiguamente, las cartas **eran enviadas** por su esposa.

Port. Antigamente, as cartas **eram enviada** pela sua esposa.

It. Anticamente, le lettere **erano inviate** da sua moglie.

Fr. Anciennement, les lettres **étaient envoyées** par sa femme.

- *In the past, the letters **used to be sent** by his wife.*

Past Perfect:

Sp. Muchas cartas **hubieron sido enviadas** por su esposa.

Port. Muitas cartas **tinham sido enviadas** pela sua esposa.

It. Molte lettere **furono state inviate** da sua moglie.

Fr. Beaucoup de lettres **eurent été envoyées** par sa femme.

- *Many letters **had been sent** by his wife.*

Pluperfect:

Sp. La carta **había sido enviada** por su esposa.

Port. A carta **fora sido enviada** pela sua esposa.

It. La lettera **era stata inviata** da sua moglie.

Fr. La lettre **avait été envoyée** par sa femme.

- *The letter **had been sent** by his wife.*

Future:

Sp. La carta **será enviada** por su esposa.

Port. A carta **será enviada** pela sua esposa.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

It. La lettera **sarà inviata** da sua moglie.

Fr. La lettre **sera envoyée** par sa femme.

- *The letter **will be sent** by his wife.*

Future Perfect:

Sp. Mañana a las nueve, la carta **habrá sido enviada** por su esposa.

Port. Amanhã às nove horas, a carta **terá sido enviada** pela sua esposa.

It. Domani alle nove, la lettera **sarà stata inviata** da sua moglie.

Fr. Demain à neuf heures, la lettre **aura été envoyée** par sa femme.

- *Tomorrow at nine o'clock, the letter **will have been sent** by his wife.*

Conditional:

Sp. La carta **sería enviada** por su esposa.

Port. A carta **seria enviada** pela sua esposa.

It. La lettera **sarebbe inviata** da sua moglie.

Fr. La lettre **serait envoyée** par sa femme.

- *The letter **would be sent** by his wife.*

Conditional Perfect:

Sp. La carta **habría sido enviada** por su esposa.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Port. A carta **teria sido enviada** pela sua esposa.

It. La lettera **sarebbe stata inviata** da sua moglie.

Fr. La lettre **aurait été envoyée** par sa femme.

- *The letter would have been sent by his wife.*

Present Subjunctive:

Sp. **Es urgente que** la carta **sea enviada** por su esposa.

Port. **É urgente que** a carta **seja enviada** pela sua esposa.

It. **È urgente che** la lettera **sia inviata** da sua moglie.

Fr. **Il est urgent que** la lettre **soit envoyée** par sa femme.

- *It is urgent that the letter be sent by his wife.*

Present Perfect Subjunctive:

Sp. **Estoy feliz de que** la carta **haya sido enviada** por su esposa.

Port. **Estou feliz que** a carta **tenha sido enviada** pela sua esposa.

It. **Sono felice che** la lettera **sia stata inviata** da sua moglie.

Fr. **Je suis heureux que** la lettre **ait été envoyée** par sa femme.

- *I am happy that the letter has been sent by his wife.*

Past (Imperfect) Subjunctive:

Sp. **Era urgente que** la carta **fuera enviada** por su esposa.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Port. *Era urgente que* a carta *fosse enviada* pela sua esposa.

It. *Era urgente che* la lettera *fosse inviata* da sua moglie.

Fr. *Il était urgent que* la lettre *fût envoyée* par sa femme.

- *It was urgent for the letter to be sent by his wife.*

Past Perfect Subjunctive:

Sp. *Yo esperaba que* la carta *hubiera/hubiese sido* enviada por su esposa.

Port. *Eu esperava que* a carta *tivesse sido enviada* pela sua esposa.

It. *Io speravo che* la lettera *fosse stata inviata* da sua moglie.

Fr. *J'espérais que* la lettre *eût été envoyée* par sa femme.

- *I hoped that the letter had been sent by his wife.*

Future Subjunctive:

Sp. Si la carta *fuere enviada* por su esposa, él la recibirá.

Port. Se a carta *for enviada* pela sua esposa, ele a receberá.

- If the letter *is sent* by his wife, he will receive it.

Future Perfect Subjunctive:

Sp. Si la carta *hubiere sido enviada* por su esposa cuando llegue, vamos al teatro.

Port. Se a carta *tiver sido enviada* pela sua esposa quando eu chegar, vamos ao teatro.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

- If the letter **has been sent** by my wife by the time I come, we will go to the theatre.

Spanish Passive Voice with **Ser** and **Estar**

One should be able to distinguish between the use of **estar** and **ser** with the past participle in order to understand the passive voice in Spanish.

Estar with past participle

Estar used with past participle expresses a state or a condition or consequence of something that has occurred. Observe the following:

Sp. Cuando entré la ventana **estaba abierta**.

- When I entered the window was open.

Ser with past participle

Ser used with past participle concentrates on an action and usually refers to something which is being done in Spanish. In fact, it forms the real passive construction, which corresponds to English *is* or *was done*. This particular construction is used when the phrase reports the agent, by whom something is done, for example:

Sp. Cuando entré en la ventana **fue abierta por mi esposa**.

- When I entered the window was open by my wife.

French Passive Voice with **de**

In French **de** is normally used with verbs that indicate condition or emotion, for example:

**Did you know?**

Ferrara, a city in northern Italy, is known for its palaces erected by the powerful Renaissance clan, the Este family. The Este Castle (It. Castello Estense), located in the center of the town, is one of the iconic landmarks of Ferrara.

Fr. La mère est aimé **de** ses enfants.

- The mother is loved **by** her children.

La rue est couverte **de** neige.

- The street is covered **with** snow.

Alternatives to Passive Voice in the Romance Languages

It is noticeable that the passive voice is not frequently used in the Romance language and it can be sometimes overused by English speakers. Usually there is a number of equivalent constructions which are more commonly utilized instead in everyday speech in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

- **To convert a passive construction into an active voice.**

If the agent is expressed, the passive voice in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French should be avoided, especially in informal speech, by converting a passive construction into an active one. Observe the following:

	<i>Passive</i>		<i>Active</i>
Spanish	Esta canción fue escrita por un cantante popular.	>	Un popular cantante escribió esta canción.
Portuguese	Esta canção foi escrita por um cantor popular.	>	Um popular cantor escreveu esta canção.

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Italian	Questa canzone è stata scritta da un cantante popolare.	>	Un cantante popolare ha scritto questa canzone.
French	Cette chanson a été écrite par un chanteur populaire.	>	Un chanteur populaire a écrit cette chanson.
	- This song was written by a popular singer.	>	- A popular singer wrote this song.

- **Using an indefinite 3rd person plural active verb (in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian) or indefinite pronoun *on* (in French).**

When the agent is not given, it may be possible to replace the passive voice by using an indefinite 3rd person plural in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian or ***on*** in French meaning “they”, “people” and an active verb.



NOTE: in French, when ***on*** is used, the verb is conjugated in the 3rd person singular.

Sp. ***Me sorprendieron;***

Port. ***Eles me surpreenderam;***

It. ***Mi hanno sorpreso;***

Fr. ***On m'a surprise.***

- I was surprised.

- **Using the reflexive.**

Constructions with the reflexive pronoun ***se*** (in Spanish, Portuguese and French) and ***si*** (in Italian) with the 3rd person singular or plural form of the verb are rather common in the

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Romance languages. However, there are a few points to be remembered.

- A. These constructions are predominantly used when the subject (the agent) by whom the action is fulfilled is not a person or unimportant. In this case the verb agrees with the subject in number:



Did you know?

Senegal is a country in West Africa. The name "Senegal" comes from the Wolof language "Sunuu Gaal", that means "Our Pirogue". It resulted from a misunderstanding between Portuguese sailors and Wolof fishermen in the 15th century.

Sp. ***El español se habla*** en este país;

Port. ***O espanhol se fala*** neste país;

It. ***Lo spagnolo si parla*** in questo paese;

Fr. ***L'espagnol se parle*** dans ce pays.

- *Spanish is spoken in this country.*

Sp. ***Los libros se venden*** en esta tienda;

Port. ***Os livros se vendem*** nesta loja;

It. ***I libri si vendono*** in questo negozio;

Fr. ***Les livres se vendent*** dans ce magasin.

- *The book are sold in this shop.*

- B. When an indirect object is involved, Spanish and Portuguese use a *reflexive construction*, while French utilizes ***on***. Unlike in French, in Spanish and Portuguese, the verbs are used in the 3rd person and agrees with its subject in this case. Study the following:

Sp. ***Se le dieron*** a Ana los pasajes;

CHAPTER 6: VERBS

Port. **Se** deram a Ana os bilhetes de avião;

Fr. **On** a donné les billets d'avion à Ana.

- *Ana was given the flight tickets.*



NOTE:

*In Spanish, if the subject of the sentence is a person, the verb is still used with the reflexive pronoun **se** but in the 3rd person singular only and the personal **a** must be used before this object. For instance:*

Sp. **Se vio a mi hermano** en la calle.

- *My brother was seen in the street.*

Sp. **Se vio a mis amigos** en la calle

- *My friends were seen in the street.*

*Without the personal **a**, the first sentence would designate: my brother sees himself in the street, and the second would be incorrect entirely.*

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

Numbers

Overview

In the Romance languages, numerals can be in four forms, i.e. **cardinals** (e.g. *one, two, three, four*, etc.), **ordinals** (e.g. *first, second, third, fourth*, etc.), **fractions** (e.g. *half, one third*, etc.) and **collectives** (e.g. *a couple, a dozen*).

Cardinal Numbers

The Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French cardinal numbers are as follows:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
0	cero	zero	zero	zéro
1	uno/una	um/uma	uno/una	un/une
2	dos	dois/duas	due	deux
3	tres	três	tre	trois
4	cuatro	quatro	quattro	quatre
5	cinco	cinco	cinque	cinq

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
6	seis	seis	sei	six
7	siete	sete	sette	sept
8	ocho	oito	otto	huit
9	nueve	nove	nove	neuf
10	diez	dez	dieci	dix
11	once	onze	undici	onze
12	doce	doze	dodici	douze
13	trece	treze	treddici	treize
14	catorce	catorze	quattordici	quatorze
15	quince	quinze	quindici	quinze
16	dieciséis	dezesseis	sedici	seize
17	diecisiete	dezessete	diciassette	dix-sept
18	dieciocho	dezoito	diciotto	dix-huit
19	diecinueve	dezenove	diciannove	dix-neuf

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
20	veinte	vinte	venti	vingt
21	veintiuno	vinte e um	ventuno	vingt et un
22	veintidós	vinte e dois/duas	ventidue	vingt-deux
23	veintitrés	vinte e três	ventitré	vingt-trois
24	veinticuatro	vinte e quatro	ventiquattro	vingt-quatre
25	veinticinco	vinte e cinco	venticinque	vingt-cinq
26	veintiséis	vinte e seis	ventisei	vingt-six
27	veintisiete	vinte e sete	ventisette	vingt-sept
28	veintiocho	vinte e oito	ventotto	vingt-huit
29	veintinueve	vinte e nove	ventinove	vingt-neuf
30	treinta	trinta	trenta	trente
31	treinta y uno	trinta e um/a	trentuno	trente et un
32	treinta y dos	trinta e dois/duas	trentadue	trente-deux
33	treinta y tres	trinta e três	trentatré	trente-trois

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
40	cuarenta	quarenta	quaranta	quarante
50	cincuenta	cinquenta	cinquanta	cinquante
60	sesenta	sessenta	sessanta	soixante
70	setenta	setenta	settanta	soixante-dix
80	ochenta	oitenta	ottanta	quatre-vingts
90	noventa	noventa	novanta	quatre-vingt-dix
100	cien(to)	cem	cento	cent
101	ciento uno	cento e um	cento uno (centouno, centuno)	cent un
102	ciento dos	cento e dois	cento due (centodue)	cent deux
103	ciento tres	cento e três	cento tre (centotré)	cent trois
200	doscientos	duzentos	duecento	deux cents
201	doscientos uno	duzentos e um	duecento uno (duecento uno, duecentuno)	deux cent un

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
202	doscientos dos	duzentos e dois	duecento due (duecento due)	deux cent deux
300	trescientos	trezentos	trecento	trois cents
400	cuatrocientos	quatrocentos	quattrocento	quatre cents
500	quinientos	quinhentos	cinquecento	cinq cents
600	seiscientos	seiscentos	seicento	six cents
700	setecientos	setecentos	settecento	sept cents
800	ochocientos	oitocentos	ottocento	huit cents
900	novecientos	novacentos	novecento	neuf cents
1000	mil	mil	mille	mille
1001	mil uno	mil e um	mille uno	mille un
1100	mil cien	mil e cem	mille cento	mille cent
1101	mil ciento uno	mil cento e um	mille cento uno	mille cent un
1200	mil doscientos	mil e duzentos	mille duecento	mille deux cents

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
2 000	dos mil	dois mil	due mila (duemila)	deux mille
10 000	diez mil	dez mil	dieci mila (diecimila)	dix mille
20 000	veinte mil	vinte mil	venti mila (ventimila)	vingt mille
100 000	cien mil	cem mil	cento mila (centomila)	cent mille
200 000	doscientos mil	duzentos mil	duecento mila (duecento mila)	deux cent mille
1 000 000	un millón	um milhão	un milione	un million
2 000 000	dos millones	dois milhões	due milioni	deux millions
10 000 000	diez millones	dez milhões	dieci milioni	dix millions
100 000 000	cien millones	cem milhões	cento milioni	cent millions
1 000 000 000	mil millones	um bilhão	un miliardo	un milliard
2 000 000 000	dos mil millones	dois bilhões	due miliardi	deux milliards
1 000 000 000 000	un billón	um trilhão	un trilione	un billion
2 000 000 000 000	dos billones	dois trilhões	due triloni	deux billions

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

In the Romance languages, Sp. **uno**; Port. **um**; It. **uno**; Fr. **un** agree in gender with a noun. Portuguese **dois** - **two** also has a feminine form, which is **duas**. Observe the following:

Sp. un libro; Port. um livro (dois livros); It. un libro; Fr. un livre. - one book.	Sp. una casa; Port. uma casa (duas casas); It. una casa; Fr. une maison. - one house.
---	---



NOTE:

Spanish and Italian **uno** is predominantly used while counting. It becomes **un** before a masculine noun and **una** in front of a feminine noun. Also, in Spanish, feminine form **una** is not usually shortened before feminine nouns, except when it is used before a noun that begins with a stressed **a-** or **ha-** (e.g. *treinta y un águilas* - thirty one eagles).

However, the feminine form of Sp. **una**; Port. **uma**; It. **una**; Fr. **una** is not widely used before Sp. **mil**; Port. **mil**; It. **mille**; Fr. **mille**. It also should be mentioned that Sp. **un**; It. **un**; Port. **um** and Fr. **un** are not usually used before Sp. **ciento** and **mil**; Port. **cem** and **mil**; It. **cento** and **mille** and Fr. **cent** and **mille** in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.



Did you know?

Punta Arenas is a city in Chile's southernmost Patagonia region. It is the largest city located south of the 46th parallel south. It has a population of about 128 thousand inhabitants. Punta Arenas is a base for Antarctic expeditions.

Study the following:

Sp. **cien** / **mil** libros;
 Port. **cem** / **mil** livros;
 It. **cento** / **mille** libri;
 Fr. **cent** / **mille** livres.
 - a hundred / a thousand books.

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

In the Romance languages Sp. *un millón, un billon*; Port. *um milhão, um bilhão, um trilhão*; It. *un milione (due milioni), un miliardo (due miliardi), un trilione (due trilioni)*; Fr. *un million, un milliard, un billion* take the preposition *de* (in Spanish, Portuguese and French) and *di* (in Italian) before a noun. Below is a table demonstrating this rule:

Spanish	un millón, un billon	+ <i>de</i> (Spanish, Portuguese and French) + <i>di</i> (Italian)	+ noun
Portuguese	um milhão, um bilhão, um trilhão		
Italian	un milione, un miliardo, un trilione		
French	un million, un milliard, un billion		

Sp. *un millón de* euros

Port. *um milhão de* euros

It. *un milione di* euro

Fr. *un million d'*euros

- *a million euros*

Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French use dots to separate thousands while English uses a comma, and a comma is used to mark the decimal in the Romance languages whereas English utilizes a point. Observe the following:

Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French	English
1.250.300 2,50	1,250,300 2.50

Peculiarities of Spelling Rules of Cardinal Numbers in the Romance Languages

Despite a certain number of common rules, each Romance language has its own set of peculiar spelling rules of cardinal numbers, which ought to be regarded individually.

Spanish

Remember that Spanish **cien** changes to **ciento** in numbers above 100 and agrees with the gender of the noun (**cientos**, **cientas**). **Cien** does not change before numbers less than a hundred.

Cien libros - a hundred books	Ciento dos libros - one hundred and two books Doscientas páginas - two hundred pages
---	---

Spanish numbers 16-29 use the form **dieci** or **veinti** and another number combined into one word. The final **-e** in **veinte** - *twenty* is changed to an **-i** when counting.

16 dieciséis	24 veinticuatro
17 diecisiete	25 veinticinco
18 dieciocho	26 veintiséis
19 diecinueve	27 veintisiete
21 veintiuno	28 veintiocho
22 veintidós	29 veintinueve
23 veintitrés	

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

Note that numbers 21, 22, 23 and 24 have a tilde in order to conserve the word stress. Whereas numbers 31-99 are not combined into one and use **y** between numbers, for example:

31	treinta y uno	65	sesenta y cinco
32	treinta y dos	76	setenta y seis
43	cuarenta y tres	87	ochenta y siete
54	cincuenta y cuatro	98	noventa y ocho

Portuguese

Like in Spanish, in Portuguese **cem** changes to **cento** in numbers above 100 and also agrees with the gender of the noun (**centos**, **centas**). **Cem** does not change before numbers less than 101.

Cem livros - a hundred books	Cento e dois livros - one hundred and two books Duzentas páginas - two hundred pages
--	---

However, unlike Spanish, Portuguese numbers 16-19 are combined into one, while 21-99 use **e** - *and* between numbers. Study the following:

16	dezesseis	34	trinta e quatro
17	dezessete	45	quarenta e cinco
18	dezoito	56	cinquenta e seis
19	dezenove	67	sessenta e sete
21	 vinte e um	78	setenta e oito
22	 vinte e dois	89	oitenta e nove

23 vinte e três

91 noventa e um

**NOTE:**

There is no **e** between the thousand and the hundred if there are other numbers after the hundred in Portuguese (e.g. 1,300 - **mil e trezentos**; 1335 - **mil trezentos e trinta e cinco**).

Um bilhão is one thousand million in Brazilian Portuguese, but in European Portuguese it means one million million. The same is for **trilhão**, which is one thousand billion in Brazilian Portuguese, but one million billion in European Portuguese.

Italian

It is notable that Italian numbers 11-99 are combined into one word. Also, the final vowel of **venti, trenta, quaranta, cinquanta, sessanta, settanta, ottanta** and **novanta** is dropped while the numbers **uno** and **otto** are added. When **tre** is added to **venti, trenta, quaranta, cinquanta**, etc. the final **-e** of **tre** is accented (e.g. **ventitré, trentatré, quarantatré, cinquantatré**, etc.). Remember that the final vowel of **ventuno, trentuno, quarantuno, cinquantuno, sessantuno, settantuno, ottantuno** and **novantuno** is dropped before nouns (e.g. **ventun libri**, etc.).

Unlike in Spanish and Portuguese, Italian **cento** is invariable. The numbers that designate tens and units - **one, two**, etc. are usually added but not attached. However, some people attach them. The compounds of **cento** are attached (e.g. **duecento, trecento, quattrocento**, etc.).

French

It must be noted that in numbers 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, 71 the **et** is used and there is no hyphen. Observe the following:

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

21	vingt et un	51	cinquante et un
31	trente et un	61	soixante et un
41	quarante et un	71	soixante et onze

French **et** is not used in 81, 91, 101 and a hyphen is used in 81 and 91. Study the following:

81	quatre-vingt-un	101	cent un
91	quatre-vingt-onze		

If **vingt** and **cent** are multiplied, they become plural (e.g. **quatre vingts, deux cents**). However, if **vingt** and **cent** are followed by another number, they remain singular (e.g. **vingt-huit, cent cinq**).

In French **mille** never becomes plural (e.g. **quatre mille, trois mille soixante**).

Phrases of Approximation Used with Cardinal Numbers

Following are phrases of approximation which are used with cardinal numbers in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
aproximadamente	aproximadamente	approssimativamente	approximativement	<i>approximately</i>
alrededor de	em torno de ao redor de	all'incirca	autour de	<i>about, around</i>

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
más o menos	mais ou menos	più o meno	plus ou moins	more or less
cerca de	perto de	circa	à peu près	near, close to
sobre	sobre	su	environ	about, around
cosa de	coisa de	qualcosa di	chose de	about
cosa así	coisa assim	qualcosa così	quelque chose comme ça	thereabouts
como	como	come	comme	some

Sp. Está situado a **aproximadamente** 15 (quince) kilómetros de la playa;

Port. Está situado a **aproximadamente** 15 (quinze) km da praia;

It. È situato a **approssimativamente** 15 (quindici) chilometri dalla spiaggia;

Fr. Il est situé à **approximativement** 15 (quinze) kilomètres de la plage.

- It is situated at **approximately** 15 kilometres from the beach.

Sp. Doscientos kilómetros o **cosa así**;

Port. Duzentos quilômetros ou **coisa assim**;

It. Duecento chilometri o **qualcosa così**;

Fr. Deux cents kilomètres ou **quelque chose comme ça**.

- *Two hundred kilometres or thereabouts.*



Did you know?

Maceió is the capital city of the coastal state of Alagoas, Brazil. Its nickname is "The Paradise of Waters". The city is home to countless beaches, lakes, natural pools and reefs. Ponta Verde beach is popular for its palm-lined promenade, kiosks and water sports.

Sp. **Más o menos** veinte euros;

Port. **Mais ou menos** vinte euros;

It. **Più o meno** venti euro;

Fr. **Plus ou moins** vingt euros.

- **More or less** twenty euros.

Sp. Tiene **alrededor de** cincuenta años;

Port. Ele tem **em torno de** cinquenta anos;

It. Ha **all'incirca** cinquant'anni;

Fr. Il a **autour de** cinquante ans.

- *He is about fifty years old.*

Use of Cardinal Numbers

In Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French, cardinal numbers are generally used:

- **To count:**

Sp. **uno, dos, tres...**

Port. **um, dois, três...**

It. **uno, due, tre...**

Fr. **un, deux, trois...**

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

- one, two, three...

- **To indicate dates (See Dates p.571):**

In contrast with English, cardinal numbers are used in the Romance languages for days of the month except for the 1st when it is necessary to use the ordinal number: Sp. **el primero**; Port. **o primeiro**; It. **il primo**; Fr. **le premier**. For example:

Sp. **El primero** de mayo;

Port. **O primeiro** de maio;

It. **Il primo** di maggio;

Fr. **Le premier** mai.

- **The first** of May.



NOTE:

A complete date in Spanish consists of the masculine definite article: Sp. **el** + **a cardinal number** + **de** + **month** + **de** + **year** whereas in Portuguese the definite article is not used while forming the date. In Italian and French, however, it is composed of the masculine definite article It. **il**, Fr. **le** + **a cardinal number** + **month** + **year**.

Below is a table demonstrating the formation of a full date in the Romance languages:

Spanish	el + a cardinal number + de + month + de + year
Portuguese	a cardinal number + de + month + de + year
Italian	il + a cardinal number + month + year

French

le + a cardinal number + month + year

Study the following example:

Sp. Hoy es **el 10 de marzo de 2016**;

Port. Hoje é **10 de março de 2016**;

It. Oggi è **il 10 marzo 2016**;

Fr. Aujourd'hui c'est **le 10 Mars 2016**.

- *Today is the first of May.*

• **To tell the time of day (See Time p.576):**

In Spanish and Portuguese and Italian, hours are usually expressed using a form of **ser** (in Spanish and Portuguese) and **essere** (in Italian) + the feminine definite article Sp. **la** or **las**; Port. **a** or **as**; It. **la**, **l'** or **le** (in order to agree with the number of unmentioned **hora** or **horas** (Spanish and Portuguese), **ora** or **ore** (Italian) - hour or hours) + a cardinal number. In Portuguese, the word **hora(-s)** should be added after a cardinal number. In French, hours are normally expressed using the pronoun **il** + **a** form of the verb **être** + a cardinal number + the word **heure(-s)** - **hour(-s)**.



NOTE:

*In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, the appropriate form of the verb **ser** and **essere** must be selected, i.e. the 3rd person singular for "one o'clock" and plural for other hours except in French, where only the 3rd person singular of the verb **être** is used when indicating the time of day.*

The table below shows the idea of how to tell the time of day in the Romance languages:

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

Spanish	ser (es/son) + la/las + a cardinal number
Portuguese	ser (é/são) + a/as + a cardinal number + hora(-s)
Italian	essere (è/sono) + la,l'/le + a cardinal number
French	il + être (est) + a cardinal number + heure(-s)

Observe the following:

Sp. ¿Que hora es? - **Es la una (Son las tres);**

Port. Que horas são? - **É uma hora (São três horas);**

It. Che ora è? (Che ore sono?) - **È l'una (Sono le tre);**

Fr. Quelle heure est-il? - **Il est une heure (Il est trois heures).**

- **What time is it? It is one o'clock (It is three o'clock)**

In the Romance languages, minutes past the hour are usually added by the use of Sp. **y**, Port. **e**, It. **e**, Fr. **et** + *cardinal number*. However, French **et** can be dropped. Minute(-s) is not normally used.

Sp. Son las seis **y** diez;

Port. São seis horas **e** dez;

It. Sono le sei **e** dieci;

Fr. Il est six heures dix.

- **It's six ten (It's ten past six).**

• To indicate age:

In the Romance languages, one must conjugate the verb Sp. **tener**, Port. **ter**, It. **avere**, Fr. **avoir** - *have* to the subject in

order to indicate the age of a person (literally, the number of years he/she has). For example:



Did you know?

Perugia, an Italian city, is known as a university town, with the University of Perugia (over 34,000 students), the University for Foreigners (over 5,000 students), the Music Conservatory of Perugia and others. The city also hosts one of Europe's finest jazz festivals (July).

Sp. **Tengo** veinticinco años;

Port. Eu **tenho** vinte e cinco anos;

It. **Ho** venticinque anni;

Fr. **J'ai** vingt cinq ans.

- *I am twenty five years old.*

Sp. Mi hermano **tiene** treinta años;

Port. Meu irmão **tem** trinta anos;

It. Mio fratello **ha** trent'anni;

Fr. Mon frère **a** trente ans.

- *My brother is thirty years old.*

Ordinal Numbers

Ordinal numbers are numbers that indicate the order of nouns and just like cardinal numbers, ordinal numbers are also adjectives. However, unlike cardinal numbers, ordinal numbers must agree both in number and in gender with the noun they modify in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. Also, ordinal numbers usually precede nouns in the Romance languages. The Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French ordinal numbers are as follows:

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1 st	primero, primera, primeros, primeras	primeiro, primeira, primeiros, primeiras	primo, prima, primi, prime	premier, première, premiers, premières
2 nd	segundo(-a)	segundo(-a)	secondo (-a)	deuxième
3 rd	tercero(-a)	terceiro(-a)	terzo(-a)	troisième
4 th	cuarto(-a)	quarto(-a)	quarto(-a)	quatrième
5 th	quinto(-a)	quinto(-a)	quinto(-a)	cinquième
6 th	sexto(-a)	sexto(-a)	sesto(-a)	sixième
7 th	séptimo(-a)	sétimo(-a)	settimo (-a)	septième
8 th	octavo(-a)	oitavo(-a)	ottavo(-a)	huitième
9 th	noveno(-a)	nono(-a)	nono(-a)	neuvième
10 th	décimo(-a)	décimo(-a)	decimo (-a)	dixième

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
11 th	undécimo (-a)	décimo(-a) primeiro (-a)	undicesim o(-a)/ undecimo	onzième
12 th	duodécimo (-a)	décimo(-a) segundo(-a)	dodicesim o(-a)/ duodecim o	douzième
13 th	decimoterce ro(-a)	décimo(-a) terceiro(-a)	tredicesi mo(-a)/ decimoter zo	treizième
14 th	decimocuár to(-a)	décimo(-a) quarto(-a)	quattordi cesimo (-a)/ decimoqu arto	quatorziè me
15 th	decimoquin to(-a)	décimo(-a) quinto(-a)	quindicesi mo(-a)/ decimoqu into	quinzième
16 th	decimosext o(-a)	décimo(-a) sexto(-a)	sedicesim o(-a)/ decimoses to	seizième
17 th	decimosépti mo(-a)	décimo(-a) sétimo(-a)	diciassett esimo(-a)/ decimose timo	dix- septième
18 th	decimoctav o(-a)	décimo(-a) oitavo(-a)	diciottesi mo(-a)/ decimotta vo	dix- huitième

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
19 th	decimonove no(-a)	décimo(-a) nono(-a)	diciannov esimo(-a)/ decimono no	dix- neuvième
20 th	vigésimo(-a)	vigésimo (-a)	ventesimo (-a)/ vigesimo	vingtième
21 st	vigésimo primero(-a)	vigésimo (-a) primeiro (-a)	ventunesi mo (-a)/ ventesimo primo	vingt et unième
22 nd	vigésimo segundo(-a)	vigésimo(- a) segundo (-a)	ventiduesi mo(-a)	vingt- deuxième
23 rd	vigésimo tercero(-a)	vigésimo (-a) terceiro(-a)	ventitrees imo(-a)	vingt- troisième
24 th	vigésimo cuarto(-a)	vigésimo (-a) quarto(-a)	ventiquatt resimo(-a)	vingt- quatrième
25 th	vigésimo quinto(-a)	vigésimo (-a) quinto (-a)	venticinq uesimo (-a)	vingt- cinquième
26 th	vigésimo sexto(-a)	vigésimo (-a) sexto(-a)	ventiseies imo(-a)	vingt- sixième
27 th	vigésimo séptimo(-a)	vigésimo (-a) sétimo(-a)	ventisette simo(-a)	vingt- septième
28 th	vigésimo octavo(-a)	vigésimo (-a) oitavo (-a)	ventottesi mo (-a)	vingt- huitième

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
29 th	vigésimo noven(-a)	vigésimo (-a) nono(-a)	ventinove simo(-a)	vingt- neuvième
30 th	trigésimo (-a)	trigésimo (-a)	trentesim o(-a)	trentième
31 st	trigésimo primero(-a)	trigésimo (-a) primeiro (-a)	trentunesi mo(-a)	trente et unième
32 nd	trigésimo segundo(-a)	trigésimo (-a) segundo(-a)	trentadue simo(-a)	trente- deuxième
33 rd	trigésimo tercero(-a)	trigésimo (-a) terceiro(-a)	trentatree simo(-a)	trente- troisième
40 th	cuadragési mo(-a)	quadragési mo(-a)	quarantes imo(-a)	quarantiè me
50 th	quincuagési mo(-a)	quincuagés imo(-a)	cinquante simo(-a)	cinquanti ème
60 th	sexagésimo (-a)	sexagésimo (-a)	sessantesi mo(-a)	soixantiè me
70 th	septuagésim o(-a)	septuagési mo(-a)	settantesi mo(-a)	soixante- dixième
80 th	octogésimo (-a)	octogésimo (-a)	ottantesi mo(-a)	quatre- vingtième

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
90 th	nonagésimo (-a)	nonagésim o(-a)	novantesi mo(-a)	quatre- vingt- dixième
100 th	centésimo (-a)	centésimo (-a)	centesimo (-a)	centième
101 st	centésimo primero(-a)	centésimo (-a) primeiro (-a)	centounes imo(-a)	cent- unième
102 nd	centésimo segundo(-a)	centésimo (-a) segundo(-a)	centodues imo(-a)	cent- deuxième
103 rd	centésimo tercero(-a)	centésimo (-a) terceiro(-a)	centotree simo(-a)	cent- troisième
200 th	ducentésim o(-a)	ducentésim o(-a)	duecentes imo(-a)	deux- centième
201 st	ducentésim o primero (-a)	ducentésim o(-a) primeiro (-a)	duecento unesimo (-a)	deux cent unième
202 nd	ducentésim o segundo (-a)	ducentésim o(-a) segundo(-a)	duecento duesimo (-a)	deux cent deuxième
300 th	tricentésim o(-a)	tricentésim o(-a)	trecentesi mo(-a)	trois- centième
400 th	cuadringent ésimo(-a)	quadrigent ésimo(-a)	quattroce ntesimo (-a)	quatre- centième

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
500 th	quingentésimo(-a)	quingentésimo(-a)	cinquecentesimo(-a)	cinq-centième
600 th	sexcentésimo(-a)	seiscentésimo(-a)	seicentesimo(-a)	six-centième
700 th	septingentésimo(-a)	septingentésimo(-a)	settecentesimo(-a)	sept-centième
800 th	octingentésimo(-a)	octingentésimo(-a)	ottocentesimo(-a)	huit-centième
900 th	noningentésimo(-a)	nongentésimo(-a)	novecentesimo(-a)	neuf-centième
1000 th	milésimo(-a)	milésimo(-a)	millesimo(-a)	millième
2 000	dos milésimo(-a)	dois milésimo(-a)	duemillesimo(-a)	deux millième
10 000	diez milésimo(-a)	dez milésimo(-a)	diecimillesimo(-a)	dix millième
100 000	cien milésimo(-a)	cem milésimo(-a)	centomillesimo	cent millième
1 000 000	millonésimo(-a)	millionésimo(-a)	milionesimo(-a)	millionième



Did you know?

Djibouti is a French- and Arabic-speaking country, located in the Horn of Africa. It is home to one of the saltiest bodies of water in the world, the Lake Assal, in the Danakil Desert in Central Djibouti.

Sp. Es **la segunda** casa que compró;

Port. É **a segunda** casa que ela comprou;

It. È **la seconda** casa che ha comprato;

Fr. C'est **la deuxième** maison qu'elle a acheté.

- It is **the second** house that she has bought.

Sp. **Los primeros** días de trabajo;

Port. **Os primeiros** dias de trabalho;

It. **I primi** giorni di lavoro;

Fr. **Les premiers** jours de travail.

- **The first** days of work.



NOTE:

In Spanish, **primero** and **tercero** must drop the **-o** before masculine singular nouns. For instance:

*El **primer** día - the first day;*

*Está en el **tercer** piso - it is on the third floor.*

In Italian, in order to form ordinal numbers, the suffix **-esimo** is added to the cardinal numbers by dropping the final vowel of the cardinal number except for numbers ending in **-tré**.

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

Those cardinal numbers that end in **-tré** must drop their accent -**tre** when **-esimo** is added (e.g. *trentatreesimo*).

In French, when the cardinal number ends in a mute **e**, the **e** must be dropped before adding the suffix **-ième** to form the ordinal number (e.g. *mille* - *millième*). Also, the French **second/ seconde** may replace **deuxième**. In some fixed expression, **tiers** and **tierce** are used in place of **troisième** (e.g. *le tiers-monde* - *the third world*; *une tierce personne* - *a third party*).

In the Romance languages, ordinals are usually used up to the 10th, since the 11th and higher are rather uncommon and leaves a strange impression when used in casual speech. Furthermore, for bigger numbers, it is far more common to utilize the ordinal numbers in speech. Observe the following:

Sp. Vivo en el cuarto (número) **setenta** (not septuagésimo);

Port. Eu moro no quarto (número) **setenta** (not septuagésimo);

It. Io vivo nella stanza (numero) **settanta** (not settantesimo);

Fr. Je vis dans la chambre (numéro) **soixante-dix** (not soixante-dixième).

- *I live in the room (number) **seventy**.*

It is noticeable that if cardinal and ordinal numbers are used together, the cardinal number must precede the ordinal in Spanish, Portuguese and French.



NOTE:

However, in Italian, the ordinals precede the cardinals in this case. For example:

Sp. los **dos primeros** días;

Port. os **dois primeiros** dias;

It. i **primi due** giorni;

Fr. les **deux premiers** jours.

- *the first two days.*

Adverbial Ordinals in the Romance Languages

Most common adverbial forms and combinations of ordinals are as follows in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
primera mente	primeiram ente	primo	première ment	<i>firstly</i>
en primer lugar	em primeiro lugar	in primo luogo	en premier lieu	<i>in the first place</i>

Fractions

Generally, fractions are used to express a portion or part of a whole. To form fractions, the cardinals and the ordinals are used together in the Romance languages. However, there are also special forms, which must be remembered.

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
$\frac{1}{2}$ (a half)	un medio (una media)/ la mitad	um meio (uma meia)/ a metade	un mezzo (una mezza)/ la metà	un demi (une demie)/ la moitié
$\frac{1}{3}$	un tercio (una tercia)	um terço (uma terça)	un terzo (una terza)	un tiers (une tierce)
$\frac{1}{4}$	un cuarto (una cuarta)	um quarto (uma quarta)	un quarto (una quarta)	un quart (une quarte)

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1/5	un quinto (una quinta)	um quinto (uma quinta)	un quinto (una quinta)	un cinquième (une cinquième)
1/6	un sexto (una sexta)	um sexto (uma sexta)	un sesto (una sesta)	un sixième (une sixième)
1/7	un séptimo (una séptima)	um sétimo (uma sétima)	un settimo (una settima)	un septième (une septième)
1/8	un octavo (una octava)	um oitavo (uma oitava)	un ottavo (una ottava)	un huitième (une huitième)
1/9	un noveno (una novena)	um nono (uma nona)	un nono (una nona)	un neuvième (une neuvième)
1/10	un décimo (una décima)	um décimo (uma décima)	un decimo (una decima)	un dixième (une dixième)
2/3	dos tercios (dos tercias)	dois terços (duas terças)	due terzi (due terze)	deux tiers (deux tierces)
3/4	tres cuartos (tres cuartas)	três quartos (três quartas)	tre quarti (tre quarte)	trois quarts (trois quartes)



Did you know?

Valencia is the 3rd largest city in Spain (after Madrid and Barcelona). It lies on Spain's southeastern coast. It is known for its City of Arts and Sciences, with ultra-modern structures, including family attractions, a planetarium, an oceanarium and a botanical collection of plant species native to Valencia.

Sp. Me gustaría **medio** kilo de tomates;

Port. Eu gostaria de **meio** quilo de tomates;

It. Vorrei **mezzo** chilo di pomodori;

Fr. Je voudrais **un demi**-kilo de tomates.

- I would like **half** a kilo of tomatoes.



NOTE:

Sp. **la mitad**; Port. **a metade**; It. **la metà**; Fr. **la moitié** are primarily used in non-arithmetical context. Look at the example:

Sp. Bebieron **la mitad** de la botella;

Port. Eles beberam **a metade** da garrafa;

It. Hanno bevuto **la metà** della bottiglia;

Fr. Ils ont bu **la moitié** de la bouteille.

- They drank **half** the bottle.

In Spanish, from 1/11 onwards fractions are formed by adding **-avo** in Spanish to cardinal numbers. Note that if the number ends in **-a**, only **-vo** must be added whereas in Portuguese **avos** is used with cardinal numbers but not attached to them. In Italian and French ordinal numbers are used in this case. Observe the following:

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
1/12	un doce avo	um doze avos	un dodicesimo	un douzième
1/13	un trece avo	um treze avos	un treddicesimo	un treizième
1/14	un catorce avo	um catorze avos	un quattordicesi mo	un quatorziè me
1/15	un quince avo	um quinze avos	un quindicesimo	un quinzième
1/60	un sesent avo	um sessenta avos	un sessantesimo	un soixantiè me

Arithmetical Operations

It must be remembered that in Spanish and Portuguese the verb **ser** - *to be* is used meaning *equals* whereas in Italian and French the verb It. **fare**; Fr. **faire** - *to make/do* in this case. The following are the basic arithmetical calculations in the Romance languages:

	Spanish	Portugues e	Italian	French
Addition	Adición	Adição	Addizione	Addition
5 + 4 = 9	5 y/ más 4 son 9	5 e/ mais 4 são 9	5 più 4 fa 9	5 et 4 font 9
Subtraction	Sustracción	Subtração	Sottrazione	Soustraction

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
$6 - 2 = 4$	6 menos 2 son 4	6 menos 2 são 4	6 meno 2 fa 4	6 moins 2 font 4
<i>Multipli- cation</i>	<i>Multiplicac- ión</i>	<i>Multiplicaç- ão</i>	<i>Multiplica- zione</i>	<i>Multiplicati- on</i>
$5 \times 10 = 50$	5 multiplica- do por 10 son 50	5 multiplica- do por 10 são 50	5 per 10 fa 50	5 fois 10 font 50
<i>Division</i>	<i>División</i>	<i>Divisão</i>	<i>Divisione</i>	<i>Division</i>
$20 \div 2 = 10$	20 dividido por 2 son 10	20 dividido por 2 são 10	20 diviso 2 fa 10	20 divisé par 2 fait 10

Collective Numbers

Collective numbers are considered to be nouns and are used to express an approximate quantity of something or specify groups in the Romance languages. It is noticeable that in order to form collective numbers, the following suffixes are added to most cardinal numbers in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
-ena	-ena	-ina	-aine

Below are some of the collective numbers:

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
2	un par	um par	una coppia	une paire
10	una decena	uma dezena	una diecina	une dizaine
12	una docena	uma dúzia	una dozzina	une douzaine
15	una quincena	uma quinzena	una quindicina	une quinzaine
20	una veintena	uma vintena	una ventina	une vingtaine
40	una cuarentena	uma quarentena	una quarantina	une quarantaine
100	una centena	uma centena	un centinaio	une centaine
1 000	un millar	um mil	un migliaio	un millier
1 000 000	un millón	um milhão	un milione	un million



NOTE:

Such collective nouns as **a pair**, **a thousand** and **a million** are exceptions and no suffixes are added to them.

Sp. **cuarentena**, Port. **quarentena**, It. **quarantine** and Fr. **quarantaine** also means **quarantine**.

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

When collective numbers are used before a noun, the preposition **de** (in Spanish, Portuguese and French) and **di** (in Italian) is used. Observe the following:

Sp. Ella compró **una docena de huevos**;

Port. Ela comprou **uma dúzia de ovos**;

It. Lei ha comprato **una dozzina di uova**;

Fr. Elle a acheté **une douzaine d'œufs**.

- *She bought a dozen of eggs.*

Multiple Numerals

The Romance languages do not have the English equivalent ending *-fold* (e.g. tenfold). Therefore, the combination of *cardinal number + times* can be used as an alternative:

Spanish	Portuguese	Portuguese	French
cardinal number + veces	cardinal number + vezes	cardinal number + volte	cardinal number + fois

Sp. La población de España es **4 veces** más grande que la de Portugal;

Port. A população da Espanha é **4 vezes** maior que a de Portugal;

It. La popolazione della Spagna è **4 volte** più grande di quella del Portogallo;

Fr. La population de l'Espagne est **4 fois** plus grand que du Portugal.

- *The population of Spain is 4 times bigger than of Portugal.*

Dates

Days

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
lunes	segunda-feira	lunedì	lundi	Monday
martes	terça-feira	martedì	mardi	Tuesday
miércoles	quarta-feira	mercoledì	mercredi	Wednesday
jueves	quinta-feira	giovedì	jeudi	Thursday
viernes	sexta-feira	venerdì	vendredi	Friday
sábado	sábado	sabato	samedi	Saturday
domingo	domingo	domenica	dimanche	Sunday



NOTE:

*In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian the days of the week are used with the definite article in order to express “on a certain day”, but in Portuguese the preposition **em** must be placed in front of the definite article. However, in French no articles are used in this case. Once the article is used before the day of the week, it means an action happens every week (e.g. **mardi** - on Tuesday; **le mardi** - on Tuesdays).*

Sp. Lo veo **el** viernes;

Port. Eu o vejo **na** sexta-feira;

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

It. Lo vedo **il** venerdì;

Fr. Je le vois vendredi (le vendredi - on Fridays).

- *I see him on Friday.*

Months

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
enero	janeiro	gennaio	janvier	<i>January</i>
febrero	fevereiro	febbraio	février	<i>February</i>
marzo	março	marzo	mars	<i>March</i>
abril	abril	aprile	avril	<i>April</i>
mayo	maio	maggio	mai	<i>May</i>
junio	junho	giugno	juin	<i>June</i>
julio	julho	luglio	juillet	<i>July</i>
agosto	agosto	agosto	août	<i>August</i>
septiembre	setembro	settembre	septembre	<i>September</i>
octubre	outubro	ottobre	octobre	<i>October</i>
noviembre	novembro	novembre	novembre	<i>November</i>
diciembre	dezembro	dicembre	décembre	<i>December</i>

In order to say “*in a particular month*”, the prepositions Sp. **en**, Port. **em**, It. **in**, Fr. **en** are used in the Romance languages. Note that in Italian and French, it is also possible to use such combinations as Fr. **au mois de + a month**; It. **nel mese di + a month**. For example:



Did you know?

João Pessoa is the capital of the state of Paraíba in eastern Brazil. It is known as "the city where the sun rises first", as it is the easternmost city in the Americas. The city is also considered "the 2nd greenest in the world (second only to Paris, France).

Sp. Voy a Argentina **en** febrero;

Port. Eu vou para a Argentina **em** fevereiro;

It. Vado in Argentina **in** febbraio (**nel mese di** febbraio);

Fr. Je vais en Argentine **en** février (**au mois de** février).

- I am going to Argentina **in** February.

Remember that the days of the week and the months of the year are not capitalized in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

In the Romance languages dates are usually written as follows:

Sp. ¿Qué día es hoy? - **Hoy es domingo, el 5 de junio;**

Port. Que dia é hoje? - **Hoje é domingo, 5 de junho;**

It. Che giorno è oggi? - **Oggi è domenica, 5 giugno;**

Fr. Quel jour sommes-nous aujourd'hui? - **Aujourd'hui est le dimanche, 5 juin.**

- What day is it today? - Today is Sunday, June 5.



NOTE:

It must be remembered that a complete date in Spanish is formed by placing a day of the week + the masculine definite article: Sp. **el** + a cardinal number + **de** + month + **de** + year. Unlike in Spanish, in Portuguese the definite article is not used while forming the date. In Italian a

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

complete date is composed of a day of the week + a cardinal number + month + year. In French, the definite article must be put before a day of the week while forming the date.

Below is a table showing the formation of complete dates in the Romance languages:

Spanish	<i>day + el + a cardinal number + de + month + de + year</i>
Portuguese	<i>day + a cardinal number + de + month + de + year</i>
Italian	<i>day + a cardinal number + month + year</i>
French	<i>le + day + a cardinal number + month + year</i>

Observe the following:

Sp. Hoy es **jueves, el 10 de marzo de 2016**;

Port. Hoje é **quinta-feira, 10 de março de 2016**;

It. Oggi è **giovedì, 10 marzo 2016**;

Fr. Aujourd'hui c'est **le jeudi, 10 Mars 2016**.

- *Today is Thursday, March 10, 2016.*

Ways to Ask the Date in the Romance Languages

In order to ask what day it is today one can use the following phrases in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¿Cuál es la fecha de hoy?	Qual é a data de hoje?	Qual è la data di oggi?	Quelle est la date d'aujourd'hui?	<i>What date is it today?</i>
¿Qué día es hoy?	Que dia é hoje?	Che giorno è oggi?	Quel jour est-ce aujourd'hui?	<i>What day is it today?</i>
¿A cómo estamos?		Che giorno siamo oggi?	Quel jour sommes-nous aujourd'hui?	<i>What day is it today?</i>
¿A cuántos estamos hoy?		Quanto ne abbiamo oggi?		<i>What day is it today?</i>

Seasons

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
el verano	o verão	l'estate	l'été	<i>summer</i>
el otoño	o outono	l'autunno	l'automne	<i>fall</i>
el invierno	o inverno	l'inverno	l'hiver	<i>winter</i>
la primavera	a primavera	la primavera	le printemps	<i>spring</i>

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

Observe the prepositions used with the seasons in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
en verano	no verão	in estate	en été	<i>in summer</i>
en otoño	no outono	in autunno	en automne	<i>in fall</i>
en invierno	no inverno	in inverno	en hiver	<i>in winter</i>
en la primavera	na primavera	in primavera	au printemps	<i>in spring</i>



NOTE:

*In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian the word spring is feminine while in French all the seasons are masculine. Note that Spanish and Portuguese **primavera** is used with the preposition **en** (Spanish), **em** (Portuguese) and the feminine definite article. Whereas French **printemps** is used with the preposition **au** instead of **en**.*

Time

The phrase for *What time is it?* is expressed as follows in the Romance languages:

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¿Qué horas?	Que horas são?	Che ora è?/ Che ore sono?	Quelle heure est-il?	What time is it?

In Spanish and Portuguese and Italian, hours are usually expressed using a form of **ser** (in Spanish and Portuguese) and **essere** (in Italian) + the feminine definite article Sp. **la** or **las**; Port. **a** or **as**; It. **la**, **l'** or **le** (in order to agree with the number of unmentioned *hora* or *horas* (Spanish and Portuguese), *ora* or *ore* (Italian) - *hour* or *hours*) + a cardinal number. In Portuguese the word **hora(-s)** - *hour(-s)* and **minutos** - *minutes* are optional.

In French, *hours* are normally expressed using the pronoun **il** + a form of the verb **être** + a cardinal number + the word **heure(-s)** - *hour(-s)*.

Remember that in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, the appropriate form of the verb **ser** and **essere** must be selected, i.e. the 3rd person singular for "one o'clock" and plural for other hours except in French where only the 3rd person singular of the verb **être** is used when indicating the time of day.

The table below shows the idea of how to tell the time of day in the Romance languages:

Spanish	ser (es/son) + la/las + a cardinal number
Portuguese	ser (é/são) + a/as + a cardinal number + (hora(-s))
Italian	essere (è/sono) + la,l'/le + a cardinal number
French	il + être (est) + a cardinal number + heure(-s)

Observe the following:

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

Sp. ¿Que hora es? - **Es la una (Son las tres);**

Port. Que horas são? - **É uma (hora) (São três horas);**

It. Che ora è? (Che ore sono?) - **È l'una (Sono le tre);**

Fr. Quelle heure est-il? - **Il est une heure (Il est trois heures).**

- **What time is it? It is one o'clock (It is three o'clock)**

It is worth mentioning that in Spain, Portugal, Brazil, Italy and France, as well as other countries where Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French are spoken, the 24-hour time is used widely. Study the entire 24-hour system:

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	
1	Es la una	É uma (hora)	È l'una	Il est une heure	It's 1 A.M.
2	Son las dos	São duas (horas)	Sono le due	Il est deux heures	It's 2 A.M.
3	Son las tres	São três (horas)	Sono le tre	Il est trois heures	It's 3 A.M.
4	Son las cuatro	São quatro (horas)	Sono le quattro	Il est quatre heures	It's 4 A.M.
5	Son las cinco	São cinco (horas)	Sono cinque	Il est cinq heures	It's 5 A.M.
6	Son las seis	São seis (horas)	Sono le sei	Il est six heures	It's 6 A.M.

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	
7	Son las siete	São sete (horas)	Sono le sette	Il est sept heures	<i>It's 7 A.M.</i>
8	Son las ocho	São oito (horas)	Sono le otto	Il est huit heures	<i>It's 8 A.M.</i>
9	Son las nueve	São nove (horas)	Sono le nove	Il est neuf heures	<i>It's 9 A.M.</i>
10	Son las diez	São dez (horas)	Sono le dieci	Il est dix heures	<i>It's 10 A.M.</i>
11	Son las once	São onze (horas)	Sono le undici	Il est onze heures	<i>It's 11 A.M.</i>
12	Son las doce	São doze (horas)	Sono le dodici	Il est douze heures	<i>It's 12 A.M.</i>
13	Son las trece	São treze (horas)	Sono le tredici	Il est treize heures	<i>It's 1 P.M.</i>
14	Son las catorce	São catorze (horas)	Sono le quattordici	Il est quatorze heures	<i>It's 2 P.M.</i>
15	Son las quince	São quinze (horas)	Sono le quindici	Il est quinze heures	<i>It's 3 P.M.</i>
16	Son las dieciséis	São dezasseis (horas)	Sono le sedici	Il est seize heures	<i>It's 4 P.M.</i>

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	
17	Son las diecisiete	São dezassete (horas)	Sono le diciassette	Il est dix-sept heures	<i>It's 5 P.M.</i>
18	Son las dieciocho	São dezoito (horas)	Sono le diciotto	Il est dix-huit heures	<i>It's 6 P.M.</i>
19	Son las diecinueve	São dezanove (horas)	Sono le diciannove	Il est dix-neuf heures	<i>It's 7 P.M.</i>
20	Son las veinte	São vinte (horas)	Sono le venti	Il est vingt heures	<i>It's 8 P.M.</i>
21	Son las veintiuno	São vinte e um (horas)	Sono le ventuno	Il est vingt et une heures	<i>It's 9 P.M.</i>
22	Son las veintidós	São vinte e duas (horas)	Sono le ventidue	Il est vingt-deux heures	<i>It's 10 P.M.</i>
23	Son las veintitrés	São vinte e três	Sono le ventitré	Il est vingt-trois heures	<i>It's 11 P.M.</i>
24	Son las veinticuatro	São vinte e quatro	Sono le ventiquattro	Il est vingt-quatre heures	<i>It's 12 P.M.</i>

In the Romance languages, minutes are usually added to the hours by the use of Sp. *y*, Port. *e*, It. *e*, Fr. *et* + cardinal number. However, French *et* can be dropped. Minute(-s) is not normally used.

Sp. Son las seis *y* diez (minutos);

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

Port. São seis (horas) **e** dez (minutos);

It. Sono le sei **e** dieci (minuti);

Fr. Il est six heures dix (minutes).

- *It's six ten (It's ten past six).*

The half hour or 15 minutes can be expressed in two ways in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. Study the following:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
cuarto or quince	quarto or quinze	quarto or quindici	quart or quinze	quarter or fifteen
media or treinta	meia or trinta	mezza (mezzo) or trenta	demie or trente	half or thirty



NOTE:

In Brazilian Portuguese, **quinze** - fifteen is used rather than **quarto** - a quarter. In Italian, the masculine indefinite article is used before **quarto**.

Sp. Son las tres y **cuarto** (Son las tres y **quince**);

Port. São três (horas) e **quinze**;

It. Sono le tre e **un quarto** (Sono le tre e **quindici**);

Fr. Il est trois heures et **quart** (Il est trois heures **quinze**).

- *It's 3:15*



Did you know?

Ravenna is a city in Northern Italy. It is known for its late Roman and Byzantine architecture. It was the capital of the Western Roman Empire from 402 until 476 - the collapse of the empire. Afterwards, the city was the center of Byzantine (East Roman) power in Italy from 584 to 751.

Sp. Son las cinco y **media**
(Son las tres y **treinta**);

Port. São cinco (horas) e **meia** (São cinco (horas) e **trinta**);

It. Sono le cinque e **mezza** (**mezzo**) (Sono le cinque e **trenta**);

Fr. Il est trois heures et **demie** (Il est trois heures **trente**).

- It's 5:30

Normally, after the half hour, the minutes must be subtracted from the next hour by utilizing the words Sp. **menos**; Port. **para as** (or **pras**); It. **meno**; Fr. **moins** - *minus*. Observe the following:

Sp. Son las cuatro **menos** cuarto;

Port. São quinze **para as (pras)** quatro;

It. Sono le quattro **meno** un quarto;

Fr. Il est quatre heures **moins** quart.

- It's quarter to four.

Sp. Son las ocho **menos** veinte;

Port. São vinte **para as (pras)** oito;

It. Sono le otto **meno** venti;

Fr. Il est huit heures **moins** vingt.

- It's twenty to eight.

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

In order to express A.M. or P.M., the following expressions are used in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
de la mañana	da manhã	di mattina	du matin	<i>in the morning (A.M.)</i>
de la tarde	da tarde	del pomeriggio	de l'après-midi	<i>in the afternoon (from 12 P.M. to 5 P.M.)</i>
de la noche	da noite	di sera	du soir	<i>in the evening (5 P.M. till late P.M.)</i>

Sp. Es la una **de la mañana**;

Port. É uma (hora) **da manhã**;

It. È l'una **di mattina**;

Fr. Il est une heure **du matin**.

- *It's one in the morning.*

Sp. Son las dos **de la tarde**;

Port. São duas (horas) **da tarde**;

It. Sono le due **del pomeriggio**;

Fr. Il est deux heures **de l'après-midi**.

- *It's two in the afternoon.*

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

Sp. Son las ocho **de la noche**;

Port. São oito (horas) **da noite**;

It. Sono le otto **di sera**;

Fr. Il est huit heures **du soir**.

- *It's eight in the evening.*

In order to ask the question: *At what time?* one should say the following:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¿A qué hora?	A que horas?	A che ora?	À quelle heure?	<i>At what time?</i>

While answering such question, it is necessary to utilize the preposition **a** (in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian) and **à** (in French) - *at* before the specified time or such words as:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a mediodía	ao meio-dia	a mezzogiorno	à midi	<i>at noon</i>
a (la) medianoche	à meia-noite	a mezzanotte	à minuit	<i>at midnight</i>

Sp. ¿A qué hora llega el tren? - El tren llega **a mediodía**;

Port. A que horas chega o trem? - O trem chega **ao meio-dia**;

It. A che ora arriva il treno? - Il treno arriva **a mezzogiorno**;

Fr. A quelle heure arrive le train? - Le train arrive **à midi**.

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

- At what time does the train arrive? - The train arrives **at noon**.



NOTE:

It is noticeable that the preposition **a** must be articulated with an appropriate feminine definite article while expressing the particular time in Portuguese and Italian. In Spanish, this preposition does not articulate with the feminine definite article. In French, there is no article used at all when expressing time.

Portuguese	Italian
a + as = à/às	a + le = all'/alle

Sp. ¿A qué hora llega el tren? - El tren llega **a la una** (*a las* dos);

Port. A que horas chega o trem? - O trem chega **à uma** (*às* duas);

It. A che ora arriva il treno? - Il treno arriva **all'una** (*alle* due);

Fr. A quelle heure arrive le train? - Le train arrive **à une heure** (*à deux heures*).

- At what time does the train arrive? - The train arrives at one (at two) o'clock.



Did you know?

French is the official language of the Democratic Republic of the Congo (DRC). It is accepted as the *lingua franca* to facilitate communication among the different ethnic groups. As many as 250 ethnic groups have been identified.

The expression *sharp* would be Sp. **en punto**; Port. **em ponto**; It. **in punto**; Fr. **précises** (or **juste**). Study the following:

Sp. Me levanto a las siete **en punto**;

Port. Eu levanto às sete **em ponto**;

It. Mi alzo alle sette **in punto**;

CHAPTER 7: NUMBERS, TIME AND DATE

Fr. Je me lève à sept heures **précises** (*juste*).

- *I get up at seven A.M. sharp.*

In order to express the time when an event starts and ends, one must use the following structure in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
desde las (horas) hasta las (horas) or de (horas) a (horas)	das (horas) até às (horas)	dalle (ore) alle (all') (ore)	de (heures) à (heures)	<i>from</i> (hour) to (hour)

Sp. La lección será **desde las** nueve **hasta las** doce (horas);

(or La lección será **de** nueve **a** doce);

Port. A lição será **das** nove **até às** doze (horas);

It. La lezione sarà **dalle** nove **alle** dodici (ore);

Fr. La leçon sera **de** neuf **à** douze (heures).

- *The lesson will be **from** nine **to** twelve.*

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Overview

Like the English prepositions “*with*”, “*of*”, “*to*”, “*from*”, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French prepositions are used to express many types of connections or relationships between two words or different parts of the sentence by means of connecting them together. They normally demonstrate direction, location, time, purpose, means, cause and so on. Prepositions can be simple (consisting of only one word), and compound (consisting of several words). For example:

<i>Simple preposition</i>	<i>Compound preposition</i>
Sp. La casa de mi padre; Port. A casa do meu pai; It. La casa di mio padre; Fr. La maison de mon père. - <i>The house of my father.</i>	Sp. Cerca de mi casa; Port. Perto da minha casa; It. Vicino a casa mia; Fr. Près de ma maison. - <i>Near my house.</i>

It is notable that Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French simple and compound prepositions must be followed by a noun or noun group, a pronoun or an infinitive, in contrast to English which utilizes the gerund (with *-ing* ending). Study the following:

Sp. Yo juego **con mi hijo**. > Yo juego **con él**.

Port. Eu jogo **com meu filho**. > Eu jogo **com ele**.

It. Io gioco **con mio figlio**. > Io gioco **con lui**.

Fr. Je joue **avec mon fils**. > Je joue **avec lui**.

- *I play with my son.* > *I play with him.*

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS



Did you know?

Málaga is a city on southern Spain's Costa del Sol (Coast of the Sun) of the Mediterranean. The internationally known painter and sculptor Pablo Picasso and the actor Antonio Banderas were born in Málaga.

Sp. **Antes de** dormir, leo un libro.

Port. **Antes de dormir**, eu leio um livro.

It. **Prima di dormire**, leggo un libro.

Fr. **Avant de dormir**, je lis un livre.

- **Before sleeping** I read a book.

In the Romance languages, the prepositions, especially the most common ones, have several meanings in English, and the right translation usually depends on the context in the phrase. Therefore, the correct uses of different prepositions must be memorized and learned through practice since there are no strict rules. It is advised to learn each combination individually by means of using a dictionary to find more examples of the uses of prepositions.

Simple Prepositions

Below is a list of the most frequent simple prepositions in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a	a	a	à	<i>to, at, in</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
de	de	di	de	of, from
en	em	in	en, dans	in, by, into
—	—	da	chez	to, at the house of, at someone's place
para	para	per	pour	for, in order to
por	por	da	par	by
con	com	con	avec	with
sin	sem	senza	sans	without
contra	contra	contro	contre	against
entre	entre	tra	entre	between, among
sobre	sobre	su	sur	about, on, upon, above, over

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
frente a	perante/ em frente a	davanti a	devant	<i>before, in the presence of</i>
bajo (debajo de)	sob (debaixo de)	sotto	sous	<i>under</i>
desde	desde	da	depuis	<i>since, from</i>
durante	durante	durante	pendant (durant)	<i>during</i>
hasta	até	fino a	jusqu'à	<i>until, toward</i>
hacia	para	verso	vers	<i>towards</i>
excepto, salvo	exceto, salvo	eccetto, salvo	excepté, sauf	<i>except</i>
según, conforme a	segundo, conforme	secondo, conforme, (conforme mente a)	selon, conformé ment à, d'après	<i>according to</i>

Uses of Simple Prepositions

Preposition a (Sp. Port. It.), à (Fr.)

The preposition Sp., Port., It. **a** and Fr. **à** is very common and usually occurs in a wide spectrum of contexts and is used:

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

- to express motion or direction *in, at* or *to* some place:

Sp. Ellos van **al** cine mañana;

Port. Eles vão **ao** cinema amanhã;

It. Loro vanno **al** cinema domani;

Fr. Ils vont **au** cinéma demain.

- They go **to** the cinema tomorrow.



NOTE:

In Portuguese, the preposition **para** can also be used to indicate movement towards, but **a** expresses a short stay while **para** means a rather long or even permanent stay. Study the following:

A	Para
<p>Ele vai a Lisboa em viagem de turismo</p> <p>- He is going to Lisbon in tourist trip (and he is coming back soon).</p>	<p>Ele vai para Lisboa</p> <p>- He is going to Lisbon (and he does not know when he is coming back).</p>

- to connect one verb to an infinitive (See also Use of the Infinitive p.469):

In this case this preposition is not translated directly. For example:

Sp. Ella empieza **a** cantar;

Port. Ela começa **a** cantar;

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

It. Lei comincia **a** cantare;

Fr. Elle commence **à** chanter.

- *She starts to sing.*

Below is a list of the most frequently used verbs which require the use of the preposition Sp., Port., It. **a** and Fr. **à** before adding an infinitive.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
ayudar a	ajudar a	aiutare a	aider à	<i>to help to</i>
aprender a	aprender a	apprendere a, imparare a	apprendre à	<i>to learn how to</i>
enseñar a	ensinar a	insegnare a	enseigner à	<i>to teach how to</i>
comenzar a, empezar a	começar a	cominciare a iniziare a	commencer à	<i>to begin to, to start to</i>
ponerse a	pôr-se a	mettersi a	se mettre à	<i>to start to, to set about</i>
invitar a	convidar a	invitare a	inviter à	<i>to invite to</i>
prepararse a	preparar-se <u>para</u>	prepararsi a	se préparer à	<i>to prepare to</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
dedicarse a	dedicar-se a	dedicarsi a	se consacrer à, se vouer à	to dedicate oneself to
decidirse a	decidir-se a	decidersi a	se décider à	to decide to, to make up one's mind
volver a	voltar a	tornare a	retourner à	to do something again
acostumbrarse a	acostumar-se a	abituarsi a	s'habituer à	to become accustomed to
obligar a	obrigar a	obbligare a	obliger à	to oblige



NOTE:

In Portuguese, the verb **preparar-se** is used with the preposition **para**.

- to imply manner or how something is performed (*with, by, on*):

Sp. Voy **a** pie;

Port. Vou **a** pé;

It. Vado **a** piedi;

Fr. Je vais **à** pied.

- I go **on** foot.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Here are some of the most common phrases expressing manner, which are used along with the preposition **a (à)** in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a ciegas	a cegas	alla cieca	à l'aveuglette	<i>blindly</i>
a caballo	a cavalo	a cavallo	à cheval	<i>on horseback</i>
a lápiz	a lápis	a matita	au crayon	<i>in pencil</i>
a mano	a mão	a mano	à la main	<i>by hand</i>
a pie	a pé	a piedi	à pied	<i>on foot</i>
a su manera	a sua maneira	alla sua maniera	à sa manière	<i>in one's own way</i>
but: en alta/baja voz	but: em voz alta/baixa	but: ad alta/a bassa voce	à voix haute/basse	<i>loudly/in a low voice</i>

Sp. Hablan **en alta voz**;

Port. Eles falam **em voz alta**;

It. Parlano **ad alta voce**;

Fr. Ils parlent **à voix haute**.

- They speak **loudly**.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS



NOTE:

However, French **de** must be used while expressing the noun modified by the indefinite article in adverbial clauses of manner (e.g. Ils parlent **d'une** voix inquiétante - They speak in an anxious voice; Elle chante **d'une** manière parfaite - She sings perfectly). And if the noun is not modified by an indefinite article, the preposition **avec** is always used (e.g. Ils parlent **avec** **anxiété** - They speak anxiously).

Remember that means of mechanical transportation are normally expressed by the preposition Sp. **en**; Port. **de**; It. **in**; Fr. **en** in the Romance languages. For instance:

Sp. Voy **en** coche hoy;

Port. Eu vou **de** carro hoje;

It. Vado **in** macchina oggi;

Fr. Je vais **en** voiture aujourd'hui.

- I go **by** car today.



NOTE: However, there are some means of travel which require the preposition **à** in French:

French	English
à cheval	<i>on horseback</i>
à moto	<i>by motorcycle</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

The preposition Sp., Port., It. **a** and Fr. **à** is also used to indicate a manner that is specifically a style:

Sp. Jardín **a** la francesa;

Port. jardim **à** francesa;

It. Giardino **alla** francese;

Fr. Jardin **à** la française.

- *French-style garden.*

• to introduce phrases which state location:

Here are some common expression which are used with the preposition **a** (**à**) when indicating location in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
al aire libre	ao ar livre	all'aria aperta	à l'extérieur; en plein air	<i>in the open air</i>
a la derecha	à direita	a destra	à droite	<i>on the right</i>
a la izquierda	à esquerda	a sinistra	à gauche	<i>on the left</i>
al sol	ao sol	al sole	au soleil	<i>in the sun</i>
a lo lejos	ao longe	<u>da</u> lontano	au loin	<i>in the distance</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS



NOTE:

Unlike in Spanish, Portuguese and French, in Italian the expression in the distance is used with the preposition **da**.

- to link such repeated words as:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
cara a cara, frente a frente	cara a cara, frente a frente	faccia a faccia, petto a petto	face à face	face to face
uno a uno	um a um	uno a uno	un à un	one by one
poco a poco	pouco a pouco	a poco a poco	peu à peu	little by little

- to express time and age (*at*):

Sp. Llegué a **las nueve** ayer;

Port. Cheguei às **nove horas** ontem;

It. Sono venuto alle **nove** ieri;

Fr. Je suis venu à **neuf heures** hier.

- I came at **nine o'clock** yesterday.

Sp. A **los catorce años** se convirtió en una bailarina;

Port. Aos **quatorze anos**, ela se tornou uma bailarina;

It. A **quattordici anni** è diventata una ballerina;

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Fr. À *quatorze ans*, elle est devenue une ballerine.

- *At age fourteen she became a ballerina.*

It is also used in such phrases of time as:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a principio (s) de	no princípio de	in/al/sul principio di	au début de	at the beginning of
a mediados de, a mitad de	no meado de, no meio de	a metà di, nel mezzo di	au milieu de	in the middle of
a finales de	no final de	alla fine di	à la fin de	at the end of
a la llegada de	a chegada de	all'arrivo di	à l'arrivée de	upon the arrival of



NOTE:

The following irregularities must be remembered. In Portuguese the majority of the phrases from the list are used with the preposition **no** rather than **a**. Italian phrase **nel mezzo di** has the preposition **nel**. The Italian phrase **in/al/sul principio di** can be used with any of the mentioned above prepositions.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

However, the preposition **a** (Sp., Port., It.) and **à** (Fr.) has several specific cases of usage in Spanish, Italian and French, which will be considered below:

The Spanish personal preposition a

In Spanish, the preposition **a** must be used to introduce a known person as the direct object of the verb, for example:

Ella no conoce **a** Ana.

- *She does not know Ana.*

When the person is not known, the preposition **a** can be dropped:

No necesito conductor.

- *I don't need a driver.*

Italian a and French à prepositions

There is a number of peculiarities of the Italian preposition **a** and French **à** in terms of usage, which are:

- Apart from expressing direction to a place, Italian and French preposition **a** (It.) and **à** (Fr.) can also be used to indicate location when used with names of places. It is advisable to learn Italian and French prepositions of places in context. Study the following:

It. Studiamo **a**ll'università;

Fr. Nous étudions **à** l'université.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

- *We study **at** the university.*

It. Mia figlia è **a** scuola;

Fr. Ma fille est **à** l'école.

- *My daughter is **in** school.*

In Spanish and Portuguese the prepositions **en** (Sp.) and **em** (Port.) are used in order to indicate location (**See Preposition en** (Sp.), **em** (Port.), **in** (It.), **en**, **dans** (Fr.) p. 549):

Sp. Estudiamos **en** la universidad;

Port. Nós estudamos **na** universidade.

- *We study **at** the university.*

Sp. Mi hija está **en** la escuela;

Port. Minha filha está **na** escola.

- *My daughter is **in** school.*

- The preposition **a** (It.) and **à** (Fr.) is also used before the names of cities and towns in Italian and French. Study the following:

It. Vado **a** Madrid;

Fr. Je vais **à** Madrid.

- *I go **to** Madrid.*

However, before the names of regions, countries, continents, or islands in Italian and French the prepositions **in**

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

(It.) and **en, dans** (Fr.) must be used (See **Preposition en** (Sp.), **em** (Port.), **in** (It.), **en, dans** (Fr.) p.630). For instance:

It. Vado **in** Francia;

Fr. Je vais **en** France.

- *I go **to** France.*

It. Vanno **in** Sicilia;

Fr. Ils vont **en** Sicile.

- *They go **to** Sicily.*

However, there are some islands that are used with the preposition **à** in French and must be memorized:

French	
à la Réunion	à Chypre
à la Martinique	à Madagascar
au Groenland	à Cuba

In French the preposition **en** is normally used before names of feminine countries or continents (most of the names of countries that end in a mute **e** are feminine, except **le Mexique - Mexico**); while the preposition **au** is used before masculine countries. Furthermore, the French preposition **aux** (*au + les*) and Italian **negli** (*in + gli*) are used before Fr. **États-Unis**; It. **Stati Uniti** - *The United States*. Study the following:

En

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Fr. Elle va en France (Allemagne, Espagne, Italie, Europe, Afrique etc.). - <i>She goes to France (Germany, Spain, Italy, Europe, Africa etc.)</i>
Au
Fr. Elle va au Mexique (Canada, Danemark, Portugal etc.). - <i>She goes to Mexico (Canada, Denmark, Portugal etc.)</i>
Aux/ Negli
Fr. Elle va aux États-Unis; It. Lei va negli Stati Uniti. - <i>She goes to the United States.</i>



NOTE:

*It is remarkable that in Spanish and Portuguese the prepositions **a** (Sp.) and **a**, **para** (Port.) are used in all these cases mentioned above. Observe the following:*

Sp. Voy **a** Francia (Alemania, España, Italia, Europa, África etc.);

Port. Vou **a/para** a França (Alemanha, Espanha, Itália, Europa, África etc.).

- *I go to France (Germany, Spain, Italy, Europe, Africa etc.)*.

Sp. Ellos van **a** Sicilia;

Port. Eles vão **a/para** a Sicília.

- *They go to Sicily.*

Sp. Ella va **a** México (Canadá, Dinamarca, Portugal etc.);

Port. Ela vai **para** o México (Canadá, Dinamarca, Portugal etc.).

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

- *She goes to Mexico (Canada, Denmark, Portugal etc.).*

Sp. Ella va **a** los Estados Unidos;
Port. Ela vai **para** os Estados Unidos.
- *She goes to the United States.*

- The French preposition **à** can be used to mean *with*. Don't forget that **à** must be contracted with the definite article. For example:

Fr. du thé **au** lait.

- *tea **with** milk.*

Fr. l'homme **aux** yeux blue.

- *the man **with** blue eyes.*



NOTE:

In this case, in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, the prepositions **de/con** (Sp.), **de/com** (Port.) and **con** (It.) are used in order to express with. Look at the same examples:

Sp. té **con** leche;

Port. chá **com** leite;

It. tè **con** latte.

- *tea with milk.*

Sp. el hombre **de/con** ojos azules;

Port. o homem **de/com** olhos azuis;

It. l'uomo **con gli** occhi azzurri.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

- *the man with blue eyes.*

- In French the preposition **à** can also introduce an infinitive and express the function of the preceding noun or the use of an object in the phrase or result or tendency. It corresponds to the English *for* and the infinitive is the equivalent of the gerund (-ing). Observe the following:

Fr. une salle **à** manger.

- *a room **for** dining (a dining room).*

Fr. une machine **à** écrire.

- *a machine **for** writing (a typewriter).*

Fr. une voiture **à** vendre.

- *a car **for** sale.*



NOTE:

*In Spanish, Portuguese and Italian, the prepositions **de** or **en** (Sp.), **de**, **em** or **a** (Port.) and **da** (It.) are used in order to express for:*

*Sp. una casa **de** comidas;*

*Port. uma sala **de** jantar;*

*It. una sala **da** pranzo.*

- *a room **for** dining (a dining room).*

*Sp. una máquina **de** escribir;*

*Port. uma máquina **de** escrever;*

*It. una macchina **da** scrivere.*

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

- a machine **for** writing (a typewriter).

Sp. un coche **en** venta;

Port. um carro **à** venda;

It. una macchina **da** vendere.

- a car **for** sale.

The best way to know which preposition to use in Spanish and Portuguese is to learn such expressions by heart.

- French **à** also expresses an infinitive which denotes some sort of action. The preposition **à** is used after an adjective in this case:

Fr. C'est facile **à** comprendre.

- *It's easy to understand.*

Fr. C'est difficile **à** prononcer.

- *It's difficult to pronounce.*



NOTE:

In Spanish and Portuguese, the prepositions **de** is used in this case. In Italian, the preposition **da** must be used in order to introduce an infinitive that conveys the action. For instance:

Sp. Es fácil **de** entender;

Port. É fácil **de** entender;

It. È facile **da** capire.

- *It's easy to understand.*

Sp. Es difícil **de** hablar;

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

*Port. É difícil **de** falar;
It. È difficile **da** parlare.
- It's difficult to speak.*

*Preposition **de** (Sp. Port. Fr.), **di** (It.)*

This preposition is also rather frequent and has a lot of meanings. It can be used:

- **to express possession or ownership (of):**

The preposition **de** (Sp. Port. Fr.), **di** (It.) usually corresponds to the English apostrophe s ('s) or the preposition *of*:

Sp. París es la capital **de** Francia;
Port. Paris é a capital **da** França;
It. Parigi è la capitale **della** Francia;
Fr. Paris est la capitale **de** la France.
- *Paris is the capital **of** France.*

Sp. Es el coche **de** su padre;
Port. É o carro **de** seu pai;
It. È la macchina **di** suo padre;
Fr. C'est la voiture **de** son père.
- *It is his father's car.*

- **to indicate a place of origin and departure (from):**

This preposition is usually equivalent to the English *from*:

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Sp. ¿De donde eres? - Yo soy **de** Ecuador;

Port. De onde você é? - Eu sou **do** Equador;

It. Di dove sei? - Sono **dell'**Ecuador (but Da dove vieni? - Vengo **dall'**Ecuador);

Fr. D'où es-tu? - Je suis **de** l'Equateur.

- *Where are you from? - I am **from** Ecuador.*

Sp. Diana llegó **de** Chile;

Port. Diana chegou **do** Chile;

It. Diana è arrivata **dal** Cile;

Fr. Diana est arrivé **du** Chili.

- *Diana arrived **from** Chile.*

- **with geographical names (of):**

Sp. La isla **de** Groenlandia;

Port. A ilha **da** Groenlândia;

It. L'isola **della** Groenlandia;

Fr. L'île **du** Groenland.

- *The island **of** Greenland.*

Sp. La ciudad **de** Londres;

Port. A cidade **de** Londres;

It. La città **di** Londra;

Fr. La ville **de** Londres.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

- *The city **of** London.*

- to imply cause (*from, with, of, in*):

Sp. Estamos cansados **de** jugar al fútbol;

Port. Estamos cansados **de** jogar futebol;

It. Siamo stanchi **di** giocare a calcio;

Fr. Nous sommes fatigués **de** jouer au football.

- *We are tired **of** playing soccer.*

Sp. Estoy loco **de** amor;

Port. Estou louco **de** amor;

It. Sono pazzo **d'**amore;

Fr. Je suis fou **d'**amour.

- *I am crazy **in** love.*

- to qualify or describe a noun which is used before another noun (*of*):

Sp. Una taza **de** té;

Port. Uma xícara **de** chá;

It. Una tazza **di** tè;

Fr. Une tasse **de** thé.

- *A cup **of** tea.*

Sp. El jugo **de** manzana;

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Port. O sumo **de** maçã;

It. Il succo **di** mela;

Fr. Le jus **de** pomme.

- *Apple juice.*

- **to compare things (*than*) (See Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs p.58):**

It can also corresponds to English *of* or *in*, specifically in superlative phrases:

Sp. Ella es la más bella **del** grupo;

Port. Ela é a mais bela **do** grupo;

It. Lei è la più bella **del** gruppo;

Fr. Elle est la plus belle **du** groupe.

- *She is the most beautiful **of** the group.*

- **to express the material from which something is made:**

Sp. una casa **de** madera;

Port. uma casa **de** madeira;

It. una casa **di/in** legno;

Fr. une maison **de/en** bois.

- *A wooden house.*



NOTE:

Italian preposition **di** and **in**; and French **de** and **en** are interchangeable and either preposition can be used to express the

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

*material from which something is made. However, It. **di** and Fr. **de** are normally used to point out the sort of object a person is talking about, while It. **in** and Fr. **en** underline the material from which something is made.*

Observe the following:

It. calzature di pelle;	It. calzature in pelle;
Fr. chaussures de cuir.	Fr. chaussures en cuir.
- leather shoes.	- shoes made of leather.

- to connect one verb to an infinitive or an object (See also Use of the Infinitive p.469).

The preposition **de** (Sp. Port. Fr.), **di** (It.) is not translated. Study the following:

Sp. Terminó **de** leer el libro;

Port. Ele terminou **de** ler o livro;

It. Ha finito **di** leggere il libro;

Fr. Il a fini **de** lire le livre.

- He finished reading the book.

Below is a list of the most common verbs which take the preposition **de** (Sp. Port. Fr.), **di** (It.) before an infinitive.

Since Spanish is closer to Portuguese, and as Italian shares more similarities with French in this particular point, it is reasonable to introduce them in pairs:

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish and Portuguese verbs

Spanish	Portuguese	English
abstenerse de	abster-se de	<i>to abstain from</i>
aburrirse de	aborrecer <u>com</u>	<i>to be bored by/with</i>
acabar de	acabar de	<i>to have just done smth.</i>
acordarse de	acordar-se de, lembrar-se de	<i>to remember</i>
admirarse de	admirar-se de	<i>to admire</i>
advertir de	advertir de	<i>to warn</i>
acusar de	acusar de	<i>to accuse of</i>
alegrarse de	alegrar-se de	<i>to be happy, pleased to</i>
alejarse de	alongar-se de	<i>to get away from</i>
apartarse de	apartar-se de	<i>to keep away from</i>
aprovecharse de	aproveitar-se de	<i>to take advantage of</i>
arrepentirse de	arrepender-se de	<i>to regret</i>
asustarse de	recear-se de	<i>to be afraid of</i>
avergonzarse de	envergonhar-se de	<i>to be ashamed of</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	English
cansarse de	cansar-se de	<i>to tire, get tired of</i>
convencer de	convencer de	<i>to convince</i>
convencerse de	convencer-se de	<i>to become convinced</i>
cuidar de	cuidar de	<i>to take care</i>
dejar de	deixar de	<i>to stop, to fail to</i>
desistir de	desistir de	<i>to give up, go back on one's word</i>
dissuadir de	dissuadir de	<i>to dissuade from</i>
encargarse de	encarregar-se	<i>to take charge of</i>
guardarse de	guardar-se de	<i>to take care, be careful not to</i>
hartarse de	fartar-se de	<i>to be fed up with</i>
jactarse de, presumir de, vanagloriarse de	jactar-se de, presumir de, vangloriar-se de	<i>to boast of,</i>
lamentarse de, quejarse de	lamentar-se, queixar-se de	<i>to complain about</i>
ocuparse de	ocupar-se	<i>to be busy with</i>
olvidarse de	esquecer-se de	<i>to forget to</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	English
parar de, terminar de, cesar de	parar de, terminar de, cessar de	to stop
preocuparse de	preocupar-se de	to be concerned about
tener ganas de	ter vontade de	to feel like doing something
tener intención de	ter intenção de	to intend
tratar de	<u>tentar</u>	to try to
tratarse de	tratar-se de	to be about, be a question of
vengarse de	vingar-se de	to avenge oneself for, take vengeance for



NOTE:

In Portuguese, the verb **aborrecer** is used with the preposition **com**. The verb **tentar** is used without prepositions.

Italian and French verbs

Italian	French	English
accettare di	accepter de	to accept
accontentarsi di	se contenter de	to content oneself with

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Italian	French	English
accorgersi di	s'apercevoir de	<i>to become aware of</i>
accusare di	accuser de	<i>to accuse of</i>
ammettere di	admettre de	<i>to admit</i>
arrischiarsi di	risquer de	<i>to risk</i>
arrossire di	rougir de	<i>to blush</i>
astenersi di	s'abstenir de	<i>to abstain from</i>
augurare di	souhaiter de	<i>to wish</i>
avere bisogno di	avoir besoin de	<i>to need</i>
avere paura di, temere di	avoir peur de, craindre de	<i>to be afraid of, to fear</i>
avere voglia di	avoir envie de	<i>to feel like doing something</i>
avere l'intenzione di,	avoir l'intention de	<i>to intend to do something</i>
avere ragione di	avoir raison de	<i>to be right to do smth.</i>
aver torto di	avoir tort de	<i>to be wrong to do smth.</i>
avvertire di	avertir de	<i>to warn</i>
cercare di provare a	essayer de, tâcher de	<i>to try</i>
cessare di	cesser de	<i>to cease</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Italian	French	English
chiedere di	demander de	<i>to ask</i>
comandare di	commander de	<i>to order</i>
consigliare di	conseiller de	<i>to advise</i>
consolarsi di	se consoler de	<i>to take comfort</i>
convincere di	convaincre de	<i>to convince</i>
credere di	croire de	<i>to believe, count oneself</i>
decidere di	décider de	<i>to decide</i>
<u>detestare</u>	détester de	<i>to hate, to detest</i>
dimenticare di	oublier de	<i>to forget</i>
dire di	dire de	<i>to say, to tell</i>
dispensare di	dispenser de	<i>to release from</i>
domandare di	demander de	<i>to ask</i>
dubitare di	douter de	<i>to doubt</i>
evitare di	éviter de	<i>to avoid</i>
 fingere di, far finta di	 feindre de, faire semblant de	<i>to pretend</i>
finire di	finir de	<i>to finish</i>
giurare di	jurer de	<i>to swear</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Italian	French	English
godere di, fruire di	jouir de, profiter de	<i>to enjoy, take an advantage of</i>
impedire di	empêcher de	<i>to prevent</i>
indignarsi per	s'indigner de	<i>to be indignant</i>
infischiarci di	se foutre de, (s'en foutre de)	<i>to not give a hoot about</i>
lagnarsi di, lamentarsi di	se plaindre de	<i>to complain</i>
mancare di	manquer de	<i>to lack</i>
meravigliarsi di, stupirsi di	s'émerveiller de, s'étonner de	<i>to be surprised</i>
meritare di	mériter de	<i>to deserve</i>
minacciare di	menacer de	<i>to threaten someone to do smth.</i>
occuparsi di	s'occuper de	<i>to busy oneself with</i>
offrire di	offrir de	<i>to offer</i>
ordinare di	ordonner de	<i>to order</i>
pensare di	penser à	<i>to plan</i>
pentirsi di	se repentir de	<i>to regret</i>
permettere di	permettre de	<i>to permit</i>
persuadare di	persuader de	<i>to persuade</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Italian	French	English
pregare di	prier de, supplier de	<i>to beg</i>
privare di	priver de	<i>to deprive</i>
proibire di	prohiber	<i>to prohibit</i>
promettere di	promettre de	<i>to promise</i>
progettare di, aver in vista di	projeter de, envisager de	<i>to plan on doing smth</i>
proporre di	proposer de	<i>to propose</i>
proporsi di	se proposer de	<i>to intend to, be about to</i>
raccomandare di	recommander de	<i>to recommend</i>
rendersi conto di	se rendre compte de	<i>to realize</i>
ricordare di, ricordarsi di	se souvenir de, se rappeler de	<i>to remember</i>
rifiutare di	refuser de	<i>to refuse</i>
rimproverare di	reprocher de	<i>to reproach for</i>
rincrescere di	regretter de	<i>to regret</i>
ringraziare di	remercier de	<i>to thank</i>
ripetere di	répéter de	<i>to repeat</i>
risolvere di	résoudre de	<i>to resolve</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Italian	French	English
<u>sbagliare a</u>	se tromper	<i>to make a mistake</i>
<u>sbrigarsi a</u>	se dépêcher de, se hater de	<i>to hurry</i>
scommettere di	parier de	<i>to bet</i>
scusarsi di	s'excuser de	<i>to apologize</i>
sforzarsi di	s'efforcer de	<i>to try hard to do</i>
smettere di	arrêter de	<i>to stop</i>
sognare di	rêver de	<i>to dream of</i>
sperare di	espérer de	<i>to hope</i>
stancarsi di	se fatiguer de	<i>to get tired of</i>
sospettare di	soupçonner de	<i>to suspect</i>
suggerire di	suggérer de	<i>to suggest</i>
supplicare di	supplier de	<i>to beseech, to beg,</i>
tentare di	tenter de	<i>to attempt</i>
terminare di	terminer de	<i>to end, to stop</i>
vantarsi di	se vanter de	<i>to flaunt, to brag about</i>
vergognarsi di	se gêner	<i>to be ashamed of</i>
vietare di, interdire dal,	défendre de, interdire de	<i>to forbid</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Italian	French	English
—	venir de	<i>to have just done smth.</i>



NOTE:

Unlike French, Italian doesn't have the verb meaning *to have just done*, instead the following expression is used: **aver/essere appena fatto** (e.g. **Sono appena arrivato** - *I have just arrived*).

Italian verbs **provare**, **sbagliare** and **sbrigarsi** are used with the preposition **a**. The verb **indignarsi** is used with **per**. The verb **detestare** is used without prepositions.

The following is a list of verbs which take the preposition **de** (Sp. Port. Fr.), **di** (It.) before an object (noun or pronoun).

Spanish and Portuguese verbs

Spanish	Portuguese	English
abusar de	abusar de	<i>to abuse, overindulge in</i>
acordarse de	acordar-se de, lembrar-se de	<i>to remember</i>
adueñarse de	apanhar de	<i>to seize, take possession of</i>
advertir de	advertir de	<i>to warn</i>
alejarse de	alongar-se de	<i>to go away from</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	English
apartarse de	apartar-se de	<i>to keep away from</i>
apiadarse de, compadecerse de	apiedar-se de, compadecer-se de	<i>to feel sorry for</i>
apoderarse de	apoderar-se de	<i>to take possession of</i>
aprovecharse de	aproveitar-se de	<i>to take advantage of</i>
asustarse de	recear-se de	<i>to be afraid of</i>
avisar de	avisar de	<i>to inform, let know</i>
bajar de	baixar de	<i>to get out of, get off</i>
burlarse de, mofarse de	burlar de, zombar de, caçoar de	<i>to make fun of, mock at</i>
cambiar de	<u>mudar</u>	<i>to change</i>
cansarse de	cansar-se de	<i>to tire of, get tired of</i>
carecer de	carecer de	<i>to lack</i>
constar de	constar de	<i>to consist of</i>
cubrir de	cobrir de	<i>to cover with</i>
cuidar de	cuidar de	<i>to take care of</i>
depender de	depender de	<i>to depend on</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	English
despedirse de	despedir-se de	<i>to say good-bye</i>
despojarse de	despojar-se de	<i>to take off (clothes)</i>
desposeer de	desapropriar de	<i>to dispossess</i>
despreocuparse de	<u>despreocupar-se com</u>	<i>to neglect</i>
desconfiar de	desconfiar de	<i>to discredit, suspect</i>
desdecirse de	desdizer-se de	<i>to deny one's words or promise</i>
desistir de	desistir de	<i>to give up</i>
desligarse de	desligar-se de	<i>to dispense, acquit</i>
dimitir de	demitir de	<i>to dismiss</i>
disculparse de	desculpar-se de	<i>to apologize for</i>
disfrutar de	desfrutar de	<i>to enjoy</i>
disponer de	dispor de	<i>to dispose</i>
dudar de	duvidar de	<i>to doubt</i>
enamorarse de	<u>apaixonar-se por</u>	<i>to fall in love with</i>
encogerse de	<u>encolher-se</u>	<i>to shrug (shoulders)</i>
enterarse de	inteirar-se de	<i>to find out about</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	English
escapar de	escapar de	<i>to escape from</i>
estar loco de	estar louco de	<i>to be crazy with (joy)</i>
fiarse de	confiar em	<i>to trust</i>
forrar de	forrar de <u>encobrir</u>	<i>to line/cover with</i>
fugarse de	fugir de	<i>to flee from</i>
gozar de	gozar de <u>aproveitar</u>	<i>to enjoy</i>
gritar de (dolor)	gritar de (dor)	<i>to scream in (pain)</i>
hablar de	falar de	<i>to speak about</i>
helarse de	congelar-se de	<i>to feel cold, to freeze</i>
informar de	informar de	<i>to inform about</i>
jactarse de, presumir de, vanagloriarse de	presumir de, vangloriar-se de	<i>to boast of</i>
llenar de	encher de	<i>to fill with</i>
morir de	morrer de	<i>to die from (laughter)</i>
mudar de	mudar de	<i>to change (clothes)</i>
mudarse de casa	mudar-se de casa	<i>to move (house)</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	English
ocuparse de	ocupar-se	<i>to be busy with</i>
oír hablar de	ouvir falar de	<i>to hear about</i>
olvidarse de	esquecer-se de	<i>to forget</i>
perder de vista	perder de vista	<i>to lose sight of</i>
pintar de	pintar de	<i>to paint (color)</i>
ponerse de acuerdo	pôr-se de acordo	<i>to come to an agreement</i>
preocuparse de	preocupar-se de	<i>to be concerned about</i>
lamentarse de, quejarse de	lamentar-se, queixar-se de	<i>to complain about</i>
reírse de	rir de	<i>to laugh at</i>
retractarse de	retratar-se de	<i>to retract (take back) one's words</i>
saber de	saber de	<i>to know about</i>
saber de memoria	saber de cor	<i>to memorize, know by heart</i>
salir de	sair de	<i>to leave (from)</i>
saltar de	saltar de	<i>to jump for (happiness)</i>
servir de	servir de	<i>to serve as</i>
servirse de	servir-se de	<i>to use</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	English
sorprenderse de	surpreender-se de	be surprised, amazed at
tratarse de	tratar-se de	to be about, deal with
vengarse de	vingar-se de	to revenge oneself for, take vengeance for
vestir de	vestir de	to dress in



NOTE:

In Portuguese, the verb **despreocupar-se** is used with the preposition **com**. The verb **apaixonar-se** is used with **por**. **Confiar** is used with **em**. The verbs **mudar** and **aproveitar** are used without prepositions.

Italian and French verbs

Italian	French	English
accorgersi di	s'apercevoir de	to notice
approssimarsi	s'approcher de	to get closer to
avere bisogno di	avoir besoin de	to need
avere paura di	avoir peur de	to be afraid of
avere voglia di	avoir envie de	to want someone or something badly
dimenticarsi di, dimenticare di	oublier de	to forget

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Italian	French	English
dipendere da	dépendre de	<i>to depend on</i>
dubitare di	douter de	<i>to doubt</i>
ereditare di	hériter de	<i>to inherit</i>
fare a meno di	se passer de	<i>to do without</i>
farsi beffe di	se moquer de	<i>to make fun of</i>
fidarsi di	<u>se fier à</u>	<i>to trust</i>
godere di, fruire di	jouir de, profiter de	<i>to enjoy, take an advantage of</i>
indignarsi di	s'indigner de	<i>to be indignant</i>
innamorarsi di	tomber amoureux de	<i>to fall in love</i>
lamentarsi di	se plaindre de	<i>to complain</i>
mancare di	manquer de	<i>to lack</i>
meravigliarsi di, stupirsi di	s'émerveiller de, s'étonner de	<i>to be surprised</i>
nutrirsi di	se nourrir de	<i>to feed on</i>
occuparsi di	s'occuper de	<i>to take care of</i>
partire di	partir de	<i>to leave</i>
ricordarsi di	se souvenir de, se rappeler de	<i>to remember</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Italian	French	English
ridere di	rire de	<i>to laugh at</i>
riguardarsi da	se méfier de	<i>to beware of</i>
servirsi di	se servir de	<i>to make use of</i>
soffrire di	souffrir de	<i>to suffer from</i>
trattare di	traiter de	<i>to deal with, treat</i>

- with time and dates (See Time and Dates p.538):



NOTE:

*In the Romance languages the preposition **de** (Sp. Port. Fr.), **di** (It.) can also be used in several time expressions.*

Observe the following:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
de mañana, por la mañana	de manhã, pela manhã	di/la mattina	le matin, dans la matinée	<i>in the morning</i>
de día, por el día	de dia,	di giorno	de jour, dans la journée	<i>in the daytime</i>
de tarde, por la tarde	de tarde	di sera	le soir, dans la soirée	<i>in the evening</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
de noche, <u>por la</u> noche	à noite	di notte	<u>la</u> nuit	at night
de madrugada	de madrugada	di buon'ora	de bonne heure	early
<u>en</u> verano	<u>no</u> verão	d'estate, <u>in</u> estate	<u>en</u> été	in the summer
<u>en</u> invierno	<u>no</u> inverno	d'inverno, <u>in</u> inverno	<u>en</u> hiver	in the winter
<u>en</u> primavera	<u>na</u> primavera	di/ <u>in</u> primavera	<u>au</u> printemps	in the spring
<u>en</u> otoño	<u>no</u> outono	d'autunno	<u>en</u> automne	in the fall



NOTE:

With some phrases, in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French different prepositions are used, especially with seasons. In Italian the preposition **in** is interchangeable with **di** in phrases designating seasons. Some French time expressions require the definite article and some Spanish and Portuguese phrases require a preposition used along with the definite article before a noun. All the irregularities must be learned by heart.

Sp. **De mañana** (**Por la mañana**) mi marido lee a menudo el periódico;

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Port. **De manhã** (*Pela manhã*) meu marido lê frequentemente o jornal;

It. **Di mattina** (*La mattina*) mio marito legge spesso il giornale;

Fr. **Le matin** (*Dans la matinee*) mon mari lit souvent le journal.

- *My husband often reads the newspaper **in the morning**.*

• in the expressions with indefinite pronouns:

The preposition **de** (Sp. Port. Fr.), **di** (It.) is normally used before an adjectives and after the following indefinite pronouns:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
algo	algo	qualcosa	quelque chose	<i>something</i>
nada	nada	niente, nulla	rien	<i>nothing</i>



NOTE:

*In Spanish and Portuguese the indefinite pronoun **algo** does not require the preposition **de** before an adjective.*

Sp. Tengo algo nuevo;

Port. Eu tenho algo novo;

It. Ho qualcosa **di** nuovo;

Fr. J'ai quelque chose **de** nouveau.

- *I have something new.*

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Sp. No hay nada **de** especial;

Port. Não há nada **de** especial;

It. Non c'è niente **di** speciale;

Fr. Il n'y a rien **de** spécial.

- *There is nothing special.*

• to construct adverbial phrases and idioms:

The most common adverbial phrases and idioms used with the preposition **de** (Sp. Port. Fr.), **di** (It.) in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French are:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
de vez en cuando	de vez em quando	di quando in quando	de temps en temps	<i>from time to time</i>
de golpe, de repente	de repente	di colpo, d'un tratto	d'un coup	<i>suddenly</i>
de buena gana, de buen grado	de boa vontade, de bom grado	di buona voglia, di buona volontà, di buon grado	de bonne grâce	<i>willingly</i>
de mala gana	de má vontade, de mau grado	di mala voglia, di mala volontà	de mauvaise grâce	<i>reluctantly</i>
de nuevo	de novo	di nuovo	de nouveau	<i>again</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Sp. Lo hizo **de buena gana**;
Port. Ele fez isso **de boa vontade**;
It. Lo ha fatto **di buona voglia**;
Fr. Il l'a fait **de bonne grâce**.
- He did it **willingly**.

*Preposition **en** (Sp.), **em** (Port.), **in** (It.), **en**, **dans** (Fr.)*

This common preposition has a range of meanings and usually means in, by, into or about, which depends on the context. It is used:

- to denote location (**in**, **at**, **on**):

This preposition usually means inside of or at a place.

Sp. Las llaves están **en** la bolsa;
Port. As chaves estão **na** bolsa;
It. Le chiavi sono **nella** borsa;
Fr. Les clés sont **dans** le sac.
- The keys are **in** my bag.

*French Prepositions **en/dans***

There are two French prepositions **en** and **dans**, which are used to indicate location. The difference between them is that

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

dans is normally used with an article, while **en** is never used with an article. For instance:

French	
Je suis dans la voiture . - <i>I am in the car.</i>	Je suis en classe . - <i>I am in class.</i>

The preposition **dans** denotes place more precisely than **en** and designates *inside*.

French	
dans la ville . - <i>in the city, inside the city.</i>	en ville . - <i>in city, to city.</i>
dans la classe d'espagnol . - <i>in Spanish class.</i>	en classe . - <i>in class.</i>

Moreover, in French the preposition **en** is normally used before names of feminine countries or continents (most of the names of countries that end in a mute e are feminine, except **le Mexique** - Mexico);

Fr. Il va **en** Espagne.
- *He goes to Spain.*

The French preposition **dans** must be used with names of continents which are qualified by another phrase:

Fr. Il va **dans** le Nord de l'Amérique.
- *He goes to North of America.*

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Nevertheless, the preposition **en** may be used before names of continents in spoken languages:

Fr. Il va **en** Amérique du Nord.

- He goes **to** North America.

Remember that if the name of a country is used with a complement, the form **dans le (l', la, les)** must be used rather than **en**.

Fr. Vous allez **dans le Nord de l'Espagne**.

- You go **to the North of Spain**.

It should be mentioned that before names of islands the preposition can differ in French. Thus, below is the list of some common islands which require the preposition **en**:

French	
en Islande - in Iceland	en Haïti - in Haiti
en Sardaigne - in Sardinia	en Nouvelle-Guinée - in New Guinea

It is quite interesting that **en** is usually used before names of American states and Canadian provinces, when those names end in **e** or **ie** in French (including *Ontario* and *Saskatchewan*). Observe some of the examples:

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

French	
en Floride - <i>in Florida</i>	en Ontario - <i>in Ontario</i>
en Californie - <i>in California</i>	en Nouvelle-Écosse <i>in Nova Scotia</i>

In all other cases, the forms **dans le**, **dans le territoire de**, **dans la province de** or **dans l'État de** are normally used, for example:

French	
dans le territoire du Nunavut - <i>in the territory of Nunavut</i>	dans la province du Québec - <i>in the province of Quebec</i>



NOTE:

But **au Nouveau-Mexique** - *New Mexico*,
au Nouveau-Brunswick - *New Brunswick*,
à Terre-Neuve - *Newfoundland*.

• with means of mechanical transportation (*by*)

Sp. **en**; Port. **de**; It. **in**; Fr. **en** (sometimes **par**) are used with means of mechanical transportation in order to express how someone is moving around in the Romance languages. These prepositions are equivalent to *by* in English. For instance:

Sp. Voy **en** carro hoy;

Port. Eu vou **de** carro hoje;

It. Vado **in** macchina oggi;

Fr. Je vais **en** voiture aujourd'hui.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

- I go **by** car today.

There are some of the most common phrases which describe means of transportation and which require the preposition Sp. **en**; Port. **de**; It. **in**; Fr. **en**:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
en auto/ coche/ carro	de automóvel/ carro	in automobi le/ macchina	en auto/ voiture	by car
en autobús	de autocarro (port.); ônibus (bras.)	in autobus	en autobus	by bus
en taxi	de táxi	in taxi	en taxi	by taxi
en avión	de avião	in aereo	en avion	by plane/ air
en metro	de metro	in metro	en métro	by the undergr ound
en barco	de barco	in nave	en bateau	by boat
en tren	de comboio (port.); trem (bras.)	in treno	en train and par le train (when arriving)	by train

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS



NOTE:

*In Portuguese, the preposition **em** is used when modes of transportation are specified, which is equivalent to English on or in, for example:*

*Port. **no** carro do meu amigo
- in my friend's car*

*Port. **no** autocarro (Braz. Port. ônibus)
número 5
- in the number 5 bus*

*Port. **no** comboio (Braz. trem) da 1 hora
- on the 1 o'clock train*



NOTE:

*In French **par** must be used with the definite article in comparison with **en**, which doesn't require it.*

In order to express how a person enters or leaves transport, the following verbs can be used in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
subirse en montar en	subir em; montar em	montare in/a/su	monter en/dans (le,la)	to get on

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
bajar de; descender de	descer de; sair de	scendere da	descendre de	<i>to get off; to descend from</i>
embarcarse en	embarcar em	imbarcarsi in	embarquer dans	<i>to embark</i>
desembarcarse de	desembarcar de	sbarcare da	débarquer de	<i>to disembark from</i>



NOTE:

The Spanish and Portuguese **montar** is likely to be used in the phrase: Sp. **montar a caballo**; Port. **montar a cavalo** - to mount a horse.

And Spanish **descender** and Portuguese **descer** are used in the meaning: Sp. **descender de una montaña**; Port. **descer de uma montanha** - to climb down (descend) a mountain.

Sp. **subirse en (embarcarse en)** un carro (un tren, un autobús, un barco etc.);

Port. **subir em (embarcar em)** um carro (um trem, um ônibus, um barco etc.);

It. **montare in (imbarcarsi in)** una macchina (un treno, un autobús, una nave etc.);

Fr. **monter en/dans (embarquer dans)** (une) voiture (un train, un autobús, un bateau etc.);

- *to get on (to embark) a car (a train, a bus, a ship etc.).*

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Sp. **bajar de** (**desembarcarse de**) un coche (un tren, un autobús, un barco etc.);

Port. **sair de** (**desembarcar de**) um carro (um trem, um ônibus, um barco etc.);

It. **scendere da** (**sbarcare da**) una macchina (un treno, un autobús, una nave etc.);

Fr. **descendre d'** (**débarquer d'**) une voiture (un train, un autobús, un bateau etc.);

- *to get off a car (a train, a bus, a ship etc.).*

➤ to indicate time (in):

Sp. **en**; Port. **de**; It. **in**; Fr. **en** are used to indicate the time after which a thing is done or completed. It corresponds to English *in*. Observe the following:

Sp. Lo hará **en** dos horas;

Port. Ele o fará **em** duas horas;

It. Lo farà **in** due ore;

Fr. Il le fera **en** deux heures.

- *He will do it in two hours.*

To mean *within* regarding the time during which an action can be done is expressed by using the following prepositions in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
dentro de	dentro de	fra	dans (+ article)	<i>within</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Sp. Puedo hacerlo **dentro de** una hora;

Port. Eu posso fazê-lo **dentro de** uma hora;

It. Posso farlo **fra** un'ora;

Fr. Je peux le faire **dans** l'heure.

- *I can do it **within** an hour.*

Sp. **en**; Port. **em**; It. **in**; Fr. **en** are also used to indicate when something is going to happen:

Sp. Voy a la Argentina **en** el verano;

Port. Eu vou para a Argentina **no** verão;

It. Vado in Argentina **in** estate;

Fr. Je vais en Argentine **en** été.

- *I go to Argentina **in** the summer.*

➤ in certain expressions:

Sp. **en**; Port. **de**; It. **in**; Fr. **en** are used in the following idioms and expressions:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
en broma	<i>but: por/de</i> brincadeira; <i>por</i> graça;	<i>but: per</i> scherzo;	en plaisantant; en riant; en badinant	as a joke
en casa	em casa	in casa	<i>but: à la</i> maison; <i>chez</i> soi	at home

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
en caso de	em caso de	in caso di	en cas de	<i>in the event of; in case</i>
en efecto	em efeito	in effetti; infatti	en effet	<i>in fact; in effect</i>
en realidad	na realidade	in realtà	en réalité	<i>in reality</i>
en lugar de; en vez de	em lugar de; em vez de	in luogo di; invece di	<i>but: au lieu de; à la place</i>	<i>instead of</i>
en breve; en resumen;	em resumo;	in breve; in succinto	en bref; en résumé en abrégé	<i>in short</i>
en conclusión	em conclusão	in conclusione	en conclusion	<i>in conclusion</i>
en suma	em suma	insomma	en somme	<i>in sum</i>
en pocas (breves) palabras	em poucas (breves) palavras;	in poche parole	en quelques mots; en peu de mots	<i>in a few words</i>
en total	no total	in totale	<i>but: au total</i>	<i>in total</i>

*Verbs with Spanish **en** and Portuguese **em***

The prepositions Sp. **en** and Port. **em** are used with particular verbs in Spanish and Portuguese. Below is the list of the most common verbs that require Sp. **en** and Port. **em** before an infinitive:

Spanish	Portuguese	English
terminar en	acabar em	<i>to end up in</i>
creer en	acreditar em	<i>to believe in</i>
confiar en	confiar em	<i>to trust to</i>
consentir en	concordar em	<i>to consent to</i>
consistir en	consistir em	<i>to consist of</i>
convenir en	convir em	<i>to agree to</i>
dudar en	duvidar em hesitar em	<i>to hesitate to</i>
empeñarse en	empenhar-se em	<i>to insist on, be determined to</i>
hacer bien en	fazer bem em	<i>to be right to</i>
hacer mal en	fazer mal em	<i>to do wrong to</i>
insistir en	insistir em	<i>to insist on</i>
interesarse en	interessar-se em	<i>to be interested in</i>
molestarse en	incomodar-se em	<i>to bother about</i>
pensar en	pensar em	<i>to think about</i>
persistir en	persistir em	<i>to persist in</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	English
tardar en	tardar em	<i>to take a long time to</i>
vacilar en	vacilar em	<i>to hesitate over</i>

The following is a list of verbs which take the preposition Sp. **en** and Port. **em** before an object (noun or pronoun).

Spanish	Portuguese	English
apoyarse en	apoiar-se em	<i>to lean on/against</i>
confiar en	confiar em	<i>to trust, rely on</i>
consistir en	consistir em	<i>to consist of</i>
convertirse en	tornar-se em	<i>to become, to turn into</i>
entrar en	entrar em	<i>to enter (into)</i>
esperar en	esperar em	<i>to wait in/at</i>
fijarse en	fixar-se em	<i>to notice, to draw attention</i>
meterse en	meter-se em envolver-se em	<i>to get involved in</i>
pensar en	pensar em	<i>to think about</i>
reparar en	reparar em	<i>to notice</i>
vender en	vender em	<i>to sell for</i>
volver en	voltar em	<i>to return in</i>
volver en sí	voltar <u>a</u> si	<i>to be oneself again</i>

**NOTE:**

*In Portuguese, the phrase to be oneself again is used with the preposition **a** (**voltar a si**).*

Verbs with Italian in and French en

The following is a list of verbs which take the preposition It. **in** and Fr. **en** before an object (noun or pronoun).

Italian	French	English
agire in	agir en	<i>to act like/as</i>
avere fiducia <u>di</u>	avoir confiance en	<i>to to trust</i>
irrompere in	casser en (morceaux)	<i>to break into</i> (pieces)
cambiarsi in	se changer en	<i>to change into</i>
convertire in	convertir en	<i>to convert into</i>
tagliare in	couper en	<i>to cut in</i>
credere in	croire en	<i>to believe in</i>
degenerare in	dégénérer en	<i>to degenerate into</i>
mascherarsi da	se déguiser en	<i>to disguise oneself</i> as
scrivere in	écrire en	<i>to write in</i> (Chinese)
erigersi <u>a</u>	s'ériger en	<i>to set oneself up as</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Italian	French	English
misurare in	mesurer en	<i>to measure in (meters)</i>
andare in collera	se mettre en colère	<i>to get angry</i>
mettersi in cammino	se mettre en route	<i>to set out</i>
partire in	partir en	<i>to leave for</i>
tingere in	peindre en	<i>to paint in</i>
ridurre in	réduire en	<i>to reduce to</i>
tradurre in	traduire en	<i>to translate into (Spanish)</i>
trasformare qualcosa in	transformer quelque chose en	<i>to transform smth. into</i>
vendersi in	se vendre en	<i>to be sold in (bottles)</i>
viaggiare in	voyager en	<i>to travel by (taxi)</i>



NOTE:

In Italian, the verbs **avere fiducia** and **erigersi** are used with the preposition **di** and **a**.

Verbs with French **dans**

The following is a list of French verbs which take the preposition Fr. **dans** before an object (noun or pronoun).

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

French	English
apprendre qqch dans (un livre)	<i>to learn smth. from (a book)</i>
avoir dans l'esprit/l' idée que	<i>to have a feeling that</i>
avoir dans l' idée/la tête que	<i>to have in mind</i>
boire qqch dans (une tasse)	<i>to drink smth out of (a cup)</i>
chercher dans (un carton)	<i>to look in (a box)</i>
copier qqch dans (un livre)	<i>to copy smth from (a book)</i>
courir dans	<i>to run through</i>
coûter dans (les 10 dollars)	<i>to cost about (10 dollars)</i>
entrer dans (une salle)	<i>to to enter (a room)</i>
errer dans (une ville)	<i>to wander around/through (a town)</i>
fouiller dans	<i>to look through</i>
lire dans (un journal)	<i>to read in (a paper)</i>
manger dans (une assiette)	<i>to eat off (a plate)</i>
mettre son espoir dans	<i>to pin one's hopes on</i>
partir dans (10 minutes)	<i>to leave in (10 minutes)</i>
réduire en	<i>to reduce to</i>
traduire en	<i>to translate into (Spanish)</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

French	English
transformer qqch en	<i>to transform smth. into</i>
se vendre en	<i>to be sold in (bottles)</i>
voyager en	<i>to travel by (taxi)</i>

Preposition *da* (It.), *chez* (Fr.)

It. **da** and Fr. **chez** are usually used with a person, a person's name or pronoun in order to express *at*, *to*, *in the house of* in the English language, for example:

It. Vai **da** Peter domani?

Fr. Vas-tu **chez** Peter demain?

- Are you going to Peter's house tomorrow?



NOTE:

*In Spanish and Portuguese, the expressions Sp. **a/en casa de** and Port. **a (para)/em casa de** are used in this case:*

Sp. ¿Vas **a la casa de** Peter mañana?

Port. Você vai **para a casa de** Peter amanhã?

- Are you going to Peter's house tomorrow?

This also extends to places of work, business, shops, groups as well as a person's profession or society in Italian and French. Study the following:

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

It. Andiamo **dal** medico la prossima settimana?

Fr. Nous allons **chez** le médecin la semaine prochaine.

- *We are going to the doctor's next week.*



NOTE:

*In Spanish and Portuguese, the preposition **a** is used in this case:*

Sp. Vamos **al** médico la próxima semana.

Port. Vamos **ao** médico na próxima semana.

- *We are going to the doctor's next week.*

Preposition *para* (Sp. Port.), *per* (It.), *pour* (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp., Port. **para**, It. **per** and Fr. **pour** are rather common and have an extensive variety of meanings and exceptions, which must be memorized. Generally it can be translated as *for* in English. These prepositions are used to indicate:

• **purpose (in order to):**

The prepositions Sp., Port. **para**, It. **per** and Fr. **pour** indicate a purpose or an aim that will be attained and are equivalent to English *in order to* or *to*:

Sp. Lo he hecho **para** ayudarte;

Port. O tenho feito **para** ajudá-lo;

It. L'ho fatto **per** aiutarti;

Fr. Je l'ai fait **pour** t'aider.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

- *I have done it **to** help you.*

Sp. Aprendo francés **para** hablar con mi tía de Francia;

Port. Aprendo francês **para** falar com minha tia da França;

It. Imparo francese **per** parlare con la mia zia dalla Francia;

Fr. J'apprends le français **pour** parler avec ma tante de France.

- *I learn french **to** speak with my aunt from France.*

• recipient (for):

The prepositions Sp., Port. **para**, It. **per** and Fr. **pour** are also used to indicate the person or the object who will receive the action and correspond to *for* in English:

Sp. Tengo un regalo **para** ti;

Port. Eu tenho um presente **para** você;

It. Ho un regalo **per** te;

Fr. J'ai un cadeau **pour** toi.

- *I have a gift **for** you.*

Sp. Él trabaja **para** IKEA;

Port. Ele trabalha **para** a IKEA;

It. Lui lavora **per** IKEA;

Fr. Il travaille **pour** IKEA.

- *He works **for** IKEA.*

• opinion or point of view (for, according to):

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Sp., Port. **para**, It. **per** and Fr. **pour** can be used to express an opinion, which is equivalent to *for* or *according to* in English:

Sp. **Para** mí, el chino es el idioma más difícil;
Port. **Para** mim, o chinês é o idioma mais difícil;
It. **Per** me, il cinese è la lingua più difficile;
Fr. **Pour** moi, le chinois est la langue la plus difficile.
- **For** me, the Chinese is the most difficult language.

Sp. **Para** mi amigo, es una buena opción;
Port. **Para** meu amigo, é uma boa opção;
It. **Per** il mio amico, è una buona opzione;
Fr. **Pour** mon ami, c'est une bonne option.
- **According to** my friend, it is a good option.

• direction or destination (for):

Sp., Port. **para**, It. **per** and Fr. **pour** are also used to express the destination for a person or object:

Sp. Salen **para** República Dominicana mañana;
Port. Eles partem **para** a República Dominicana amanhã;
It. Partono **per** la Repubblica Dominicana domani;
Fr. Ils partent **pour** la République Dominicaine demain.
- They leave **for** Dominican Republic tomorrow.

Sp. Este es el bus **para** Guayaquil;

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Port. Este é o ônibus **para** Guayaquil;

It. Questo è il bus **per** Guayaquil;

Fr. Ceci est le bus **pour** Guayaquil.

- *This is the bus **to** Guayaquil.*

- **deadline (for, on, by):**

This preposition can be used to express when something must be done by the particular time in the future. In this case the prepositions Sp., Port. **para**, It. **per** and Fr. **pour** imply particular dates in the future and are equivalent to *for, on or by* in English:

Sp. Debo preparar la lección **para** mañana;

Port. Devo preparar a lição **para** amanhã;

It. Devo preparare la lezione **per** domani;

Fr. Je dois préparer la leçon **pour** demain.

- *I must prepare the lesson **for** tomorrow.*

- **comparison (for, although, despite, in spite of):**

This preposition is used to compare inequalities or disparities of someone or something in order to differentiate him/her/it from others. In this case the prepositions Sp., Port. **para**, It. **per** and Fr. **pour** are equivalent to *for, although, despite, in spite of* in English:

Sp. **Para** ser español, conoce la cultura china muy bien;

Port. **Para** ser espanhol, ele conhece a cultura chinesa muito bem;

It. **Per** essere spagnolo, conosce la cultura cinese molto bene;

Fr. **Pour** être espagnol, il connaît très bien la culture chinoise.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

- **For** a Spaniard, he knows Chinese culture very well.

*Preposition **por** (Sp. Port.), **da** (It.), **par** (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp., Port. **por**, It. **da** and Fr. **par** can be translated as *by* in English. These prepositions are used to indicate:

- **passive voice:**

The prepositions Sp., Port. **por**, It. **da** and Fr. **par** indicate the agent or the doer *by whom* or *by which* an action is started, which means that such phrases are usually used in passive constructions:

Sp. La puerta fue abierta **por** él;

Port. A porta foi aberta **por** ele;

It. La porta è stata aperta **da** lui;

Fr. La porte a été ouverte **par** lui.

- *The door was opened **by** him.*

Sp. El pueblo fue destruido **por** la inundación.;

Port. A aldeia foi destruída **pela** inundação;

It. Il villaggio è stato distrutto **dall'**inondazione;

Fr. Le village a été détruit **par** l'inondation.

- *The village was destroyed **by** the flood.*

- **direction or location (through, along):**

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

The prepositions Sp., Port. **por**, It. **da** or **per** and Fr. **par** also designate a place or a direction through which movement takes place and are equivalent to English *through* or *along*:

Sp. ¡Vamos **por** allá!

Port. Vamos **por** ali!

It. Andiamo **da** quella parte!

Fr. Allons-y **par** là!

- *Let's go that way!*

Sp. Tuvimos que pasar **por** esta calle;

Port. Tivemos que passar **por** esta rua;

It. Abbiamo dovuto passare **per** questa strada;

Fr. Nous avons dû passer **par** cette rue.

- *We had to pass **through** this street.*



NOTE: That in Italian the preposition **per** is used in this case.

• manner or means (by, through, out of or by means of):

The prepositions Sp., Port. **por**, It. **da** or **per** and Fr. **par** also can express the manner or means by which something is done. It is equivalent to *by*, *through*, *out of* or *by means of* in English. Below are several of the phrases which denote manner:

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
por casualidad; por accidente	por acaso; por accidente	<i>per</i> caso; <i>per</i> accidente	par hazard; par accident	by accident
por costumbre	por hábito	<i>per</i> abitudine	par habitude	out of habit



NOTE: in Italian the preposition *per* is used in this case.

Sp. Lo hace **por** costumbre;

Port. Ele faz isso **por** hábito;

It. Lo fa **per** abitudine;

Fr. Il le fait **par** habitude;

- He does it **out of** habit.

Sp. Vamos a hablar **por** teléfono más tarde;

Port. Vamos falar **por** telefone mais tarde;

It. Parleremo **al** telefono più tardi;

Fr. Nous allons parler **au** téléphone plus tard.

- We will talk **on** the phone later.



NOTE:

Italian preposition **al** and French **au** are used in this case.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

- **amount and rate (per, a):**

The prepositions Sp., Port. **por** and Fr. **par** translates quantity per unit of measurement and rate. It is equivalent to English *per* or *a*:

Sp. Ella gana 20 dólares **por** hora.

Port. Ela ganha 20 dólares **por** hora.

It. Lei guadagna 20 dollari **all'**ora.

Fr. Elle gagne 20 dollars **de l'**heure.

- *She earns 20 dollars **per** hour.*



NOTE:

*Italian preposition **a** and French **de** are used in this case.*

Sp. Aprendo francés tres veces **por** semana;

Port. Aprendo francês três vezes **por** semana;

It. Studio francese tre volte **alla** settimana;

Fr. J'apprends le français trois fois **par** semaine.

- *I learn French three times **per** week.*



NOTE:

*In Italian, the preposition **a** is used in this case.*

Por in Spanish and Portuguese

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

The preposition Sp., Port. **por** has a number of peculiarities in usage which are only typical for Spanish and Portuguese. Spanish and Portuguese preposition **por** is used to indicate:

- **duration (for):**

The preposition Sp., Port. **por** indicates time during which something lasts or takes place. It corresponds to the English **for**:

Sp. Tengo la intención de vivir en Bruselas **por** un mes;

Port. Tenho a intenção de viver em Bruxelas **por** um mês;

- *I have the intention of living in Brussels **for** a month.*



NOTE:

*In Italian and French prepositions It. **per**;
Fr. **pour** are used in this case:*

*It. Ho l'intenzione di vivere a Bruxelles **per**
un mese.*

*Fr. J'ai l'intention de vivre à Bruxelles
pour un mois.*

*- I have the intention of living in Brussels
for a month.*

When the action takes place during the whole period of time, one can use Sp. **durante**; Port. **durante**; It. **durante** (**per**); Fr. **pendant** - *during*. For example:

Sp. Hablamos **durante** dos horas;

Port. Nós conversamos **durante** duas horas;

It. Abbiamo parlato **per** due ore;

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Fr. Nous avons parlé **pendant** deux heures.

- *We talked **for** two hours.*



NOTE:

In Italian, the preposition **per** is used in this case.

• reason or cause (because of, for):

The preposition Sp., Port. **por** expresses the reason or motive which brought about the action. It means *because of* or *for* in English:

Sp. Fue castigado **por** haber mentido;

Port. Ele foi punido **por** ter mentido;

- *He was punished **because of** lying.*

Sp. Ella lo adora **por** su valentía;

Port. Ela adora-o (Braz. Port. o adora) **por** sua bravura;

- *She adores him **for** his bravery.*



NOTE:

In Italian and French prepositions It. **per**;
Fr. **pour** are used in this case:

It. E 'stato punito **per** aver mentito;

Fr. Il a été puni **pour** avoir menti.

- *He was punished **because of** lying.*

It. Lei lo adora **per** il suo coraggio;

Fr. Elle l'adore **pour** sa bravoure.

- *She adores him **for** his bravery.*

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

- **exchange (for):**

Sp., Port. **por** can be used to express the exchange of one thing for another:

Sp. Compré este anillo **por** 10.000 dólares;
Port. Eu comprei este anel **por** 10.000 dólares;
- *I bought this ring **for** 10,000 dollars.*

Sp. He cambiado esta tarjeta postal **por** otra;
Port. Eu mudei este cartão postal **por** outro;
- *I changed this postcard **for** another.*



NOTE:

*In Italian and French prepositions It. **per**;
Fr. **pour** are used in this case:*

*It. Ho comprato questo anello **per** 10.000
dollari;
Fr. Je l'ai acheté cette bague **pour** 10.000
dollars.
- I bought this ring **for** 10,000 dollars.*

*It. Ho cambiato questa cartolina per una
altra;
Fr. J'ai changé cette carte postale pour une
autre.
- I changed this postcard for another.*

- **meaning on behalf of, in favour of:**

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Sp., Port. **por** also means *on behalf of, in favour of* in Spanish and Portuguese. For example:

Sp. Hablo **por** María.

Port. Falo **por** Maria.

- I speak **on behalf of** Maria.

Sp. Él está **por** los derechos de las mujeres;

Port. Ele é **pelos** direitos das mulheres;

- He is **for** women's rights.



NOTE:

*In Italian and French prepositions It. **per**;
Fr. **pour** are used in this case:*

*It. Parlo **per** Maria.*

*Fr. Je parle **pour** Maria.*

*- I speak **on behalf of** Maria.*

*It. È **per** i diritti delle donne;*

*Fr. Il est **pour** les droits des femmes.*

*- He is **for** women's rights.*

• substitution (instead of, for):

This preposition also expresses substitution, which is close to “exchange” in a sense, meaning someone is taking place of another person in Spanish and Portuguese. For instance:

Sp. Voy a hacerlo **por** él;

Port. Eu vou fazê-lo **por** ele.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

- I will do it (instead of) **for** him.



NOTE:

*In Italian and French prepositions It. **per**;
Fr. **pour** are used in this case:*

*It. Lo farò **per** lui.*

*Fr. Je vais le faire **pour** lui.*

- I will do it (instead of) **for** him.

- **personal evaluation (as, for):**

Sp., Port. **por** can also express a personal opinion or evaluation. It means *for* or *as* in English. Study the following:

Sp. Charles la tomó **por** otra persona;

Port. Charles tomou-a (Braz. Port. a tomou) **por** outra pessoa.

- Charles took her for someone else.



NOTE:

*In Italian and French prepositions It. **per**;
Fr. **pour** are used in this case:*

*It. Charles l'ha preso **per** un'altra persona.*

*Fr. Charles l'a pris **pour** une autre
personne.*

- Charles took her **for** someone else.

- **expressions that use *por*:**

In Spanish and Portuguese, the preposition Sp., Port. **por** is also used in the following expressions:

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS



NOTE:

Unlike in Spanish, in Italian and French, and sometimes Portuguese, the expressions from the list below are formed differently. Even though Portuguese, Italian and French expressions are presented in the table for the sake of comparison, it is reasonable to memorize them too, since they are widely used in speech.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
día por día	dia a dia	giorno per giorno	jour après jour	<i>day by day</i>
estar por	estar por	essere per/da	être pour	<i>to be in the mood to</i>
palabra por palabra	palavra por palavra	parola per parola	mot à mot	<i>word for word</i>
por ahí, allí	por aí, lá	da quella parte	par là	<i>around here, there</i>
por ahora	por hora	per il momento	pour l'instant	<i>for now</i>
por aquí	por aqui	da questa parte	par ici	<i>this way</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
por casualidad	por acaso	per caso	par hasard	<i>by chance</i>
por ciento	porcento	per cento	pourcent	<i>percent</i>
por cierto	certamente	certamente	certainement	<i>certainly</i>
por completo	completamente	completamente	complètement	<i>completely</i>
por dentro	por dentro	all'/ nell'interno	à l'intérieur	<i>inside</i>
por desgracia	infelizmente	per disgrazia/ malauguratamente	malheureusement	<i>unfortunately</i>
por ejemplo	por exemplo	per esempio	par exemple	<i>for example</i>
por escrito	por escrito	per (i)scritto	par écrit	<i>in writing</i>
por eso/ por lo tanto	por isso/ portanto	perciò/ pertanto	c'est pourquoi/ partant	<i>therefore</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
por favor	por favor	per favore/ per piacere	s'il vous plaît (formal) s'il te plaît (informal)	<i>please</i>
por fin/ por último	por fim/ por último	infine/ alla fine	enfin/ à la fin	<i>finally</i>
por la mañana	pela manhã	la mattina	le matin	<i>in the morning</i>
por las buenas o por las malas	por bem ou por mal	con le buone o con le cattive	de gré ou de force/ en douceur ou à la dure	<i>whether you like it or not</i>
por lo menos	pelo menos	almeno	au moins	<i>at least</i>
por el mismo caso/ por lo mismo	pelo mesmo motivo	per la stessa ragione	pour la même raison	<i>for that very reason</i>
por lo que a mí me toca	pelo que me toca	per quanto mi riguarda	en ce qui me concerne	<i>as far as I am concerned</i>
por lo que he oído	pelo que eu tenho ouvido	da quello che ho sentito	suivant ce que j'ai entendu	<i>judging by what I've heard</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
por lo visto	pelo visto/ aparentemente	apparentemente	apparemm ent	<i>apparent ly</i>
por medio de	por meio de	per mezzo di	au moyen de	<i>by means of</i>
por mi parte	da minha parte	da parte mia	pour ma part	<i>for my part</i>
por motivo de	por motivo de	per cagione di/ per motivo di	en raison de/ à cause de	<i>on account of</i>
por ningún lado	por nenhum lado	da nessuna parte	nulle part	<i>nowhere</i>
por poco	por pouco	pressapoco	à peu près	<i>almost</i>
por primera vez	pela primeira vez	per la prima volta	pour la première fois	<i>for the first time</i>
por última vez	pela última vez	per l'ultima volta	pour la dernière fois	<i>for the last time</i>
¿por qué?	por quê?	perché?	pourquoi?	<i>why?</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
por si acaso	se por acaso/só por precaução	nel caso dei casi/ per ogni eventualità	à tout hazard/ à toute éventualité	<i>just in case</i>
por suerte	por sorte	per fortuna	par chance	<i>fortunately</i>
por teléfono	por telefone	per telefono	par/en téléphone	<i>on the phone</i>
por todas partes	por toda a parte	dappertutto / ovunque	partout	<i>everywhere</i>
por un lado	por um lado	da un lato	d'un côté	<i>on the one hand</i>
por otro lado	por outro lado	dall'altro lato	d'un autre côté	<i>on the other hand</i>

*Verbs with **por** (Sp., Port.), **per** (It.) and **pour** (Fr.)*

Below is the list of the most common verbs that require Sp., Port. **por**, It. **per** and Fr. **pour** before an infinitive:



NOTE:

However, there are verbs which are used with different prepositions (especially in Italian and French). They are all italicized

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

and underlined. Pay attention to them and try to memorize them carefully.

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
disculparse por	desculpar-se se por	scusarsi per	s'excuser <u>de</u> /pour	to apologize for
esforzarse por	esforçar-se por	sforzarsi <u>di/a</u>	s'efforcer <u>de/à</u>	to struggle to
estar por	estar por	essere per/ <u>da</u>	être pour	to be in favor of
luchar por	lutar por	lottare per	lutter pour	to struggle for
optar por/ <u>entre</u>	optar por	optare per	opter <u>entre</u>	to opt for

The following is a list of verbs which take the preposition Sp., Port **por**, It. **per** and Fr. **pour** before an object (noun or pronoun).

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
asustarse por/ <u>de</u> / <u>com</u>	assustar-se por/ <u>de</u> / <u>com</u>	spaventars i per	s'effrayer <u>à</u>	to get frightened about
cambiar por	trocar por	scambiare <u>con</u>	échanger <u>contre</u> / troquer <u>contre</u>	to exchange for

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
comenzar por/ <u>con</u>	começar <u>com</u> /por	iniziare <u>col/da</u>	commencer par / <u>avec</u>	to begin by/with
desvelarse por	desvelar-se por	inquietarsi per	s'inquiéter <u>de</u> / se soucier <u>de</u>	to be very concerned about
disculpase por	desculpar- se por	scusarsi per	s'excuser <u>de</u> /pour	to apologize for
estar por	estar por	essere per/ <u>da</u>	être pour	to be in favor of
interesarse por	interessar- se por	interessarsi <u>a</u>	s'intéresser <u>à</u>	to be interested in
luchar por	lutar por	lottare per	lutter pour	to struggle for
jurar por	jurar por	giurare per/ <u>su</u>	jurer par/ <u>sur</u>	to swear by/on
optar por/ entre	optar por	optare per	opter <u>entre</u>	to opt for
pagar por/ <u>con</u>	pagar por/ <u>com</u>	pagare per/ <u>con</u>	payer pour/ <u>avec</u>	to pay by/ with
preguntar por	perguntar por	chiedere <u>di</u>	demander <u>de</u>	to ask about/ after

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
preocuparse por	preocupar-se por/ <u>com</u>	preoccuparsi per	se préoccuper <u>de</u>	to worry about
rezar por	orar por rezar por	pregare per	prier pour	to pray for
salir por	sair por	uscire per	sortir par	to leave via
tomar por	tomar por	prendere per	prendre pour	to take for
viajar por	viajar por	viaggiare per	voyager par	to travel by (train)
votar por	votar por/ <u>em</u>	votare per	voter pour	to vote for

*Preposition **con** (Sp.), **com** (Port.), **con** (It.), **avec** (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. **con**, Port. **com**, It. **con** and Fr. **avec** mean *with* and are basically used like its English equivalent. These prepositions are used to express:

- **accompaniment (with):**

Sp. Él va al cine **con** Anna;

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Port. Ele vai ao cinema **com** Anna;

It. Lui va al cinema **con** Anna;

Fr. Il va au cinéma **avec** Anna.

- *He is going to the cinema **with** Anna.*

Sp. Ella quiere casarse **con** un extranjero;

Port. Ela quer se casar **com** um estrangeiro;

It. Lei vuole sposarsi **con** uno straniero;

Fr. Elle veut se marier **avec** un étranger:

- *She want to get married **to** a foreigner.*

• instrument, means (with):

The prepositions Sp. **con**, Port. **com**, It. **con** and Fr. **avec** are also used to indicate the instrument *with* which something is done in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. It corresponds to *with* in English:

Sp. Escribí esta carta **con** un lápiz;

Port. Eu escrevi esta carta **com** um lápis;

It. Ho scritto questa lettera **con** una matita;

Fr. J'ai écrit cette lettre **avec** un crayon.

- *I wrote this letter **with** a pencil.*

Sp. Lo vi **con** mis propios ojos;

Port. Eu vi isso **com** meus próprios olhos;

It. L'ho visto **con** i miei propri occhi;

Fr. Je l'ai vu **avec** mes propres yeux.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

- I saw it **with** my own eyes.

- **reason, cause (with):**

Sp. Es imposible trabajar **con** este ruido;

Port. É impossível trabalhar **com** esse barulho;

It. E 'impossibile lavorare **con** questo rumore;

Fr. Il est impossible de travailler **avec** ce bruit.

- It is impossible to work **with** this noise.

Sp. Hay cosas que no se olvidan nunca **con** el tiempo;

Port. Há coisas que nunca se esquecem **com** o tempo;

It. Ci sono cose che la gente non si dimentica mai **con** il tempo;

Fr. Il y a des choses qu'on n'oublie jamais **avec** le temps.

- There are things that one never forgets **with** time.

- **attribute (with):**

In order to express the attribute or describe a person's appearance the prepositions Sp. **con**, Port. **com**, It. **con** are used in Spanish, Portuguese and Italian.



NOTE:

Remember that in French, the preposition Fr. **à** is used in this sense. For example:

Sp. Esa es una chica **con** el pelo largo;

Port. Essa é uma menina **com** cabelos longos;

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

*It. Quella è una ragazza **con** i capelli lunghi;*

*Fr. C'est une fille **aux** cheveux longs.*

*- That is a girl **with** long hair.*

However, in the Romance languages, the prepositions Sp. **con**, Port. **com**, It. **con** and Fr. **avec** can be found in a number of other meanings depending on the context. Below are the most common examples where the prepositions Sp. **con**, Port. **com**, It. **con** and Fr. **avec** are used differently from the use of *with* in the English language:

- **used to form adverbial phrases:**

The prepositions Sp. **con**, Port. **com**, It. **con** and Fr. **avec** can be used to compose phrases that function like adverbs. It is possible to do the same English using *with* and other preposition, but nevertheless it is more common to do so in the Romance languages. Observe the following:

Sp. Ella dijo eso **con** entusiasmo;

Port. Ela disse isso **com** entusiasmo;

It. Lei ha detto questo **con** entusiasmo;

Fr. Elle a dit ça **avec** enthousiasme.

- She said it enthusiastically.

Sp. Espero tu carta **con** paciencia;

Port. Eu espero a sua carta **com** paciência;

It. Aspetto la tua lettera **con** pazienza;

Fr. J'attends ta lettre **avec** patience.

- I am waiting for your letter patiently.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

- **used to indicate conditions (in spite of, despite):**

Sometimes Sp. **con**, and Fr. **avec** can occur in the phrases with the meanings of *despite, in spite of*, for instance:

Sp. **Con** todo eso, todavía está feliz;

Port. **Apesar de** tudo isso, ela ainda está feliz;

It. **Nonostante/Dopo** tutto questo, è ancora felice;

Fr. **Avec** tout cela, elle est toujours heureuse.

- **Despite** everything, she is still happy.



NOTE:

Portuguese **apesar de** and Italian **nonostante** or **dopo** should be used, since these expressions sound more natural in this case.

*Verbs with Spanish **con** and Portuguese **com***

The prepositions Sp. **con** and Port. **com** (*with*) are used with particular verbs in Spanish and Portuguese. Below is the list of the most common verbs that require Sp. **con** and Port. **com** before an infinitive:



NOTE:

Unlike in Spanish and Portuguese, in Italian and French, most of the verbs from the list are used with different prepositions. It is advisable to memorize divergent cases.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
amenazar con	ameaçar com	minacciare <u>di</u>	menacer <u>de</u>	to threaten to
comenzar con/por	começar com/por	iniziare col/da	commencer avec/par	to begin with/by
contar con	contar com	contare <u>su</u>	compter <u>sur</u>	to count/ rely on
contentarse con	contentar com	accontentar si <u>di</u>	se contenter <u>de</u>	to be satisfied with
preocuparse con	se preocupar com	preoccupar si <u>di</u>	se soucier <u>de</u> ; se préoccuper <u>de</u>	to be concerned with
soñar con	sonhar com	sognare <u>di</u>	rêver <u>de</u>	to dream of
tener que ver con	ter a ver com	aver a che fare con	avoir à faire avec	to concern, to have to do with

The following is a list of verbs which take the preposition Sp. **con** and Port. **com** before an object (noun or pronoun).



NOTE:

Remember that in Italian and French many verbs from the list require different prepositions rather than with.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
acabar con	acabar com	finire con	en finir avec	<i>to finish, put an end to</i>
amenazar con	ameaçar com	minacciare <u>di</u>	menacer <u>de</u>	<i>to threaten with</i>
casarse con	casar-se com	sposarsi con	se marier avec	<i>to marry</i>
comenzar con/por	começar com/por	iniziare col/ da	commencer avec/par	<i>to begin with/by</i>
contar con	contar com	contare <u>su</u>	compter <u>sur</u>	<i>to count on</i>
contentarse con	contentar- se com	accontentar si <u>di</u>	se contenter <u>de</u>	<i>to be satisfied with</i>
encontrarse con	encontrar- se com	incontrarsi con	se retrouver avec; se rencontrer avec	<i>to meet</i>
enfrentarse con/ encararse con	<u>enfrentar</u>	affrontarsi con	s'affronter avec	<i>to face</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
enojarse con enfadarse con	enfadar-se com; zangar-se com; enraivar-se com	arrabbiarsi con	se fâcher <u>contre</u>	<i>to get angry with</i>
espantarse con asustarse con	assustar-se com	spaventarsi <u>di</u>	s'effrayer <u>de</u>	<i>to be frightene d of</i>
pagar con	pagar com	pagare con	payer avec	<i>to pay with</i>
preocuparse con	se preocupar com	preoccupar si <u>per</u>	se soucier <u>de</u> ; se préoccuper <u>de</u>	<i>to be concerne d with</i>
quedarse con	ficar com	rimanere con	rester avec	<i>to keep</i>
soñar con	sonhar com	sognare <u>di</u>	rêver <u>de</u>	<i>to dream of</i>
tropezar con	tropeçar <u>em</u>	intoppiare <u>in</u>	tomber <u>sur</u>	<i>to run across</i>
tener que ver con	ter a ver com	aver a che fare con	avoir à faire avec	<i>to concern, to have to do with</i>

*Preposition **sin** (Sp.), **sem** (Port.), **senza** (It.),
sans (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. **sin**, Port. **sem**, It. **senza** and Fr. **sans** stand for *without* and are placed before nouns or verbs. These prepositions are used to indicate:

- **a lack (without):**

Sp. Yo prefiero el té **sin** azúcar;
Port. Eu prefiro o chá **sem** açúcar;
It. Io preferisco il tè **senza** zucchero;
Fr. Je préfère le thé **sans** sucre.
- *I prefer the tea **without** sugar.*

Sp. No puedo tomar una decisión **sin** usted;
Port. Eu não posso tomar uma decisão **sem** o senhor (or você);
It. Non posso prendere una decisione **senza** di voi;
Fr. Je ne peux pas prendre une décision **sans** vous.
- *I can't make a decision **without** you.*

- **constructions with an infinitive:**

The preposition Sp. **con**, Port. **com**, It. **con** and Fr. **avec** - *without* is also followed by an infinitive. It should be noted that in English a gerund used in this case (See **Infinitive p.468**). Observe the following:

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Sp. Ella entró **sin** mirarme;
Port. Ela entrou **sem** olhar para mim;
It. Lei è entrato **senza** guardarmi;
Fr. Elle est entrée **sans** me regarder.
- *She entered **without** looking at me.*

*Preposition **contra** (Sp.), **contra** (Port.), **contro** (It.), **contre** (Fr.)*

The preposition Sp. **contra**, Port. **contra**, It. **contro** and Fr. **contre** literally and figuratively means against in all contexts. It is used to express:

- **location or juxtaposition (against, next to):**

Sp. La mesa está **contra** la pared;
Port. A mesa está **contra** a parede;
It. Il tavolo sta **contro** la parete;
Fr. La table est **contre** le mur.
- *The table is **against** the wall.*

- **opposition (against):**

Sp. Están **contra** la guerra;
Port. Eles são **contra** a guerra;
It. Sono **contro** la guerra;
Fr. Ils sont **contre** la guerre.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

- They are **against** the war.



NOTE:

In Spanish, in order to express an opinion or a feeling the phrase **en contra de** can also be used:

Sp. Están **en contra de** la guerra.

- They are **against** the war.

• protection (against, from):

Sp. Eso es el medicamento **contra** la gripe;

Port. Isso é o medicamento **contra** a gripe;

It. Questa è la medicina **contro** l'influenza;

Fr. C'est le médicament **contre** la grippe.

- That is the medicine **for** the flu.

Preposition **entre** (Sp.), **entre** (Port.), **tra** (It.), **entre** (Fr.)

The preposition Sp. **contra**, Port. **contra**, It. **contro** and Fr. **contre** generally means *between, among*. It is used the way one uses its English equivalent:

Sp. No hay ninguna diferencia **entre** tú y yo;

Port. Não há nenhuma diferença **entre** você e eu;

It. Non c'è nessuna differenza **tra** te e me;

Fr. Il n'y a aucune différence **entre** toi et moi.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

- *There is no difference **between** you and me.*

Sp. Tengo que elegir **entre** esos dos productos;

Port. Eu tenho que escolher **entre** esses dois produtos;

It. Devo scegliere **tra** questi due prodotti;

Fr. Je dois choisir **entre** ces deux produits.

- *I have to choose **between** those two products.*

*Preposition **sobre** (Sp.), **sobre** (Port.), **su** (It.), **sur** (Fr.)*

The preposition Sp. **sobre**, Port. **sobre**, It. **su** and Fr. **sur** normally means *on*, *about* or *over*. It can be used in a number of ways depending on the context. Thus, Sp. **sobre**, Port. **sobre**, It. **su** and Fr. **sur** is used:

• **to mean location (on, upon, over):**

Sp. Puse un libro **sobre** la mesa;

Port. Eu coloquei um livro **sobre** a mesa;

It. Ho messo un libro **sul** tavolo;

Fr. J'ai mis un livre **sur** la table.

- *I put a book **on** the table.*

Sp. Puedes sentarte **sobre** la silla;

Port. Você pode se sentar **sobre** a cadeira.;

It. Puoi sederti **sulla** sedia;

Fr. Tu peux t'asseoir **sur** la chaise.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

- *You can sit **on** the chair.*

- **to mean subject or topic (about, on, concerning, with regard to):**

The preposition Sp. **sobre**, Port. **sobre**, It. **su** and Fr. **sur** is used to show formal treatment of a subject or topic:

Sp. Este autor escribió un libro **sobre** la cocina oriental;
Port. Este autor escreveu um livro **sobre** culinária oriental;
It. Questo autore ha scritto un libro **sulla** cucina orientale;
Fr. Cet auteur a écrit un livre **sur** la cuisine orientale.
- *This author wrote a book **about/on** oriental cuisine.*

Sp. Ella participó en una conferencia **sobre** la pedagogía;
Port. Ela participou de uma conferência **sobre** pedagogia;
It. Lei ha partecipato a una conferenza **sulla** pedagogia;
Fr. Elle a participé à une conférence **sur** la pédagogie.
- *She participated in a conference **on** pedagogy.*

- **to express approximation of time (about, around, over):**

Sp. Vamos a llegar **sobre** las cinco;
Port. Vamos chegar **por volta dàs** cinco horas;
It. Arriveremo **verso le** cinque;
Fr. Nous arriverons **sur** les cinq heures.
- *We will arrive **at around** five o'clock.*

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS



NOTE:

*In Portuguese **por volta de**, and in Italian **verso le** should be used in this case.*

Sp. **Sobre** el 2012, la economía del país comenzó a crecer;

Port. **Em** 2012, a economia do país começou a crescer;

It. **Sul** 2012, l'economia del paese ha iniziato a crescere;

Fr. **Sur** 2012, l'économie du pays a commencé à croître.

- **Around** 2012 the economy of the country started to grow.



NOTE:

*In Portuguese the preposition **em** should be used in this case.*

Preposition *frente a* (Sp.), *perante/em* (Port.), *davanti a* (It.), *devant* (Fr.)

The preposition Sp. **ante**, Port. **perante**, It. **davanti a** and Fr. **devant** means *in front of* or *before* and designates a location or position. This preposition is used with nouns or pronouns. It is notable that in Italian the preposition **davanti** is used with **a**. Observe the following:

Sp. Estoy **frente a** la escuela;

Port. Estou **em frente à** escola;

It. Sono **davanti alla** scuola;

Fr. Je suis **devant** l'école.

- I am **in front of** the school.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Sp. Ella pasó **frente a** mí;

Port. Ela passou **perante** mim;

It. Lei è passato **davanti a** me;

Fr. Elle a passé **devant** moi.

- She passed **before** me.



NOTE:

In Spanish and Portuguese, the preposition Sp. **delante de**; Port. **diante de** - in front of can also be used in this case, for example:

Sp. Ella pasó **delante de** mí;

Port. Ela passou **diante de** mim.

- She passed **before** me.

Preposition **bajo** (**debajo de**) (Sp.), **sob** (**debaixo de**) (Port.), **sotto** (It.), **sous** (Fr.)

The preposition Sp. **bajo**, Port. **sob**, It. **sotto** and Fr. **sous** means *under*. It can be used literally when indicating position (e.g. under the sky), or figuratively (e.g. under the pressure):

Sp. El perro está **bajo** la lluvia;

Port. O cão está **sob** a chuva;

It. Il cane è **sotto** la pioggia;

Fr. Le chien est **sous** la pluie.

- The dog is **in** the rain.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Sp. La situación está **bajo** control;

Port. A situação está **sob** controle;

It. La situazione è **sotto** controllo;

Fr. La situation est **sous** contrôle.

- The situation is **under** control.



NOTE:

However, in Spanish and Portuguese, the preposition Sp. **debajo de**; Port. **debaixo de** is also used when one indicates position but in a more strict and literal way. Observe the following:

Sp. El perro está **debajo del** árbol;

Port. O cão está **debaixo da** árvore;

- The dog is **under** the tree.

But In Italian and French, the preposition It. **sotto** and Fr. **sous** is still used in this sense:

It. Il cane è **sotto** l'albero;

Fr. Le chien est **sous** l'arbre.

- The dog is **under** the tree.

Preposition **desde** (Sp.), **desde** (Port.), **da** (It.), **depuis** (Fr.)

The preposition Sp. **desde**, Port. **desde**, It. **da** and Fr. **depuis** expresses *from* or *since*. It is used in order to emphasize:

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

- **range or distance (from):**

Sp. Me gustaría viajar **de** Nápoles hasta Milán;

Port. Eu gostaria de viajar **desde** Nápoles até Milan;

It. Vorrei viaggiare **da** Napoli fino a Milano;

Fr. Je voudrais voyager **depuis** Naples jusqu'à Milan.

- *I would like to travel **from** Naples to Milan.*



NOTE:

*Spanish preposition **de** should be used in this case.*

Sp. Hay zapatos **desde** veinte hasta setenta euros;

Port. Há sapatos **desde** vinte até setenta euros;

It. Ci sono scarpe **da** venti fino a settanta euro;

Fr. Il y a des chaussures **de** vingt à soixante-dix euros.

- *There are shoes **from** twenty to seventy euros.*



NOTE:

*French preposition **de** should be used in this case.*

- **time (from, since):**

Sp. Él está buscando un trabajo **desde** junio;

Port. Ele está à procurar um trabalho **desde** junho

(Braz. Port. Ele está procurando um trabalho **desde** junho);

It. Egli cerca un lavoro **da** giugno;

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Fr. Il cherche un travail **depuis** Juin.
- *He has been looking for a job **since** June.*

Sp. Me conocen **desde** la infancia;
Port. Eles me conhecem **desde** a infância
It. Mi conoscono **dall'**infanzia.;
Fr. Ils me connaissent **depuis** l'enfance.
- *They have known me **since** childhood.*

*Preposition **durante** (Sp.), **durante** (Port.), **durante** (It.), **pendant** (**durant**) (Fr.)*

The preposition Sp. **durante**, Port. **durante**, It. **durante** and Fr. **pendant** (**durant**) means *during* or *for*. It is used to indicate:

- **duration of time (from):**

Sp. Hablamos **durante** toda la noche;
Port. Falamos **durante** toda a noite;
It. Abbiamo parlato **durante** tutta la notte;
Fr. Nous avons parlé **pendant** toute la nuit.
- *We talked **during** all night.*

Sp. **Durante** octubre, el tiempo se puso más frío;
Port. **Durante** outubro, o tempo tornou-se mais frio;
(Braz. Port. **Durante** outubro, o tempo se tornou mais frio);

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

It. **Durante** ottobre, il clima è diventato più freddo;

Fr. **Pendant** (**Durant**) octobre, le temps est devenu plus froid.

- **In** (**during**) October, the weather became colder.

Preposition **hasta** (Sp.), **até** (Port.), **fino a** (It.), **jusqu'à** (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. **hasta**, Port. **até**, It. **fino a** and Fr. **jusqu'à** generally express *until* or *up to*. These prepositions are used to demonstrate:

- **time (until, up to):**

Sp. Quiero visitar Colombia **hasta** el fin del año;

Port. Quero visitar a Colômbia **até** o fim do ano;

It. Voglio visitare la Colombia fino **alla** fine dell'anno;

Fr. Je veux visiter la Colombie **jusqu'à** la fin de l'année.

- *I want to visit Colombia **until** the end of the year.*

- **place (until, up to, as far as):**

Sp. Viajó **hasta** Barranquilla;

Port. Ele viajou **até** Barranquilla;

It. Ha viaggiato **fino a** Barranquilla;

Fr. Il a voyagé **jusqu'à** Barranquilla.

- *He travelled **as far as** Barranquilla.*

*Preposition **hacia** (Sp.), **para** (Port.), **verso** (It.), **vers** (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. **hacia**, Port. **para**, It. **verso** and Fr. **vers** literally and figuratively mean *towards* or *around* or *about*. These prepositions are used to indicate:

• **direction of movement (towards, to):**

Sp. Lo vi ir **hacia** el parque;

Port. Eu vi-o ir **para** o parque;

(Braz. Port. Eu o vi ir **para** o parque);

It. L'ho visto andare **verso** il parco;

Fr. Je l'ai vu aller **vers** le parc.

- I saw him going **towards** the park.



NOTE:

In Portuguese and French, the preposition towards in figurative meaning is Port. **para com** and Fr. **envers**. While in Spanish and Italian, the prepositions Sp. **hacia** and It. **verso** are still used. Observe the following:

Sp. ¿Cuál es su actitud **hacia** el feminismo?

Port. Qual é a sua atitude **para com** o feminismo?

It. Qual è il tuo atteggiamento **verso** il femminismo?

Fr. Quelle est votre attitude **envers** le féminisme?

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

- What is your attitude **towards** feminism?

- **approximation of time (around, about):**

Sp. Ella prometió venir **hacia** las siete;

Port. Ela prometeu vir **por volta** sete horas;

It. Ha promesso di venire **verso** le sette;

Fr. Elle a promis de venir **vers** sept heures.

- She promised to come **around** seven o'clock.



NOTE:

In Portuguese, the preposition around in figurative meaning is Port. **por volta**.

Preposition *excepto* (salvo) (Sp.), *exceto* (salvo) (Port.), *eccetto* (salvo) (It.), *excepté* (sauf) (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. **excepto** (**salvo**), Port. **excepto** (**salvo**), It. **eccetto** (**salvo**) and Fr. **excepté** (**sauf**) mean *except*. These prepositions are used basically like their English equivalent. For example:

Sp. Todo el mundo vino **excepto** (**salvo**) Mario;

Port. Todo o mundo veio **exceto** (**salvo**) Mario;

It. Ognuno è venuto **eccetto** (**salvo**) Mario;

Fr. Tout le monde est venu **excepté** (**sauf**) Mario.

- Everybody came **except** Mario.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

It should be mentioned that Sp. **salvo**, Port. **salvo**, It. **salvo** and Fr. **sauf** are much more frequent in everyday language.



NOTE:

In Spanish, the preposition Sp. **menos** is also widely used in colloquial language in this case. Study the following:

Sp. *Todo el mundo vino **menos** Mario;*
- Everybody came **except** Mario.

*Preposition **según** (conforme a) (Sp.),
segundo (conforme) (Port.), **secondo**
(conforme; conformemente a) (It.), **selon**
(conformément à; d'après) (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. **según** (**conforme a**), Port. **segundo** (**conforme**), It. **secondo** (**conforme; conformemente a**) and Fr. **selon** (**conformément à; d'après**) corresponds to *according to*. These prepositions are used the same way as their English equivalent. For example:

Sp. **Según** él, no es importante;
Port. **Segundo** ele, não é importante;
It. **Secondo** lui, non è importante;
Fr. **Selon** lui, c'est pas important.
- **According to him**, it's not important.

Sp. **Conforme al** pronóstico, va a llover mañana;
Port. **Conforme** a previsão, vai chover amanhã;
It. **Conforme** le previsioni, sta per piovere domani;

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Fr. **D'après** les prévisions, il va pleuvoir demain.

- **According to** the forecast, it will rain tomorrow.

It should be remembered that in the Romance languages, the prepositions Sp. **según**, Port. **segundo**, It. **secondo** and Fr. **selon** are also widely used in speech meaning *depending on*. Study the following:

Sp. **Según** las circunstancias, vamos a decidir qué hacer;

Port. **Segundo** as circunstâncias, vamos decidir o que fazer;

It. **Secondo** le circostanze, decideremo cosa fare;

Fr. **Selon** les circonstances, nous allons décider quoi faire.

- **Depending on** the circumstances, we will decide what to do.

Compound Prepositions (Prepositional Phrases)

Below is a list of the most frequent compound prepositions in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
en lo bajo de; abajo de	embaixo de; na parte de baixo de	nella parte bassa	au bas de	below; at the foot/ bottom of

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
encima de; por encima de; por arriba de	em cima de; por cima de; acima de	al di sopra di; <i>but: sopra</i>	au-dessus de; par-dessus	<i>above; over</i>
a través de	através de	attraverso	à travers	<i>across, through</i>
al lado de; junto a	ao lado de; junto de	allato a; accanto a	à côté de	<i>next to</i>
más allá de	além de	al di là di	au delà de	<i>beyond</i>
acerca de; a propósito de	acerca de; a propósito de	circa a; a proposito di	au sujet de; à propos de	<i>about, as regards, concerning</i>
alrededor de; en torno a	ao redor de; em torno de	attorno a; intorno a	autour de	<i>around</i>
cerca de	perto de	vicino a	près de	<i>near</i>
para con	para com	<i>but: verso</i>	<i>but: envers</i>	<i>towards</i>
a lo largo de	ao longo de	<i>but: lungo</i>	au long de	<i>along</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
al pie de	ao pé de	ai piedi di	au pied de	<i>next to; nearby</i>
en vez de; en lugar de	em vez de; em lugar de	invece di; in luogo di	au lieu de; à la place de	<i>instead of, in place of</i>
a pesar de, a despecho de	apesar de, a despeito de	<i>but:</i> malgrado, a dispetto di	<i>but:</i> malgré, en dépit de	<i>in spite of, despite</i>
a fin de	a fim de	a scopo di; affinché; al fine di	afin que/ de	<i>in order to</i>
antes de	antes de	prima di	avant de	<i>before</i>
después de	depois de	<i>but:</i> dopo	<i>but:</i> après	<i>after</i>
delante de; frente a; enfrente	diante de; em frente a	dinnanzi a; di fronte a; di faccia a	en face de;	<i>in front of</i>
detrás de; <i>but:</i> tras	atrás de	dietro a	<i>but:</i> derrière	<i>behind</i>
lejos de	longe de	lontano da	loin de	<i>away from</i>

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
dentro de; en el interior de	dentro de; no interior de	dentro; all'interno di	à l'intérieur de	inside, in
respecto a; con respecto a; con relación a; en cuanto a	a respeito de; com respeito a; em relação a; quanto a	rispetto a; riguardo a; in quanto a; in merito a	par rapport à; quant à	with respect to, in relation to, concerning
de acuerdo con	de acordo com	in conformit à con	conformé ment à; en conformité avec	according to; in accordance with
fuera de	fora de	fuori di	hors de; en dehors de	outside, out of
gracias a	graças a	grazie a	grâce à	thanks to
a causa de	por causa de	a causa di	à cause de	because of

*Prepositions en lo bajo de (abajo de) (Sp.),
embaixo de (na parte de baixo de) (Port.),
nella parte bassa (It.), au bas de (Fr.)*

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

The prepositions Sp. **en lo bajo de (abajo de)**, Port. **em baixo de (na parte de baixo de)**, It. **nella parte bassa** and Fr. **au bas de** mean *below, at the foot/bottom of*:



Did you know?

Guarulhos is the 2nd most populous city in the Brazilian state of São Paulo, the 13th most populous city in Brazil, and is the most populous city in the country which is not a state capital. The population is over 1.3 million people.

Sp. Vas a encontrar la respuesta **en lo bajo de (abajo de)** la página;

Port. Você vai encontrar a resposta **embaixo da (na parte de baixo da)** página;

It. Troverai la risposta **nella parte bassa della** pagina;

Fr. Tu vas trouver la réponse **au bas de** la page.

- You will find the answer **at the bottom of** the page.

Prepositions encima de (por arriba de, por encima de) (Sp.), acima de (em cima de, por cima de) (Port.), al di sopra di (sopra) (It.), au-dessus de (par-dessus) (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. **encima de (por arriba de, por encima de)**, Port. **acima de (em cima de, por cima de)**, It. **al di sopra di (sopra)** and Fr. **au-dessus de (par-dessus)** mean *above*. Look at the example:

Sp. El avión estaba volando **encima de (por encima de; por arriba de)** la ciudad;

Port. O avião estava voando **em cima da (por cima da; acima da)** cidade;

It. L'aereo stava volando **al di sopra della (sopra)** città;

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Fr. L'avion volait **au-dessus** (*par-dessus*) **de** la ville.

- *The plane was flying **above** (**over**) the city.*

Prepositions **a través de** (Sp.), **através de** (Port.), **attraverso** (It.), **à travers** (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. **a través de**, Port. **através de**, It. **attraverso** and Fr. **à travers** express across, through:

Sp. Decidieron pasar **a través del** bosque;

Port. Eles decidiram passar **através da** floresta;

It. Hanno deciso di passare **attraverso** la foresta;

Fr. Ils ont décidé de passer **à travers** la forêt.

- *They decided to go **through** the forest.*

Prepositions **al lado de** (**junto a**) (Sp.), **ao lado de** (**junto de**) (Port.), **allato a** (**accanto a**) (It.), **à côté de** (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. **al lado de** (**junto a**), Port. **ao lado de** (**junto de**), It. **allato a** (**accanto a**) and Fr. **à côté de** mean next to:

Sp. El restaurante está **al lado de** (**junto a**) mi casa;

Port. O restaurante está **ao lado da** (**junto da**) minha casa;

It. Il ristorante sta **allato alla** (**accanto alla**) mia casa;

Fr. Le restaurant est **à côté de** ma maison.

- *The restaurant is **next to** my house.*

Prepositions **más allá de** (Sp.), **além de** (Port.), **al di là di** (It.), **au delà de** (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. **más allá de**, Port. **além de**, It. **al di là di** and Fr. **au delà de** mean *beyond*:

Sp. Los exploradores no han viajado nunca **más allá de** los mares;

Port. Os exploradores nunca viajaram **além dos** mares;

It. Gli esploratori non hanno mai viaggiato **al di là dei** mari;

Fr. Les explorateurs n'ont jamais voyagé **au-delà des** mers.

- *The explorers have never travelled **beyond** the seas.*

Prepositions **acerca de** (a propósito de) (Sp.), **acerca de** (a propósito de) (Port.), **circa a** (a proposito di) (It.), **au sujet de** (à propos de) (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. **acerca de** (**a propósito de**), Port. **acerca de** (**a propósito de**), It. **circa a** (**a proposito di**) and Fr. **au sujet de** (**à propos de**) stand for *about, as regards, concerning*:

Sp. Quiero saber todo **acerca de** (**a propósito de**) esta historia;

Port. Quero saber tudo **acerca desta** (**a propósito desta**) história;

It. Voglio sapere tutto **circa a** (**a proposito di**) questa storia;

Fr. Je veux tout savoir **au sujet de** (**à propos de**) cette histoire.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

- *I want to know everything **about** this story.*

**Prepositions *alrededor de* (en torno a) (Sp.),
ao redor de (em torno de) (Port.), *attorno*
a (intorno a) (It.), *autour de* (Fr.)**

The prepositions Sp. ***alrededor de*** (*en torno a*), Port. ***ao redor de*** (*em torno de*), It. ***attorno a*** (*intorno a*) and Fr. ***autour de*** express *around*:

Sp. Sueña con viajar ***alrededor del*** (*en torno al*) mundo;

Port. Ele sonha em viajar ***ao redor do*** (*em torno do*) mundo;

It. Sogna di viaggiare ***attorno al*** (*intorno al*) mondo;

Fr. Il rêve de voyager ***autour du*** monde.

- *He dreams of travelling **around** the world.*

**Prepositions *cerca de* (Sp.), *perto de* (Port.),
vicino a (It.), *près de* (Fr.)**

The prepositions Sp. ***cerca de***, Port. ***perto de***, It. ***vicino a*** and Fr. ***près de*** mean *near*:

Sp. Mi amigo vive ***cerca de*** la escuela;

Port. Meu amigo mora ***perto da*** escola;

It. Il mio amico vive ***vicino alla*** scuola.;

Fr. Mon ami vit ***près de*** l'école.

- *My friend lives **near** the school.*

*Prepositions **para con** (Sp.), **para com** (Port.), **verso** (It.), **envers** (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. **para con**, Port. **para com**, It. **verso** and Fr. **envers** mean *towards*:

Sp. El profesor es muy amable **para con** los alumnos;

Port. O professor é muito gentil **para com** os alunos;

It. L'insegnante è molto gentile **verso** gli alunni;

Fr. Le professeur est très gentil **envers** les élèves.

- *The teacher is very kind **towards** the students.*

*Prepositions **a lo largo de** (Sp.), **ao longo de** (Port.), **lungo** (It.), **au long de** (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. **a lo largo de**, Port. **ao longo de**, It. **lungo** and Fr. **au long de** mean *along, throughout, during* and can indicate:

- **time (throughout, during):**

Sp. El festival durará **a lo largo de** una semana;

Port. O festival vai durar **ao longo de** uma semana;

It. Il festival durerà **lungo** una settimana;

Fr. Le festival va durer **au long de** la semaine.

- *The festival will last **throughout** a week.*

- **movement over or for the length of (along):**

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Sp. Dos hombres caminaron **a lo largo del** río;

Port. Dois homens caminharam **ao longo do** rio;

It. Due uomini hanno camminato **lungo** il fiume;

Fr. Deux hommes ont marché **le long de** la rivière.

- *Two men walked **along** the river.*

*Prepositions **al pie de** (Sp.), **ao pé de** (Port.), **ai piedi di** (It.), **au pied de** (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. **al pie de**, Port. **ao pé de**, It. **ai piedi di** and Fr. **au pied de** express *next to; nearby; at the bottom of*:

Sp. Ellos estaban **al pie de** una montaña;

Port. Eles estavam, **ao pé de** uma montanha;

It. Stavano **ai piedi di** una montagna;

Fr. Ils étaient **au pied d'**une montagne.

- *They were **at the bottom of** a mountain.*

*Prepositions **en vez de** (**en lugar de**) (Sp.), **em vez de** (**em lugar de**) (Port.), **invece di** (**in luogo di**) (It.), **au lieu de** (**à la place de**) (Fr.)*

The prepositions Sp. **en vez de** (**en lugar de**), Port. **em vez de** (**em lugar de**), It. **invece di** (**in luogo di**) and Fr. **au lieu de** (**à la place de**) express *instead of, in place of*:

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Sp. **En lugar de (en vez de)** ver la televisión, ella decidió leer un libro;

Port. **Em lugar de (em vez de)** assistir a televisão, ela decidiu ler um livro;

It. **In luogo di (invece di)** guardare la televisione, lei ha deciso di leggere un libro;

Fr. **Au lieu de (à la place de)** regarder la télévision, elle a décidé de lire un livre.

- **Instead of** watching TV, she decided to read a book.

Prepositions a pesar de (a despecho de) (Sp.), apesar de (a despeito de) (Port.), malgrado (a dispetto di) (It.), malgré (en dépit de) (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. **a pesar de (a despecho de)**, Port. **apesar de (a despeito de)**, It. **malgrado (a dispetto di)** and Fr. **malgré (en dépit de)** designate *in spite of, despite*:

Sp. Salí **a pesar de (a despecho de)** la lluvia;

Port. Eu saí **apesar da (a despeito da)** chuva;

It. Sono uscito **malgrado (a dispetto della)** la pioggia;

Fr. Je suis sorti **malgré (en dépit de)** la pluie.

- **I went out despite** the rain.

Prepositions a fin de (Sp.), a fim de (Port.), a scopo di (affinché) (It.), afin que/de (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. **a fin de**, Port. **a fim de**, It. **a scopo di (affinché, al fine di)** and Fr. **afin que/de** stand for *in order to*:

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Sp. Él fue a una tienda **a fin de** comprar una nueva chaqueta;

Port. Ele foi a uma loja **a fim de** comprar um novo casaco;

It. È andato in un negozio **a scopo di** (*affinché/ al fine di*)
comprare una nuova giacca;

Fr. Il est allé dans un magasin **afin d'**acheter une nouvelle veste.

- *He went to a store in order to buy a new jacket.*

Prepositions antes de (Sp.), antes de (Port.), prima di (It.), avant de (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. **antes de**, Port. **antes de**, It. **prima di** and Fr. **avant de** stand for *before*:

Sp. **Antes de** salir, apagué la luz;

Port. **Antes de** sair, eu apaguei a luz;

It. **Prima di** uscire, ho spento la luce;

Fr. **Avant de** sortir, j'ai éteint la lumière.

- *Before going out I switched off the light.*

Prepositions después de (Sp.), depois de (Port.), dopo (It.), après (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. **después de**, Port. **depois de**, It. **dopo** and Fr. **après** mean *after*:

Sp. **Después de** haber cenado, se fue dormir;

Port. **Depois de** ter jantado, ele foi dormir;

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

It. **Dopo** aver cenato, è andato dormire;

Fr. **Après** avoir dîné, il est allé dormir.

- *After having dinner he went to sleep.*

Prepositions *delante de (frente a, enfrente)* (Sp.), *diante de (em frente de)* (Port.), *dinnanzi a (di fronte a, di faccia a)* (It.), *en face de* (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. ***delante de (frente a, enfrente)***, Port. ***diante de (em frente de)***, It. ***dinnanzi a (di fronte a, di faccia a)*** and Fr. ***en face de*** mean *in front of*:

Sp. ***Delante de (enfrente de, frente a)*** nuestra casa hay un gran parque;

Port. ***Diante da (em frente da)*** nossa casa há um grande parque;

It. ***Dinnanzi alla (di fronte alla, di faccia alla)*** nostra casa c'è un grande parco;

Fr. ***En face de*** notre maison il y a un grand parc.

- *In front of our house there is a big park.*

Prepositions *detrás de (tras)* (Sp.), *atrás de (por trás de)* (Port.), *dietro a* (It.), *derrière* (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. ***detrás de (tras)***, Port. ***atrás de (por trás de)***, It. ***dietro a*** and Fr. ***derrière*** stand for *behind*. It is used when referring to position (e.g. behind the house):

Sp. La escuela se encuentra ***detrás del*** parque;

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Port. A escola fica **atrás do** parque;

It. La scuola si trova **dietro al** parco;

Fr. L'école se trouve **derrière** le parc.

- The school is **behind** the park.

It is remarkable that instead of Spanish **detrás de**, the preposition **atrás de** can be used in Latin America.

Sp (Lat. Am.). La escuela se encuentra **atrás del** parque;

- The school is **behind** the park.



NOTE:

*It is worth saying that in Spanish and Portuguese, the preposition Sp. **tras**; Port. **por trás de** is used in more literary or journalistic style often implying hidden behind. Observe the following:*

*Sp. Alguien está **tras** la casa;*

*Port. Alguém está **por trás da** casa;*

*- Someone is **behind** the house.*

However, in Italian and French, the preposition It. **dietro** and Fr. **derrière** is still used in this sense:

It. Qualcuno è **dietro la** casa;

Fr. Quelqu'un est **derrière** la maison.

- Someone is **behind** the house.

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS



NOTE:

Take into consideration that, Sp. **tras** can be used to express after (meaning being in pursuit of) when following the verbs of motion. However, in Portuguese Port. **atrás de** is used and in Italian and French, the preposition It. **dopo di** and Fr. **après** is used in this case:

Sp. El hombre salió **tras** ella;
Port. O homem saiu **atrás de** ela.
It. L'uomo è uscito **dopo di** lei.
Fr. L'homme est sorti **après** elle.
- The man went out **after** her.

Prepositions **lejos de** (Sp.), **longe de** (Port.), **lontano da** (It.), **loin de** (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. **lejos de**, Port. **longe de**, It. **lontano da** and Fr. **loin de** mean away from:

Sp. Mi hermana vive **lejos de** centro de la ciudad;
Port. Minha irmã vive **longe de** centro da cidade;
It. Mia sorella vive **lontano da** centro della città;
Fr. Ma soeur vit **loin de** centre-ville.
- My sister lives **far from** the city center.

Prepositions **dentro de** (en el interior de) (Sp.), **dentro de** (no interior de) (Port.), **dentro** (all'interno di) (It.), **à l'intérieur de** (Fr.)

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

The prepositions Sp. **dentro de** (*en el interior de*), Port. **dentro de** (*no interior de*), It. **dentro** (*all'interno di*) and Fr. **à l'intérieur de** mean *inside, in*:

Sp. La muñeca está **dentro de** (*en el interior de*) la caja;

Port. A boneca está **dentro da** (*no interior da*) caixa;

It. La bambola è **dentro** la (*all'interno della*) scatola;

Fr. La poupée est **à l'intérieur de** la boîte.

- *The doll is inside the box.*

Prepositions *respecto a* (*con respecto a*, *con relación a*, *em respeito a*, *quanto a*) (Sp.), *a respeito de* (*com respeito a*, *em relação a*, *quanto a*) (Port.), *rispetto a* (*riguardo a*, *in quanto a*, *in merito a*) (It.), *par rapport à* (*quant à*) (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. **respecto a** (*con respecto a*, *con relación a*, *em respeito a*, *quanto a*), Port. **a respeito de** (*com respeito a*, *em relação a*, *quanto a*), It. **rispetto a** (*riguardo a*, *in quanto a*, *in merito a*) and Fr. **par rapport à** (*quant à*) mean *with respect to, in relation to, concerning*:

Sp. Ya oí las noticias **respecto a** la celebración.;

Port. Já ouviu a notícia **a respeito da** celebração;

It. Ho già sentito la notizia **rispetto alla** celebrazione;

Fr. Je l'ai déjà entendu les nouvelles **par rapport à** la célébration.

- *I have already heard the news regarding the celebration.*

Prepositions de acuerdo con (Sp.), de acordo com (Port.), in conformità con (It.), en conformité avec (conformément à) (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. ***de acuerdo con***, Port. ***de acordo com***, It. ***in conformità con*** and Fr. ***en conformité avec*** (***conformément à***) designate *according to, in accordance with*:

Sp. ***De acuerdo con*** esta señal de tráfico, debemos girar a la izquierda;

Port. ***De acordo com*** este sinal de estrada, devemos virar à esquerda;

It. ***In conformità con*** questo cartello stradale, dobbiamo girare a sinistra;

Fr. ***En conformité avec*** ce panneau de signalisation de route, nous devons tourner à gauche.

- ***In accordance with*** this road sign, we must turn left.

Prepositions fuera de (Sp.), fora de (Port.), fuori di (It.), hors de (en dehors de) (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. ***fuera de***, Port. ***fora de***, It. ***fuori di*** and Fr. ***hors de*** (***en dehors de***) mean *outside, out of*:

Sp. Los niños juegan ***fuera de*** la casa;

Port. As crianças brincam ***fora de*** casa;

It. I bambini giocano ***fuori dalla*** casa;

CHAPTER 8: PREPOSITIONS

Fr. Les enfants jouent **hors de** (*en dehors de*) la maison.

- *The children play **outside** the house.*

Prepositions *gracias a* (Sp.), *graças a* (Port.), *grazie a* (It.), *grâce à* (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. **gracias a**, Port. **graças a**, It. **grazie a** and Fr. **grâce à** express **thanks to**:

Sp. **Gracias a** mi profesor, yo sé el italiano muy bien;

Port. **Graças ao** meu professor, eu sei o italiano muito bem;

It. **Grazie al** mio insegnante, io so l'italiano molto bene;

Fr. **Merci à** mon professeur, je connais très bien l'Italien.

- ***Thanks to** my teacher, I know Italian very well.*

Prepositions *a causa de* (Sp.), *por causa de* (Port.), *a causa di* (It.), *à cause de* (Fr.)

The prepositions Sp. **a causa de**, Port. **por causa de**, It. **a causa di** and Fr. **à cause de** stand for **because of**:

Sp. La lección fue cancelada **a causa de** la fuerte nevada;

Port. A lição foi cancelada **por causa da** queda de neve pesada;

It. La lezione è stata annullata **a causa della** forte nevicata;

Fr. La leçon a été annulée **à cause de** fortes chutes de neige.

- *The lesson was canceled **because of** the heavy snowfall.*

Contraction of Prepositions with Article



Did you know?

Reggio Calabria or simply Reggio is a city in southern Italy. Reggio has several popular nicknames: "The city of Bronzes", because of the Riace Bronzes - ancient, life-size Greek statues; "the city of bergamot", which is cultivated in the region; and "the city of Fata Morgana", which is an optical phenomenon observed in Italy only from the Reggio coastal side.

See Contraction of the Article p.84.

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Overview

Like the English conjunctions “*and*”, “*or*”, “*if*”, “*as well as*”, “*but*” Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French conjunctions are the words which connect two parts of a sentence together. Observe the following:

Sp. Ella habla francés **e** italiano muy bien;

Port. Ela fala francês **e** italiano muito bem;

It. Lei parla francese **e** italiano molto bene;

Fr. Elle parle très bien français **et** italien.

- *She speaks French **and** Italian very well.*

Conjunctions are divided into three major groups, **coordinating**, **subordinating** and **correlative**, in the Romance languages:

Coordinating Conjunctions

Coordinating conjunctions join similar words or group of words, for example:

Sp. Yo leo **pero** ella duerme;

Port. Eu leio **mas** ela dorme;

It. Io leggo **ma** lei dorme;

Fr. Je lis **mais** elle dort.

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

- I read **but** she sleeps.

Note that the two parts of the clause are independent of each other and could easily be separated by punctuation, in the Romance languages. Study the following:

Yo leo, ella duerme;
Port. Eu leio, ela dorme;
It. Io leggo, lei dorme;
Fr. Je lis, elle dort.
- I read, she sleeps.

Sp. Yo leo. Ella duerme;
Port. Eu leio. Ela dorme;
It. Io leggo. Lei dorme;
Fr. Je lis. Elle dort.
- I read. She sleeps.

Below is a list of the most common *coordinating* conjunctions in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
y	e	e	et	and
pero	mas	ma	mais	but
o	ou	o	ou	or
entonces	então	allora	alors	so

Subordinating Conjunctions

Subordinating conjunctions connect a dependent clause to a main clause. It is noticeable that dependent clause cannot be used alone as its meaning is not complete without the main clause. Observe the following:

Sp. **Como** él no tiene tiempo, no puede hacerlo;
Port. **Como** ele não tem tempo, ele não pode fazê-lo;

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

It. **Come** lui non ha tempo, non può farlo;

Fr. **Comme** il n'a pas le temps, il ne peut pas le faire..

- **Since** he doesn't have time, he cannot do it.



Did you know?

Lyon is the 3rd largest city in France, located around 470 km (292 mi) south from Paris. It has a long culinary arts tradition. Lyon is considered "the gastronomic capital of the world". Popular local dishes are: coq au vin, quenelle, gras double, salade lyonnaise, rosette lyonnaise and others.

The main clause is "he cannot do it". The clause "Since he doesn't have time" is a dependent one and is not complete without the main one. In fact the idea is not that he doesn't want to do it, but he cannot do it since he doesn't have enough time.

It is noticeable that Subordinating conjunctions are usually placed at the beginning of the sentence they introduce in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French.

Below is a list of some frequently used subordinating conjunctions in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a (con) condición de que;	a (com) condição de que;	a condizione che	à condition que	on the condition that

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a causa de que	por causa de	a causa di che;	à cause de	<i>because of;</i>
merced a que; debido a que	graças a que; devido a	grazie al fatto che; per il fatto che	grâce au fait que; dû au fait de/que	<i>owing to the fact that; thanks to</i>
a fin de que	a fim de que	affinché;	afin de/que	<i>so that</i>
a menos que	a menos que	a meno che	à moins de/que	<i>unless</i>
antes bien; más bien	antes bem; mas antes	piuttosto	plutôt que	<i>rather, on the contrary</i>
antes de que	antes que	prima che (di)	avant de/que	<i>before</i>
después que	depois que	dopo che; dopoiché	après que	<i>after</i>

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
así	assim	perciò; dunque; e così	comme ça, aussi (with inversion)	thus
así que; tan pronto como; en cuanto que	assim que; tão logo	appena che	aussitôt que, dès que, à peine (with inversion)	as soon as, after,
es por eso que	é por isso que	è per questo; è perciò;	c'est pourquoi; voilà pourquoi	that is why
así que; así pues; conque	pois que	cosicché, ebbene	done; ainsi donc	therefore
a pesar de que	apesar de que	nonostante che, malgrado che	malgré que	despite that
aun cuando; más que	ainda quando	quandanche	même si	even if

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
aunque; bien que; sin embargo; por más que; no obstante	embora; entre- tanto; no entanto; todavía; contudo; porém; não obstante	però; anche se, benché, sebbene; ciò nonostante; cionondime no; nondimeno; comunque; tuttavia	quoique, bien que; cependant; toutefois; néan- moins; pourtant	<i>however; yet; neverthel ess</i>
como; ya que; pues que; puesto que	como; já que; pois que	come; giacché siccome; poiché	comme; dès lors que; puisque	<i>as, for, since</i>
con el objeto de que; con el fin de que	com o objectivo de que; com o fim de que	con l'obiettivo di; allo scopo di che; al fine di/ che	dans le but de/que; aux fins de/que; à l'effet de/que	<i>with the purpose of</i>
con tal que; siempre que	desde que; sempre que	purché	pourvu que	<i>provided that, as long as</i>
cuando	quando	quando	quand	<i>when</i>

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
dado que	dado que	dato che	étant donné que	<i>given that</i>
de manera que; de modo que	de maneira que; de modo que; de tal forma que	in maniera che; in modo che	de (telle) manière que; de telle sorte que; de telle façon que	<i>in such a way that</i>
en caso de que	em caso de que	in caso di che; nel caso di che	en cas de; au cas où; dans le cas où	<i>in case that</i>
en vista de que	tendo em conta o facto de	in considerazi one del fatto che	compte tenu du fait que	<i>in view of the fact that</i>
excepto que; salvo que	exceto que; salvo que	eccetto che	excepté que; sauf que	<i>except that</i>
fuera de que; además de que	além de que	oltre che; oltre a ciò; oltreché	outre que; hormis que	<i>apart from that</i>

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
hasta que	até que	finché; fino a quando	avant de; jusqu'à ce que	<i>until</i>
más bien que	ao invés de que	piuttosto che	plutôt que	<i>rather than</i>
mientras (que)	enquanto	mentre (che)	pendant que; tandis que	<i>while</i>
luego	então	allora	alors	<i>then</i>
para que	para que	perché	pour que	<i>in order that; so that</i>
por cuanto	por- quanto	in quanto	(pour) autant que; puisque	<i>inasmuch as</i>
por más que	por mais que	per quanto	pour autant que	<i>(as) much as</i>

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
por lo tanto; por tanto; por eso; por lo cual	portanto; por isso	pertanto	partant; par suite; par conséquent	so, therefore
por razón de que	pela razão de que	per la ragione che	pour la raison que	for the reason that
porque	porque	perché	parce que; car	because
que	que	che	que	that
si	se	se	si	if
visto que	visto que	visto che	vu que	seeing that
supuesto que	suposto que	supposto che	supposé que; à supposer que	assumed that

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
una vez que	uma vez que	dal momento che	une fois que	once
como	como	come	comme	as (comparative)
...que	...(do) que	...che; ...di	...que	...than
al igual que; así como	bem como; assim como	così come	ainsi que; aussi bien que	as well as
como si	como se	come se	comme si	as if
tanto cuanto	tanto quanto	tanto quanto	autant que; autant	as far as; as much as

Remember that in the Romance languages, the conjunctions which are used with Sp., Port., Fr. **que** and It. **che** need the subjunctive following them. Otherwise the indicative is used.

Correlative Conjunctions

Correlative conjunctions are pairs of conjunctions.

Below is a list of some commonly used correlative conjunctions in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
tanto... como	tanto... como	sia...che	et...et	<i>both...and</i>
no...ni...ni	não...nem ...nem	non...né ...né	ni...ni...ne	<i>neither... nor</i>
no sólo...sino también.	não só... mas também	non solo... ma anche	non seulement ...mais encore	<i>not only... but also</i>
o...o; bien... bien; fuera... fuera; ora...ora; será ... ora	ou...ou	o...o; sia...sia	ou (bien) ...ou (bien); soit...soit	<i>either...or (else)</i>

Functions of Conjunctions

All the conjunctions in the Romance languages perform different functions, which are presented below:

Copulative conjunctions

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Copulative conjunctions join two or more words, word groups or sentences which have similar function in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French. The most frequent copulative conjunctions are:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
y (e)*	e	e	et	and
no sólo...sino también.	não só...mas também	non solo...ma anche	non seulement...mais encore	not only...but also
no...ni...ni	não...nem...nem	non...né...né	ne...ni...ni	neither...nor
tanto...como	tanto...como	sia...che	et...et	both...and



NOTE:

In Spanish, when the conjunction **y** precedes a word which begins with an *i* or *hi*, it changes to an **e** in order to differentiate the words (e.g. *Ella habla frances e inglés con fluidez* – She speaks French and English fluently).

Sp. Mi colega es muy hábil **y** competente;

Port. Meu colega é muito hábil **e** competente;

It. Il mio collega è molto abile **e** competente;

Fr. Mon collègue est très qualifiée **et** compétent.

- My colleague is very skilled **and** competent.

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS



Did you know?

Majorca is the biggest island in the Balearic islands, which located in the Mediterranean and belong to Spain. It is a very popular holiday destination. Tourists have been visiting Majorca for over 100 years. About 220 million visitors have been to the island.

Sp. Compré esta casa **no sólo** porque era barata, **sino también** porque estaba en buen estado;

Port. Eu comprei esta casa **não só** porque era barata, **mas também** porque ela estava em bom estado;

It. Ho comprato questa casa, **non solo** perché era a buon mercato, **ma anche** perché era in buone condizioni;

Fr. J'ai acheté cette maison **non seulement** parce qu'elle était bon marché, **mais aussi** parce qu'elle était en bon état.

- I bought this house **not only** because it was cheap, **but also** because it was in good condition.

Adversative conjunctions

These conjunctions demonstrate opposition among the units they connect. Below is a list of the most frequent adversative conjunctions in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
pero	mas	ma	mais	<i>but</i>

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
aunque; bien que; sin embargo; por más que; no obstante	entretant o; no entanto; todavia; contudo; porém; não obstante	però; anche se, benché, sebbene; ciò nonost- ante; cionondi- meno; nondi- meno; comun- que; tuttavia	quoique, bien que; cependant; toutefois; néan- moins; pourtant	however; yet; neverthel- ess
antes bien; más bien	antes bem; mas antes	piuttosto	plutôt	rather
más bien que	ao invés de que	piuttosto che	plutôt que	rather than
fuera de que; además de que	além de que	oltre che; oltre a ciò; oltreché	oltre que; hormis que	apart from that
excepto (que); salvo (que)	exceto (que); salvo (que)	eccetto (che); tranne (che)	excepté (que); sauf (que)	except (that)

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
aun cuando; más que	ainda quando	quandanc he	même si	<i>even if</i>
antes de que	antes que	prima che (di)	avant que	<i>before</i>

Sp. El día estaba caluroso, **sin embargo** (*aunque, no obstante* etc.) no fuimos a la playa;

Port. O dia estava quente, **no entanto** (*porém, não obstante* etc.) não fomos para a praia;

It. La giornata era calda, **comunque** (*però, ciò nonostante* etc.) non siamo andati in spiaggia;

Fr. La journée était chaude, **cependant** (*quoique, néanmoins* etc.) nous ne sommes pas allés à la plage.

- *It was a hot day, however (yet, nevertheless) we didn't go to the beach.*

Sp. Él va a caminar todos los días, **excepto** cuando hace frío;

Port. Ele vai para uma caminhada todos os dias, **exceto** quando está frio;

It. Egli va a fare una passeggiata ogni giorno, **tranne** quando è freddo;

Fr. Il se promène chaque jour, **sauf** quand il fait froid.

- *He goes for a walk every day, except when it is cold.*

Disjunctive conjunctions

Disjunctive conjunctions connect words or sentences in order to indicate different opinions or alternatives. Below are some frequently used disjunctive conjunctions in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
o (u)*	ou	o	ou	<i>or</i>
o...o; bien...bien; fuera... fuera; ora...ora; será ... ora	ou...ou; quer... quer	o...o; sia...sia	ou (bien) ...ou (bien); soit...soit	<i>either... or</i>
no...ni...ni	não...ne m...nem	non...né... né	ni...ni... ne	<i>neither... nor</i>



NOTE:

*In Spanish, if **o** precedes a word which begins with an **o**, it changes to a **u** in order to differentiate the words (e.g. *Uno **u** otro plato me va* – *Either dish is ok for me*).*

Sp. ¿Vas a cocinar **o** a limpiar la casa?

Port. Você vai cozinhar **ou** limpar a casa?

It. Cucinerai **o** pulirai la casa?

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Fr. Tu vas cuisiner **ou** nettoyer la maison?

- Will you cook **or** clean the house?



Did you know?

Natal, the capital of the state of Rio Grande do Norte in northeastern Brazil, is the closest Brazilian state capital to Africa and Europe.

Sp. **O** (**bien, fuera** and etc.)
tú vas conmigo, **o** (**bien, fuera** and etc.) te quedas;

Port. **Ou** (**quer**) você vai comigo, **ou** (**quer**) você fica;

It. **O** (**sia**) vieni con me, **o** (**sia**) rimani;

Fr. **Ou** (**soit**) tu viens avec moi, **ou** (**soit**) tu restes.

- **Either** you go with me **or** you stay.

Consecutive conjunctions

Consecutive conjunctions connect words or sentences in order to indicate the result of an action. The most frequent ones are the following:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
así que; así pues; conque	pois que	dunque; ebbene	donc; ainsi donc	therefore
luego	então	allora	alors	then

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
así	assim	cosicché; e così	comme ça, aussi (with inversion)	<i>thus</i>
es por eso que	é por isso que	è per questo; è perciò;	c'est pourquoi; voilà pourquoi	<i>that is why</i>
por lo tanto; por tanto; por eso; por lo cual	portanto; por isso	perciò; pertanto	partant; par suite; par conséquent	<i>so, therefore</i>
de (tal) manera que; de (tal) modo que	de (tal) maneira que; de (tal) modo que; de (tal) forma que	di (tale) maniera che; in (tale) modo che	de (telle) manière que; de (telle) sorte que; de (telle) façon que	<i>in such a way that</i>

It is noticeable that consecutive conjunctions are usually placed at the beginning of the clause they represent in the Romance languages.

Sp. No estudió, **por lo tanto** no pasó el examen;

Port. Ele não estudou, **por isso** não passou no exame;

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

It. Egli non ha studiato, **perciò** non ha passato l'esame;

Fr. Il n'a pas étudié, **donc** il n'a pas passé l'examen.

- *He did not study, **therefore** he did not pass the exam.*



Did you know?

Parma, a city in northern Italy, is famous for its prosciutto (cured ham), cheese, music and architecture. In 2004 Parma has a food tourism sector, which represented by Parma Golosa and Food Valley.

Sp. Ella lo dijo **de tal manera que** me enojé;

Port. Ela disse isso **de tal maneira que** eu fiquei com raiva;

It. Lei l'ha detto **di maniera che** mi arrabbiassi;

Fr. Elle l'a dit **de telle manière que** je me suis fâché.

- *She said it **in such a way that** I got angry.*

Causal conjunctions

These conjunctions subordinate one clause to another, where one causes the other to happen. Below is a list of the most common causal conjunctions:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
porque	porque	perché	parce que; car	because
como; ya que; pues que; puesto que	como; já que; pois que	come; giacché siccome; poiché	comme; dès lors que; puisque	as, for, since

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
que	que	che	que	that
en vista de que	tendo em conta o facto de	in considerazione del fatto che	compte tenu du fait que	in view of the fact that
visto que	visto que	visto che	vu que;	seeing that
una vez que	uma vez que	dal momento che	du moment que	once
supuesto que	suposto que	supposto che	supposé que; à supposer que	assumed that
por razón de que	pela razão de que	per la ragione che	pour la raison que	for the reason that
dado que	dado que	dato che	étant donné que	given that
por cuanto	porquanto	in quanto	(pour) autant que; puisque	inasmuch as

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS



Did you know?

Lille, a city in northern France, close to the border with Belgium, is distinguished by Flemish architectural style. It features 17th-century red brick town houses aligned in a row, cobbled pedestrian streets. This architectural style is uncommon in France.

Sp. Mark no vino **porque** estaba ocupado;

Port. Mark não veio **porque** estava ocupado;

It. Mark non è venuto **perché** era occupato;

Fr. Mark n'était pas venu **parce qu'**il était occupé.

- Mark didn't come **because** he was busy.

Sp. **Como** no llamaste, salí;

Port. **Como** você não ligou, eu saí;

It. **Come** non hai chiamato, sono partito;

Fr. **Comme** tu n'as pas appelé, je suis partie.

- **Since** you didn't call, I left.

Concessive conjunctions

These conjunctions express an idea that implies the opposite of the main part of the sentence. Below is a list of adversative conjunctions in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a pesar de que	apesar de que	nonostante; malgrado che	malgré le fait que	despite the fact that

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
aun cuando/ que; más que	ainda quando/ que; mesmo que	quandanche	même si	even if
aunque; bien que; sin embargo; por más que; no obstante	embora; entre- tanto; no entanto; todavía; contudo; porém; não obstante	però; anche se, benché, sebbene; ciò nonostante; cionondime no; nondimeno; comunque; tuttavia	bien que; cepend- ant; toutefois; néan- moins; pourtant	however; yet; neverthel- ess; although
por más que	por mais que	per quanto che	pour autant que	(as) much as

Sp. A ella le gusta cocinar, **aunque** (*bien que* and etc.), no cocina a menudo;

Port. Ela gosta de cozinhar, **embora** (*entretanto* and etc.) ela não cozinhe muitas vezes;

It. Le piace cucinare, **anche se** (*però* and etc.) lei non cucina spesso;

Fr. Elle aime cuisiner, **bien qu'elle** (*néanmoins* and etc.) ne cuisine pas souvent.

- She likes to cook, **although** she doesn't cook often.

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Sp. **A pesar de que** nos hemos esforzado mucho, no hemos ganado la competencia;

Port. **Apesar de que** nos temos esforçado muito, não ganhamos a competição;

It. **Nonostante** ci siamo sforzati molto, non abbiamo vinto il concorso;

Fr. **Malgré le fait que** nous nous sommes efforcés beaucoup, nous n'avons pas gagné la compétition.

- **Despite the fact that** we have tried hard, we have not won the competition.

Conditional conjunctions

Conditional conjunctions describe the condition that needs to be met in order to fulfil what is implied in the main clause. Below is a list of some frequently used conditional conjunctions in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a (con) condición de que;	a (com) condição de que;	a condizione che	à condition que	on the condition that
si	se	se	si	if
como; ya que; pues que; puesto que	como; já que; pois que	come; giacché siccome; poiché	comme; dès lors que; puisque	as, for, since

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
en caso de que	em caso de que	in caso di che; nel caso	en cas que; au cas où; dans le cas où	<i>in case that</i>
con tal que; siempre que	desde que	purché	pourvu que	<i>provided that, as long as</i>

Note that Conditional conjunctions usually take the verb either in the Subjunctive or in the Infinitive. In Portuguese, conditional subjunctives are followed by either the Subjunctive, the Infinitive or the Personal infinitive.



Did you know?

Granada, a city in southern Spain, hosts the Alhambra, a Moorish citadel. It is the most popular construction of the Islamic historical legacy. This makes Granada an attractive tourist destination among other cities of Spain.

Sp. **En caso de que** te pierdas, llama a este número;

Port. **Em caso de que** você se perca, chame esse número;

It. **Nel caso** ti perda, chiama questo numero;

Fr. **Au cas où** tu te perdes, appelle ce numéro.

- **In case that** you get lost, call this number.

Sp. **Si** ella quiere ser un médico, debe estudiar mucho;

Port. **Se** ela quer ser médica, ela deve estudar muito;

It. **Se** lei vuole essere un medico, deve studiare molto;

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Fr. **Si** elle veut être un médecin, elle doit beaucoup étudier.

- *If she wants to be a doctor, she must study a lot.*

Final conjunctions

Final conjunctions are coordinating conjunctions and are used to express a clause that indicate the purpose or aim of the main clause, such as:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
a fin de que	a fim de que	affinché	afin que	so that
con el objeto de que; con el fin de que	com o objectivo de que; com o fim de que	con l'obiettiv o di; allo scopo di che; al fine di che	dans le but de/ que; aux fins de que; à l'effet de que	with the purpose of
para que	para que	perché	pour que	in order that; so that

Note that final conjunctions must be followed by the Subjunctive.

Sp. Te recuerdo **para que** no te olvides de comprar un regalo;

Port. Lembro-te (Braz. Port. Lembro-lhe) **para que** você não se esqueça de comprar um presente;

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

It. Ti ricordo **perché** non dimentichi di comprare un regalo;
 Fr. Je te rappelle **pour que** tu n'oublies pas d'acheter un cadeau.
 - *I remind you **so that** you will not forget to buy a gift.*

Sp. Ella trabaja duro **a fin de que (para que)** pueda comprar una casa;

Port. Ela trabalha duro **a fim de que (para que)** ela possa comprar uma casa;

It. Lavora sodo **affinché (perché)** possa comprare una casa;

Fr. Elle travaille dur **afin qu' (pour qu')** elle puisse acheter une maison.

- *She works hard **so that** she can buy a house.*

Temporal conjunctions

These conjunctions indicate the time and tells us when something has happened. Below is a list of some common temporal conjunctions in the Romance languages:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
cuando	quando	quando	quand	<i>when</i>
así que; tan pronto como; en cuanto que	assim que; tão logo	appena che	aussitôt que, dès que, à peine (with inversion)	<i>as soon as, after</i>

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
con tal que; siempre que	desde que; sempre que	purché	pourvu que; du moment que	as long as
antes de que	antes que	prima che (di)	avant que/ de	before
después que	depois que	dopo che; dopoché	après que	after
mientras (que)	enquanto	mentre (che)	pendant que; tandis que	while
a menos que	a menos que	a meno che	à moins que	unless
hasta que	até que	finché; fino a quando	jusqu'à ce que	until



Did you know?

Vitória is the capital city of Espírito Santo state in Brazil. It was considered the 4th best city to live in Brazil by United Nations in 2013, and has the highest gross domestic product per capita.

Sp. **Cuando** llegué, ella ya estaba durmiendo;

Port. **Quando** eu cheguei, ela já estava dormindo;

It. **Quando** sono arrivato, lei stava già dormendo;

Fr. **Quand** je suis arrivé, elle dormait déjà.

- **When** I arrived she was already sleeping.

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Sp. **Mientras** él leía el periódico, su esposa hablaba por teléfono;

Port. **Enquanto** ele lia o jornal, sua mulher falava por telefone;

It. **Mentre** lui leggeva il giornale, sua moglie parlava al telefono;

Fr. **Pendant qu'**il lisait le journal, sa femme parlait au téléphone.

- **While** he was reading the newspaper, his wife spoke on the phone.

Comparative conjunctions

Comparative conjunctions are used to compare two ideas. Below are some common comparative conjunctions:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
como	como	come	comme	as (comparative)
...del/de la que	...(do) que	...che; ...di quello que	...que	...than
al igual que; así como	bem como; assim como	così come	ainsi que; aussi bien que	as well as,
como si	como se	come se	comme si	as if
tanto cuanto	tanto quanto	tanto quanto	autant que; autant autant	as far as; as much as

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Sp. Ella gana más dinero **del que** ganó hace dos años;

Port. Ela ganha mais dinheiro **do que** ganhou há dois anos;

It. Lei guadagna più soldi **di quelli che** ha guadagnato due anni fa;

Fr. Elle gagne plus d'argent **qu'elle** en a gagné il y a deux ans.

- She earns more money **than** she earned a couple of years ago.



Did you know?

Messina is a city in north Sicily. It is famous for the Norman Messina Cathedral (12 century), with the 3 late Gothic portals, the early 15th century windows and an astronomical clock on the bell tower.

Sp. Habla **como si** fuera mi jefe;

Port. Ele fala **como se** ele fosse meu chefe;

It. Parla **come se** fosse il mio capo;

Fr. Il parle **comme s'il** était mon patron.

- He talks **as if** he were my boss.

Complementizer

These conjunctions are used to subordinate one sentence to another. The most frequent is:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
que	que	che	que	<i>that</i>

Sp. Gabriela dijo **que** iba a venir a la fiesta esta noche;

Port. Gabriela disse **que** ia vir à festa esta noite;

It. Gabriela ha detto **che** stava per venire alla festa di stasera;

CHAPTER 9: CONJUNCTIONS

Fr. Gabriela a dit **qu'**elle allait venir à la fête ce soir.

- Gabriela said **that** she was going to come to the party tonight.

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Overview



Did you know?

Strasbourg, a French city, is the official seat of the European Parliament. The city is located near the border with Germany. Strasbourg is also one of the capitals of the European Union (along with Brussels, Luxembourg).

Like in English, in the Romance languages an interjection is a word that is used to express emotion, feeling or spontaneous reaction in the spoken language and can indicate exclamations (*wow!*), greetings (*hey!*), curses (*bloody hell!*) and etc. The use of these short words will make a speaker sound more natural and authentic.

Types of Interjections

Below are the most common interjections that are used:

- **To express greetings and farewell** in Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and French:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Buenos días; ¡Buen día	Bom dia!	Buongior no! Buondi!	Bonjour!	Good day! Good morning!

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Buenas tardes!	Boa tarde!	Buon pomeriggio!	Bon après-midi!	<i>Good afternoon!</i>
¡Buenas tardes!	Boa tarde!	Buonase- ra!	Bonsoir!	<i>Good evening!</i>
¡Buenas noches!	Boa noite!	Buonano- tte!	Bonne nuit!	<i>Good night!</i>
¡Hola!	Olá!	Ciao! Salve!	Bonjour!	<i>Hello!</i>
¡Chao! ¡Chau!	Tchau!	Ciao!	Salut! Ciao! Tchau! Coucou! (informal)	<i>Hi! Bye!</i>
¿Cómo está Usted?	Como o senhor está?	Come- sta?	Comment allez- vous?	<i>How are you? (formal)</i>
¿Cómo estás? ¿Qué tal? ¿Qué ondas?	Como vai? (Braz. Port. Como você está?) E aí? Beleza?	Come- stai?	Ça va?	<i>How are you? (informal)</i>

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Adiós!; ¡Abur!; ¡Salú! (El Salvador)	Adeus!; Falou! (Brazil, slang) Um abraço! (Brazil, familiar) Fui! (slang) Beijo! (slang)	Arrivederci! (informal) Arrivederla! (formal) Addio!	Au revoir! Adieu! Babaille! (colloquial Quebec)	<i>Goodbye!</i>
¡Hasta luego! ¡Hasta después! ¡Nos vemos!	Até logo! Até já! Até!	A più tardi! A dopo! Di nuovo! Ci vediamo!	À plus! À plus tard!	<i>See you later!</i>
¡Hasta pronto!	Até breve!	A presto!	À bientôt!	<i>See you soon!</i>
¡Hasta la próxima! ¡Hasta la vista!	Até mais! Até! (informal)	Alla prossima!	À la prochaine!	<i>See you next time!</i>
¡Hasta mañana!	Até amanhã!	A domani!	À demain!	<i>See you tomorrow!</i>

- Used as a polite formula when the speaker is introduced to somebody:

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Encantado(-a)! ¡Mucho gusto!	Prazer em conhecê-lo(-la)!	Piacere! Molto lieto(-a)!	Enchanté (-e)!	Nice to meet you!

- Used to answer the telephone:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Aló!; ¡Diga! ¡Dígame!; ¡Bueno! (Mexico)	Alô!	Pronto!	Allô!	Hello! Speaking!

- Used as greeting upon someone's arrival:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Bienvenido (-a;-os;-as)!	Bem-vindo (-a,-os,-as)!	Benvenuto (-a;-i;-e)!	Bienvenue!	Welcome!

- To indicate gratitude or politeness in the Romance languages:

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Gracias!	Obrigado (-a)! valeu (familiar)	Grazie!	Merci!	<i>Thank you! Thanks!</i>
¡Muchas gracias!	Muito obrigado (-a)!	Grazie mille!	Merci beaucoup!	<i>Thank you very much!</i>
¡De nada!	De nada! Disponha!	Di niente! Prego! Di nulla!	De rien! Service! (Switzerland)	<i>You're welcome!</i>
¡No hay de qué!	Não há de quê!	Non c'è di che!	Il n'y pas de quoi!	<i>Don't mention it!</i>
¡Por favor! ¡Porfa! (informal por favor)	Por favor! Faz favor! Por favorzinho! (familiar)	Per favore! Per piacere! Prego!	S'il te plait! (informal) S'il vous plait! (formal)	<i>Please!</i>

- To express: 1) a regret or sorrow; 2) a request for attention or request to pass; 3) a request for someone to repeat something

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Lo siento	Desculpe-me; Foi mal (Brazil, informal)	Mi dispiace	Je suis désolé(-e)	<i>I'm sorry</i>
Con permiso	Com licença	Con permesso	Excusez-moi (formal) Excusez-moi (informal)	<i>Excuse me</i> (request for attention or request to pass)
Perdón	Perdão	Mi scusi (formal) Mi scusa (informal)	Pardon	<i>Pardon me</i> (request for attention or request to pass)
¿Cómo?	Como? Oi? (informal)	Come? Prego?	Comment? Quoi? (informal)	<i>Pardon?</i> (interrogative) (expressing of surprise or asking to repeat)

- To mean praise and approval:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Felicidades!	Parabéns!	Congratulazioni! Auguri! Felicitazioni!	Félicitations!	<i>Congratulations!</i>

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Bravo!	Bravo! Boa!	Bravo!	Bravo!	<i>Bravo! Well done!</i>

- To say or write to someone who is celebrating something (his or her birthday or some other holiday) in order to express the good wishes:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Felicitaciones!	Parabéns!	Congratulazioni! auguri!	Félicitations!	<i>Congratulation!</i>
¡Feliz navidad!	Feliz natal!	Buon natale!	Joyeux Noël!	<i>Merry Christmas!</i>
¡Feliz año nuevo!	Feliz ano novo!	Buon anno!	Bonne année!	<i>Happy New Year!</i>
¡Feliz Pascua!	Feliz Páscoa!	Buona Pasqua!	Joyeuses Pâques!	<i>Happy Easter!</i>

- To wish something (e.g.: a nice day, safe trip, good night and etc.):

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Que tenga un buen día! (formal) ¡Que tengas un buen día! (informal)	Tenha um bom dia!	Buona giornata!	Bonne journée!	<i>Have a nice day!</i>
¡Que tenga una buena noche! ¡Que tengas una buena noche!	Tenha uma boa noite!	Buona serata!	Bonne soirée!	<i>Have a good evening!</i>
¡Que duermas bien! ¡Arrorró (Canary Islands)	Durma bem!	Dormi bene!	Dormez bien! (formal) Dors bien! (informal)	<i>Sleep well!</i>
¡Que tenga dulces sueños! (formal) ¡Que tengas dulces sueños! (informal)	Bons sonhos!	Sogni d'oro!	Faites de beaux rêves! (formal) Fais de beaux rêves! (informal)	<i>Sweet dreams!</i>
¡Buen viaje!	Boa viagem!	Buon viaggio!	Bon voyage!	<i>Have a safe journey!</i>

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Buena suerte!	Boa sorte!	Buona fortuna!	Bonne chance!	<i>Good luck!</i>
¡Buenas vacaciones!	Desejo-lhe umas boas férias! (formal) Desejo-te umas boas férias! (Braz. te desejo) (informal)	Buone vacanze!	Bonne vacances!	<i>Have a good holiday!</i>
¡Salud!	Saúde! Santinho!	Salute!	À tes (vos) souhaits! À tes amours!	<i>Bless you!</i> (said after a sneeze)
¡Salud!	Saúde!	Salute! Alla salute!	Santé! À la tienne! (formal) À la vôtre! (informal) À ta (vôtre) santé!	<i>Cheers!</i> (toast when drinking alcohol)

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Chinchín!	Tchim- tchim! Tim tim!	Cin cin! (Cincin!)	Tchin- tchin!	<i>Chin chin (toastin g)</i>
¡Buen apetito! ¡Que Aproveche! ¡Buen provecho!	Bom apetite!	Buon appetito!	Bon appétit!	<i>Enjoy your meal! Bon appetit!</i>

- To express agreement or disagreement:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Sí! ¡Sip! \ ¡Síp! (colloquial)	Sim!	Sì!	Oui! Ouais! (colloquial) Sì! (contradict a negative statement)	<i>Yes!</i>
¡No!	Não!	No!	Non!	<i>No!</i>

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Vale! ¡Dale! (Latin America) ¡De acuerdo! ¡Está bien! Sale! Sale y vale! (Mexico)	Está bem! Tá bem! Tá! Tudo bem! Está bom! Tá bom!	Va bene! D'accordo! ! Ebbene!	D'accord! Bien! C'est bien! C'est bon!	<i>Okay!</i>
¡Claro que sí!	Claro que sim!	Certamente! Ma certo!	Bien sûr!	<i>Of course!</i>
¡Es la verdad! ¡Verdad! ¡De veras!	Verdade! É verdade!	È vero!	C'est vrai!	<i>That's true!</i> <i>True!</i>
¡Eso es! ¡Es cierto! ¡Eso mismo! ¡Eso!	Com certeza! Certeza! É certo! Isso! Isso mesmo! É! Isso aí! É isso aí!	Proprio così! Appunto! Giust'appunto!	C'est cela! C'est ça (colloquial) Ça y est! C'est cela même!	<i>That's it!</i> <i>That's right!</i>

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Exacto! ¡Exactamente!	Exato! Exatamente!	Esatto! Esattamente!	Exact! Exactement!	<i>Exact! Exactly!</i>
En efecto!	De fato!	Infatti!	En effet!	<i>Indeed!</i>

- To indicate that someone does not consider the matter important enough:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Dices tonterías! Dices disparates!	Você fala bobagem! Você fala besteira!	Dici sciocchezze! Dici fesserie! Parli a vanvera!	Tu dis n'importe quoi! Tu dis des bêtises!	<i>Nonsense! Whatever!</i>
No importa!	Não importa!	Non importa!	Peu importe! Cela (Ça) ne fait rien!	<i>It doesn't matter!</i>

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

- Used as a reply to an unimportant statement, which indicates indifference on the part of the speaker:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¿Y pues?	E daí? Grande coisa!	E allora?	Et alors?	<i>So what?</i>

- To express astonishment, admiration or surprise:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Guao! ¡Guau! ¡Uau!	Uau! Uia!	Guai! Bah!	Waouh! Ouah! Oh là là! Ayoye! (Quebec)	<i>Wow!</i>
¡Ah!\¡Ay! ¡Híjole! (Mexico, Costa Rica, Bolivia, Ecuador etc.)	A!\Ah!	Ahi! Ahime!	Ah! Coudonc! (Canada)	<i>Oh!</i>

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Anda! ¡Hombre! ¡Caray! ¡Caramba! ¡Jo! ¡Juelacha! /¡Juelule! (El Salvador, colloquial) ¡Hostia!\ ¡Es la hostia! (vulgar) ¡Órale! (Mexico) ¡Rediós! ¡Jolines! ¡Leche!	Bá! (Rio Gr. do Sul) Caraca! Caramba! \Carago! Nossa! Oh, gente! Pô! Puxa! (colloquial) Safa! Com a breca! Cacilda! Porcaria!	Bah! Va'! Accidempoli! Accidenti! Ma! Acciderba! Ammazza! Cribbio! Diamine! Osteria! Per la miseria! Porca vacca! Porca miseria! Porca troia! Porca puttana!	Aweille! \Enweille! (Quebec) Mazette! Mince! Mais! Malepeste! ! (dated) Viarge! (Quebec, vulgar, slang) Nom de bleu! (Switzerland) La vache! Nom d'un chien! Nom d'une pipe! Nom de Dieu! Bon sang de bonsoir !	<i>Damn!</i> <i>Come on!</i> (expression surprise, in either a positive or negative sense)
¡Dios mío!	Meu Deus! Deus meu!	Dio mio!	Mon Dieux!	<i>My God!</i>

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Jesús!	Jesus Cristo!	Gesù Cristo!	Mon Dieu!	<i>Jesus Christ! Good Lord!</i>
¡Cielos!	Céus!	Cielo!	Ciel!	<i>Good heavens!</i>
¡Señor!	Senhor!	Signore!	Seigneur!	<i>Lord!</i>
¡Por Dios! ¡Por el amor de Dios!	Por Deus! Pelo amor de Deus!	Per l'amor di Dio Caspita! Per carità! Perdio!	Pour l'amour de Dieu! Nom de Dieu!	<i>For God's sake!</i>
¡Madre mía!	Mamma mia!	Mamma mia!	Mamma mia!	<i>Mamma mia!</i>

- To express pain or sorrow:

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Ay!	Ai!	Ahi!	Aïe! Ayoye ! \Ouille! (Quebec)	Ouch!
¡Ay!	Ah!	Ahimè! Aimè!	Ha! Hélas!	Ah! Alas!

• To express encouragement:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Vamos! ¡Alá! ¡Ea! ¡Olé!	Vamos! Bora! ēia! Vamos lá! Vamo! Vamo lá!	Andiamo! Alé! Avanti! Orsù! Su! Suvvia!	Allez! Allez-y! Vas-y! Aweille/ Enweille! (Canada)	Let's.. Let's go!

• To indicate exclamation to get attention:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Ey! ¡Oiga! ¡Oye! ¡Che! (in Argentina, Uruguay, Bolivia, Paraguay);	Ei! Epa!	Ehi! Ehilà! Ohilà!	Ohé!	Hey!

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

- To express irritation, anger or annoyed remark:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Vete a la mierda! ¡Vete a la verga! ¡Chupe mantequill la de mi culo!	Foda-se! Foda você! Vai se fuder! Chispa!	Vai a farti friggere! Vai a fare in culo! Fanculo! Vaffanculo!	Va te faire foutre! Vas te faire enculer!	<i>Fuck you,</i> <i>Fuck off,</i> <i>Go to hell</i> <i>(vulgar)</i>
¡Diablo!\ ¡Diablos!\ ¡Diantre!\ ¡Diantres!	Diabo! \Diabos! Diacho!	Diavolo!	Diable! Diantre!	<i>Bloody hell!</i> <i>Damn!</i>
¡Coño! ¡Maldito!	Droga! Pindarolas!	Accidenti! Mannaggia!	Zut!\ Zut alors! Punaise!	<i>Damn!</i>
¡Mierda!	Merda!	Merda!	Merde!	<i>Shit!</i> <i>(vulgar)</i>

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Carajo! ¡Joder! ¡Puñetas! ¡Porras! ¡Qué pasada!	Caralho! Cacete! Boceta! Putamerda! Porra! ¡Poça!	Cazzo! \Sticazzi! Cazzo duro!	Putain! Putain de merde! Bordel de merde! Bordel! (Quebec) Câlisse! Tabarnak! Crisse! Calvaire!	<i>Fuck!</i> (vulgar)
¡Hijo de puta! ¡Jueputa! (Central America) ¡La madre que te parió!	Filho da puta!	Figlio di puttana!	Fils de pute! Fils de garce!	<i>Son of a bitch</i> (vulgar)
¡Tu madre!	Tua (Braz. Sua) mãe!	Tua madre!	Ta mère!	<i>lit.: Your mother;</i> <i>Shut the fuck up</i> (an insult, especially in reply to another insult) (vulgar, offensive)

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Basta!	Basta!	Basta! Abbastanza!	Ça suffit!	<i>Enough!</i>
¡Tch! ¡Chito!\ ¡Chitón!	Psiu! \Psit! Xiu!\Xô!	Pst! Sst!	Chut!	<i>Shh! Hush! (requesting silence)</i>
¡Silencio!	Silêncio!	Silenzio!	Silence!	<i>Silence!</i>
¡Cállate! ¡Punto en boca!	Cale-se! Cala a boca! Cale a boca!	Taci! Zitto!	Tais-toi! La ferme! Ferme ta gueule! \Ta gueule! (slang, vulgar, offensive)	<i>Shut up! Shut your mouth!</i>

- To tell someone to use his\her caution:

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Cuidado! ¡Aguas!	Cuidado!	Fate attenzione! (formal) Fa' attenzione! (informal)	Faites attention! (formal) Fais attention! (informal)	<i>Be careful!</i>

- Used as a cry of distress or a request for assistance:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Socorro! ¡Ayuda!	Socorro! Ajuda!	Aiuto!	Au secours!	<i>Help!</i>

- Used as acknowledgement of a mistake:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Ups!	Ups!\Ops! \Opa!	Ops!	Oups!	<i>Oops!</i>

- Used as a pause for thought to introduce a new topic or reinforcement of a question or filler, which expresses hesitation or pause in speech:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Eh... Este...	É...	Ehm... Ecco...	Euh...	<i>Uh..., Um...</i>

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Entonces...	Então...	Allora...	Alors...	So..
Bueno\ Vale... Dale\Sale ... (Mexico)	Bem\ Bom...	Ba\Beh! \Bè... Bene\Ben ...	Bah!\Ben! Bien! \Bon!	Well..
Como...	Tipo...	Tipo...	Comme...	Like..
Sabes...	Você sabe...	Sai...	Tu sais (T'sais)...	You know...
Es decir...	Ou seja...	Cioè...	C'est-à- dire...	That is (to say)..
Entendiste ?	Entendeu ? Viu?	Capito?	Compris? Tu vois?	Understood ?
Hein?	Hein? Né? Será?	Neh?	Hein? Pigé? Hé? (Quebec)	Huh? (a tag question)

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
No?	Não?	No?	Non?	OK? isn't it? \ doesn't it? (used as filler at the end of a sentence)
Verdad?	Verdade?	Vero? Nevvero?	Vrai? N'est-ce pas?	Right?

- To express the sound of a sneeze:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Achís!	Atchim!	Eccì!	Atchoum!	Artishoo! Achoo!

- To express animal sounds:

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
¡Miau!	Miau!	Miao!	Miaou!	Meow! (cat's sound)
Guau- guau! Gua-gua!	Au-au!	Bau-bau! Arf-arf!	Wouaff- wouaff!	Bow-bow! Woof-woof (dog's sound)

CHAPTER 10: INTERJECTIONS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Pio-pio!	Piu-piu!	Chip-chip!	Cui-cui!	<i>Tweet!</i> <i>Chirp!</i> (bird's sound)

Interjections with Exclamatory Words

(See Exclamations with Interrogative Pronouns p.168)



Did you know?

Las Palmas is a capital of Gran Canaria island, in the Canary Islands, around 150 km (93 ml) off northwestern Africa. Las Palmas is considered "the best climate in the world", with warm temperatures throughout the year.

VERB CHARTS

Regular Verbs

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	Indicative mood			
	<i>Present tenses</i>			
Present tense	<i>trabajo</i>	<i>trabalho</i>	<i>lavoro</i>	<i>je travaille</i>
Present Perfect	<i>he trabajado</i>	<i>tenho trabalhado</i>	<i>ho lavorato</i>	<i>j'ai travaillé</i>
	<i>Past tenses</i>			
Preterite	<i>trabajé</i>	<i>trabalhei</i>	<i>lavorai</i>	<i>je travaillai</i>
Imperfect	<i>trabajaba</i>	<i>trabalhava</i>	<i>lavoravo</i>	<i>je travaillais</i>
Past Perfect	<i>hube trabajado</i>	<i>tinha trabalhado</i>	<i>ebbi lavorato</i>	<i>j'eus travaillé</i>
Pluperfect	<i>había trabajado</i>	<i>trabalhara</i>	<i>avevo lavorato</i>	<i>j'avais travaillé</i>
	<i>Future tense</i>			

VERB CHARTS

	Spanish		Portuguese	Italian	French
Future	<i>trabajaré</i>		<i>trabalharei</i>	<i>lavorerò</i>	<i>je travailler-ai</i>
Future Perfect	<i>habré trabajado</i>		<i>terei trabalhado</i>	<i>avrò lavorato</i>	<i>j'aurai travaillé</i>
	<i>Conditionals</i>				
Conditional present	<i>trabajaría</i>		<i>trabalharia</i>	<i>lavorerei</i>	<i>je travaillerais</i>
Conditional Perfect (Past)	<i>habría trabajado</i>		<i>teria trabalhado</i>	<i>avrei lavorato</i>	<i>j'aurais travaillé</i>
	<i>Subjunctive mood</i>				
	<i>Present tenses</i>				
Present tense	<i>trabaje</i>		<i>trabalhe</i>	<i>lavori</i>	<i>je travaille</i>
Present Perfect	<i>haya trabajado</i>		<i>tenha trabalhado</i>	<i>abbia lavorato</i>	<i>j'aie travaillé</i>
	<i>Past tenses</i>				
Past tense	1 st option <i>trabajara</i>	2 nd option <i>trabajase</i>	<i>trabalhasse</i>	<i>lavorassi</i>	<i>je travaillasse</i>

VERB CHARTS

	Spanish		Portuguese	Italian	French
			se		
Past Perfect	1st option <i>hubiera trabajado</i>	2nd option <i>hubiese trabajado</i>	<i>tivesse trabalhado</i>	<i>avessi lavorato</i>	<i>j'eusse travaillé</i>
	<i>Future tenses</i>				
Future tense	<i>trabajare</i>	<i>trabalhar</i>	—	—	
Future Perfect	<i>hubiere trabajado</i>	<i>tiver trabalhado</i>	—	—	
	<i>Imperative mood</i>				
	<i>trabaja</i> (tu) <i>trabaje</i> (usted) <i>trabajemos</i> (nosotros) <i>trabajad</i> (vosotros) <i>trabajen</i> (ustedes)	<i>trabalha</i> (tu) <i>trabalhe</i> (você) <i>trabalhemos</i> (nós) <i>trabalhai</i> (vós) <i>trabalhem</i> (vocês)	<i>lavora</i> (tu) <i>lavori</i> (Lei) <i>lavoriamo</i> (noi) <i>lavorate</i> (voi) <i>lavorino</i> (Loro)	<i>travaille</i> (tu) <i>travaillez</i> (vous) <i>travaillons</i> (nous) <i>travaillez</i> (vous) <i>travaillez</i> (vous)	
	<i>Infinitive</i>				
	<i>trabajar</i>	<i>trabalhar</i>	<i>lavorare</i>	<i>travailler</i>	
	<i>Compound infinitive</i>				

VERB CHARTS

	Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French
	<i>haber</i> <i>trabajado</i>	<i>ter</i> <i>trabalhado</i>	<i>avere</i> <i>lavorato</i>	<i>avoir</i> <i>travaillé</i>
	Participle			
<i>Present Participle</i> <i>e</i> <i>(gerund)</i>	<i>trabajando</i>	<i>trabalhando</i>	(gerund) <i>lavorando</i>	(part. pres) <i>travaillant</i>
<i>Compound Present Participle</i> <i>e</i>	—	<i>tendo</i> <i>trabalhando</i>	—	—
<i>Past Participle</i> <i>e</i>	<i>trabajado</i>	<i>trabalhado</i>	<i>lavorato</i>	<i>travaillé</i>

Irregular Verbs

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Present Tense				
Haber (he, has, ha, hemos, han)	Haver (hei, há, há, havemos, haveis, hão)	Avere (ho, hai, ha, abbiamo, avete, hanno)	Avoir (j'ai, tu as, il\elle a, nous avons, vous avez, ils\elles ont)	<i>To have</i>
Tener (tengo, tienes, tiene, tienen)	Ter (tenho, tens, tem, temos, tendes, têm)	Tenere (tengo, tieni, tiene, tengono)	—	<i>To have</i>

VERB CHARTS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Ser (soy, eres, es, somos, sois, son)	Ser (sou, és, é, somos, sois, são)	Essere (sono, sei, è, siamo, siete, sono)	Être (suis, es, est, sommes, êtes, sont)	<i>To be</i>
Estar (estoy, estás, están)	Estar (estou, estás, está, estão)	Stare (stai, stanno)	—	<i>To be</i>
Ir (voy, vas, va, vamos, vais, van)	Ir (vou, vais, vai, vamos, ides, vão)	Andare (vado, vai, va, vanno)	Aller (vais, vas, va, allons, allez, vont)	<i>To go</i>
Dar (doy, dais)	Dar (dou, dás, dá, damos, dais, dão)	Dare (dai, dà, danno)	Donner (regular)	<i>To give</i>
Hacer (hago)	Fazer (faço)	Fare (faccio, fai, facciamo, fanno)	Faire (faisons, faites, font)	<i>To do</i>
Decir (digo, dices, dice, dicen)	Dizer (digo, diz)	Dire (dico, dici, dice, diciamo, dicono)	Dire (disons, dites, disent)	<i>To say</i>
Poder (puedo, puedes, puede, pueden)	Poder (posso)	Potere (posso, puoi, può, possiamo, possono)	Pouvoir (peux, peux, peut, peuvent)	<i>Can</i>
Querer (quiero, quieres, quiere, quieren)	Querer (quer)	Volere (voglio, vuoi, vuole, vogliamo, vogliono)	Vouloir (veux, veux, veut, veulent)	<i>To want</i>
Saber (sé)	Saber (sei)	Sapere (so, sai, sa, sappiamo, sanno)	Savoir (sais, sais, sait)	<i>To know</i>

VERB CHARTS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Poner (pongo)	Pôr (ponho, pões, põe, pomos, pondes, poem)	Porre (pongo, poni, pone, poniamo, ponete, pongono)	Mettre (mets, mets, met)	<i>To put</i>
Conocer (conozco)	Conhecer (conheço)	<u>Conoscere</u> (regular)	Connaître (connais, connais, connaît, connaissons, connaissez, connaissent)	<i>To get to know</i>
Venir (vengo, vienes, viene, vienen)	Vir (venho, vens, vem, vimos, vindes, vêm)	Venire (vengo, vieni, viene, vengono)	Venir (viens, viens, vient, viennent)	<i>To come</i>
Dormir (duermo, duermes, duerme, duermen)	Dormir (durmo)	<u>Dormire</u> (regular)	Dormir (dors, dors, dort)	<i>To sleep</i>
Sentir (siento, sientes, siente, sienten)	Sentir (sinto)	<u>Sentire</u> (regular)	Sentir (sens, sens, sent)	<i>To feel</i>
Morir (muero, mueres, muere, mueren)	<u>Morrer</u> (regular)	Morire (muoio, muori, muore, muoiono)	Mourir (meurs, meurs, meurt, meurent)	<i>To die</i>
Preterite				
Ser (fui, fuiste, fue, fuimos, fuisteis, fueron)	Ser (fui, foste, foi, fomos, fostes, foram)	Essere (fui, fosti, fu, fummo, foste, furono)	Être (fus, fus, fut, fûmes, fûtes, furent)	<i>To be</i>

VERB CHARTS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Estar (estuve, estuviste, estuvo, estuvimos, estuvisteis, estuvieron)	Estar (estive, estiveste, esteve, estivemos, estivestes, estiveram)	Stare (stetti, stesti, stette, stemmo, steste, stettero)	(no equivalent)	To be
Haber (hube, hubiste, hubo, hubimos, hubisteis, hubieron)	Haver (houve, houveste, houve, houvemos, houvestes, houveram)	Avere (ebbi, avesti, ebbe, avemmo, aveste, ebbero)	Avoir (eus, eus, eut, eûmes, eûtes, eurent)	To have
Poner (puse, pusiste, puso, pusimos, pusisteis, pusieron)	Pôr (pus, puseste, pôs, pusemos, pusestes, puseram)	Mettere (misi, mettesti, mise, mettemmo, metteste, misero)	Mettre (mis, mis, mit, mîmes, mîtes, mirent)	To put
Hacer (hice, hiciste, hizo, hicimos, hicisteis, hicieron)	Fazer (fiz, fizeste, fez, fizemos, fizestes, fizeram)	Fare (feci, facesti, fece, facemmo, faceste, fecero)	Faire (fis, fis, fit, fîmes, fîtes, firent)	To do
Decir (dije, dijiste, dijo, dijimos, dijisteis, dijeron)	Dizer (disse, disseste, disse, dissemos, dissestes, disseram)	Dire (dissi, dicesti, disse, dicemmo, diceste, dissero)	Dire (dis, dis, dit, dîmes, dîtes, dirent)	To say

VERB CHARTS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Venir (vine, viniste, vino, vinimos, vinisteis, vinieron)	Vir (vim, vieste, veio, viemos, viestes, vieram)	Venire (venni, venni, vennero)	Venir (vins, vins, vint, vîmes, vîntes, vinrent)	<i>To come</i>
Saber (supe, supiste, supo, supimos, supisteis, supieron)	Saber (soube, soubeste, soube, soubemos, soubestes, souberam)	Sapere (seppi, seppe, seppero)	Savoir (sus, sus, sut, sûmes, sûtes, surent)	<i>To know</i>
—	—	Prendere (presi, prese, presero)	Prendre (pris, pris, prit, primes, prîtes, prirent)	<i>To take</i>
Conocer (regular)	Conhecer (regular)	Conoscere (conobbi, conobbe, conobbero)	Connaître (connus, connus, connut, connûmes, connûtes, connurent)	<i>To know</i>
Leer (regular)	Ler (regular)	Leggere (lessi, lesse, lessero)	Lire (lus, lus, lut, lûmes, lûtes, lurent)	<i>To read</i>
Escribir (regular)	Escrever (regular)	Scrivere (scrissi, scrisse, scrissero) vedere	Écrire (écrivis, écrivis, écrivit, écrivîmes, écrivîtes, écrivirent)	<i>To write</i>

VERB CHARTS

Spanish	Portuguese	Italian	French	English
Tener (tuve, tuviste, tuvo, tuvimos, tuvisteis, tuvieron)	Ter (regular)	Tenere (tenni, tenne, tennero)	Tenir (tins, tins, tint, tînmes, tîntes, tînrent)	<i>To have\to hold</i>
Traer (traje, trajiste, trajo, trajimos, trajisteis, trajeron)	Trazer (trouxe, trouxeite, trouxe, trouxemos, trouxestes, trouxeram)	Portare (regular)	Apporter (regular)	<i>To bring</i>

INDEX

- a** (Sp. Port. It.) **à** (Fr.)
 to express motion or direction *in, at* or *to* some place, 591
 before an infinitive, 472, (See Infinitive p.468), 591
 with expressions of manner (*with, by, on*), 593,
 with some means of travel in French, 595
 to indicate a manner that is a style, 596
 with phrases stating location, 596
 to link some repeated words, 597
 to express time and age, 597
 with time phrases, 598
 to introduce a known person in Spanish, 599
 with names of places in Italian and French, 599
 before names of cities and towns in Italian and French, 600
 before names of some islands in French, 600-601
 to mean *with* in French, 603
 to express the use of an object in French, 604
 to express an infinitive which denotes an action, 605
 to express *for* in Portuguese, 604-605
 with places of work and person's profession in Spanish and Portuguese, 646
 to express manner or means (It., Fr.), 652
 to denote amount and rate (It.), 653
 to express the attribute (Fr.), 668-669
a causa de (Sp.), 705
a causa di (It.), 705
à cause de (Fr.), 705
a despecho de (Sp.), 698
a despeito de (Port.), 698
a dispetto di (It.), 698
a fim de (Port.), 698
a fin de (Sp.), 698
a lo largo de (Sp.), 696
a pesar de (Sp.), 698
a propósito de (Sp., Port.), 694
a proposito di (It.), 694
a respeito de (Port.), 703
a scopo di (It.), 698
à côté de (Fr.), 693
à la place de (Fr.), 697
à l'intérieur de (Fr.), 702
à propos de (Fr.), 694
à qui (Fr.), 160-161
à travers (Fr.), 693
a través de (Sp.), 693
abajo de (Sp.), 691-692
abbastanza (It.), 200
abrir (Sp., Port.):
 past participle of, 278
acabar de (Sp., Port.), 286
accanto a (It.), 693
acerca de (Sp., Port.), 694
acima de (Port.), 692
adjectives:
 gender agreement, 33
 feminine of, 34
 special forms of feminine in Portuguese and French, 34-41
 position of, 43-46

INDEX

- plural of, 41
- use of, 43-46
- comparison of, 58-59
- superlative of, 60-62
- irregular comparatives and superlatives of, 63-65
- adverbs:**
 - use of, 49
 - formation of (ending in -*mente*, -*ment*), 49
 - special forms in Italian and French, 50
 - manner, 51
 - place, 51
 - time, 52-53
 - intensity, 53-54
 - doubt, 54
 - expressing affirmation, 54-55
 - expressing exclusion, 55
 - composed of several words, 55
 - adverbial phrases, 55-56
 - position of, 57
 - comparison of, 58-59
 - superlative of, 60-62
 - irregular comparatives and superlatives of, 63-65
- affinché** (It.), 698
- afin que/de** (Fr.), 698
- ai piedi di** (It.), 697
- al di là di** (It.), 694
- al di sopra di** (It.), 692
- al fine di** (It.), 731
- al lado de** (Sp.), 693
- al pie de** (Sp.), 697
- alcuno** (It.), 192
- além de** (Port.), 694
- algo** (Sp., Port.), 191, 628
- alguém** (Port.), 191
- alguien** (Sp.), 191
- algum** (Port.), 192
- alguma coisa** (Port.), 191
- alguna cosa** (Sp.), 191
- alguno** (Sp.), 192
- allato a** (It.), 693
- aller** (Fr.):
 - present tense of, 234
 - replacing the future tense, 273
- all'interno di** (It.), 702
- allora** (It.), 708
- alors** (Fr.), 708
- alrededor de** (Sp.), 695
- ambedue** (It.), 214
- ambos** (Sp., Port.), 214
- andare** (It.):
 - present tense of, 234
 - replacing the future tense, 273
- antes de** (Sp., Port.), 699
- ao lado de** (Port.), 693
- ao longo de** (Port.), 696
- ao pé de** (Port.), 697
- ao redor de** (Port.), 695
- apesar de** (Port.), 670, 698
- apprendre** (Fr.):
 - past participle of, 277
- après** (Fr.), 699, 702
- aquel/aquellos/aquella/aquellas** (Sp.), 147
- aquele/aqueles/aquela/aquelas** (Port.), 147
- aprender** (Sp., Port.):
 - past participle of, 277
- aprire** (It.):
 - past participle of, 278
- ar verbs** (Sp., Port.):
 - past participle, 276
 - present tense, 227-231, 223-225
- are verbs** (It.):
 - past participle, 276
 - present tense, 227-231, 223-225
- arithmetical operations**, 567-568
- article:**

INDEX

- definite, 66-69
 - contraction of, 84-86
 - singular forms of, 67
 - plural forms of, 67
 - use of, 70-78
 - with days of the week, seasons, time
 - expressions and dates, 571-586
 - in specific situations, 70
 - with the unique object, 71
 - to refer to a category people or things, 71
 - with abstract nouns, 71
 - with a certain object mentioned earlier, 72
 - before a noun specifying the object, 72
 - with a noun referring to an idea, colors or phenomenon, 72
 - omission of, 78
- indefinite, 66-69
 - singular forms of, 67
 - plural forms of, 67
 - use of, 69-78
 - to express only one thing, 69
 - to refer to someone or something not yet known, 69
 - to mean *some*, 70
 - omission of, 79-80
 - neuter *lo* in Spanish, 81
 - partitive in Italian and French, 82-84
 - contraction of, 84-86
- assez** (Fr.), 58, 199
- até** (Port.), 684
- attorno a** (It.), 695
- attraverso** (It.), 693
- atrás (de)** (Sp., Port.), 52, 700
- através de** (Port.), 693
- au bas de** (Fr.), 691-692
- au delà de** (Fr.), 694
- au lieu de** (Fr.), 697
- au long de** (Fr.), 696
- au pied de** (Fr.), 697
- au sujet de** (Fr.), 694
- aucun** (Fr.), 212
- au-dessus de** (Fr.), 692
- autour de** (Fr.), 695
- avant de** (Fr.), 699
- avec**, 56, 666-670
- avoir** (Fr.):
 - agreement of the past participle with in French, 284
 - versus *être* as an auxiliary verb, 282-283
 - past participle of, 277
 - present tense of, 234
 - preterite of, 291
- avere** (It.):
 - versus *essere* as an auxiliary verb, 282-283
 - past participle of, 277
 - present tense of, 234
 - preterite of, 291
- bastante** (Sp., Port., It.), 199
- bajo** (Sp.), 680
- beau** (Fr.), 41
- beaucoup (de)** (Fr.), 57, 65, 200
- bello** (It.), 46
- bem** (Port.), 51, 64
- bene** (It.), 51, 64
- bien** (Sp., Fr.), 51; Fr.: 58; 64
- bom** (Port.), 44, 63-64
- bon** (Fr.), 44, 63-64
- bueno** (Sp.), 44, 63-64
- buono** (It.), 44, 47, 63-64

INDEX

- ça fait...que** (Fr.), 274
- cada** (Sp., Port.), 195
- cattivo** (It.), 44, 64
- capire** (It.):
 - past participle of, 277
- cardinal numbers**, 538
- causative constructions**, 487
- ce (cet)/cette/ces** (Fr.), 143-144
- ce qui/ce que** (Fr.), 182
- ceci/cela** (Fr.), 146
- cerca de** (Sp.), 695
- certain** (Fr.), 193
- certo** (Port., It.), 193
- chacun** (Fr.), 196
- chaque** (Fr.), 195
- che** (It.), 158, 162, 169, 174, 178
- chez** (Fr.):
 - with a person, a person's name or pronoun, 645
 - with places of work and person's profession, 645
- chi** (It.), 159
- cierto** (Sp.), 193
- ciò che** (It.), 182
- circa a** (It.), 694
- colui che/colei che/coloro che** (It.), 181
- com** (Port.), 56, 603, 666-673
- com respeito a** (Port.), 703
- come** (It.), 165, 171
- comment** (Fr.), 165, 171
- cómo** (Sp.), 165, 171
- como** (Port.), 165, 171
- combien** (Fr.), 164, 170
- comparative**:
 - of adjectives and adverbs, 58
 - irregular, 63
- compound tenses**, 280-308
 - asking questions, 309
 - negation of, 317
 - in the past, 343-371
- comprender** (Sp., Port.):
 - past participle of, 277
- comprendre** (Fr.):
 - past participle of, 277
- con** (Sp., It.), 56, 603, 666-670; Sp., 670-673
- con relación a** (Sp.), 703
- con respecto a** (Sp.), 703
- conditional tense**:
 - formation of, 371
 - irregular verbs in, 373
 - use of, 377
 - conditional perfect tense, 379-383
 - conditional clauses, 383-387
- conforme** (Port., It.), 687
- conforme a** (Sp.), 687
- conformément à** (Fr.), 687, 704
- conhecer** (Port.):
 - present tense of, 235
- conformemente a** (It.), 687
- conjunctions**: 707-736
 - functions of conjunctions, 717-736
 - coordinating, 707
 - correlative, 717
 - subordinating, 708
- connaître** (Fr.):
 - past participle of, 278
 - present tense of, 235
 - preterite of, 293
- conocer** (Sp.):
 - present tense of, 235
- conoscere** (It.):
 - past participle of, 278
 - preterite of, 293
- continuous tenses**, 465-468
- contra** (Sp., Port.), 675-676
- contre** (Fr.), 675-676
- contro** (It.), 675-676
- croire** (Fr.):
 - past participle of, 278

INDEX

- cuál** (Sp.), 161, 162
cuándo/cuando (Sp.), 166, 186
cuánto (Sp.), 164, 170
cui (It.), 176
cujo (Port.), 183
cuyo (Sp.), 183
- d'après** (Fr.), 687
da (It.):
 in the imperfect tense, 340
 in the present tense, 274-276
 to mean in the distance, 597
 to express *for*, 604
 with a person, a person's name or pronoun, 645
 with range or distance, 682
 with time, 682
 with passive voice, 650
 with places of work and person's profession, 645
 to denote direction or location, 650
 to express manner or means, 651
- dans** (Fr.):
 to denote location, 630
 to indicate time, 637
 verbs with in French, 643
 with article, 630
 with geographical names, 630-633
- dar** (Sp., Port.):
 present tense of, 234
- dare** (It.):
 present tense of, 234
- dates**, 571-575
- davanti a** (It.), 679-680
- days**, 571
- de** (Sp., Port., Fr.):
 in adverbial clauses of manner, 56
 French passive with *de*, 533
 to express *with* in Spanish and Portuguese, 603
 to express *for* in Spanish and Portuguese, 604
 to express possession or ownership, 606
 to indicate a place of origin and departure, 606
 with geographical names, 607
 to imply cause, 608
 to qualify a noun, 608
 to compare things, 609
 to express the material from which something is made, 45, 609-610
 to connect one verb to an infinitive or an object, 610-626
 with time and dates, 626
 with indefinite pronouns, 628
 in adverbial phrases and idioms, 629
 to denote amount and rate (Fr.), 653
 to express range or distance (Sp., Fr.), 682
- de acordo com** (Port.), 704
de acuerdo con (Sp.), 704
de dónde (Sp.), 167
de onde (Port.), 167
de quién (Sp.), 160
de quem (Port.), 160
debaixo de (Port.), 680
debajo (de) (Sp.), 52, 680
- decir** (Sp.):
 past participle of, 277
 present tense of, 235
 preterite of, 292
- definite article**:
 contraction of, 84-86
 singular forms of, 67
 plural forms of, 67

INDEX

- use of, 70-78
 - with days of the week,
 - seasons, time expressions
 - and dates, 571-586
 - in specific situations, 70
 - with the unique object, 71
 - to refer to a category
 - people or things, 71
 - with abstract nouns, 71
 - with a certain object
 - mentioned earlier, 72
 - before a noun specifying
 - the object, 72
 - with a noun referring to
 - an idea, colors or
 - phenomenon, 72
 - omission of, 78
- deixar** (Port.), 492-494
- dejar** (Sp.), 492-494
- delante de** (Sp.), 700
- demais** (Port.), 204
- demás** (Sp.), 211
- demasiado** (Sp., Port.), 204
- demonstrative adjectives**,
142-149
 - indefinite, 186-216
- demonstrative pronouns**,
150-155
 - indefinite, 186-216
- dentro** (It.), 702
- dentro de** (Sp., Port.), 637,
702
- depuis de** (Port.), 699
- depuis** (Fr.):
 - in the imperfect tense, 340
 - in the present tense,
274-276
 - with range or distance, 682
 - with time, 682
- derrière** (Fr.), 700
- desde** (Sp., Port.):
 - in the imperfect tense, 340
 - in the present tense,
274-276
 - with range or distance, 682
 - with time, 682
- desde hace** (Sp.),
 - in the imperfect tense, 340
- después de** (Sp.), 699
- detrás de** (Sp.), 52, 700
- devant** (Fr.), 679-680
- di** (It.):
 - to express possession or
 - ownership, 606
 - to indicate a place of origin
 - and departure, 606
 - with geographical names,
607
 - to imply cause, 608
 - to qualify a noun, 608
 - to compare things, 609
 - to express the material from
 - which something is made,
609
 - to connect one verb to an
 - infinitive or an object,
610-626
 - with time and dates, 626
 - with indefinite pronouns,
628
 - in adverbial phrases and
 - idioms, 629
- di chi** (It.), 160
- di dove** (It.), 167
- di faccia a** (It.), 700
- di fronte (a)** (It.), 52, 700
- diante (de)** (Port.), 52, 680,
700
- dietro (a)** (It.), 61, 700
- diferente** (Sp., Port.), 197
- différent** (Fr.), 197
- differente** (It.), 197
- dinnanzi a** (It.), 700
- dire** (It., Fr.):
 - past participle of, 277
 - present tense of, 235
 - preterite of, 292

INDEX

direct object pronouns, 98-108

lo, la, los, las (Sp.); o, a, os,
as (Port.); lo, la, l', li, le (It.);
le, la, l', les (Fr.), 99-108
me, te, nos, os (Sp.); me, te,
nos, vos (Port.); mi, ti, ci, vi
(It.); me/m', te/t', nous,
vous (Fr.), 98-108
use of, 101

word order of, 101-103

disjunctive (prepositional) pronouns, 125-130

divers (Fr.), 196

dizer (Port.):

past participle of, 277

present tense of, 235

preterite of, 292

dónde/donde (Sp.), 166, 185

dont (Fr.), 183

dopo (di) (It.), 670, 699, 702

dormir (Sp., Port., Fr.):

present tense of, 236

d'où (Fr.), 167

dove (It.), 166, 185

durant (Fr.), 683

durante (Sp., Port., It.), 683

e (Port., It.), 708

eccetto (It.), 686

écrire (Fr.):

past participle of, 277

preterite of, 293

el resto (Sp.), 211

el cual (Sp.), 181

el que (Sp.), 176

em (Port.):

to denote location, 630

with expressions, 638-639

with means of

transportation, 635

to indicate time, 637

with verbs, 640

embaixo (de) (Port.), 52,
691-692

em frente a/de (Port.),
679-680, 700

em cima de (Port.), 692

em lugar de (Port.), 697

em relação a (Port.), 703

em torno de (Port.), 695

em vez de (Port.), 697

en (Sp. Fr.):

to denote location, 630

to express *for* in Spanish,

604

to express the material from
which something is made

(Fr.), 609

with expressions, 638

with geographical names,

631-633

with means of

transportation, 633

to indicate time, 637

with verbs, 640, 642

en conformité avec (Fr.),
704

en cuanto a (Sp.), 703

en dehors de (Fr.), 704

en dépit de (Fr.), 698

en el interior de (Sp.), 702

en face de (Fr.), 52, 700

en lo bajo de (Sp.), 691-692

en lugar de (Sp.), 697

en torno a (Sp.), 695

en vez de (Sp.), 697

enfrente (Sp.), 52, 700

então (Port.), 708

entonces (Sp.), 708

entrambi (It.), 214

entre (Sp., Port., Fr.), 676-677

encima de (Sp.), 692

envers (Fr.), 685, 696

-er verbs:

past participle, 276

INDEX

- present tense, 223-225, 231-232
- ere verbs:**
 - past participle, 276
 - present tense, 223-225, 231-232
- escrever** (Port.):
 - past participle of, 277
- escribir** (Sp.):
 - past participle of, 277
- ese/esa/esos/esas** (Sp.), 143-147
- esse/essa/esses/essas** (Port.), 143-147
- essere** (It.):
 - imperative mood, 448
 - imperfect tense of, 334-335
 - past participle of, 277
 - present tense of, 234
 - preterite of, 290
 - with the passive voice, 521-533
 - with reflexive and intransitive verbs in present perfect, 282-283
- estar** (Sp., Port.):
 - imperfect tense of, 332
 - present tense of, 234
 - preterite of, 291
 - Spanish passive voice with *estar* and *ser*, 533
- este/esta/estos/estas** (Sp.), 143-144
- este/esta/estes/estas** (Port.), 143-144
- eso** (Sp.), 153
- esto** (Sp.), 153
- et** (Fr.), 708
- être** (Fr.):
 - imperative mood of, 448
 - imperfect tense of, 334-335
 - past participle of, 277
 - present tense of, 234
 - preterite of, 290
 - with the passive voice, 521-533
 - with reflexive and intransitive verbs in present perfect, 282-283
 - passive with *de*, 533
- excepté** (Fr.), 686
- excepto** (Sp.), 686
- exceto** (Port.), 686
- fa...che** (It.), 274
- faire** (Fr.):
 - in causative constructions, 487-492
 - past participle of, 277
 - present tense of, 234
 - preterite of, 291
- falar** (Port.):
 - present tense of, 225
 - imperfect tense of, 333
- fare** (It.):
 - in causative constructions, 487-492
 - past participle of, 277
 - present tense of, 234
 - preterite of, 291
- faz...que** (Port.), 274
- fazer** (Port.):
 - in causative constructions, 487-492
 - past participle of, 277
 - present tense of, 234
 - preterite of, 291
- finir** (Fr.), 226
- finire** (It.), 226
- fino a** (It.), 684
- fora de** (Port.), 704
- fra** (It.), 637
- fractions**, 564-567
- frente a** (Sp.), 52, 679-680, 700
- fuera de** (Sp.), 704
- fuori di** (It.), 704

INDEX

- future perfect tense**, 365-371
future tense, 354-364
- gerund**, 454-465
graças a (Port.), 705
grâce à (Fr.), 705
gracias a (Sp.), 705
grand (Fr.), 43, 64
grande (Sp., Port., It.), 43; Sp.: 46; 64
grazie a (It.), 705
- há (há...que)** (Port.), 274
haber (Sp.):
 present tense of, 234
 preterite of, 291
hablar (Sp.):
 present tense of, 225
 imperfect tense of, 333
hace (hace...que) (Sp.), 274
hacer (Sp.):
 in causative constructions, 487-492
 past participle of, 277
 present tense of, 234
 preterite of, 291
hacia (Sp.), 685
hasta (Sp.), 684
haver (Port.):
 present tense of, 234
 preterite of, 291
hors de (Fr.), 704
- il cui** (It.), 183
il quale (It.), 181
il resto (It.), 211
imparare (It.):
 past participle of, 277
imperative, 443-454
imperfect subjunctive, 425-429
imperfect tense, 331-342
in (It.):
 in adverbial clauses of manner, 56
 to denote location, 630
 to express the material from which something is made, 609
 with expressions, 638
 with geographical names, 631-633
 with means of transportation, 633
 to indicate time, 637
 with verbs, 642
in conformità con (It.), 704
in luogo di (It.), 697
in merito a (It.), 703
in quanto a (It.), 703
indefinite adjectives, 186-216
indefinite article, 66-70
indefinite pronouns, 186-216
indirect object pronouns, 108-112
infinitive, 468-487
interrogative pronouns, 155-168
intorno a (It.), 695
invece di (It.), 697
inversion,
ir (Sp., Port.):
 imperfect tense of, 335
 present tense of, 234
 replacing the future tense, 273
-ir verbs (Sp., Port., Fr.):
 past participle, 276
 present tense, 223-226, 232-233
-ire verbs (It.):
 past participle, 276
 present tense, 223-226, 232-233
irregular verbs:

INDEX

- present tense of, 233-236
- past participle of, 277-279
- preterite of, 290-294
- imperfect of, 334-335
- isto** (Port.), 153
- isso** (Port.), 153
- junto a** (Sp.), 693
- junto de** (Port.), 693
- jusqu'à** (Fr.), 684
- laisser** (Fr.), 492-494
- lasciare** (It.), 492-494
- lavorare** (It.), 218-221
- le reste** (Fr.), 211
- leggere** (It.):
 - past participle of, 279
 - preterite of, 293
- lejos (de)** (Sp.), 51, 702
- lequel** (Fr.), 163, 176, 178
- les deux** (Fr.), 214
- lire** (Fr.):
 - past participle of, 279
 - preterite of, 293
- lo demás** (Sp.), 211
- lo que/lo cual** (Sp.), 182
- loin (de)** (Fr.), 51, 702
- longe (de)** (Port.), 51, 702
- lontano (da)** (It.), 51, 702
- los dos** (Sp.), 214
- lungo** (It.), 696
- ma** (It.), 708
- mais** (Fr.), 708
- malgrado** (It.), 698
- malgré** (Fr.), 698
- mal** (Sp., Port., Fr.), 51, 64
- male** (It.), 51, 64
- malo** (Sp., It.), 44, 64
- mas** (Port.), 708
- más allá de** (Sp.), 694
- mau** (Port.), 44, 64
- mauvais** (Fr.), 44, 64
- menos** (Sp.), 687
- mettere** (It.):
 - past participle of, 278
 - preterite of, 291
- mettre** (Fr.):
 - past participle of, 278
 - present tense of, 235
 - preterite of, 291
- molto** (It.), 54, 57, 62, 65, 200, 316
- months**, 572
- morir** (Sp.):
 - past participle of, 278
 - present tense of, 236
- morire** (It.):
 - past participle of, 278
 - present tense of, 236
- mourir** (Fr.):
 - past participle of, 278
 - present tense of, 236
- mucho** (Sp.), 57, 65, 200
- muito** (Port.), 54, 57, 62, 65, 200, 316
- muy** (Sp.), 54, 316
- na parte de baixo de** (Port.), 691-692
- nada** (Sp., Port.), 214
- nadie** (Sp.), 213
- negation**, 313-331
 - de modo nenhum/de modo algum (Port.), 328-329
 - en absoluto, en mi/la vida (Sp.), 328-329
 - não...mais (Port.), 326-327
 - não...mais que (Port.), 330-331
 - não...nada (Port.), 321-323
 - não...nem...nem (Port.), 323-324
 - não...nenhum (Port.), 327-328
 - não...ninguém (Port.), 319-321
 - não...nunca (jamais) (Port.), 324-326

INDEX

- nem sequer/tão sequer
(Port.), 329-330
ne...aucun (Fr.), 327-328
ne...jamais (Fr.), 324-326
ne...même pas (Fr.),
329-330
ne...ni...ni (Fr.), 323-324
ne...pas (Fr.), 315
ne...pas du tout/ne...point
(Fr.), 328-329
ne...personne (Fr.), 319-321
ne...plus (Fr.), 326-327
ne...que (Fr.), 330-331
ne...rien (Fr.), 321-323
ni siquiera/ni tan siquiera
(Sp.), 329-330
no...más (jamás) (Sp.),
326-327
no...más que /sino (Sp.),
330-331
no...nada (Sp.), 321-323
no...nadie (Sp.), 319-321
no...ni...ni (Sp.), 323-324
no...ningún (Sp.), 327-328
no...nunca (jamás) (Sp.),
324-326
non...affatto/non...punto
(It.), 328-329
non...che (It.), 330-331
non...mai (It.), 324-326
non...neanche (nemmeno/
neppure) (It.), 329-330
non...nessun (It.), 327-328
non...nessuno (It.), 319-321
non...niente/non...nulla
(It.), 321-323
non...né...né (It.), 323-324
non...più (It.), 326-327
ni siquiera (ni tan siquiera)
(Sp.), 329-330
nella parte bassa (It.),
691-692
nenhum (Port.), 212
nessuno (It.), 47, 212-213
niente (It.), 214
ninguém (Port.), 213
ninguno (Sp.), 212
no interior de (Port.), 702
nonostante (It.), 670
nouns, 12-32
nouveau (Fr.), 44
novο (Port.), 44
nuevo (Sp.), 44
nuovo (It.), 44
numbers, 538-570

o (Sp., It.), 708
o qual (Port.), 181, 182
o que (Port.), 158; 162, 178,
182
o resto (Port.), 211
ogni (It.), 195
ognuno (It.), 196
ojalá (que) (Sp.), 397
onde (Port.), 166, 185
ordinal numbers, 555-564
os dois (Port.), 214
ou (Port., Fr.), 708
où (Fr.), 166, 185
ouvrir (Fr.):
past participle of, 278

par (Fr.):
with passive voice, 650
to denote direction or
location, 650
to express manner or
means, 651
to denote amount and rate,
653
with means of
transportation, 633-637
par rapport à (Fr.), 703
para (Port.), 685
para (Sp., Port.):
to express motion or
direction in Portuguese, 591
to denote purpose, 646

INDEX

- to mean recipient, 647
- to express opinion or point of view, 647
- to denote direction or destination, 648
- to designate deadline, 649
- to make comparison, 649
- para com** (Port.), 685, 696
- para con** (Sp.), 696
- par-dessus** (Fr.), 692
- parlare** (It.):
 - present tense of, 225
 - imperfect tense of, 333
- parler** (Fr.):
 - present tense of, 225
 - imperfect tense of, 333
- partir** (Sp., Port., Fr.):
 - present tense of, 225
 - imperfect tense of, 333
- partire** (It.):
 - present tense of, 225
 - imperfect tense of, 333
- partitive** (It., Fr.), 82-84
- passive voice**, 521-537
- past participle**, 276-280
- pendant** (Fr.), 683
- per** (It.):
 - to denote purpose, 646
 - to mean recipient, 647
 - to express opinion or point of view, 647
 - to denote direction or destination, 648
 - to designate deadline, 649
 - to make comparison, 649
 - to denote direction or location, 651
 - to express manner or means, 651
 - to express duration, 654
 - to mean reason or cause, 655
 - to express exchange, 656
 - to mean on behalf of, in favour of, 657
 - to express substitution, 657
 - to express personal opinion, 658
 - with verbs, 663-666
- perante** (Port.), 679-680
- perché** (It.), 167
- pero** (Sp.), 708
- personne** (Fr.), 213
- perto de** (Port.), 695
- peu** (Fr.), 57, 65, 200
- pluperfect subjunctive**, 430-435
- pluperfect tense**, 343-349
- poco** (Sp., It.), 57, 65, 200
- poder** (Sp., Port.):
 - present tense of, 235
- poner** (Sp.):
 - past participle of, 278
 - present tense of, 235
 - preterite of, 291
- por** (Sp., Port.):
 - with passive voice, 650
 - to denote direction or location, 650
 - to express manner or means, 651
 - to denote amount and rate, 653
 - to designate duration (Sp., Port.), 654
 - to mean reason or cause (Sp., Port.), 655
 - to express exchange (Sp., Port.), 656
 - to mean on behalf of, in favour of (Sp., Port.), 656
 - to express substitution (Sp., Port.), 657
 - to express personal opinion (Sp., Port.), 658
 - with expressions (Sp., Port.), 658

INDEX

- with verbs (Sp., Port.), 663-666
- pôr** (Port.):
 - past participle of, 278
 - present tense of, 235
 - preterite of, 291
- por arriba de** (Sp.), 692
- por causa de** (Port.), 705
- por cima de** (Port.), 692
- por encima de** (Sp.), 692
- por qué** (Sp.), 167
- por trás de** (Port.), 700
- por volta** (Port.) 686
- porque** (Port.), 167
- porre** (It.):
 - past participle of, 278
 - present tense of, 235
- possessive adjectives**, 133-139
- possessive pronouns**, 133-142
- pouco** (Port.), 57, 65, 200
- potere** (It.):
 - present tense of, 235
- pour** (Fr.):
 - to denote purpose, 646
 - to mean recipient, 647
 - to express opinion or point of view, 647
 - to denote direction or destination, 648
 - to designate deadline, 649
 - to make comparison, 649
 - to express duration, 654
 - to mean reason or cause, 655
 - to express exchange, 656
 - to mean on behalf of, in favour of, 656
 - to express substitution, 657
 - to express personal opinion, 658
 - with verbs, 663-666
- pourquoi** (Fr.), 167
- pouvoir** (Fr.):
 - present tense of, 235
- prendere** (It.):
 - past participle of, 277
 - preterite of, 292
- prendre** (Fr.):
 - past participle of, 277
 - preterite of, 292
- prepositions**, 587-706
- present participle**, 454-465
- present perfect**, 280-287
- present tense**:
 - of -ar verbs (Sp., Port.), 223-225, 227-231
 - of -er verbs (Sp., Port., Fr.), 223-225, 227-232
 - of -ere verbs (It.), 223-225, 231-232
 - of first conjugation verbs, 223-225, 227-231
 - formation, 223-226
 - of -ir verbs (Sp., Port., Fr.), 223-226, 232-233
 - of -ire verbs (It.), 223-226, 232-233
 - of irregular verbs, 233-236 (see also Verb Chart, 791-796)
 - of -re verbs (Fr.), 223-226, 231-232
 - of reflexive verbs, 500-521
 - of second conjugation verbs, 223-226, 231-232
 - of spelling-change verbs, 236-271
 - of third conjugation verbs, 223-226, 232-233
- près de** (Fr.), 695
- present continuous tense**, 411
- prima di** (It.), 699
- pronouns**, 87-216
- qual** (Port.), 161, 162

INDEX

- qualcosa** (It.), 191
- qualcuno** (It.), 191
- quale** (It.), 161, 162
- quand** (Fr.), 166, 186
- quando** (Port. It.), 166, 186
- quant à** (Fr.), 703
- quanto** (Port., It.), 164, 170
- quanto a** (Port.), 703
- que** (Port., Fr.), 158, 162, 169, 174, 177
- qué (que)** (Sp.), 158, 162, 169, 174
- quel (lequel)** (Fr.), 161, 162, 169
- quello/quella/quei (quegli/quelle)** (It.), 150-152
- quello che/quell che** (It.), 182
- quelque** (Fr.), 192
- quelque chose** (Fr.), 191
- quelqu'un** (Fr.), 191
- quem** (Port.), 159, 177, 178
- querer** (Sp., Port.):
 - present tense of, 235
- questo/questa/questi/queste** (It.), 143-144
- qui** (Fr.), 159, 178
- quién (quien)** (Sp.), 159, 178
- quoi** (Fr.), 158
- re verbs:**
 - past participle, 276
 - present tense, 223-225, 231-232
- reflexive pronouns**, 130-133
- reflexive verbs**, 500-521
- relative pronouns**, 171-186
- respecto a** (Sp.), 703
- rien** (Fr.), 214
- riguardo a** (It.), 703
- rispetto a** (It.), 703
- saber** (Sp., Port.),
 - present tense of, 235
 - preterite of, 292
- salvo** (Sp., Port., It.), 686
- sans** (Fr.), 55, 674-675
- sapere** (It.):
 - present tense of, 235
 - preterite of, 292
- sauf** (Fr.), 686
- savoir** (Fr.):
 - past participle of, 278
 - present tense of, 235
 - preterite of, 292
- scrivere** (It.):
 - past participle of, 277
 - preterite of, 293
- seasons**, 575
- second conjugation verbs**, 223-226, 231-232
- secondo** (It.), 687
- según** (Sp.), 687
- segundo** (Port.), 687
- selon** (Fr.), 687
- sem** (Port.), 55, 674-675
- semejante** (Sp.), 195
- sentir** (Sp., Port., Fr.):
 - present tense of, 236
- senza** (It.), 55, 674-675
- ser** (Sp., Port.):
 - imperative mood, 448
 - imperfect tense of, 334-335
 - past participle of, 277
 - present tense of, 234
 - preterite of, 290
 - with the passive voice, 521-533
 - Spanish passive voice with *estar* and *ser*, 533
- seul** (Fr.), 198, 418
- sin** (Sp.), 55, 674-675
- só** (Port.), 55, 198, 418
- sob** (Port.), 680
- sobre** (Sp., Port.), 677-679
- solo** (Sp., It.), 55, 198, 418
- sono...che** (It.), 274
- sopra** (It.), 692

INDEX

- sotto** (It.), 680
sous (Fr.), 680
sozinho (Port.), 198
stare (It.):
 present tense of, 234
 preterite of, 291
su (It.), 677-679
subjunctive, 387-443
suficiente (Sp., Port.), 199
sufficiente (It.), 199
suffisant (Fr.), 199
superlative of adjectives and adverbs, 60-62
sur (Fr.), 677-679
- tal** (Sp., Port.), 194
tale (It.), 194
tel (Fr.), 194
tener (Sp.):
 past participle of, 277
 present tense of, 234
 preterite of, 293
tenere (It.):
 present tense of, 234
ter (Port.):
 imperfect tense of, 335
 past participle of, 277
 present tense of, 234
third conjugation verbs, 223-226, 232-233
time, 576-586
todo (Sp., Port.), 205, 210
tomar (Sp., Port.):
 past participle of, 277
tout (Fr.), 205, 210
tous les deux (Fr.), 214
tra (It.), 676-677
trabajar (Sp.), 218-221
trabalhar (Port.), 218-221
traer (Sp.):
 preterite of, 294
tras (Sp.), 700
travailler (Fr.), 218-221
trazer (Port.):
 preterite of, 294
très (Fr.), 54, 62, 316
trop (Fr.), 204
troppo (It.), 204
tudo (Port.), 210
tutti e due (It.), 214
tutto (It.), 205, 210
- único** (Sp., Port.), 198, 418
unico (It.), 198, 418
unique (Fr.), 418
- vario** (It.), 196
varios (Sp.), 196
vários (Port.), 196
vedere (It.):
 past participle of, 278
vender (Sp., Port.):
 present tense of, 225
 imperfect tense of, 333
vedere (It.):
 present tense of, 225
 imperfect tense of, 333
vendre (Fr.):
 present tense of, 225
 imperfect tense of, 333
venir (Sp., Fr.):
 past participle of, 278
 present tense of, 236
 preterite of, 292
venir de (Fr.), 286
venire (It.):
 past participle of, 278
 present tense of, 236
 preterite of, 292
ver (Sp., Port.):
 imperfect tense of, 335
 past participle of, 278
verbs:
 asking questions, 309-313
 compound tenses in the past, 343-371
 conditional perfect tense, 379-383

INDEX

- conditional clauses, 383-387
- conditional tense, 371-387
- future perfect tense, 365-371
- future tense, 354-364
- imperative, 443-454
- imperfect tense, 331-343
- irregular (see Verb Charts, 763-768)
- mood:
 - indicative, 222-387
 - subjunctive, 387-443
 - imperative, 443-454
- passive voice, 521-537
- pluperfect tense, 343-349
- present perfect, 280-287
- present tense,
 - of -ar verbs (Sp., Port.), 223-225, 227-231
 - of -er verbs (Sp., Port., Fr.), 223-225, 227-232
 - of -ere verbs (It.), 223-225, 231-232
 - of first conjugation verbs, 223-225, 227-231
 - formation, 223-226
 - of -ir verbs (Sp., Port., Fr.), 223-226, 232-233
 - of -ire verbs (It.), 223-226, 232-233
 - of irregular verbs, 233-236 (see also Verb Chart, 763-768)
 - of -re verbs (Fr.), 223-226, 231-232
- of reflexive verbs, 500-521
 - regular (see Verb Charts, 760-763)
 - subjunctive, 387-443
 - future subjunctive in Sp. and Port., 435-437
 - future perfect subjunctive, 437-441
 - imperfect, 425-429
 - pluperfect, 430-435
 - present, 389-420
 - present perfect, 421-425
 - sequence of tenses with the subjunctive, 441-443
- vers** (Fr.), 685
- verso** (It.), 678, 685, 696
- vicino a** (It.), 695
- vir** (Port.):
 - imperfect tense of, 335
 - past participle of, 278
 - present tense of, 236
 - preterite of, 292
- voir** (Fr.):
 - past participle of, 278
- volere** (It.):
 - present tense of, 235
- vouloir** (Fr.):
 - present tense of, 235
- y** (Sp.), 708